

Canon

☐ Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine
☐ Käesoleva juhendi printimine

MP280 series

On-screen Manual

MC-4714-V1.00

**Põhijuhend**

Tootekirjelduse kokkuvõte.

**Põhjalik juhend**

Toote funktsioonide detailne kirjeldus.

**Tõrkeotsing**



Sisukord

Seadme ülevaade

Põhikomponendid
LED-ekraan ja põhitoimingud

Kopeerimine

Dokumentide kopeerimine
Fotode kopeerimine
Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule

Skannimine

Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse

Arvutist printimine

Fotode printimine (Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil)
Dokumentide printimine
Veebilehtede printimine (Easy-WebPrint EX-i abil)
Erinevate tarkvararakenduste käivitamine

Paberi/originaalide lisamine

Paberi lisamine
Originaalide lisamine

Regulaarne hooldus

Print on hele või värvitoonid valed
FINE-kasseti vahetamine
Seadme puhastamine

Lisa

Toote ja piltide kasutamisel kehtivad juriidilised piirangud
Näpunäited, kuidas seadet kasutada

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☒ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > Seadme ülevaade

Seadme ülevaade

See lõik näitab seadme osade nimetusi ja kirjeldab põhitoiminguid, mida peaksite enne selle kasutamist teadma.

Põhikomponendid

[Eestvaade](#)[Tagantvaade](#)[Sisemine vaade](#)[Juhtpaneel](#)

LED-ekraan ja põhitoimingud

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

☐ Põhjalik juhend
 ☐ Tõrkeotsing

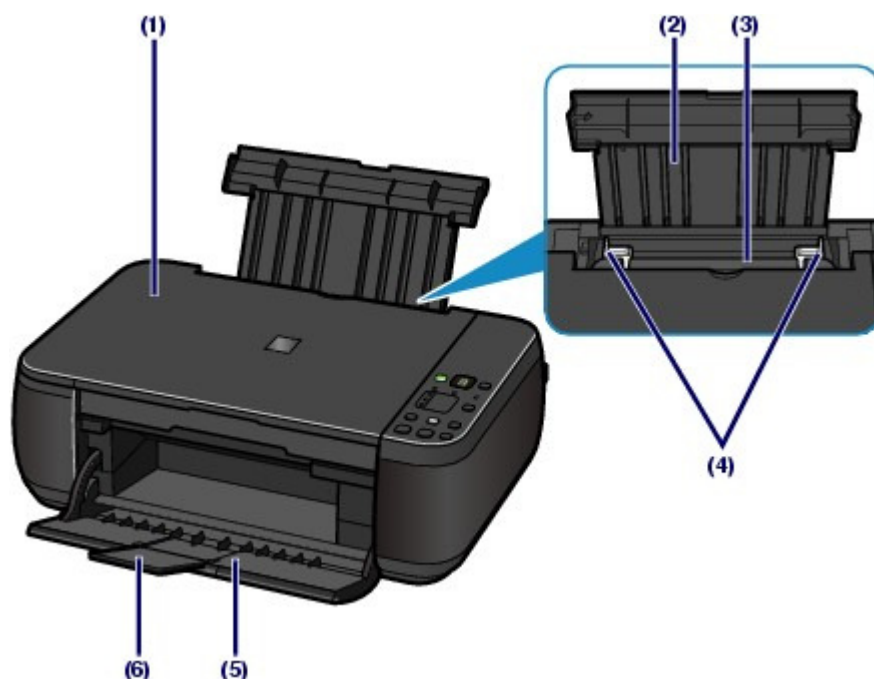
[Sisukord](#) > [Seadme ülevaade](#) > Põhikomponendid

C001

Põhikomponendid

- ➔ Eestvaade
- ➔ Tagantvaade
- ➔ Sisemine vaade
- ➔ Juhtpaneel

■ Eestvaade

**(1) Dokumendikaas**

Avage originaali asetamiseks kopeerimisalusele.

(2) Paberitugi

Paberi asetamiseks tagumisele paberialusele tõstke see üles ja kallutage tagasi.

(3) Tagumine paberialus

Pange seadmesse erineva suurusega ja erinevat tüüpi paberit, mida on masinas lubatud kasutada. Saate korraga lisada kaks või enam sama suurusega ja sama tüüpi paberilehte ning sööta automaatselt ühe lehe korraga.

Vt jaotist [Paberi lisamine](#).

(4) Paberijuhikud

Paberivirna mõlema külje joondamiseks lükake juhikuid kokku.

(5) Paberi väljastusalus

Avaneb automaatselt printimise ja kopeerimise käivitumisel ning printitud paberi väljutamisel.

(6) Väljastusaluse pikendus

Avage väljaprintide toetamiseks. Avage see, kui printide või kopeerite.



(7) Kopeerimisalus

Asetage kopeeritav või skannitav originaal seadmesse.

(8) Juhtpaneel

Kasutage seadme sätete muutmiseks või sellega töötamiseks.

Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).



Märkus

- Juhtpaneeli LED-näidik ning märgutuled, välja arvatud **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli, kustuvad, kui seadet ei kasutata umbes 5 minutit. Nende taastamiseks vajutage mis tahes nuppu, välja arvatud nuppu **Sisse (ON)**, või alustage printimist.

■ Tagantvaade



(9) USB-port

Ühendage sellega seadet arvutiga ühendav USB-kaabel.



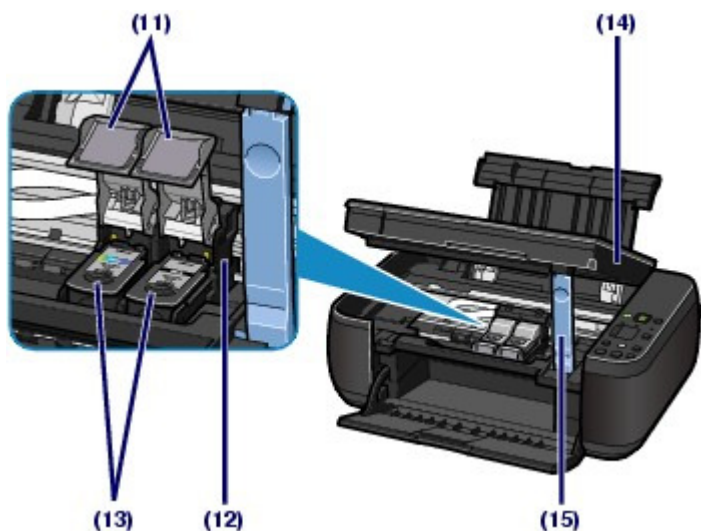
Tähtis!

- Ärge puudutage metallist korpust.
- Ärge ühendage ega eemaldage USB-kaablit ajal, mil seade arvuti kaudu prindib või originaale skannib.

(10) Toitejuhtme pesa

Ühendage kaasasolev toitejuhe.

■ Sisemine vaade



(11) Tindikasseti lukustuskaaned

Lukustavad FINE-kasseti oma kohale.

(12) FINE-kasseti hoidik

FINE-kassetide paigaldamiseks.

Värviline FINE-kassett tuleks paigaldada vasakpoolsesse pessa (**C**) ja must FINE-kassett parempoolsesse pessa (**B**).

(13) FINE-kassetid (tindikassetid)

Asendatav kassett, mis koosneb sisseehitatud prindipeast ja tindimahutist.



Märkus

- Üksikasjalikku teavet FINE-kasseti paigaldamise kohta lugege trükitud kasutusjuhendist: *Alustamise juhend*.

(14) Skannimisseade (kaas)

Skannib originaale. Avage see, et FINE-kassette asendada või kinnikiilunud paberit seadme sisemusest eemaldada. Skannimisseadme (kaas) avage nii, et dokumendikaas on suletud.

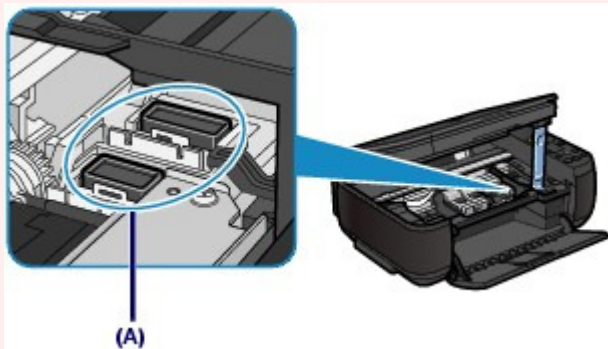
(15) Skannimisseadme tugi

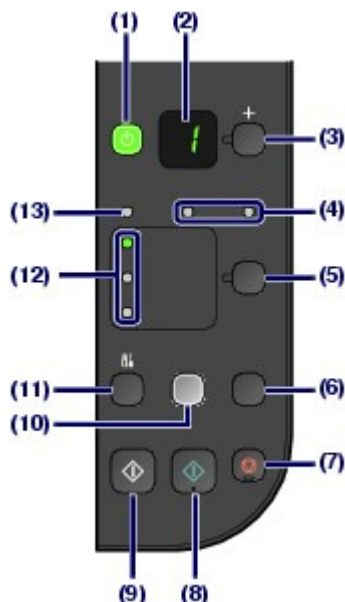
Hoiab skannimisseadet (kaant), kui see on avatud.



Tähtis!

- Joonisel (A) näidatud ala võib kattuda väljapritsitud tindiga. See ei mõjuta seadme jõudlust.
- Ärge puudutage ala (A). Kui seda puudutate, ei pruugi seade enam korralikult printida.





(1) Nupp Sisse (ON) / märgutuli Toide (POWER)

Lülitab seadme toite sisse või välja. Enne seadme sisselülitamist veenduge, et dokumendikaas on suletud.

▶ Tähtis!

Toitepistiku väljatõmbamine

- Kui tõmbate toitepistiku pärast toite väljalülitamist seinakontaktist välja, siis veenduge, et märgutuli **POWER** ei põle. Kui tõmbate toitepistiku seinakontaktist välja ajal, mil märgutuli **POWER** ikka veel põleb või vilgub, ei pruugi seade korralikult printida, kuna prindipea ei ole kaitstud.

📖 Märkus

Märgutuled Toide (POWER) ja Häire (Alarm)

- Märgutuledega **Toide (POWER)** ja **Häire (Alarm)** saate kontrollida seadme olekut.
 - Märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** ei põle: toide ei ole sisse lülitatud.
 - Märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** põleb roheliselt: seade on printimiseks valmis.
 - Märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** vilgub roheliselt: seadet kas käivitatakse või lülitatakse välja.
 - Märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** süttib või vilgub roheliselt: ilmnenud on viga ning seade ei ole printimiseks valmis. Täpsemat teavet vaadake jaotist „[Törkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist *Põhjalik juhend*.
 - Märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** ning märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** vilguvad vaheldumisi vastavalt roheliselt ja oranžilt: võib olla ilmnenud viga, mille korral on vaja pöörduda teeninduskeskusesse. Täpsemat teavet vaadake jaotist „[Törkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist *Põhjalik juhend*.

(2) LED (valgusdiod)

Kuvab koopiate arvu, hoolduskoodi või tööoleku, näiteks tõrkekoodi.

(3) Nupp [+]

Selle abil saab määrata koopiate arvu.

(4) Märgutuled Tint (Ink)

Süttivad või vilguvad oranžilt, kui tint saab otsa jne. Vasakpoolne märgutuli näitab värvilise FINE-kasseti olekut ja parempoolne märgutuli musta FINE-kasseti olekut.

(5) Nupp Paber (Paper)

Selle abil saab valida paberi suuruse ja prindikandja tüübi.

(6) Nupp Skanni (SCAN)

Käivitab originaali skannimise, et selle arvutisse salvestada.

(7) Nupp Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)

Tühistab toimingud. Võite seda nuppu vajutada ka käimasoleva printimis-, kopeerimis- või skannimistöö tühistamiseks.

(8) Nupp Värvirežiim (Color) *

Käivitab värvilise kopeerimise. Võite seda nuppu vajutada ka sätteparameetri kinnitamiseks.

(9) Nupp Must režiim (Black) *

Käivitab mustvalge kopeerimise. Võite seda nuppu vajutada ka sätteparameetri kinnitamiseks.

(10) Nupp Sobita lehele (Fit to Page) / märgutuli Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)

Võimaldab lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsiooni. Kui lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon on võimaldatud, siis süttib märgutuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** ning saate originaali valitud leheformadiga sobitamiseks kopeerida automaatselt suurendatuna või vähendatuna. Kui lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon on blokeeritud, saate teha originaaliga samas suuruses koopiaid.

(11) Nupp (Hooldus (Maintenance))

Kuvab hoolduskoodi.

(12) Märgutuli Paber (Paper)

Süttib näitamaks nupuga **Paber (Paper)** valitud paberi suurust ja prindikandja tüüpi.

(13) Märgutuli Häire (Alarm)

Vea ilmnemisel, näiteks paberi või tindi lõppemisel, põleb või vilgub oranžilt.

* Tarkvararakendustes või juhendites nimetatakse nuppe **Must režiim (Black)** ja **Värvirežiim (Color)** ühiselt nupuks Käivita (Start) või nupuks OK.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

☐ Põhjalik juhend
 ☐ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Seadme ülevaade](#) > LED-ekraan ja põhitoimingud

C002

LED-ekraan ja põhitoimingud

Saate seadet kasutada koopiategemiseks või hooldustoimingute läbiviimiseks ilma arvutita. Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse juhtpaneeli LED-ekraani ja põhitoiminguid juhtpaneelil.

Tavaliselt ilmub toite sisselülitamisel LED-näidikul number **1**.



LED-ekraanile kuvatakse seadme olek järgmiselt.

Seadme olek	LED-ekraan
Kopeerimise ajal	Koopiate arv (vilgub)
Printimise, skannimise või hooldustoimingute ajal	 (vilgub järjestikuliselt)
Vea ilmnmisel	E ja numbrid ilmuvad vaheldumisi. Tõrkekoodide kohta täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake jaotist „Tõrkeotsing“ elektroonilisest juhendist: <i>Põhjalik juhend</i>. P ja numbrid ilmuvad vaheldumisi. Ilmnenud võib olla viga, mille parandamiseks on vaja teeninduskeskusesse pöörduda. Täpsemat teavet vaadake jaotist „Tõrkeotsing“ elektroonilisest juhendist <i>Põhjalik juhend</i>.
Kui skannimisseade (kaas) on avatud	 (vilgub)

● Koopiate arv

Kui kopeerimine algab, siis ilmub LED-näidikule määratud koopiate arv. Kui kopeerimine on pooleli, siis number LED-näidikul vilgub ja väheneb ühe võrra, näidates järelejäänud koopiate arvu.



Iga kord, kui vajutate nuppu [+], suureneb LED-näidikul kuvatud number ühe võrra. Kui ilmub täht **F**, siis määratud koopiate arv on „20“. Vajutage uuesti nuppu [+], et määrata uuesti arv „1“.



● Hoolduskoodid

Seadme hooldamiseks vajutage korduvalt nuppu **81** (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni LED-ekraanile kuvatakse soovitud kood. Seejärel vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

Hoolduskood	Toiming	Vaadake jaotist
	Prinditakse pihustite kontrollmuster.	Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine
	Puhastatakse prindipea.	Prindipea puhastamine
	Sooritatakse prindipea sügavpuhastus.	Prindipea sügavpuhastus
	Prinditakse prindipea joondusleht.	Prindipea joondamine
	Skannitakse automaatselt prindipea joonduslehte, et prindipead joondada.	Prindipea joondamine
	Prinditakse prindipea asendi praegused kohandusväärtused.	Prindipea joondamine
	Puhastatakse paberisööterullikut.	Paberisööterulliku puhastamine
	Puhastatakse seadme sisemust.	Seadme sisemuse puhastamine (põhjaplaadi puhastamine)
	Lülitab tagasalve asetatud paberi suurust ümber A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel. (Seda sätet kasutatakse koopiate tegemiseks.)	Lehe vormingu vahetamine A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel
	Seadistab printeri vältima paberi pinna hõõrdumist.	Vaadake jaotist „Paber on määrdunud / prinditud pind on kriimustatud“ peatükis „ Törkeotsing “ elektroonilises juhendis: <i>Põhjalik juhend</i> .

● Törkekoodid

Vea ilmlemisel ilmuvad LED-näidikul törkekoodi kuvamiseks vaheldumisi täht **E** ja numbrid.

Nt „E, 1, 6“



(vilgub järjestikuliselt)

Märkus

- Törkekoodide kohta täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake jaotist „[Törkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist: *Põhjalik juhend*.
- Kui ilmub törkekood tähega **P**, siis võib olla ilmnenu törkekood, mille korral on vaja pöörduda teeninduskeskusesse.
Täpsemat teavet vaadake jaotist „[Törkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist *Põhjalik juhend*.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☐ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > Kopeerimine

Kopeerimine

Saate vastavalt lehe suurusele teha suurendatud või vähendatud koopiaid ning lisaks tavapärastele koopiatele ka ääristeta koopiaid prinditud fotodest.

Dokumentide kopeerimine

Lehe vormingu vahetamine A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel

Fotode kopeerimine

Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

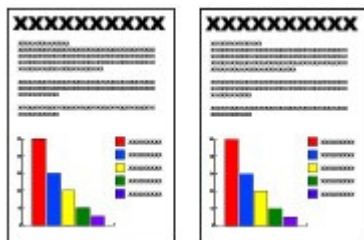
[Sisukord](#) > [Kopeerimine](#) > Dokumentide kopeerimine

C021

Dokumentide kopeerimine

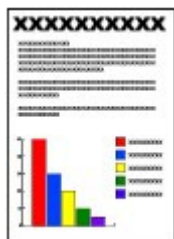
Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse A4- või Letter-vormingus dokumentide tavapaberile kopeerimise toiminguid.

Selle toimingu tegemiseks vt teabelehel kirjeldatud märkusi ja tööprotseduuri.

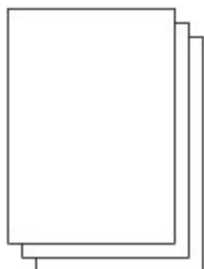


Teil läheb vaja järgmist:

Kopeeritavaid originaale. Vt jaotist [Lisatavad originaalid](#).



Paberit printimiseks. Vt jaotist [Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#).



1. Valmistuge kopeerimiseks.

(1) Lülitage toide sisse.

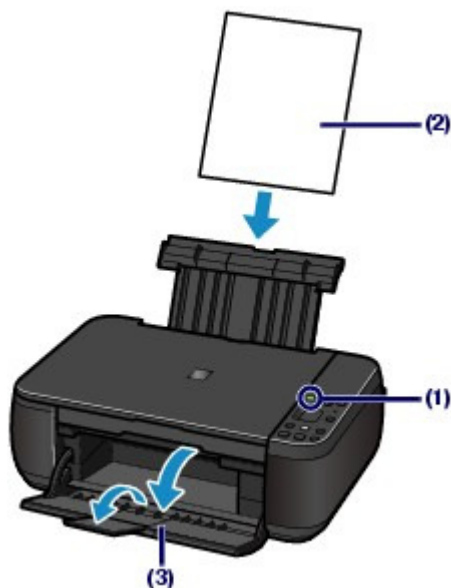
Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).

(2) Lisage paberit.

Vt jaotist [Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine](#).

Siinkohal asetame A4- või Letter-formaadis tavapaberi tagasalve.

(3) Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.



(4) Asetage originaal kopeerimisalusele.

Vt jaotist [Originaalide lisamine](#).

Asetage seadmesse nii, et originaal ON KOPEERITAVA POOLEGA ALLAPOOLE ning joondage see joondusmärgiga , nagu allpool näidatud.

Seejärel sulgege ettevaatlikult dokumendikaas.

Märkus

- Üksikasju originaali, mida saab kopeerida, tüüpide ja tingimuste kohta ning kuidas originaali asetada vt jaotisest [Originaalide lisamine](#).
- Heledavärvilise pastaka või markeriga tehtud tähemärkide ja ridade kopeerimine ei pruugi korralikult õnnestuda.



2. Alustage kopeerimist.

(1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu [+], et määrata koopia arv (max 20 koopiat).



1 kuni 9 või 20 koopia tegemine

Kuvage LED-näidikul koopia soovitud arv.

Iga kord, kui vajutate nuppu [+], suureneb LED-näidikul kuvatud number ühe võrra. Kui ilmub täht **F**, siis

määratud koopiate arv on „20“. Vajutage uuesti nuppu [+], et määrata uuesti arv „1“.

10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

(1) Kuvage LED-näidikul täht **F**.

(2) Asetage seadmesse ainult nii palju lehti, kui soovite kopeerida.

(2) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Paber (Paper)**, et valida lehe vorming ja prindikandja tüüp.

Märgutuli **Paber (Paper)** näitab valitud paberi vormingut ja prindikandja tüüpi.

Valige tavapaber vormingus A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli.



Märkus

- Saate valida järgmisi lehe vorminguid ja prindikandja tüüpe.
 - Tavapaber vormingus A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli
 - Fotopaber vormingus A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli
 - Fotopaber vormingus 10 x 15 cm või 4 x 6 tolli
- Saate vahetada tagasalve lisatud paberi vormingute A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel, hoolimata juhtpaneelil näidatud vormingust.
Vt jaotist [Lehe vormingu vahetamine A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli \(Letter\) vahel](#).
- Kui lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon on aktiveeritud, saate kopeerida originaali nii, et selle suurus suurendataks või vähendataks valitud lehevorminguga sobitamiseks automaatselt. Sel juhul kopeeritakse originaal tavapaberile ääristega ja fotopaberile ääristeta.
Originaali kopeerimiseks algsuuruses tühistage lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon.
Vt jaotist [Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule](#).

(3) Vajutage nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** värviliste koopiate tegemiseks või nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** mustvalgete koopiate tegemiseks.

Seade alustab kopeerimist.

Kui kopeerimine on pooleli, siis number LED-näidikul vilgub ja väheneb ühe võrra, näidates järelejäänud koopiate arvu.

Kui kopeerimine on lõppenud, eemaldage kopeerimisalusel olev originaal.

10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

Kui kõik seadmesse asetatud paberilehed otsa saavad, ilmneb paberi otsasaamise viga (LED-näidikul ilmub kood „E, 0, 2“). Vajutage vea vabastamiseks nuppu **Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.



Märkus

- Saate prindikvaliteediks olekuks seada „Kiire“ (kiirus on prioriteetne) ainult siis, kui lehe vorminguks ja prindikandja tüübiks on valitud A4- või Letter-vormingus tavapaber.
- Prindikvaliteedi seadmine olekusse „Kiire“ (kiirus on prioriteetne)**
 1. Vajutage ja hoidke 2. sammu osa (3) korral 2 või enama sekundi jooksul all nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** või nuppu **Must režiim (Black)**.
LED-näidik vilgub üks kord.
* Kui vajutate nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** või **Must režiim (Black)** vähem kui 2 sekundit, hakkab seade kopeerima prindikvaliteediga „Standardne“.
 2. Vabastage nupp.
Seade alustab kopeerimist.
- Kui prindikvaliteet on seatud olekusse „Kiire“, siis eelistatakse prindikvaliteedi asemel prindikiirust. Et muuta kvaliteet prioriteetseks, vajutage prindikvaliteediga „Standardne“ kopeerimiseks nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** või **Must režiim (Black)** vähem kui 2 sekundit.



Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage originaali seni, kuni kopeerimine on lõppenud.



Märkus

● Kopeerimise katkestamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)** .

■ Lehe vormingu vahetamine A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel

Saate vahetada tagasalve lisatud paberi vormingut A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel.

Antud säte on kasulik siis, kui lisate tagasalve tavaliselt Letter-vormingus paberit, hoolimata juhtpaneelil näidatud paberivormingust „A4“ või vastupidi.

1. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht **d**.



2. Vajutage A4-vormingu valimiseks nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või vormingu 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) valimiseks nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** .



Märkus

- Kui vahetate paberi vorminguks A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter), lisage valitud vormingus paber juhtpaneelil näidatud vormingust hoolimata.
 - Kui lehe vorminguks on määratud A4, lisage seadmesse A4-vormingus tava- või fotopaberit.
 - Kui lehe vorminguks on seatud 8.5 x 11 tolli (Letter), lisage seadmesse Letter-vormingus tava- või fotopaberit.
-



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Kopeerimine](#) > Fotode kopeerimine

C023

Fotode kopeerimine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse prinditud foto 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli suurusele fotopaberile kopeerimise toiminguid.

**Teil läheb vaja järgmist:**

Prinditud fotod.



Fotopaber printimiseks. Vt jaotist [Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#).

**1. Valmistuge foto kopeerimiseks.****(1) Lülitage toide sisse.**

Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).

(2) Lisage paberit.

Vt jaotist [Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine](#).

Antud juhul asetame 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli suuruse fotopaberi paberialusele.

(3) Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.**(4) Asetage foto klaasplaadile.**

Vt jaotist [Originaalide lisamine](#).

2. Alustage kopeerimist.**(1) Vajutage koopiate arvu määramiseks korduvalt nuppu [+].**

Vt jaotise [Dokumentide kopeerimine](#) punkti 2.

(2) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Paber (Paper), et valida lehe vorming ja prindikandja tüüp.**

Märgutuli **Paber (Paper)** näitab valitud paberi vormingut ja prindikandja tüüpi.

Valige 10 x 15 cm või 4 x 6 tolli suurune fotopaber.

**Märkus**

- Saate valida järgmisi lehe vorminguid ja prindikandja tüüpe.
 - Tavapaber vormingus A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli
 - Fotopaber vormingus A4 või 8,5 x 11 tolli
 - Fotopaber vormingus 10 x 15 cm või 4 x 6 tolli
- Saate vahetada tagasalve lisatud paberi vormingute A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel,

hoolimata juhtpaneelil näidatud vormingust.

Vt jaotist [Lehe vormingu vahetamine A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli \(Letter\) vahel](#) .

- Kui lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon on aktiveeritud, saate kopeerida originaali nii, et selle suurus suurendatakse või vähendatakse valitud lehevorminguga sobitamiseks automaatselt. Sel juhul kopeeritakse originaal tavapaberile ääristega ja fotopaberile ääristeta.

Originaali kopeerimiseks algsuuruses tühistage lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon.

Vt jaotist [Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule](#).

(3) Vajutage nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** värviliste koopiade tegemiseks või nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** mustvalgete koopiade tegemiseks.

Seade alustab kopeerimist.

Kui kopeerimine on lõppenud, eemaldage foto klaasplaadilt.



Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage fotot seni, kuni kopeerimine on lõppenud.



Märkus

- Kopeerimise katkestamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)** .



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Kopeerimine](#) > Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule

C024

Kopeerimine vastavalt lehe vormingule

Lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon võimaldab originaali kopeerida nii, et seda suurendatakse või vähendatakse vastavalt valitud lehe vormingule automaatselt.



1. Valmistuge kopeerimiseks.

Vt jaotise [Dokumentide kopeerimine](#) punkti 1.

2. Vajutage koopiate arvu määramiseks korduvalt nuppu [+].

Vt jaotise [Dokumentide kopeerimine](#) punkti 2.

3. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Paber (Paper)**, et valida lehe vorming ja prindikandja tüüp.



Märkus

- Kui prindikandja tüübiks on valitud tavapaber, siis originaal kopeeritakse koos ääristega. Kui prindikandja tüübiks on valitud fotopaber, siis originaal kopeeritakse ääristeta ja see täidab kogu lehe.
- Ääristeta kopeerimise korral võidakse kujutise ääri vähesel määral kärpida, kuna kopeeritud kujutist suurendatakse nii, et see täidab kogu lehe.

4. Vajutage nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**.

Süttib märgutuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** ning aktiveeritakse lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon. Originaal kopeeritakse vastavalt valitud lehevormingule automaatselt suurendatud või vähendatud suurusega.



Märkus

- Vajutage uuesti nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**, et tühistada lehe sobitamisega kopeerimise funktsioon.

5. Vajutage nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** värviliste koopiate tegemiseks või nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** mustvalgete koopiate tegemiseks.

Seade alustab lehele sobitamise kopeerimist.

Kui kopeerimine on lõppenud, eemaldage kopeerimisalusel olev originaal.



Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage originaali seni, kuni kopeerimine on lõppenud.



Märkus

- Saate prindikvaliteediks olekuks seada „Kiire“ (kiirus on prioriteetne) ainult siis, kui lehe vorminguks ja prindikandja tüübiks on valitud A4- või Letter-vormingus tavapaber. Et seada prindikvaliteet olekusse „Kiire“, vajutage ja hoidke 5. sammu korral 2 või enama sekundi jooksul all nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** või nuppu **Must režiim (Black)**.
Vt jaotist [Prindikvaliteedi seadmine olekusse „Kiire“ \(kiirus on prioriteetne\)](#).
- Kopeerimise katkestamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Skannimine

Võite salvestada skannitud andmed oma arvutisse ning neid kaasasoleva tarkvararakenduse abil redigeerida või töödelda.

Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse

[Juhtpaneeli kaudu skannimiseks valmistumine](#)
[Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse](#)



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Skannimine](#) > Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse

C041

Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse

See jaotis kirjeldab, kuidas vastavalt MP Navigator EX-iga määratud sätetele seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades originaale skannida ning arvutisse salvestada.

Juhiseid originaalide skannimiseks arvutist vt elektroonilisest juhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).

▶ Tähtis!

- Pidage meeles, et Canon ei vastuta andmete kadumisest tulenevate kahjude eest isegi seadme garantiiperioodi jooksul.

■ Juhtpaneeli kaudu skannimiseks valmistumine

Enne originaalide skannimist kontrollige järgmist.

- Kas vajalikud tarkvararakendused (MP Drivers ja MP Navigator EX) on installitud?
Installige MP Drivers ja MP Navigator EX plaadilt *Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)*, kui see on installimata või on desinstallitud. MP Driversi ja MP Navigator EX-i installimiseks valige menüüs Custom Install sättes MP Drivers ja MP Navigator EX.
- Kas rakenduses MP Navigator EX on määratud skannitud andmete salvestamise sättes?
Kui salvestate skannitud andmeid arvutisse, kasutades juhtpaneeli, saate määrata sättes skannitud andmete salvestamiseks rakenduse MP Navigator EX menüüs Preferences.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks sätete kohta vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Kas skannitav originaal vastab kopeerimisalusele asetatava originaali nõuetele?
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vt jaotist [Lisatavad originaalid](#).
- Kas seade on arvutiga õigesti ühendatud?
Veenduge, et seadme ja arvuti vaheline ühendus oleks füüsiliselt kindel.

■ Skannitud andmete salvestamine arvutisse

1. Valmistage seade skaneerimiseks ette.

(1) Lülitage toide sisse.

Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).

(2) Asetage originaal kopeerimisalusele.

Vt jaotist [Originaalide lisamine](#).



Märkus

- Heledavärvilise pastaka või markeriga tehtud tähemärkide ja ridade skannimine ei pruugi korralikult õnnestuda.

2. Vajutage skannimise alustamiseks nuppu **Skanni (SCAN)**.

MP Navigator EX käivitub ning skannitud andmed salvestatakse arvutisse vastavalt rakenduses MP Navigator EX määratud sätetele.

Kui skannimine on lõppenud, eemaldage originaal klaasaluselt.



Tähtis!

- Ärge lülitage seadme töötamise ajal toidet välja.
- Ärge ühendage ega eemaldage USB-kaablit ajal, mil seade originaale skannib.
- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega liigutage seadmesse asetatud originaali seni, kuni skannimine on lõppenud.



Märkus

- Originaali asendit või suurust ei pruugita sõltuvalt originaali tüübist õigesti skannida.

Sel juhul vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#), et muuta MP Navigator EX-i jaotiste Document Type ja Document Size sätteid nii, et need sobiksid originaaliga, ning skannige originaali uuesti.

Programmivaliku ekraani ilmumine.

- Programmivaliku kuva võib ilmuda pärast sammu 2 teostamist.
Programmivaliku kuva ilmumisel valige MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 ja klõpsake OK.
Rakenduse MP Navigator EX automaatseks käivitamiseks ilma programmivaliku ekraani kuvamiseta järgige allolevat protseduuri.
 - Windows 7 või Windows Vista kasutajad, vaadake elektroonilises juhendis *Põhjalik juhend* peatüki „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ osa „Windowsi kasutajatele“.
 - Windows XP kasutajad, valige programmivaliku kuval kasutamiseks tarkvararakendus MP Navigator EX Ver4.0, valige suvand Always use this program for this action ja klõpsake seejärel valikul OK.
-



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☐ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > Arvutist printimine

Arvutist printimine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse, kuidas printida arvutist dokumente või fotosid.

Seadmega kaasneva rakenduse Easy PhotoPrint EX abil saate hõlpsasti printida digifotoaparaadiga tehtud fotosid.

Fotode printimine (Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil)

Rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX erinevate funktsioonide kasutamine

Dokumentide printimine

Veebilehtede printimine (Easy-WebPrint EX-i abil)

Erinevate tarkvararakenduste käivitamine

[Solution Menu EX](#)

[Easy-WebPrint EX](#)



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > Fotode printimine (Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil)

C051

Fotode printimine (Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil)

Printige arvutisse salvestatud pildandmeid teie seadmega kaasneva Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil. Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse ääristeta fotode 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli suurusele fotopaberile printimise toiminguid.

Teavet Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i kohta vaadake elektroonilisest juhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).

 Märkus

- Installeerige Easy-PhotoPrint EX *seadistamise CD-ROM-ilt (Setup CD-ROM)*, kui see on installimata või on desinstallitud. Valige Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i installimiseks Easy-PhotoPrint EX valikust Custom Install.

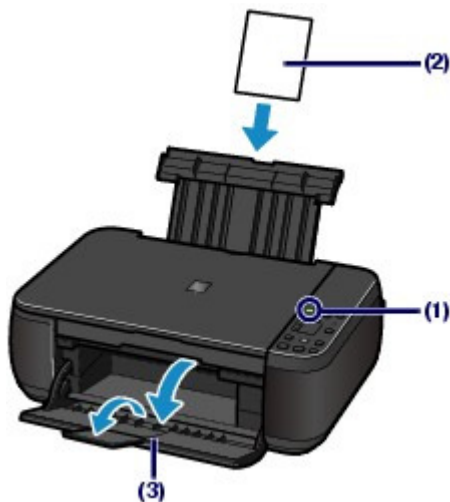
1. Valmistuge printimiseks.**(1) Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.**

Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).

(2) Lisage paberit.

Vt jaotist [Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine](#).

Antud juhul asetame 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli suuruse fotopaberi paberilusele.

(3) Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.**2. Käivitage Solution Menu EX-ist Easy-PhotoPrint EX.****(1) Käivitage Solution Menu EX.**

Vt jaotist [Solution Menu EX](#).



Klõpsake siia: [Solution Menu EX](#)

(2) Klõpsake (Photo Print) menüüs Photo Print.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX käivitatakse ja ilmub menüü Photo Print toimingute aken.

**Märkus**

- Lisaks fotode printimisele on saadaval albumite, kalendrite ja muude fotoelementide loomise funktsioonid.
Vt jaotist [Rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX erinevate funktsioonide kasutamine](#).



3. Valige foto, mida soovite printida.

(1) Valige kaust, kuhu kujutised on salvestatud.

(2) Printimiseks klõpsake kujutisel.

Koopiate arvuks kuvatakse „1” ja teie valitud kujutis ilmub valitud kujutise alasse (A). Võite valida korraga kaks või enam kujutist.



Märkus

- Et printida korraga kaht või enamat pilti, klõpsake koopiate arvu muutmiseks ikoonil  (üles suunatud nool).
- Valiku tühistamiseks klõpsake valitud kujutise alas (A) tühistataval pildil ja klõpsake ikoonil  (Delete Imported Image) (B). Samuti võite koopiate arvu nullini vähendamiseks kasutada ikooni  (alla suunatud nool).
- Valitud kujutist võite ka korrigeerida või töödelda. Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Saate salvestada ja printida kujutisi videost. Vt jaotist [Rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX erinevate funktsioonide kasutamine](#).

(3) Klõpsake Select Paper.



4. Valige seadmesse asetatud paber.

(1) Veenduge, et suvandis Printer on valitud teie seadme nimetus.

(2) Valige sätetes Paper Size ja Media Type seadmesse asetatud paberi suurus ja tüüp.

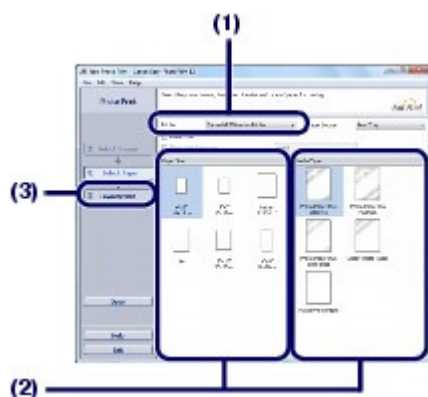
Siin valime 4"x6" 10x15cm sättes Paper Size ja seadmesse asetatud fotopaberi tüübi sättes Media Type.



Märkus

- Kui valite vale prindikandja tüübi, ei pruugi seade printida korraliku kvaliteediga.

(3) Klõpsake valikul Layout/Print.



5. Valige vorming ja alustage printimist.

(1) Valige foto küljendus.

Siin valime Borderless (full).

Eelvaade kuvatakse valitud vormingus, et soovitud printimistulemust kinnitada.



Märkus

- Saate muuta foto suunda või sellest printimiseks osa välja lõigata.
Toimingu üksikasju vaadake elektroonilisest juhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).

(2) Klõpsake valikut Print.



Märkus

- Käimasoleva printimistöö katkestamiseks vajutage seadmel nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** või klõpsake printeri oleku monitoril valikul Cancel Printing.
Printeri olekukuva kuvamiseks klõpsake tegumiribal printeri ikooni. Windows Vistas või Windows XP-s klõpsake tegumiribal ikooni Canon XXX Printer (kus „XXX“ on teie seadme nimi).



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > [Fotode printimine \(Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil\)](#) > Rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX erinevate funktsioonide kasutamine

C052

■ Rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX erinevate funktsioonide kasutamine

See jaotis tutvustab mõningaid Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i kasulikke funktsioone.

Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

● Oma trükiste loomine

Võite oma fotosid kasutades albumi või kalendri luua.



Album



Calendar



Stickers



Layout Print

● Videotest piltide loomine

Saate salvestada videokaadreid ja luua pilte.



[Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > Dokumentide printimine

C053

Dokumentide printimine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse A4-vormingus dokumentide tavapaberile printimise toiminguid. Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

Märkus

- Sõltuvalt teie tarkvararakendusest võivad toimingud erineda. Lisateavet leiate oma rakenduste kasutusjuhendist.
- Selles jaotises kasutatud ekraanivaated kehtivad printimise kohta operatsioonisüsteemiga Windows 7 Home Premium (edaspidi „Windows 7“).

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.

Vt jaotist [Juhtpaneel](#).

2. Lisage paberit.

Vt jaotist [Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine](#).

Antud juhul asetame tagasalve A4-formaadis tavapaberi.

3. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.

4. Koostage (või avage) vastava rakenduse abil dokument, mida soovite printida.

5. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

(1) Valige käsklus Print oma tarkvararakenduse käsklusribalt File.

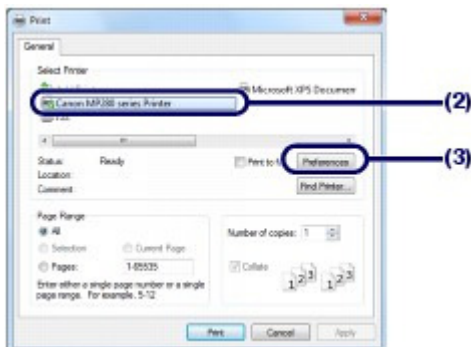
Kuvatakse dialoogiaken Print.

(2) Veenduge, et teie seadme nimetus oleks valitud.

Märkus

- Kui on valitud mõne teise printeri nimetus, klõpsake ja valige oma seadme nimetus.

(3) Klõpsake valikut Preferences (või Properties).



6. Määrake vajalikud printimise seaded.

(1) Valige Business Document sätestest Commonly Used Settings.

Märkus

- Kui printitav objekt nt Business Document või Photo Printing on valitud sätestest Commonly

Used Settings, siis valitakse automaatselt valiku Additional Features alt vastavad objektid.
Kuvatakse printitavale objektile sobivad seadistused, nt prindikandja või printimiskvaliteet.

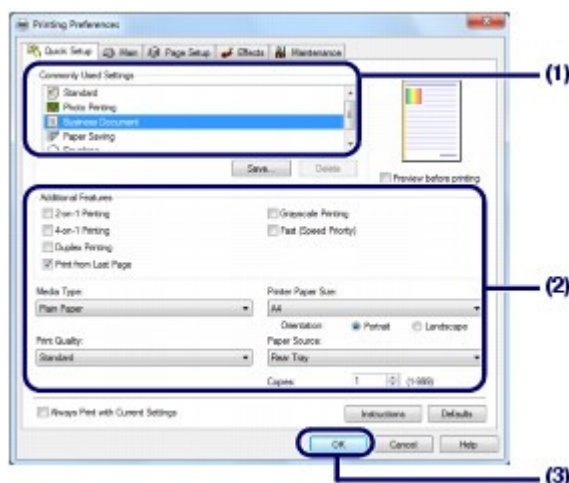
(2) Kontrollige kuvatud määrangut.

Siinkohal veendume, et sättes Media Type oleks valitud Plain Paper, sättes Print Quality suvand Standard ning sättes Printer Paper Size valik A4.

Märkus

- Kui valite sätte Copies alt enam kui kaks koopiat, siis järjestatakse printitud leheküljed eksemplarhaaval.
- Seadeid on võimalik muuta.
Kuid pärast seda, kui muudate sätet Printer Paper Size, veenduge, et sätte Page Size lehel Page Setup ühtiks tarkvararakenduses määratud sättega.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Kui valite vale prindikandja tüübi, ei pruugi seade printida korraliku kvaliteediga.

(3) Klõpsake OK.

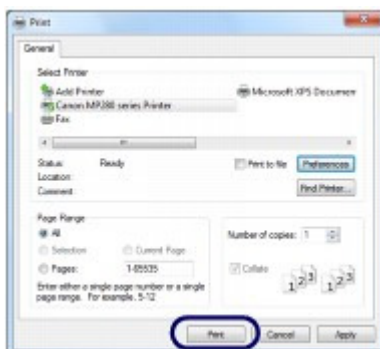


Märkus

- Printeridraiveri muude funktsioonidega tutvumiseks klõpsake suvandeid Help või Instructions, et vaadata võrguabi või elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#). Nupp Instructions kuvatakse valikute Quick Setup, Main ja Maintenance all, kui elektrooniline juhend on arvutisse installitud.
- Võite muudetud sätetele nime anda ning lisada need jaotise Commonly Used Settings alla.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Kui ruut Always Print with Current Settings on märgitud, kohanduvad praegused sätted ka järgmisel printimisel. Mõnel tarkvararakendusel ei pruugi seda funktsiooni esineda.
- Eelvaate kuvamiseks ja printimistulemuse kinnitamiseks märgistage ruut Preview before printing. Mõnes tarkvararakenduses ei pruugi eelvaatefunktsiooni olla.
- Üksikasjalikud prindisätteid saate määrata lehel Main või lehel Page Setup.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

7. Alustage printimist.

Klõpsake printimise alustamiseks käsklust Print (või OK).



Märkus

- Ümbrikele printides kuvatakse teade selle kohta, kuidas ümbrikke asetada. Seda teadet ei kuvata järgmisel korral, kui märgistate märkeruudu Do not show this message again. Täpsemat teavet ümbrike printimise sätete kohta vaadake jaotisest [Ümbrike lisamine](#).
- Käimasoleva printimistöö katkestamiseks vajutage seadmel nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** või klõpsake printeri oleku monitoril valikul Cancel Printing. Printeri olekukuva kuvamiseks klõpsake tegumiribal printeri ikooni. Operatsioonisüsteemis Windows Vista (edaspidi „Windows Vista“) või operatsioonisüsteemis Windows XP klõpsake tegumiribal ikoonil Canon XXX Printer (kus „**XXX**“ on teie seadme nimi).
- Kui printitud sirgjooned on valesti joondatult või printimistulemused ei rahulda teid, reguleerige prindipea asendit. Vt jaotist [Prindipea joondamine](#).



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

Põhjalik juhend Tõrkeotsing

Sisukord > Arvutist printimine > Veebilehtede printimine (Easy-WebPrint EX-i abil)

C054

Veebilehtede printimine (Easy-WebPrint EX-i abil)

Easy-WebPrint EX võimaldab kiiret ja hõlpsat Internet Exploreri veebilehtede printimist.

Saate printida veebilehti nii, et nende suurus muudetakse paberi ääreaala vähendamata automaatselt paberile sobivaks, või kuvada eelvaate ning valida printimiseks soovitud veebilehed.

Easy-WebPrint EX vajab Internet Explorer 7-t või uuemat.

Tähtis!

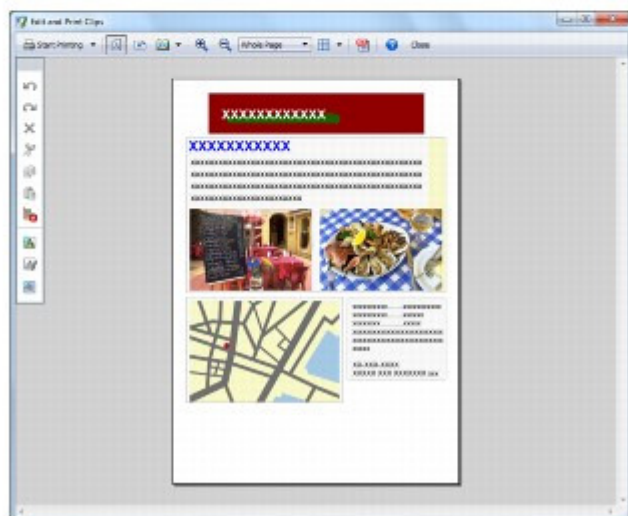
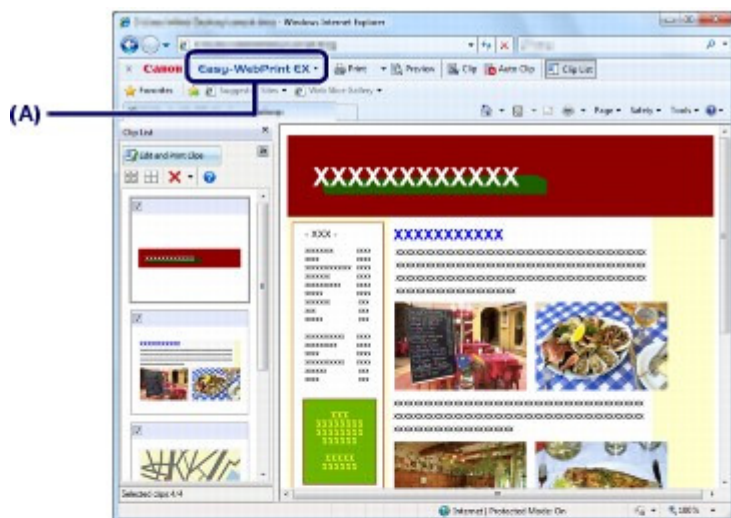
- Teise isiku autoriõigusega kaitstud töö kopeerimine või redigeerimine (välja arvatud isiklikuks kasutuseks, kodus kasutamiseks või muud tüüpi kasutuseks, mis jääb autoriõigusega määratletud piiratud raamidesse) ilma autoriõiguse omaniku loata on ebaseaduslik. Lisaks võib inimestest tehtud fotode kopeerimine või redigeerimine rikkuda portreeõigusi.

Märkus

- Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimise või käivitamise kohta teabe saamiseks vt jaotist [Easy-WebPrint EX](#).

Näiteks väljalõikefunktsioon võimaldab teil veebilehtedest soovitud osad välja lõigata ning neid printimiseks redigeerida.

Teavet Easy-WebPrint EX-i kasutamise kohta vt veebispikrist. Klõpsake tegumiribal valikul Easy-WebPrint EX (A) ja valige seejärel rippmenüüst veebispikri vaatamiseks Help.





 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

Põhjalik juhend Törkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > Erinevate tarkvararakenduste käivitamine

C055

Erinevate tarkvararakenduste käivitamine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse rakendust Solution Menu EX, mille abil saate käivitada seadmega kaasas olevaid tarkvararakendusi. Kaasas on samuti teave Easy-WebPrint EX-i kohta, mis on veebilehtede printimise tarkvararakendus.

■ Solution Menu EX

Solution Menu EX on tarkvararakendus, mis võimaldab teile kiiret juurdepääsu muudele seadmega kaasas olevatele tarkvararakendustele, juhenditele ja veebipõhisele tooteteabele.

Märkus

- Installeerige Solution Menu EX, elektrooniline juhend või muud kaasas olevad tarkvararakendused, mida soovite kasutada, *seadistamise CD-ROM-ilt (Setup CD-ROM)*, kui need on installimata või on desinstallitud. Nende installimiseks valige need sättest Custom Install.

Menüüsid kuvatakse Solution Menu EX-i põhikuva menüükategooria alas. Klõpsake menüükategooria ala menüüd selles menüüs võimalike funktsioonide kuvamiseks põhikuva funktsiooniikoonide alas. Põhikuval kuvatud ikoonide või menüüde tüübid ja arv võivad olenevalt teie seadmest ja piirkonnast erineda.

* Allolev ekraanipilt kehtib Windows 7 kohta.



- (A) Põhikuva
- (B) Funktsiooniikoonide ala
- (C) Menüükategooria ala
- (D) Töölaua lisaseade
- (E) Kiirvaliku menüü, millele saate lisada tihti kasutatavate funktsioonide ikoone
- (F) Lisaseadme ikoon, mis võimaldab teil kuvada põhikuva, kuvada või peita kiirvalikute menüüd jne.

Photo Print

Digikaamera tehtud fotode printimine.

Use Scanner

Fotode või dokumentide skannimine.

Canon Web Service

Veebilehelt sisu või materjalide printimiseks allalaadimine.

Help & Settings

Solution Menu EX-i veebispikri või seadme elektroonilise juhendi vaatamine. Solution Menu EX-i või seadme seadistamine.

Start Application

Kaasas olevate tarkvararakenduste, näiteks Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i ja My Printeri käivitamine.

Rakenduse My Printer abil saate kuvada printeridraiveri seadistusakna ja saada teavet tegevuste kohta, mis on seadme kasutamisel tekkivate häirete korral vajalikud.

Online Shopping

Veebilehelt tarvikute, näiteks tindi ostmine.

Information

Seadme kohta kasuliku teabe otsimine.

 Märkus

- Veebilehelt kasuliku teabe jm hankimiseks peab arvuti olema Internetiga ühendatud.
- Teavet Solution Menu EX-i kasutamise kohta vt veebispikrist. Valige menüü Help & Settings, klõpsake seejärel veebispikri vaatamiseks  (Solution Menu EX's Help).

● Tarkvararakenduste käivitamine Solution Menu EX-ist

Solution Menu EX-ist on võimalik käivitada tarkvararakendusi ning samuti saada otsene juurdepääs tarkvararakenduse funktsioonile.

Järgmised toimingud on vajalikud Solution Menu EX-i käivitamiseks ja näiteks ühe Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i funktsiooni, Photo Print valimiseks.

1. Käivitage Solution Menu EX.

Tehte topeltklõps töölaua ikoonil  (Solution Menu EX).



Klõpsake siia: [Solution Menu EX](#)

**Märkus**

- Kui vaikesätet ei ole muudetud, siis käivitub Solution Menu EX arvuti käivitamisel automaatselt.
- Käivitamaks Solution Menu EX-i menüüst Start valige Kõik programmid (All Programs), Canon Utilities, Solution Menu EX, seejärel Solution Menu EX.
- Kui Solution Menu EX-i põhikuva ei ilmu pärast Solution Menu EX-i käivitamist, siis paremklõpsake  (lisaseadme ikoon) ja valige Show Main Screen.

2. Valige selle tarkvararakenduse funktsioon, mida soovite käivitada.

(1) Klõpsake menüüd Photo Print.

(2) Klõpsake  (Photo Print).

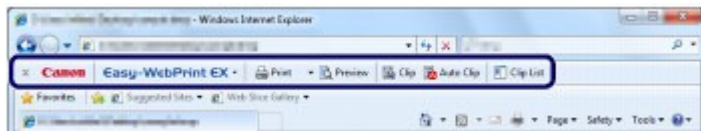
Easy-PhotoPrint EX käivitatakse ja ilmub menüü Photo Print toimingute aken.

**Märkus**

- Lisaks fotode printimisele on saadaval albumite, kalendrite ja muude fotoelementide loomise funktsioonid.
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i toimingute ja funktsioonide kohta täpsema teabe saamiseks vt jaotist [Fotode printimine \(Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i abil\)](#).

■ Easy-WebPrint EX

Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimisel lisatakse teie Internet Exploreri kuvale tööriistariba. Tööriistariba on saadaval alati, kui Internet Explorer töötab.



Märkus

Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimine

- Kui Easy-WebPrint EX ei ole installitud, siis võib Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimisjuhend avaneda tegumiriba teavitusalal.
Klõpsake Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimiseks kuvatud juhendil ning jälgige ekraanil olevaid juhiseid.
- Võite installida Easy-WebPrint EX-i ka *seadistamise CD-ROM-ilt (Setup CD-ROM)* .
Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimiseks valige Easy-WebPrint EX jaotisest Custom Install.
- Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimiseks teie arvutile on vaja Internet Explorer 7 või selle hilisemat versiooni ning arvuti peab olema ühendatud Internetiga.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☒ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > Paberi/originaalide lisamine

Paberi/originaalide lisamine

Antud jaotises kirjeldatakse paberite või originaalide tüüpe, mida saate seadmesse lisada, kuidas printimiseks paberit tagasalve lisada ja kuidas originaale kopeerimiseks või skannimiseks seadmesse asetada.

Paberi lisamine

[Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine](#)[Ümbrike lisamine](#)[Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#)[Prindikandjad, mida ei saa kasutada](#)

Originaalide lisamine

[Originaalide lisamine](#)[Lisatavad originaalid](#)[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Törkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) > Paberi lisamine

C073

Paberi lisamine

- ➔ Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine
- ➔ Ümbrike lisamine
- ➔ Kasutatavad prindikandjad
- ➔ Prindikandjad, mida ei saa kasutada

■ Tavalise paberi / fotopaberi lisamine**▶ Tähtis!**

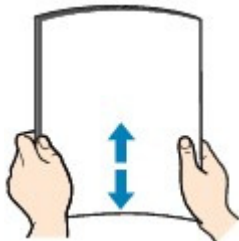
- Kui lõigata tavaline paber prooviprindi jaoks 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli, 101,6 x 203,2 mm / 4 x 8 tolli, 13 x 18 cm / 5 x 7 tolli või 55,0 x 91,0 mm / 2,16 x 3,58 tolli (krediitkaardi) suuruseks, võib see põhjustada paberiummistusi.

📖 Märkus

- Soovitame fotode printimiseks Canon'i originaalfotopaberit.
- Canon'i originaalpaberi kohta üksikasjaliku teabe saamiseks vt jaotist [Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#).
- Võite kasutada tavalist koopiapaberit.
- Selle seadmega kasutatava lehekülje formaadi ja paberi kaalu kohta teabe saamiseks vaadake jaotist [Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#).

1. Valmistage paber ette.

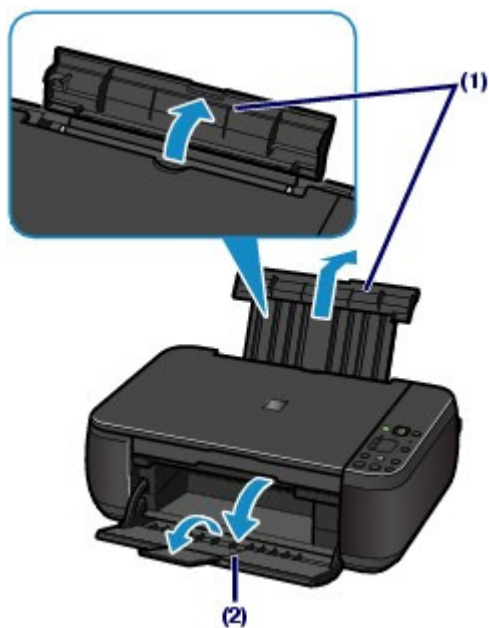
Joondage paberi ääred. Siluge paberit, kui see on kooldunud.

**📖 Märkus**

- Enne paberipaki seadmesse asetamist tasandage selle servad. Joondamata servadega paberipakk võib seadmes paberiummistuse põhjustada.
- Kui paber on kooldunud, hoidke kooldunud nurkadest kinni ja painutage neid ettevaatlikult vastassuunas, kuni paber on ühetasane.
- Üksikasju kooldunud paberi silumise kohta vaadake jaotisest [Törkeotsing](#) elektroonilises juhendis [Põhjalik juhend](#).

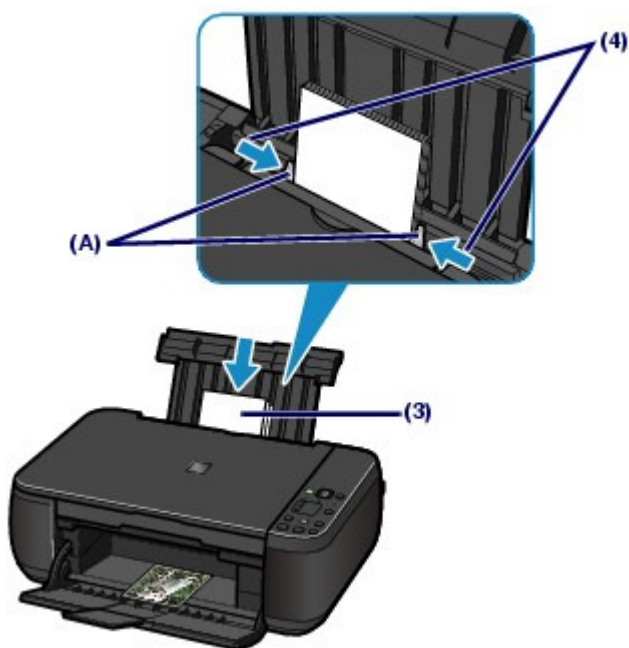
2. Lisage paberit.

- (1) Avage paberitugi, tõstke see üles ja kallutage seejärel tahapoole.
- (2) Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.



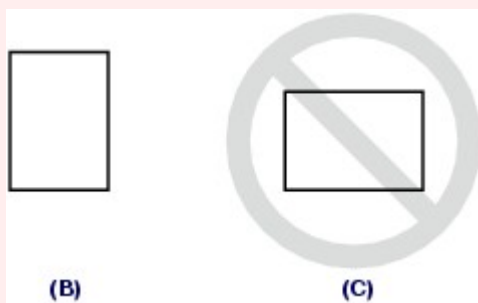
(3) Paberijuhikute avamiseks (A) libistage neid ja asetage paber paberialuse keskele PRINDITAVA POOLEGA ÜLESPOOLE.

(4) Libistage paberijuhikud (A) mõlemale poole paberipaki külgi.
Ärge libistage paberijuhikuid liiga tugevalt. Paber ei pruugi õigesti seadmesse asetuda.



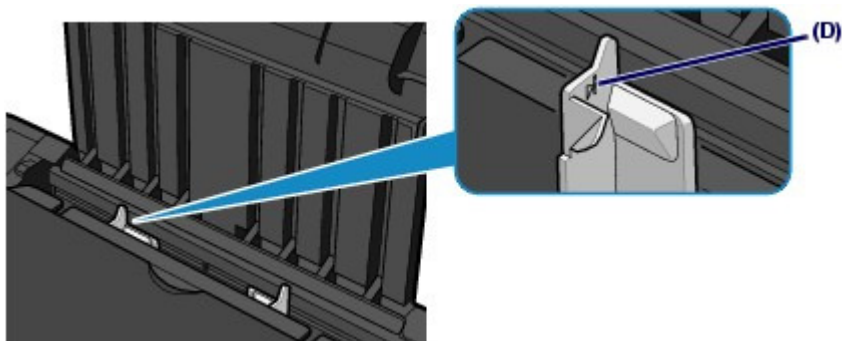
► Tähtis!

- Asetage paber seadmesse alati vertikaalsuunas (B). Paberi asetamine seadmesse horisontaalsuunas (C) võib põhjustada paberiummistuse.



 Märkus

- Ärge asetage seadmesse rohkem paberit kui laadimispiiriga (D) lubatud.

 **Märkus**

- Paberi söötmisel võib seade teha töömüra.

Pärast paberi lisamist

- Kopeerimisel valige seadme juhtpaneeli abil seadmesse asetatud paberi vorming ja tüüp.
Vt jaotist [Kopeerimine](#).
- Kui prindite arvutiga, valige seadmesse asetatud paberi suurus ja tüüp printeridraiveri seadetest Printer Paper Size ja Media Type.
Vt jaotist [Dokumentide printimine](#).

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

Põhjalik juhend Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) > [Paberi lisamine](#) > Ümbrike lisamine

C074

■ Ümbrike lisamine

Saate printida ümbrike nii suurusega European DL kui ka US #10.

Õigete printeridraiveri sätete puhul pööratakse aadressi automaatselt ning printitakse vastavalt ümbriku söödusuunale.

▶ Tähtis!

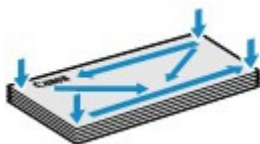
- Ümbrikele saab printida vaid arvutist.
- Ärge kasutage järgmisi ümbrikke. Need võivad seadme ummistada või seade võib tõrkuma hakata.
 - Reljeefse või töödeldud pinnaga ümbrikud
 - Topeltklapi (või kleebiseklapiga) ümbrikud
 - Ümbrikud, mille kleebitavad kinnitusklapid on juba niisutatud ja kleepuvad

📖 Märkus

- Ümbrikele printides kuvatakse teade selle kohta, kuidas ümbrikke asetada. Seda teadet ei kuvata järgmisel korral, kui märgistate märkeruudu Do not show this message again.

1. Valmistage ümbrikud ette.

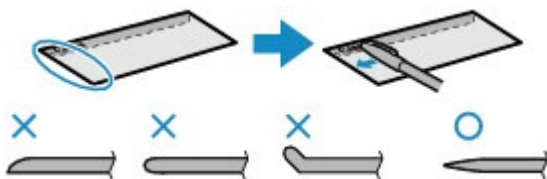
- Ümbrike silumiseks vajutage alla nende kõik neli nurka ja servad.



- Kui ümbrikud on kooldunud, hoidke vastasnurkadest kinni ning painutage neid ettevaatlikult vastassuunas.



- Kui ümbrikuklapi nurk on kokku murtud, siluge seda.
- Vajutage eesmine serv sulepea abil sisestamise suunas alla ja muutke serv teravamaks.



Ülatoodud joonistel on näidatud ümbriku eesmist serva külgvaates.

▶ Tähtis!

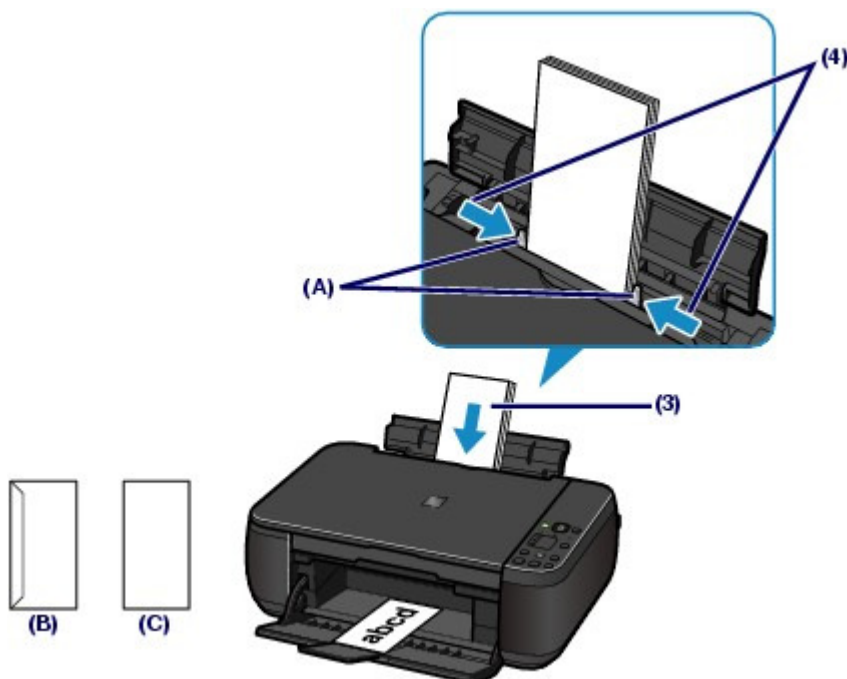
- Kui ümbrikud pole tasased või kui nende servad pole joondatud, võivad nad seadme ummistada. Veenduge, et mitte ükski kõverus ega korts ei ületaks 3 mm / 0,1 tolli.

2. Lisage ümbrikud.

- (1) Avage paberitugi.
Ärge tõstke paberituge.



- (2) Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
- (3) Paberijuhikute avamiseks (A) libistage neid ja asetage ümbrikud paberialuse keskele, AADRESSIKÜLJEGA ÜLESPOOLE.
- Ümbriku allavolditud klapp jääb allapoole vasakule küljele.
- Korraga võib seadmesse lisada kuni 10 ümbrikku.
- (4) Libistage paberijuhikud (A) mõlemale poole ümbriku külgi.
- Ärge libistage paberijuhikuid liiga tugevalt. Ümbrikud ei pruugi olla õigesti söödetud.

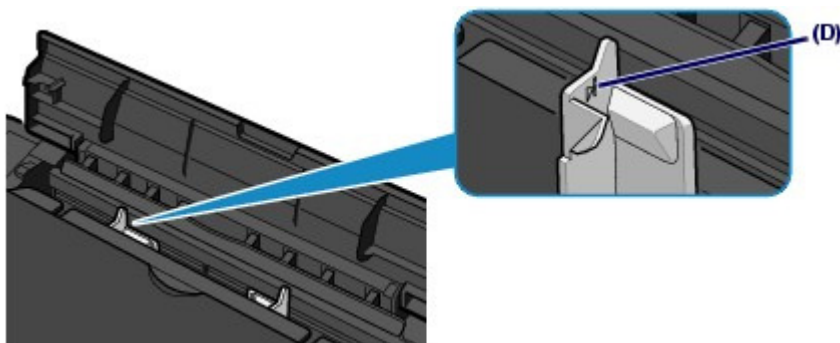


(B) Tagakülg

(C) Aadressikülg

Märkus

- Ärge asetage ümbrikke seadmesse rohkem kui laadimispiiriga (D) lubatud.



3. Määrake printeridraiveri sätteid.

- (1) Valige Envelope jaotises Commonly Used Settings lehe Quick Setup all.

(2) Valige DL Env. või Comm. Env. #10 aknas Envelope Size Setting.

(3) Valige suvandis Orientation väärtus Landscape.

Tähtis!

- Kui te ei määra ümbriku suurust või asendit õigesti, siis printitakse aadress tagurpidi või 90-kraadise nurga all.

Märkus

- Ümbrike sõotmisel võib seade teha töömüra.
- Kui printitulemus on tagurpidi, avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken, valige Envelope jaotises Commonly Used Settings ning seejärel valige märkeruut Rotate 180 degrees jaotises Additional Features.
- Vaadake täpsemat teavet printeridraiveri sätete kohta jaotisest [Dokumentide printimine](#).



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) > [Paberi lisamine](#) > Kasutatavad prindikandjad

C075

■ Kasutatavad prindikandjad

Parimate prinditulemuste saavutamiseks valige printimiseks sobiv paber. Canon pakub printimisrõõmu kindlustamiseks erinevaid paberitüüpe, nagu kleebspaberid, aga ka foto- või dokumendipaberid.

Soovitame oluliste fotode printimiseks kasutada Canoni originaalpaberit.

● Kandja tüübid

Kaubandusvõrgus saadaolevad paberid

● Tavaline paber (k.a ümbertöödeldud paber)

- Prindikandja seaded -

Prindidraiver: Plain Paper

- Paberi täitepiir -

Tagumine alus: ligikaudu 100 lehte

- Paberi väljastusaluse täitepiir -

Ligikaudu 50 lehte



Märkus

- Võimalik, et sõltuvalt paberi tüübist ja ümbritsevatest tingimustest (liiga kõrge või madal temperatuur ja niiskus) ei ole maksimaalmahus paberi söötmine võimalik. Sellistel puhkudel vähendage korraga seadmesse lisatavate paberite arvu poole võrra (kasutada võib 100%-list ümbertöödeldud paberit).
- Seda paberit saab kasutada koopiategemiseks, kui valite juhtpaneeli nupuga **Paber (Paper)** prindikandja tüübi. Võite valida vaid A4- või Letter-formaadis tavapaberi.

● Ümbrikud

- Prindikandja seaded -

Prindidraiver: Envelope

- Paberi täitepiir -

Tagumine alus: 10 ümbrikku

- Paberi väljastusaluse täitepiir -

Hägustumise ja luitumise ärahoidmiseks soovitame enne pidevat printimist eelnevalt prinditud ümbrik paberi väljastusaluselt eemaldada.

Canoni originaalpaberid

Üksikasjalikud juhised prinditava poole ja paberi käsitlemise kohta leiате paberiga kaasas olevast kasutusjuhendist. Teavet Canoni originaalpaberite saadaolevate lehekülje suuruste kohta leiате meie veebilehelt.



Märkus

- Canoni originaalpaberi mudeli number on näidatud sulgudes.
- Sõltuvalt osturivist või -piirkonnast ei pruugi Canoni originaalpabereid müügil olla. Ameerika Ühendriikides ei müüda paberit mudeli numbri järgi. Ostke paberit nime järgi.

Fotode printimiseks:

● Photo Paper Pro Platinum <PT-101>

- Prindikandja seaded -

Prindidraiver: Photo Paper Pro Platinum

● Läikiv fotopaber „Everyday Use“ <GP-501> *1

- Prindikandja seaded -

Prindidraiver: Glossy Photo Paper

● **Photo Paper Glossy <GP-502>*1****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: Glossy Photo Paper

● **Photo Paper Plus Glossy II <PP-201>*1****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: Photo Paper Plus Glossy II

● **Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss <SG-201>*1****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss

● **Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: Matte Photo Paper

- Paberi täitepiir -

Tagasalv:

10 lehte formaadis A4, Letter / 8,5 tolli x 11 tolli, 13 x 18 cm / 5 tolli x 7 tolli ja 20 x 25 cm / 8 tolli x 10 tolli

20 lehte formaadis 10 x 15 cm / 4 tolli x 6 tolli

- Paberi väljastusaluse täitepiir -

Hägustumise ja luitumise ärahoidmiseks soovitame enne pidevat printimist eelnevalt prinditud leht paberi väljastusaluselt eemaldada.

*1 Seda paberit saab kasutada koopiategemiseks, kui valite juhtpaneeli nupuga **Paber (Paper)** prindikandja tüübi. Saate valida ainult A4- või Letter-vormingus fotopaberi ning 10 x 15 cm / 4 x 6 tolli suuruse fotopaberi.

**Märkus**

- Paberi lisamisel pakina võib prinditav külg saada sõotmisel märgistatud või lehtede sissesõõtmine ei pruugi olla korrektne. Sel juhul laadige üks leht korraga (v.a paberiga Matte Photo Paper <MP-101>).

Äridokumentide printimiseks:● **High Resolution Paper<HR-101N>****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: High Resolution Paper

- Paberi täitepiir -

Tagumine alus: 80 lehte

- Paberi väljastusaluse täitepiir -

50 lehte

Isiklike väljaprintide loomiseks:● **T-Shirt Transfers <TR-301>****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: T-Shirt Transfers

● **Photo Stickers <PS-101>****- Prindikandja seaded -**

Prindidraiver: Glossy Photo Paper

- Paberi täitepiir -

Tagumine alus: 1 leht

- Paberi väljastusaluse täitepiir -

Hägustumise ja luitumise ärahoidmiseks soovitame enne pidevat printimist eelnevalt prinditud leht paberi väljastusaluselt eemaldada.

**Märkus**

- Saate prindisätteid *seadistamise CD-ROM-il (Setup CD-ROM)* oleva rakenduse Easy-PhotoPrint EX abil hõlpsasti määrata. Installige see oma arvutile.

● Lehekülje suurused

Saate kasutada järgmisi lehekülje suurusi.

Standardsuurused:

- Letter (215,9 x 279,4 mm / 8,50 x 11,00 tolli)
- Legal (215,9 x 355,6 mm / 8,50 x 14,00 tolli)
- A5 (148,0 x 210,0 mm / 5,83 x 8,27 tolli)
- A4 (210,0 x 297,0 mm / 8,27 x 11,69 tolli)
- B5 (182,0 x 257,0 mm / 7,17 x 10,12 tolli)
- 4" x 6" (10 x 15 cm / 4,00 x 6,00 tolli)
- 4" x 8" (101,6 x 203,2 mm / 4,00 x 8,00 tolli)
- 5" x 7" (13 x 18 cm / 5,00 x 7,00 tolli)
- 8" x 10" (20 x 25 cm / 8,00 x 10,00 tolli)
- L (89,0 x 127,0 mm / 3,50 x 5,00 tolli)
- 2L (127,0 x 178,0 mm / 5,00 x 7,01 tolli)
- Hagaki (100,0 x 148,0 mm / 3,94 x 5,83 tolli)
- Hagaki 2 (200,0 x 148,0 mm / 7,87 x 5,83 tolli)
- Tavaline Envelope #10 (Comm. Env. #10) (104,6 x 241,3 mm / 4,12 x 9,50 tolli)
- DL Env. (110,0 x 220,0 mm / 4,33 x 8,66 tolli)
- Choukei 3 (120,0 x 235,0 mm / 4,72 x 9,25 tolli)
- Choukei 4 (90,0 x 205,0 mm / 3,54 x 8,07 tolli)
- Youkei 4 (105,0 x 235,0 mm / 4,13 x 9,25 tolli)
- Youkei 6 (98,0 x 190,0 mm / 3,86 x 7,48 tolli)
- Kaart (Card) (55,0 x 91,0 mm / 2,16 x 3,58 tolli)
- Lai (Wide) (101,6 x 180,6 mm / 4,00 x 7,10 tolli)

Mittestandardised suurused:

Saate määrata ka paberi kohandatud suuruse järgmises vahemikus:

- Minimaalne suurus: 55,0 x 91,0 mm / 2,17 x 3,58 tolli
- Maksimaalne suurus: 215,9 x 676,0 mm / 8,50 x 26,61 tolli

● Paberi kaal

17 kuni 28 naela / 64 kuni 105 g/m² (välja arvatud Canoni originaalpaber)

Ärge kasutage raskemat või kergemat paberit (v.a Canoni originaalpaber), kuna see võib seadmesse kinni jääda.

● Märkused paberi hoiustamise kohta

- Võtke enne printimist pakist välja ainult vajalik hulk paberit.
- Kui te ei prindi, pange kasutamata paber kortsumise vältimiseks pakki tagasi ning hoidke tasasel pinnal. Samuti hoidke seda kuumuse, niiskuse ja otsese päikesevalguse eest.

● Märkused ääristeta kogu lehte katvaks printimiseks kasutatava paberi kohta

- Terve lehekülje ääristeta printimise ajal ei ole võimalik kasutada kahepoolset printimist.
- Te ei saa kogu lehte katvaks ääristeta printimiseks kasutada A5-, B5- ega Legal-vormingus paberit ega ümbrikke.
- Kui prindite arvutist, saate kogu lehte katvaks ääristeta printimiseks kasutada ainult tavapaberit. Kuid see võib tagajärjeks tuua halvema prindikvaliteedi. Soovitame tavapaberit kasutada

prooviprintimiseks.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

C076

■ Prindikandjad, mida ei saa kasutada

Ärge kasutage järgmist tüüpi paberit. Sellise paberi kasutamisel ei jää tulemus rahuldav ning lisaks võib selle tagajärjel masin ummistuda või rikki minna.

- Kokkumurtud, kooldunud või kortsus paber
- Niiske paber
- Liiga õhuke paber (kaalub vähem kui 17 naela / 64 g/m²)
- Liiga paks paber (kaalub rohkem kui 28 naela / 105 g/m², välja arvatud Canoni originaalpaber)
- Paber, mis on postkaardist õhem, kaasa arvatud väiksemaks lõigatud tavaline või märkmepaber (kui prindite A5-vormingust väiksemale paberile)
- Piltpostkaardid
- Postkaardid, millele on kleebitud fotosid või kleepse
- Topeltklapi (või kleebiseklapiga) ümbrikud
- Reljeefse või töödeldud pinnaga ümbrikud
- Ümbrikud, mille kleebitavad kinnitusklapid on juba niisutatud ja kleepuvad
- Mis tahes tüüpi perforatsiooniga paber
- Paber, mis pole nelinurkne
- Kokku liimitud või kokku klammerdatud paber
- Liimiga paber
- Sätendava puruga jms kaunistatud paber.

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) > Originaalide lisamine

C077

Originaalide lisamine[➔ Originaalide lisamine](#)[➔ Lisatavad originaalid](#)**■ Originaalide lisamine**

Asetage originaalid, mida soovite kopeerida või skannida, klaasplaadile.

▶ Tähtis!

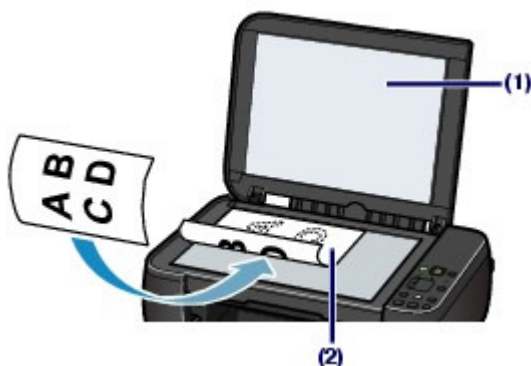
- Originaali seadmesse asetamise järel sulgege kindlasti dokumendikaas, enne kui alustate kopeerimist või skannimist.
- Kui skannite arvutist tarkvararakenduse abil, peate originaali seadmesse asetama teisiti. Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

1. Asetage originaal kopeerimisalusele.**(1) Avage dokumendikaas.****▶ Tähtis!**

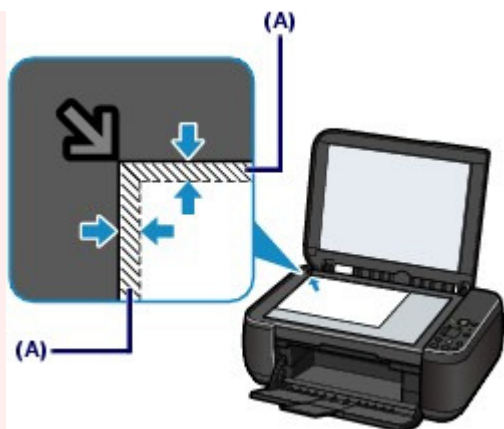
- Ärge asetage dokumendikaanele ühtegi eset. See kukub dokumendikaane avamisel paberialusele ning põhjustab seadme häireid.

(2) Asetage originaal kopeerimisalusele nii, et SKANNITAV KÜLG JÄÄB ALLAPOOLE.

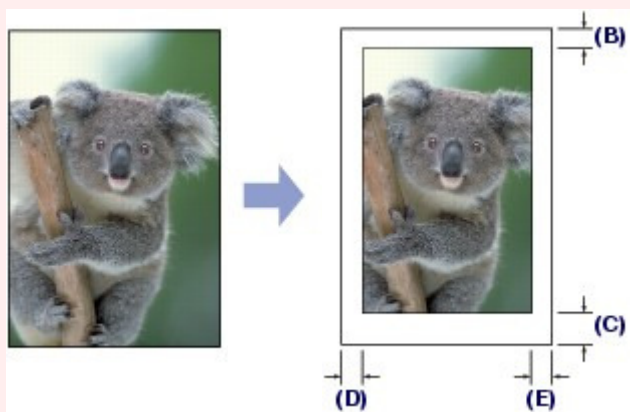
Joondage originaali nurk joondustähisega .

**▶ Tähtis!**

- Toimige kindlasti järgmiste juhiste järgi, kui asetate dokumendi klaasplaadile.
 - Ärge asetage klaasplaadile objekte, mis on raskemad kui 4,4 naela / 2,0 kg.
 - Ärge vajutage ega pange originaali peale raskusi, mille surve ületab 4,4 naela / 2,0 kg. Eespool toodud juhiste eiramine võib tekitada häireid skanneri töös ning kopeerimisalus võib puruneda.
- Seade ei saa skannida varjutatud piirkonda (A) (1 mm / 0,04 tolli kopeerimisaluse servadest).



- Parima printikvaliteedi saamiseks võimaldab seade printikandja serva veerist muuta. Tegelik printiala on ala, mis jääb veeriste vahele.



- (B) 3,0 mm / 0,12 tolli
- (C) 5,0 mm / 0,20 tolli
- (D) 3,4 mm / 0,13 tolli (6,4 mm / 0,25 tolli paberiformaadile Letter ja Legal)
- (E) 3,4 mm / 0,13 tolli (6,3 mm / 0,25 tolli paberiformaadile Letter ja Legal)

2. Sulgege ettevaatlikult dokumendikaas.



[Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☒ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) > [Originaalide lisamine](#) > Lisatavad originaalid

C079

■ Lisatavad originaalid

Saate kopeerida või skannida järgmisi originaale.

Originaalide tüübid

Tekstidokument, ajakiri või ajaleht

Prinditud foto, pildikaart, ärikaart või plaat (BD/DVD/CD jne)

Suurus (L x P)

Max 216 x 297 mm / 8,5 x 11,7 tolli

**Märkus**

- Saate dokumendiklaasile asetada mahuka originaali (näiteks raamatu), eemaldades seadmelt dokumendikaane.
Täpsemat teavet dokumendikaane eemaldamise või kinnitamise kohta vaadake elektroonilisest kasutusjuhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☒ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > Regulaarne hooldus

Regulaarne hooldus

See jaotis kirjeldab, kuidas puhastada seadet tuhmade prinditulemuste puhul, kuidas vahetada välja tühjaks saanud FINE-kassette või kuidas käituda paberi söötmisel tekkivate probleemide puhul.

Print on hele või värvitoonid valed

[Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine](#)[Pihustite kontrollmusteri uurimine](#)[Prindipea puhastamine](#)[Prindipea sügavpuhastus](#)[Prindipea joondamine](#)

FINE-kasseti vahetamine

[Vahetamise toiming](#)[Tindi oleku kontrollimine](#)

Seadme puhastamine

[Paberisööterulliku puhastamine](#)[Seadme sisemuse puhastamine \(põhjaplaadi puhastamine\)](#)[Seadme sisemuses asuvate eenduvate osade puhastamine](#)[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend
☐ Põhjalik juhend
 ☐ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > Print on hele või värvitoonid valed

C093

Print on hele või värvitoonid valed

Kui prinditulemus muutub hägusaks või värve ei prindita õigesti, siis on prindipea pihustid (FINE-kassetid) arvatavasti ummistunud. Pihustite seisundi kontrollimiseks printige allkirjeldatud viisil pihusti kontrollmuster ja seejärel puhastage prindipead.

Kui prinditud sirgjooned on valesti joondatud või prinditulemus teid mingil muul põhjusel ei rahulda, muutke prindipea asendit.

Tähtis!

- Ärge loputage või pühkige FINE-kassette. See võib FINE-kassette rikkuda.

Märkus**Enne hooldamist**

- Kontrollige, kas FINE-kassetti jääb tinti.
Vt jaotist [Tindi oleku kontrollimine](#).
- Kontrollige, kas FINE-kassetid on õigesti paigaldatud.
Vt jaotist [Vahetamise toiming](#).
- Kontrollige, kas FINE-kassetide põhja all olev oranž kaitselint on eemaldatud.
Vt jaotist [Vahetamise toiming](#).
- Kui märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** süttib või vilgub oranžilt, siis vaadake jaotist „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist: *Põhjalik juhend*.
- Printeridraiveri printimiskvaliteedi seadistustes printimiskvaliteedi tõstmine võib parandada printimistulemust.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

- Kui prinditulemus on hägune või ebaühtlane:

1. samm

Vt jaotist [Pihustite kontrollmuster printimine](#).
Vt jaotist [Pihustite kontrollmuster uurimine](#).

Kui mustris on puuduvaid jooni või horisontaalsed valged triibud:

2. samm

Vt jaotist [Prindipea puhastamine](#).

Kui probleem ei lahene ka prindipea kahekordse puhastamise järel:

3. samm

Vt jaotist [Prindipea sügavpuhastus](#).

Kui probleem ei lahene, lülitage aparaat välja ja viige 24 tunni pärast läbi veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastus.

Kui probleem on ikka lahendamata

4. samm

Vt jaotist [FINE-kasseti vahetamine](#).

Pärast prindipea puhastamist printige pihustite kontrollmuster ja uurige seda.



Märkus

- Kui probleem ei ole pärast FINE-kasseti asendamist ikka veel lahenenud, siis pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

- Kui prinditulemused on ebaühtlased, näiteks sirgjooned on valesti joondatud:

Vt jaotist [Prindipea joondamine](#).



Märkus

- Hooldustöid saate teha ka oma arvutist.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend**Põhjalik juhend** **Tõrkeotsing**[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#) > Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine

C094

■ Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine

Et kontrollida tindi väljutamist prindipeast, printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

** Märkus**

- Kui järelejäänud tinditase on madal, ei prindita pihustite kontrollmusterit õigesti. Vahetage vähese tindiga FINE-kassett välja.
Vt jaotist [FINE-kasseti vahetamine](#).

Teil läheb vaja A4- või Letter-formaadis tavalise paberi lehte

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.
2. Asetage A4- või Letter-formaadis tavapaberi leht tagasalve.
3. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
4. Printige pihustite kontrollmuster.
(1) Vajutage nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), et kuvada **A**.



- (2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.
Prinditakse pihustite kontrollmuster.

5. Uurige pihustite kontrollmusterit.
Vt jaotist [Pihustite kontrollmusteri uurimine](#).

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

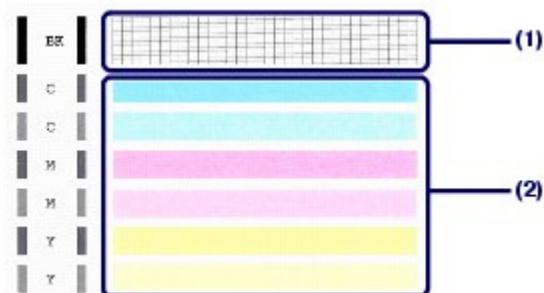
Põhijuhend**Põhjalik juhend** **Törkeotsing**[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#) > Pihustite kontrollmusteri uurimine

C095

■ Pihustite kontrollmusteri uurimine

Uurige pihustite kontrollmusterit ja puhastage vajadusel prindipead.

1. Kontrollige, ega mustris (1) ei ole puuduvaid jooni ning ega mustris (2) ei ole horisontaalseid valgeid triipe.



- (1) Kontrollige, kas mustris puuduvad read.

Kui jah, siis on puhastamine vajalik.

Vt jaotist [Prindipea puhastamine](#).



(A) Hea

(B) Halb (jooned puuduvad)

- (2) Kontrollige, ega selles mustris ei ole horisontaalseid valgeid triipe.

Kui jah, siis on puhastamine vajalik.

Vt jaotist [Prindipea puhastamine](#).



(A) Hea

(B) Halb (esinevad horisontaalsed valged jooned)



[Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#) > Prindipea puhastamine

C096

■ Prindipea puhastamine

Puhastage prindipead, kui pihustite kontrollmusteril on osa jooni puudu või paberil on horisontaalsed valged triibud. Taoline puhastamine eemaldab pihustite ummistused ning taastab prindipea töökindluse. Prindipea puhastamine kulutab tinti, seetõttu puhastage prindipead ainult vajadusel.

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.

2. Puhastage prindipead.

(1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht **H**.



(2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

Seade hakkab prindipead puhastama.

Ärge tehke midagi muud, enne kui prindipea puhastamine on lõpule jõudnud. Selleks kulub umbes 1 kuni 2 minutit.

3. Kontrollige prindipea seisundit.

Kui puhastamine on lõpetatud, siis naaseb LED kopeerimise ooterežiimile.

Prindipea seisundi kontrollimiseks printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Vt jaotist [Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine](#).



Märkus

- Kui probleem ei lahene ka prindipea kahekordse puhastamise järel, proovige prindipea sügavpuhastust.

Vt jaotist [Prindipea sügavpuhastus](#).



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#) > Prindipea sügavpuhastus

C097

■ Prindipea sügavpuhastus

Kui tavaline prindipea puhastamine prindikvaliteeti ei paranda, proovige prindipea sügavpuhastust. Prindipea sügavpuhastus kulutab standardsest prindipea puhastamisest enam tinti, seetõttu tehke seda ainult vajadusel.

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.

2. Viige läbi prindipea sügavpuhastus.

(1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht **y**.



(2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

Prindipea sügavpuhastus algab.

Ärge tehke midagi muud, enne kui prindipea sügavpuhastamine on lõpule jõudnud. Selleks kulub umbes 2 minutit.

3. Kontrollige prindipea seisundit.

Kui sügavpuhastus on lõpetatud, naaseb LED kopeerimise ooterežiimile.

Prindipea seisundi kontrollimiseks printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Vt jaotist [Pihustite kontrollmusteri printimine](#).

Kui probleem ei lahene, lülitage aparaat välja ja viige 24 tunni pärast läbi veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastus.

Kui probleem ei lahene ka nüüd, siis vahetage FINE-kassett uue vastu.

Vt jaotist [FINE-kasseti vahetamine](#).

Kui probleem ei ole pärast FINE-kasseti asendamist ikka veel lahenenud, siis pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#) > Prindipea joondamine

C098

■ Prindipea joondamine

Kui prinditud sirgjooned on valesti joondatud või printimistulemus teid mingil muul põhjusel ei rahulda, muutke prindipea asendit.

**Märkus**

- Kui alles on jäänud liiga vähe tinti, ei prindita prindipea joondusmustrit õigesti. Vahetage vähese tindiga FINE-kassett välja.
Vt jaotist [FINE-kasseti vahetamine](#).

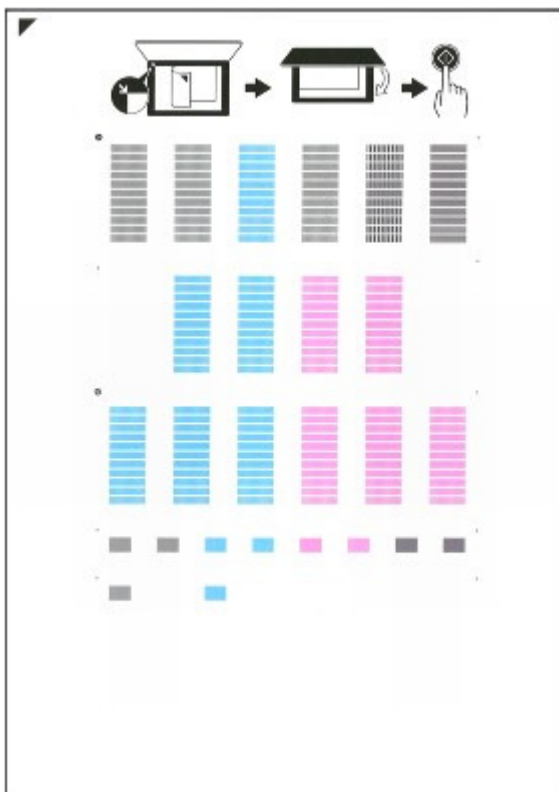
Teil läheb vaja ühte A4- või Letter-formaadis tavalise paberi lehte (k.a ümbertöödeldud paber)*

* Kasutage kindlasti valget ja mõlemalt poolt puhast paberit.

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.
2. Asetage A4- või Letter-formaadis tavapaberi leht tagasalve.
3. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
4. Printige prindipea joondusmuster.
 - (1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht **u** (väike „u“).



- (2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** .
Prinditakse prindipea joondusmuster.



▶ Tähtis!

- Ärge puutuge prindipea joondusmusteri lehele printitud osa.
- Vaadake hoolikalt, et prindipea joondusleht ei määduks. Lehe määrdumisel või kortsumisel ei pruugita seda õigesti skannida.

5. Skannige prindipea asendi kohandamiseks prindipea joonduslehte.

(1) Asetage prindipea joondusleht klaasplaadile.

Asetage prindipea joondusleht nii, et PRINDITUD KÜLG JÄÄB ALLAPOOLE, ning joondage lehe ülemises vasakus nurgas asuv märg  joondustähisega .



(2) Sulgege õrnalt dokumendikaas, veenduge, et LED-il kuvataks **U** (suur „U“) ning seejärel vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.



Seade hakkab prindipea joonduslehte skannima ning prindipea asendit kohandatakse automaatselt.

Kui prindipea asendi korrigeerimine on lõpetatud, siis naaseb LED kopeerimise ooterežiimile. Eemaldage prindipea joondusleht kopeerimisaluselt.



Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage prindipea joonduslehte enne, kui prindipea kohandamine on lõpetatud.
- Kui prindipea asendi kohandamine ei õnnestunud, siis ilmub LED-il veakood. Vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** vea kõrvaldamiseks ja vaadake seejärel jaotist „[Törkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilises juhendis *Põhjalik juhend*.



Märkus

- Kui prinditulemused ei ole pärast prindipea eespool kirjeldatud viisil reguleerimist ikka veel rahuldavad, siis reguleerige prindipea asendit arvutist käsitsi. Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Praeguse prindipea asendi kohandamise väärtuste printimiseks ja kontrollimiseks kuvage LED-il **L** ning vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või **Värvirežiim (Color)**.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

Põhjalik juhend Törkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > FINE-kasseti vahetamine

C091

FINE-kasseti vahetamine

Kui esineb alles jäänud tindi hoiatusi või tõrkeid, ilmub LED-näidikule tõrkekood, mis annab teile tõrke kohta teavet.

Vt elektroonilise juhendi *Põhjalik juhend* peatüki „[Törkeotsing](#)“ jaotist „LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood“ ning käituge vastavalt olukorrale.

Märkus

- Ühilduvate FINE-kassettide kohta teabe saamiseks vaadake kasutusjuhendi trükiversiooni: *Alustamise juhend*.

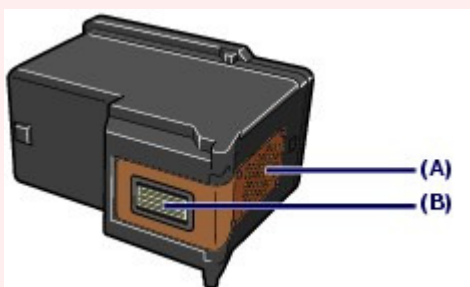
Vahetamise toiming

Kui peate vahetama FINE-kassette, toimige järgmiselt.

Tähtis!

FINE-kassettide käsitlemine

- Ärge puutuge FINE-kasseti elektriklemme (A) või prindipea pihusteid (B). Kui seda puudutate, ei pruugi seade enam korralikult printida.



- Seadmest eemaldatud FINE-kassett tuleb kohe uuega asendada. Ärge jätke aparati ilma FINE-kassettideta seisma.
- Kasutage vahetamiseks uut FINE-kassetti. Kasutatud FINE-kassettide paigaldamine võib põhjustada tindipihustite ummistumist.
Lisaks sellele ei saa kasutatud kasseti puhul aparaat teid teavitada kasseti õigeaegsest väljavahetamisest.
- Kui FINE-kassett on juba paigaldatud, ei tohi seda seadmest eemaldada ega niisama vedelema jätta. See põhjustab FINE-kasseti kuivamist ning seade ei pruugi selle tagasi paigaldamisel korralikult töötada. Optimaalse prindikvaliteedi säilitamiseks kasutage FINE-kassette kuue kuu vältel esimesest kasutuskorrast alates.

Märkus

- Kui FINE-kassett saab tindist tühjaks, siis on võimalik mõnda aega printida kas värvilise või musta FINE-kasseti abil, sõltuvalt sellest, kumba tinti alles jääb. Prindikvaliteet võib võrreldes mõlema kassetiga printimisega kahaneda. Soovitame parima tulemuse saavutamiseks kasutada uusi FINE-kassette.
Kui prindite ainult ühe tindiga, siis jätke teine FINE-kassett ikkagi seadmesse alles. Kui paigaldatud ei ole kas värvilist või musta FINE-kassetti, siis tekib häire ja seade ei saa printida.
Selle sätte konfigureerimise kohta saate teavet elektroonilisest juhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).
- Värvilist tinti võidakse tarbida ka mustvalge dokumendi printimisel või mustvalge printimise määramisel.
Nii värvitinti kui ka musta tinti kasutatakse ka prindipea standardsel ja sügavpuhastamisel, mis võib olla vajalik seadme töövõime säilitamiseks. Kui tint saab otsa, siis vahetage FINE-kassett kohe uue vastu.
Täpsema teabe saamiseks vt [Näpunäited, kuidas seadet kasutada](#).

1. Veenduge, et seade oleks sisse lülitatud, seejärel avage paberi väljastusalus.

2. Tõstke skannimissõlme (kaant) ja hoidke seda seejärel skannimissõlme toega avatuna (C).

FINE-kasseti hoidja liigub vahetamise asendisse.



⚠ Ettevaatust

- Ärge hoidke FINE-kasseti hoidikust kinni, et seda jõuga peatada või liigutada. Ärge puudutage FINE-kasseti hoidikut, enne kui see on täielikult peatunud.

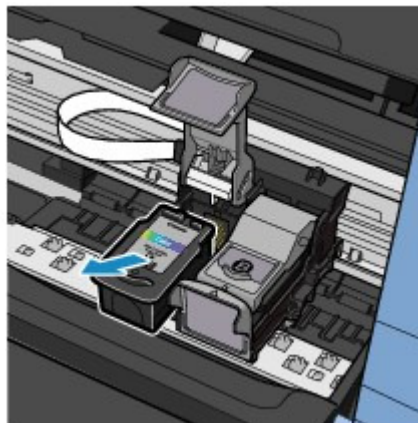
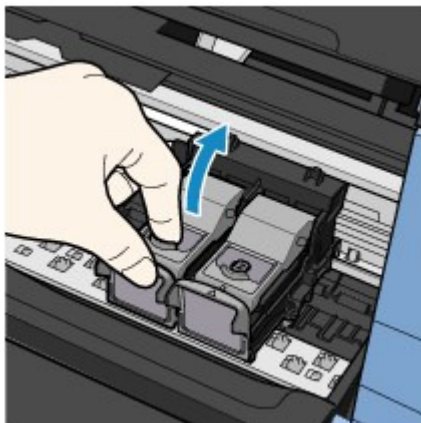
▶ Tähtis!

- Seadme sisemus võib olla tindist määrdunud. Olge ettevaatlik, et te FINE-kassetti vahetades oma käsi või riideid ei määriks. Saate kuiva salvrätiku või muu taolise vahendiga tindid hõlpsasti seadme seest ära pühkida.
Täpsemaid juhiseid puhastamise kohta vaadake kasutusjuhendist: *Alustamise juhend*.
- Ärge asetage dokumendikaanele ühtegi eset. See kukub dokumendikaane avamisel paberilusele ning põhjustab seadme häireid.
- Skannimisseadme (kaas) avage nii, et dokumendikaas on suletud.
- Ärge puudutage aparadi sees olevaid metallist osi ega muid osi.
- Kui skannimisseade (kaas) on olnud avatud kauem kui 10 minutit, liigub FINE-kasseti hoidik paremale. Sel juhul sulgege skannimisseade (kaas) ja avage see uuesti.

3. Eemaldage tühi FINE-kassett.

(1) Vajutage sakki ja avage tindikasseti lukustuskaas.

(2) Eemaldage FINE-kassett.

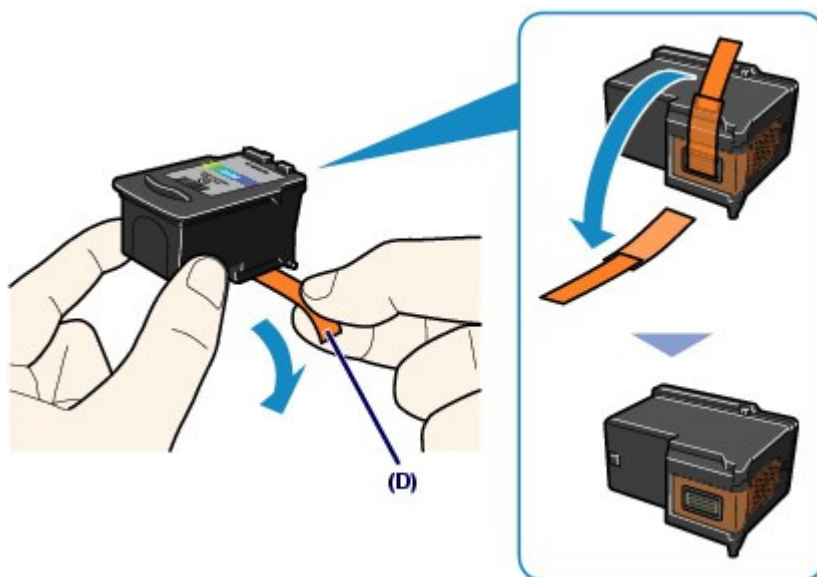


▶ Tähtis!

- Käsitsege FINE-kassette ettevaatlikult, et te ei määriks riideid ega ümbrust.
- Tühjade FINE-kassettide käitlemisel pidage kinni kohalikest kulutarkvike käitlemist käsitlevatest eeskirjadest ja nõuetest.

4. Valmistage ette uus FINE-kassett.

(1) Võtke uus FINE-kassett pakendist välja ja eemaldage õrnalt oranž kaitselint (D).



▶ Tähtis!

- Ärge raputage FINE-kassette, kuna see võib põhjustada tindilekkeid ja määrida käed ning ümbruse. Käsitsege FINE-kassette ettevaatlikult.
- Olge ettevaatlik, et mitte määrida oma riideid ega käsi eemaldatud kaitselindi külge jäänud tindiga.
- Ärge pange kaitselinti pärast selle eemaldamist tagasi. Pidage selle käitlemisel kinni kohalikest kulutavikute käitlemist käsitlevatest eeskirjadest ja nõuetest.
- Ärge puutuge FINE-kasseti elektriklemme või prindipea pihusteid. Kui seda puudutate, ei pruugi seade enam korralikult printida.

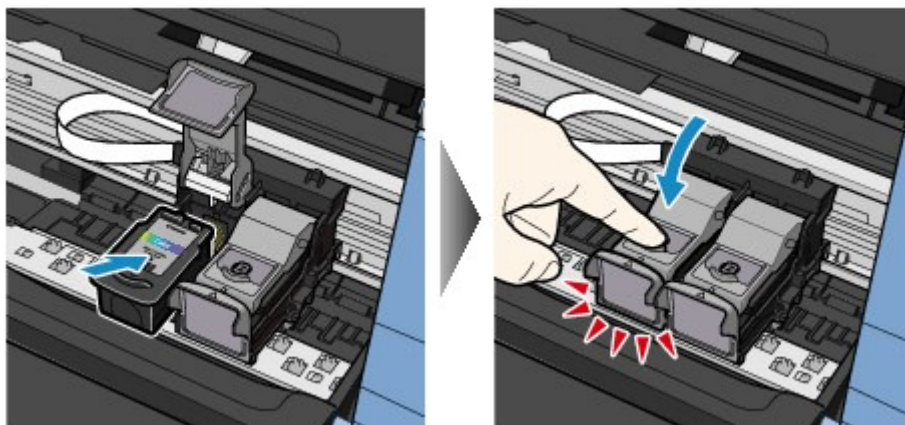
5. Paigaldage FINE-kassett.

(1) Paigaldage uus FINE-kassett FINE-kasseti hoidjasse.

Värviline FINE-kassett tuleks paigutada vasakpoolsesse pessa ja must FINE-kassett tuleks paigutada parempoolsesse pessa.

(2) Sulgege FINE-kasseti paigale lukustamiseks tindikasseti lukustuskaas.

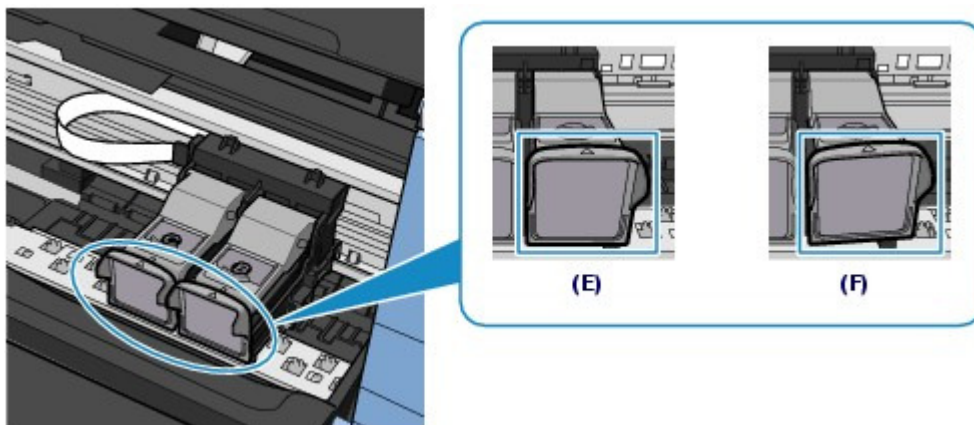
Lükake tindikasseti lukustuskaas alla, kuni kuulete klõpsatust.



(3) Veenduge, et tindikasseti lukustuskaas on korralikult suletud.

📖 Märkus

- Kui tindikasseti lukustuskaas ei ole õigesti suletud, siis vajutage seda alla, kuni kuulete klõpsatust.



(E) Korralikult suletud

(F) Ei ole korralikult suletud (kaas on viltu)

▶ Tähtis!

- Seade ei saa printida, kui paigaldatud ei ole nii värviline kui ka must FINE-kassett. Paigaldage kindlasti mõlemad FINE-kassetid.

6. Skannimisseadme toe algsesse asendisse paigutamiseks tõstke skannimisseadet (kaant) kergelt ja sulgege see ettevaatlikult.

⚠ Ettevaatust

- Hoidke skannimisseadme toe oma kohale tagasi panemise ajal skannimisseadmest (kaanest) kindlasti mõlema käega kõvasti kinni ja jälgige, et sõrmed vahele ei jääks.

📖 Märkus

- Kui pärast skannimisseadme (kaane) sulgemist läheb märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** põlema või vilgub oranžilt, siis vaadake jaotist „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist: *Põhjalik juhend*.
- Kui pärast FINE-kasseti vahetamist printimist alustada, puhastub prindipea automaatselt. Ärge tehke midagi muud, enne kui prindipea puhastamine on lõpule jõudnud.
- Kui printitud sirgjooned või prindipea asend on valesti joondatud, reguleerige prindipea asendit. Vt jaotist [Prindipea joondamine](#).



↑ [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

Sisukord > Regulaarne hooldus > FINE-kasseti vahetamine > Tindi oleku kontrollimine

C092

■ Tindi oleku kontrollimine

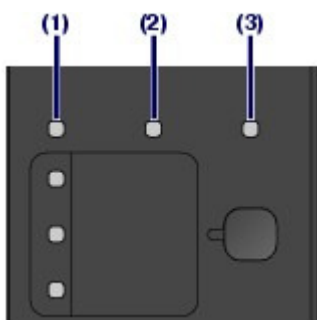
Tindi olekut saate kontrollida juhtpaneeli **tinditulede** abil või arvuti ekraani kaudu.

Märkus

- Allesoleva tindi hulga määramiseks on seadmele lisatud tindi hulga tuvastaja. Seadme hinnangul on tindi täiel määral, kui seadmesse paigaldatakse uus FINE-kassett. Seejärel hakkab seade allesolevat tindihulka tuvastama. Kui paigaldate seadmesse kasutatud FINE-kasseti, siis ei pruugi tindi taseme näit õige olla. Sellisel juhul kasutage tindi taseme teavet ainult ligikaudse juhisenäitena.
- Kui esineb alles jäänud tindi hoiatusi või tõrkeid, ilmub LED-näidikule tõrkekood, mis annab teile tõrke kohta teavet.
Vt elektroonilise juhendi *Põhjalik juhend* peatüki „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ jaotist „LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood“ ning kätutuge vastavalt olukorrale.

● Juhtpaneeli tinditulede abil

Veenduge, et LED on kopeerimise ooterežiimil. Tindi olekut saate kontrollida märgutulede **Tint (Ink)** abil.



- (1) Märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)**
- (2) Märgutuli **Värviline tint (Color Ink)**
- (3) Märgutuli **Must tint (Black Ink)**

Värvilise tindi märgutuli või musta tindi märgutuli süttib

Tint on otsa saamas. Valmistage ette uus tindikassett.

Värvilise tindi märgutuli või musta tindi märgutuli vilgub ning samal ajal süttib häire märgutuli

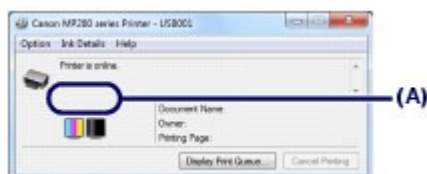
Tekkinud on tõrge.

Täpsemat teavet vaadake jaotist „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist *Põhjalik juhend*.

* Mõnda tüüpi tõrgete korral ei pruugi märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** süttida.

● Arvutiekraani abil

Tindi olekut saate kontrollida printeri oleku monitori abil.



Kui alles oleva tindi taseme kohta on teavet, siis ilmub sümbol alasse (A).

Näide: 

Tint on otsa saamas. Valmistage ette uus tindikassett.

Märkus

- Printimise ajal võib ilmuda veateade. Kontrollige teadet ning toimige sellele vastavalt.

Järgige kinnituskuva avamiseks allpool toodud juhiseid.

1. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

Vaadake elektroonilist juhendit [Põhjalik juhend](#).

2. Klõpsake View Printer Status lehel Maintenance.

FINE-kasseti teabe kontrollimiseks klõpsake menüül Ink Details.



Märkus

- Printimise ajal saate tegumiribal samuti kuvada printeri oleku monitori printeri ikooni klõpsamise teel. Windows Vistas või Windows XP-s klõpsake tegumiribal ikooni Canon XXX Printer (kus „**XXX**“ on teie seadme nimi).



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☒ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > Seadme puhastamine

Seadme puhastamine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse, kuidas seadme sisemust puhastada.

- ➡ [Paberisööterulliku puhastamine](#)
- ➡ [Seadme sisemuse puhastamine \(põhjalaadi puhastamine\)](#)
- ➡ [Seadme sisemuses asuvate eenduvate osade puhastamine](#)

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Seadme puhastamine](#) > Paberisööterulliku puhastamine

C099

■ Paberisööterulliku puhastamine

Kui paberisööterullik on määrdunud või paberitolm on selle külge kinni jäänud, siis ei pruugi paberi söõtmine õnnestuda.

Sellisel juhul puhastage paberisööterullikut. Paberisööterulliku puhastamine kulutab rullikut, seetõttu tehke seda ainult vajaduse korral.

Teil läheb vaja kolme A4- või Letter-formaadis tavalise paberi lehte

1. Veenduge, et seade oleks sisse lülitatud, ning eemaldage tagasalvest kõik paberid.
2. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
3. Ärge puhastage paberisööterullikut paberiga.

(1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht **b**.



(2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.
Paberisööterullik käib puhastamisel ringi.

4. Puhastage paberkäterätikuga paberisööterullikut.

(1) Veenduge, et paberisööterullik enam ei pöörle, ning asetage tagumisele alusele kolm lehte A4- või Letter-vormingus tavapaberit.

(2) Veenduge, et LED-il ilmub täht **b**, ning seejärel vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

Seade alustab puhastamist. Puhastamine on lõpetatud siis, kui paber on väljutatud.

**Märkus**

- Vajutage pärast puhastamise lõpetamist nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)**, et viia LED tagasi kopeerimise ooterežiimile.

Kui probleem ei ole pärast paberisööterulli puhastamist lahenenud, siis pöörduge teeninduskeskusesse.



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend

■ Põhjalik juhend ■ Tõrkeotsing

[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Seadme puhastamine](#) > Seadme sisemuse puhastamine (põhja plaadi puhastamine)

C101

■ Seadme sisemuse puhastamine (põhja plaadi puhastamine)

Eemaldage seadme sisemusest plekid. Kui seadme sisemus saab mustaks, võib ka prinditav paber mustaks saada. Seega soovitage seadet regulaarselt puhastada.

▶ Tähtis!

- Ärge sooritage põhja plaadi puhastamise ajal seadmega muid toiminguid.

Teil läheb vaja A4- või Letter-formaadis tavalise paberi lehte*

* Kasutage kindlasti uut paberilehte.

1. Veenduge, et seade oleks sisse lülitatud, ning eemaldage tagasalvest kõik paberid.
2. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
3. Voltige üks leht A4- või Letter-vormingus paberit poolenisti kokku, seejärel voltige paber lahti.
4. Asetage tagasalve ainult see paberileht, avatud küljega ülespoole.



5. Puhastage seadme sisemust.

(1) Vajutage korduvalt nuppu  (Hooldus (Maintenance)), kuni ilmub täht J.



(2) Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

Paber puhastab seadme sisemuse läbi selle liikudes.

Kontrollige väljutatud paberi volditud ala. Kui see on tindiga määrdunud, sooritage põhja plaadi puhastus uuesti.

**Märkus**

- Põhja plaadi uuesti puhastamisel tehke seda kindlasti uue paberitükiga.

Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast põhjaplaadi teistkordset puhastamist, võivad seadme sisemuses olevad eenduvad osad määrdunud olla.

Vaadake nende puhastamise kohta jaotist [Seadme sisemuses asuvate eenduvate osade puhastamine](#) .



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend**Põhjalik juhend** **Törkeotsing**[Sisukord](#) > [Regulaarne hooldus](#) > [Seadme puhastamine](#) > Seadme sisemuses asuvate eenduvate osade puhastamine

C102

■ Seadme sisemuses asuvate eenduvate osade puhastamine**⚠ Ettevaatust**

- Enne seadme puhastamist lülitage toide kindlasti välja ning võtke toitejuhe vooluvõrgust välja.

Kui seadme sisemuses asuvad eenduvad kohad on määrdunud, pühkige tint puuvillase nuustiku või muu sarnase vahendiga eenduvatelt osadelt ära.

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☐ Tõrkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > [Lisa](#)

Lisa

Toote ja piltide kasutamisel kehtivad juriidilised piirangud

Näpunäited, kuidas seadet kasutada



 [Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhijuhend☐ Põhjalik juhend ☐ Törkeotsing[Sisukord](#) > [Lisa](#) > Toote ja piltide kasutamisel kehtivad juriidilised piirangud

Toote ja piltide kasutamisel kehtivad juriidilised piirangud

Järgmiste dokumentide kopeerimine, skannimine, printimine või koopiade kasutamine võib olla ebaseaduslik.

Siintoodud loetelu pole täielik. Kahtluse korral küsige nõu mõnelt kohalikult võimuesindajalt.

- Paberraha
- Rahaülekande korraldused
- Deposiiditõendid
- Postmargid (kehtetud või kehtivad)
- Isiku tuvastamise märgid või tunnused
- Teatud teenuse või projekti dokumendid
- Valitsusasutuste välja antud tšekid või vekslid
- Mootorsõidukite juhiloa ja omandiõiguse tõendid
- Reisitšekid
- Toidutalongid
- Passid
- Immigratsioonidokumendid
- Siseriiklikud maksumärgid (kehtetud või kehtivad)
- Obligatsioonid või muud võlakirjad
- Aktsiad
- Autoriõigusega kaitstud loometööd või kunstiteosed (ilma autoriõigusega omaniku loata)

[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)

C112

Näpunäited, kuidas seadet kasutada

Käesolev lõik annab näpunäiteid, kuidas seadet kasutada ja optimaalse kvaliteediga printida.

■ Tinti kasutatakse erinevatel eesmärkidel.

● Kuidas kasutatakse tinti printimisest erinevatel eesmärkidel?

Tinti võib kasutada millekski muuks kui printimiseks. Tinti ei kasutata mitte ainult printimiseks, vaid ka prindipea puhastamiseks, et säilitada optimaalset printimiskvaliteeti.

Masinal on automaatne funktsioon, mis puhastab tindipihusteid nende ummistumise vältimiseks. Puhastamisprotseduuri ajal pumbatakse tint pihustitest välja. Pihustite puhastamiseks kasutatav tint on limiteeritud väikese kogusega.

● Kas mustvalgel printimisel kasutatakse värvilist tinti?

Mustvalgel printimisel võidakse sõltuvalt prinditavast paberist või printeridraiveri sätetest kasutada ka muud tinti peale musta. Seega kulub värvilist tinti isegi siis, kui prinditakse mustvalgelt.

■ Eripaberile printimine: kuidas printida optimaalse kvaliteediga!?

● Näpunäide: kontrollige masina olekut enne printimist!

● Kas prindipea on korras?

Kui prindipea pihustid on ummistunud, muutub print kahvatuks ning paber läheb raisku.

Kontrollige prindipea olukorda pihustite kontrollmusteri printimisega.

Vt jaotist [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#).

● Kas seadme sisemus on tindine?

Ala, kust paberid printimisel läbi liiguvad, võib pärast suuremahulist või ääristeta printimist tindine olla. Puhastage seadme sisemust põhjaplaadi puhastamisega.

Vt jaotist [Seadme sisemuse puhastamine \(põhjaplaadi puhastamine\)](#).

● Näpunäide: uurige, kuidas paberit õigesti seadmesse asetada!

● Kas paber on õiges suunas seadmesse asetatud?



Asetage paber tagasalve nii, et prinditav pool jääb üles.

● Kas paber on kooldunud?

Kooldunud paber põhjustab paberiummistuse. Siluge kooldunud paberit ja asetage see taas masinasse.

Vaadake jaotist „[Tõrkeotsing](#)“ elektroonilisest juhendist [Põhjalik juhend](#).

● Näpunäide: pärast paberi lisamist määrake kindlasti paberi

seaded!

Pärast paberi asetamist seadmesse, valige kindlasti printeridraiveri jaotises Media Type või juhtpaneeli nupuga **Paber (Paper)** vastav paberi tüüp. Kui paberi tüüpi ei valita, ei pruugi printimistulemused rahuldavad olla.

Vt jaotisi [Kopeerimine](#), [Arvutist printimine](#) ja [Kasutatavad prindikandjad](#).

Saadaval on erinevat tüüpi pabereid: erilise pealispinnaga paber, mis on mõeldud optimaalse kvaliteediga fotode printimiseks, ja paber dokumentide jaoks. Printeridraiveri jaotises Media Type on juba eelnevalt iga paberitüübi jaoks erinevad sätted olemas (nagu tindi kasutamine, tindi pihustamine või kaugus pihustitest), et saaksite printida igale paberile optimaalse pildikvaliteediga. Ka juhtpaneeli nupul **Paber (Paper)**, mida kasutatakse koopiategemiseks, on mõned printeridraiveri jaotise Media Type sätetega sarnased sätted. Saate printida jaotises Media Type või juhtpaneeli nupuga **Paber (Paper)** valitud erinevate sätetega, mis sobivad seadmesse asetatud paberiga.

■ Kasutage printimise tühistamiseks nuppu Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)!

● Näpunäide: ärge kunagi vajutage nuppu Sisse (ON)!

Kui vajutate printimise ajal nuppu **Sisse (ON)**, jäävad arvutist printerisse edastatavad andmed ootele ja te ei saa printimist jätkata.

Printimise tühistamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.



Märkus

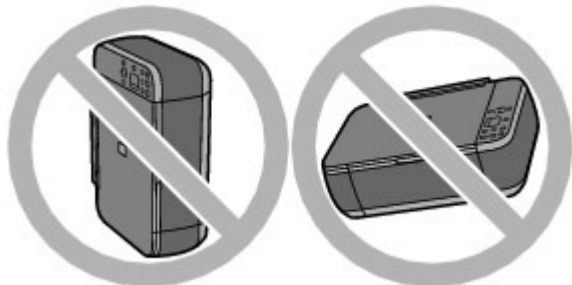
- Kui te ei saa arvutist printimise ajal printimist katkestada nupule **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** vajutades, avage printeridraiveri seadistuse aken, et kustutada printeri oleku ekraanilt mittevajalikud prinditööd.

■ Kas seadet peab eriti hoolikalt käsitsema kasutamisel või transportimisel?

● Näpunäide: ärge kasutage ega transportige seadet vertikaal- või kaldasendis!

Kui seadet kasutatakse või transporditakse vertikaal- või kaldasendis, võib see seadet kahjustada või põhjustada tindi lekkimist seadmest.

Veenduge, et seadet ei kasutataks ega transporditaks vertikaal- ega kaldasendis.



● Näpunäide: ärge asetage ühtegi eset dokumendikaanele!

Ärge asetage dokumendikaanele ühtegi eset. See kukub dokumendikaane avamisel paberialusele ning põhjustab seadme häireid.

Asetage seade ka sellisesse kohta, kus esemed ei saa seadmele kukkuda.



● Nõuanne: valige seadme asukoht hoolikalt!

Paigutage seade vähemalt 15 cm / 5,91 tolli kaugusele teistest elektriseadmetest, näiteks luminofoorlampidest. Kui seade paikneb neile lähemal, siis võib luminofoormüra seadme korrektset tööd takistada.

■ Kuidas tagada optimaalset printimiskvaliteeti?

Optimaalse printimiskvaliteediga printimise võti on kanda hoolt, et prindipea ei kuivaks ega ummistuks. Optimaalse printimiskvaliteedi saavutamiseks järgige alati allolevaid samme.

● Järgige alltoodud protseduuri seadme väljalülitamisel.

1. Vajutage seadmel nuppu **Sisse (ON)** selle välja lülitamiseks.
2. Veenduge, et märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** ei põle.
3. Ühendage toitepistik seinakontaktist lahti.

Kui lülitate toite välja nupust **Sisse (ON)**, paneb seade automaatselt prindipeale (pihustitele) kaitsekorgi, et kaitsta seda kuivamise eest. Kui eemaldate toitepistiku pistikupesast välja enne, kui märgutuli **Toide (POWER)** on kustunud, siis ei panda prindipeale korralikult korki peale ning prindipea võib kuivada või ummistuda.

Järgige toite väljalülitamisel kindlasti seda protseduuri.

● Printige regulaarselt!

Sarnaselt sellega, et markeri ots kuivab ja muutub kasutuskõlbmatuks, kui seda pikka aega ei kasutata, isegi kui see on korgitud, kuivab või ummistub ka prindipea, kui seadet pikka aega ei kasutata.

Soovitame teil seadet kasutada vähemalt kord kuus.

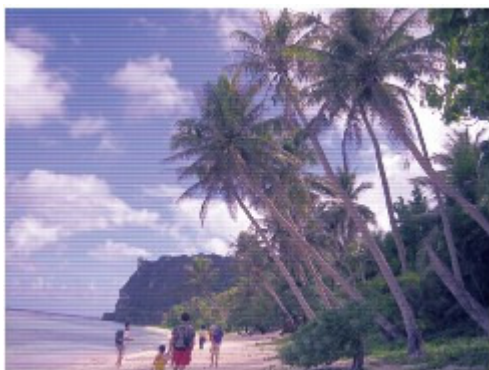
Märkus

- Tint võib sõltuvalt paberi tüübist hägustuda, kui märgistate prinditud ala markeri või värvipulgaga; või laiali valguda, kui prinditud alad satuvad kontakti vee või higiga.

■ Värvid on ebaühtlased ja printimistulemused hägused.

● Näpunäide: printige pihusti kontrollmuster nende ummistuste kontrollimiseks.

Kui prindipea pihustid on umbes, võivad värvid olla ebaühtlased või printimistulemused hägused.



Sellisel juhul



Printige pihustite kontrollmuster

Kontrollige prinditud kontrollmustrit, et näha, kas pihustid on ummistunud.

Vt jaotist [Print on hele või värvitoonid valed](#).



[↑ Lehekülje algusesse](#)



Printimine
Skannimine
Kopeerimine
Tõrkeotsing
Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine
Käesoleva juhendi printimine
Hooldus
Seadme sätete muutmine
Lisa

Kui loete seda elektroonilist juhendit mujal kui ingliskeelses keskkonnas, võivad esineda mõned ingliskeelsed kirjeldused.

Printimine

Arvutist printimine

Printimine sidustarkvaraga

Mis on Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Fotode printimine

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i käivitamine

Foto valimine

Paberi valimine

Printimine

Albumi loomine

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i käivitamine

Paberi ja paigutuse valimine

Foto valimine

Redigeerimine

Printimine

Kalendrite printimine

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i käivitamine

Paberi ja paigutuse valimine

Foto valimine

Redigeerimine

Printimine

Kleebiste printimine

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i käivitamine

Paberi ja paigutuse valimine

Foto valimine

Redigeerimine

Printimine

Prindipaigutus

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i käivitamine

Paberi ja paigutuse valimine

Foto valimine

Redigeerimine

Printimine

Fotode parandamine ja töötlemine

Automaatse foto parandamise funktsiooni kasutamine

Punasilmsuse paranduse funktsiooni kasutamine

- Näo helendamise funktsiooni kasutamine
- Näo teravustamise funktsiooni kasutamine
- Digitaalse näo silumise funktsiooni kasutamine
- Iluvigade eemaldamise funktsiooni kasutamine
- Piltide kohandamine
- Piltide korrigeerimise/parandamise aken
- Videotest piltide loomine
 - Videokaadri salvestamise / filmi printimise aken
- Piltide allalaadimine fotode jagamise saitidelt
 - Fotode importimine fotode jagamise saitide aknast
- Küsimused ja vastused
 - Kuidas salvestatud faili liigutada (või kopeerida)?
 - Kummalt poolt algab kuvatud pildi printimine?
 - Kuidas printida võrdsete ääristega?
 - Mis on „C1” või „C4”?
- Foto printimise sätted
 - Erksavärviliste fotode printimine
 - Pildimüra vähendamine
 - Fotode kärpimine (foto printimine)
 - Kuupäevade printimine fotodele (foto printimine)
 - Mitme foto printimine ühele leheküljele
 - Indeksi printimine
 - ID-fotode printimine (ID-foto printimine)
 - Fototeabe printimine
 - Fotode salvestamine
 - Salvestatud failide avamine
- Muud sätted
 - Paigutuse muutmine
 - Tausta muutmine
 - Fotode lisamine
 - Fotode asukoha muutmine
 - Fotode asendamine
 - Fotode asendi, nurga ja suuruse muutmine
 - Fotode kärpimine
 - Fotode raamimine
 - Kuupäevade printimine fotodele
 - Fotodele kommentaaride lisamine
 - Fotodele teksti lisamine
 - Salvestamine
 - Pühade seadistamine
 - Kalendri välimuse sätted
 - Salvestatud failide avamine
- Printimine muu rakendustarkvaraga
 - Erinevad printimisviisid
 - Printimine Lihtsa seadistusega (Easy Setup)
 - Lehe formaadi ja suuna määramine
 - Koopiate arvu ja printimisjärjestuse määramine

- Klammerdamise piiri määramine
- Printige ääristeta
- Leheküljele sobitamisega printimine
- Muudetud suurusega printimine
- Lehe paigutuse printimine
- Reklaamplakati printimine
- Brošüüri printimine
- Kahepoolne printimine
- Templi/tausta printimine
- Templi kinnitamine
- Taustana kasutatavate pildiandmete kinnitamine
- Ümbrikule printimine
- Printimistulemuste kuvamine enne printimist
- Paberi mõõtmete määramine (kohandatud formaat)
- Prindikvaliteedi muutmine ja pildiandmete korrigeerimine
 - Prindikvaliteedi ja pooltoonimisviisi kombinatsiooni valimine
 - Värvilise dokumendi printimine mustvalgelt
 - Värvikorrekttsiooni määramine
 - Pildiandmete optimaalne fotoprintimine
 - Värvide reguleerimine printeridraiveri kaudu
 - Printimine ICC-profiilidega
 - Värvitasakaalu reguleerimine
 - Ereduse reguleerimine
 - Intensiivsuse reguleerimine
 - Kontrastsuse reguleerimine
 - Joonistuse imiteerimine
 - Pildiandmete esitamine ühe värvi abil
 - Pildiandmete esitamine erksate värvidega
 - Sakiliste piirjoonte tasandamine
 - Värvide parandamiseks värvide atribuutide muutmine
 - Pildimüra vähendamine
- Ülevaade printeridraiverist
 - Printeridraiveri operatsioonid
 - Canon IJ printeridraiver
 - XPS-printeridraiver
 - Kuidas printeridraiveri seadistusakent avada?
 - Hoolduse vahekaart
 - Canon IJ oleku monitor
 - Canon IJ eelvaade

Skannimine

Skannimine

- Piltide skannimine
 - Piltide skannimine
 - Enne skannimist

Dokumentide alusele asetamine

Skannimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

Skannitud andmete edastamine arvutisse seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

Lisa: mitmesugused skannimissätted

Juhtpaneelist käskudele vastuste valimine, kasutades MP Navigator EX-i

Kaasasoleva rakendustarkvaraga skannimine

Mis on MP Navigator EX (kaasasolev skanneritarkvara)?

Proovige skannida

MP Navigator EX-i käivitamine

Lihtne skannimine automaatse skannimise abil

Fotode ja dokumentide skannimine

Korruga mitme dokumendi skannimine

Kopeerimisalusest suuremate piltide skannimine (Sidumisabi)

Lihtne skannimine ühe klõpsu abil

Kasulikud MP Navigator EX-i funktsioonid

Piltide automaatne korrigeerimine/parandamine

Piltide käsitsi korrigeerimine/parandamine

Piltide kohandamine

Piltide otsimine

Piltide liigitamine kategooriatesse

Piltide MP Navigator EX-is kasutamine

Salvestamine

PDF-failidena salvestamine

PDF-failide loomine/redigeerimine

Dokumentide printimine

Fotode printimine

E-postiga saatmine

Failide redigeerimine

PDF-failidele paroolide määramine

Parooliga kaitstud PDF-failide avamine/redigeerimine

Tarkvara MP Navigator EX kuvad

Navigatsioonirežiimi aken

Dokumentide või piltide skannimise/importimise vahekaart

Vaata ja kasuta oma arvuti vahekaardil pilte

Ühe klõpsuga kohandatud skannimise vahekaart

Automaatse skannimise kuva (skannimise/importimise aken)

Skannimise sätete dialoogiaken (automaatne skannimine)

Fotode/dokumentide (kopeerimisalus) kuva (skannimise/importimise aken)

Skannimise sätete dialoogiaken (fotod/dokumendid)

Salvestamise dialoogiaken

PDF-failina salvestamise dialoogiaken

- PDF-i sätete dialoogiaken
- Vaatamise ja kasutamise aken
- PDF-faili loomise/redigeerimise aken
- Dokumendi printimise dialoogiaken
- Foto printimise dialoogiaken
- E-postiga saatmise dialoogiaken
- Piltide korrigeerimise/parandamise aken
- Ühe klõpsu režiimi aken
- Automaatse skannimise dialoogiaken
- Salvestamise dialoogiaken (ühe klõpsu režiimi aken)
- Skannimise sätete dialoogiaken (ühe klõpsu režiimi aken)
- Salvestamise dialoogiaken
- Exif-sätete dialoogiaken
- PDF-i dialoogiaken
- PDF-failina salvestamise dialoogiaken
- Posti dialoogiaken
- OCR-i dialoogiaken
- Kohandatud dialoogiaken
- Eelistuste dialoogiaken
- Üldine vahekaart
- Skanneri nupusätete vahekaart (salvesta arvutisse)
- Skannimise sätete dialoogiaken (skanneri nupusätted)
- Lisa: muude kui skannitud piltide avamine
 - Arvutisse salvestatud piltide avamine
- Muu rakendustarkvaraga skannimine
 - Mis on ScanGear (skanneridraiver)?
 - Skannimine täpsemate sätetega, kasutades ScanGeari (skanneridraiver)
 - ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) käivitamine
 - Põhirežiimis skannimine
 - Täiustatud režiimis skannimine
 - Automaatskannimise režiimis skannimine
 - ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) kasutades korraga mitme dokumendi skannimine
 - Piltide korrigeerimine ja värvide reguleerimine ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) abil
 - Piltide korrigeerimine (udususe varjamine, mustuse ja kriimustuste vähendamine, paranduse hajutamine jne)
 - Värvide reguleerimine värvimustri abil
 - Küllastuse ja värvitasakaalu reguleerimine
 - Heleduse ja kontrastsuse reguleerimine
 - Histogrammi reguleerimine
 - Toonikõvera reguleerimine
 - Läve seadmine
 - ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) kuvad
 - Põhirežiimi vahekaart

- Täiustatud režiimi vahekaart
- Sisendi sätted
- Väljundi sätted
- Pildi sätted
- Värvide reguleerimise nupud
- Automaatskannimise režiimi vahekaart
- Eelistuste dialoogiaken
- Skanneri vahekaart
- Eelvaate vahekaart
- Skannimise vahekaart
- Värvisätete vahekaart
- Lisa: skannimiseks kasulik teave
 - Kärpimisraamade reguleerimine
 - Resolutsioon
 - Failiformaadid
 - Värvide sobitamine
- Muud skannismetodid
 - Skannimine WIA-draiveriga
 - Skannimine juhtpaneeli kasutades (ainult Windows XP)

Kopeerimine

Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

- Kopeerimine
 - Koopiate tegemine
 - Koopia vähendamine või suurendamine
 - Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine
 - Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel
 - Ääristeta kopeerimine (Ääristeta koopia)

Tõrkeotsing

Tõrkeotsing

- Kui ilmneb tõrge
- Seadme toidet ei saa sisse lülitada
- LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood
 - Häire märgutuli põleb oranžilt
 - Roheline toitetuli ja oranž häire märgutuli vilguvad vaheldumisi
- LED-näidikut ei ole üldse näha
- MP Driversit ei saa installida
- Rakendusprogrammi ei saa installida
 - Easy-WebPrint EX ei käivitu või Easy-WebPrint EX menüü ei ilmu
- Ei saa USB-kaabli abil arvutiga korralikult ühendust luua
 - Printimise või skannimise kiirus on aeglane/kiire USB-ühendus ei toimi/kuvatakse sõnum „Seade võib kiiremini toimida”

Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

Tööd ei saa lõpuni printida

Prinditulemused puuduvad/väljaprint on hägune/värvid on valed/valged triibud

Värvid on hägused

Read on joondamata

Prinditud leht kooldub või on tindiplekkidega

Paber on määrdunud/prinditud pind on kriimustatud

Paberi tagakülg on määrdunud

Väljatrüki äärtel on püstjooned

Värvid on ebaühtlased või triibulised

Printimine ei alga

Kopeerimine/printimine peatub enne töö lõpetamist

Seade töötab, kuid tinti ei väljastata

Printimiskiirus on oodatust aeglasem

FINE-kasseti hoidik ei liigu vahetamisasendisse

Paberi söötmine ei toimu õigesti

Paberiummistused

Paber on tekitanud ummistuse paberiväljastusavasasse või tagasalve

Muudel juhtudel

Arvuti ekraanil kuvatakse teade

Kuvatakse teade: „Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center.” (Tõrge nr B200 A – tekkinud on printeri tõrge. Lülitage printer välja ja lahutage printeri toitejuhe vooluvõrgust. Seejärel pöörduge vastavasse hoolduskeskusse.)

Kuvatakse teade: „Error Number: **** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail.” (Tõrge nr **** – tekkinud on printeri tõrge. Lülitage printer välja ja siis uuesti sisse. Kui probleem ei lahene, vt üksikasju kasutusjuhendist)

Kuvatakse lahti tulnud toitejuhtme tõrge

Kirjutustõrge/Väljastustõrge/Sidetõrge

Muud tõrketeated

Kuvatakse aken Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Windowsi kasutajatele

Printeri olekumonitori ei kuvata

MP Navigator EX-i käivitamine iga kord seadme nupu SCAN vajutamisel

Skannimisprobleemid

Skanner ei tööta

ScanGear (skanneridraiver) ei käivitu

Ilmub veateade ning ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) kuva ei näidata

Skannimiskvaliteet (monitoril kuvatud pilt) on halb

Skannitud pilti ümbritsevad eriti valged alad

Ei saa korraga mitut dokumenti skannida

Automaatskannimise režiimis ei ole võimalik korralikult skannida

Aeglane skannimiskiirus

Kuvatakse teade „There is not enough memory.” (Pole piisavalt mälu mahtu.)

Arvuti lõpetab skannimise ajal toimimise

Skanner ei tööta pärast Windowsi uuendamist

Tarkvaraprobleemid

E-posti tarkvaraprogramm, mida kasutada soovite, ei ilmu e-posti tarkvaraprogrammi valimiseks ekraanile

Skannitud pilt prinditakse suurendatult (vähendatult)

Skannitud pilt on arvuti monitoril suurendatud (vähendatud)

Skannitud pilt ei avane

MP Navigator EX-iga seotud probleemid

Õiges suuruses skannimine ei ole võimalik

Pildi asendit või suurust ei ole võimalik juhtpaneeli abil skannides õigesti määrata

Dokumendi asend on õige, kuid skannitud pilt on viltu

Dokumendi asend on õige, kuid skannitud pildi suund muutub

Kui probleemi ei õnnestu lahendada

KKK

Kasutusjuhised (printeridraiver)

Üldised märkused (skanneridraiver)

Easy-PhotoPrint EX-i tarkvara kasutamine

MP Navigator EX-i kasutamine

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine

Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine

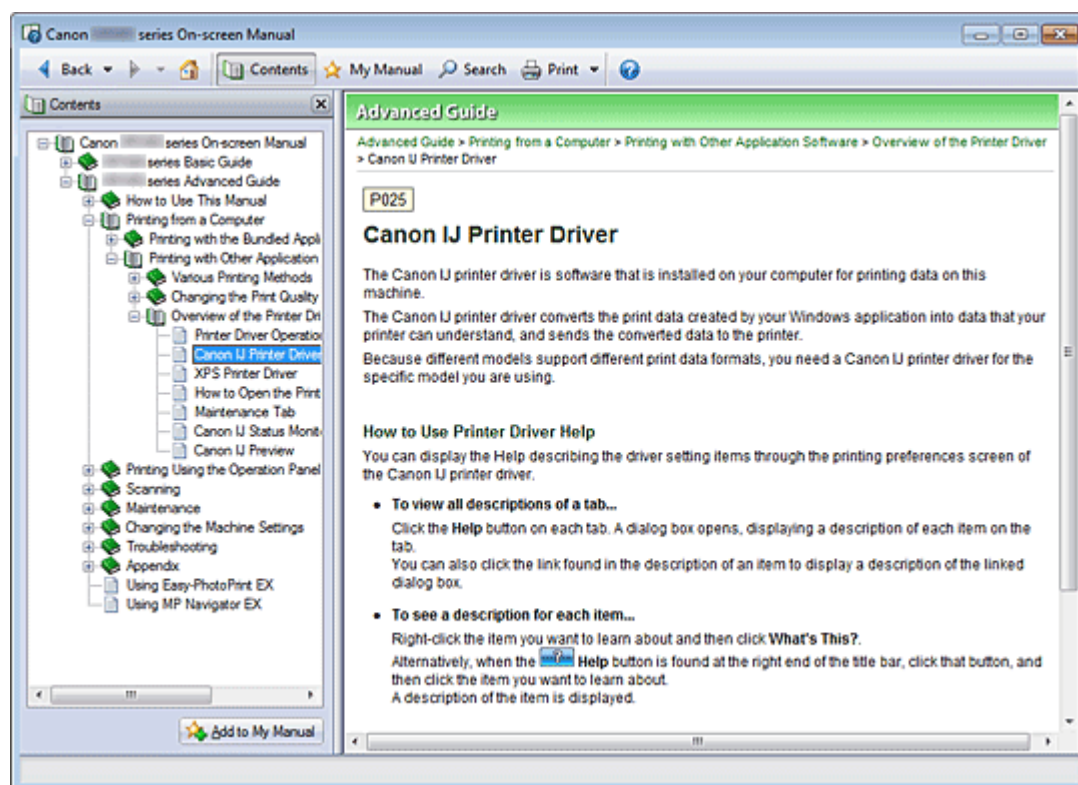
- ➡ Töötamine sisukorra paaniga
- ➡ Töötamine selgitava aknaga
- ➡ Käesoleva juhendi printimine
- ➡ Märksõnade kasutamine dokumendi leidmiseks
- ➡ Dokumentide kandmine Minu juhendisse
- ➡ Juhendis kasutatavad tingmärgid
- ➡ Kaubamärgid ja litsentsid

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Töötamine sisukorra paaniga

Töötamine sisukorra paaniga



Kui klõpsate mõnele elektroonilisest juhendist vasakul asuval sisukorra paanil kuvatud pealkirjale, näidatakse sellele pealkirjale vastavaid lehekülgi paremal asuvas selgitavas aknas.

Kui klõpsate märgile , mis asub tähistusest  vasakul, kuvatakse hierarhiselt madalamal asuvad dokumentide pealkirjad.

Märkus

- Sisukorra paani sulgemiseks või kuvamiseks klõpsake  .

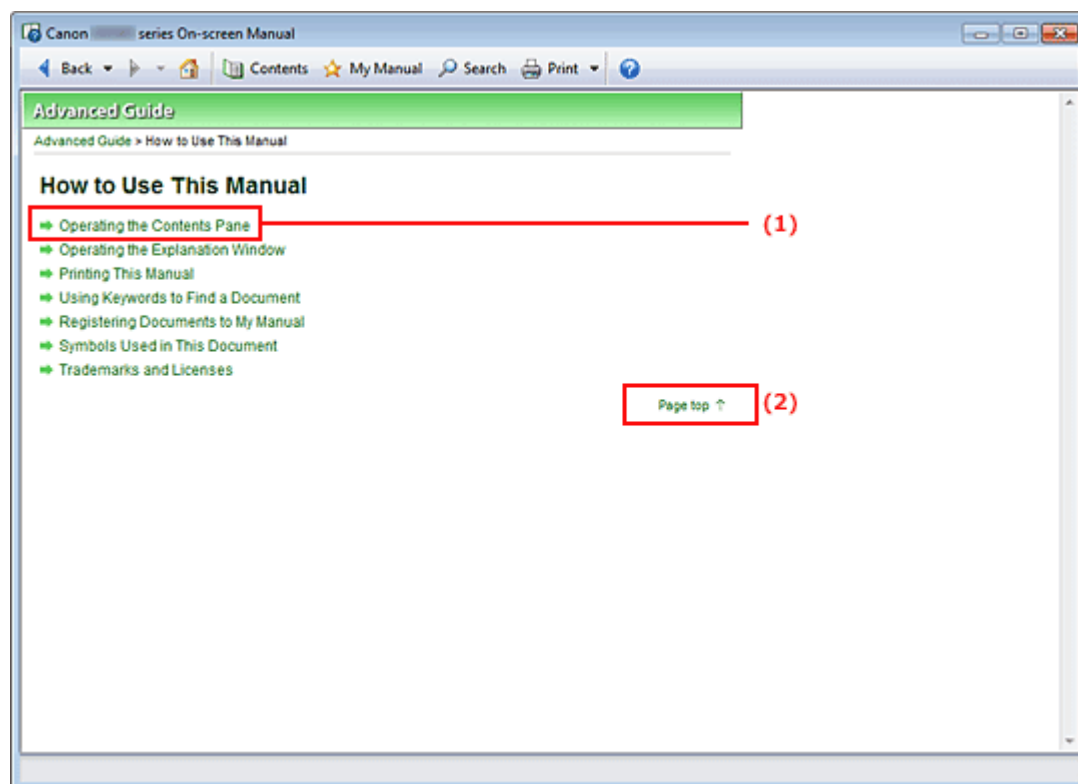
Lehekülje algusesse 

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Töötamine selgitava aknaga

Töötamine selgitava aknaga

Selgitav aken



(1) Vastavale dokumendile minekuks klõpsake rohelistele tähemärkidele.

(2) Kursor liigub dokumendi algusesse.

Toimingu selgitamiseks kasutatav aken

See elektrooniline juhend kirjeldab toiminguid akna abil, mis kuvatakse operatsioonisüsteemi Windows 7 Home Premium (mida edaspidi nimetatakse Windows 7) kasutamisel.

[Lehekülje algusesse ↑](#)

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Käesoleva juhendi printimine

Käesoleva juhendi printimine



Klõpsake , et kuvada printimispaani elektroonilisest juhendist vasakul.

Märkus

- Klõpsake  printimispaani sulgemiseks või kuvamiseks.
- Kui klõpsate  ja seejärel Lehe sätted (Page Setup), siis kuvatakse dialoogiaken Lehe sätted (Page Setup). Seejärel saate printimiseks kasutatavat paberit hõlpsasti seadistada.
- Klõpsake  ja seejärel klõpsake sättele Prindisätted (Print Settings), et kuvada dialoogiaken Prindi (Print). Valige dialoogiakna kuvamise ajal printimiseks kasutatav printer. Vahekaart Prindisätted (Print Setup) võimaldab valida ka kasutatava printeri. Pärast kasutatava printeri valimist klõpsake prindisätete tegemiseks Atribuudid... (Properties...).
- Klõpsake  ja seejärel klõpsake sättele Suvandisätted (Option Settings), et kuvada dialoogiaken Suvandisätted (Option Settings). Seejärel saate printimist seadistada.
 - Prindi dokumendi pealkiri ja lehekülje number (Print document title and page number)
Kui see märkeruut märgitakse, siis prinditakse päisesse (dokumendi ülaosa) juhendi nimi ja lehekülje number.
 - Prindi tausta värv ja pildid (Print background color and images)
Kui see märkeruut on märgitud, siis prinditakse taustavärv ja pilt. Mõned pildid prinditakse ka juhul, kui selles ruudus ei ole märget.
 - Enne printimist kontrolli lehekülgede arvu (Check number of pages to be printed before printing)
Kui see ruuduke on märgitud, kuvatakse enne printimise algust dialoogiaken Prinditav lehekülgede arvu kinnitamine (Print Page Count Confirmation). See dialoogiaken võimaldab kontrollida, mitu lehekülge prinditakse.

Valige vahekaardil Dokumendivalik (Document Selection) dokumendi printimise viis. Kasutatavad on järgmised printimisviisid:

- Prindi avatud dokument
- Prindi valitud dokumendid

- [Prindi Minu juhend](#)
- [Prindi kõik dokumendid](#)

Märkus

- Valige printimistüüp ja siis saate hõpsalt vahekaardil Prindisätteid (Print Setup) prindisätteid täpsustada.

Prindi avatud dokument

Saate printida avatud dokumendi.

1. Valige Vali sihtmärk (Select Target), seejärel valige Avatud dokument (Current Document)

Hetkel kuvatava dokumendi pealkiri on esitatud loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed).

Märkus

- Valides Prindi lingitud dokumendid (Print linked documents), saate valida ka käesolevale dokumendile viitavate dokumentide printimise. Kõik lingitud dokumendid lisatakse loetelule Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed).
- Klõpsake Prindi eelvaade (Print Preview), et kontrollida, kuidas tulemus enne dokumendi tegelikku printimist välja näeb.

2. Klõpsake Prindisätteid (Print Setup)

Vahekaardil Lehe sätted (Page Setup) valige kasutatav printer ja kui vaja, täpsustage tavalise printimise sätteid.

3. Klõpsake Alusta printimist (Start Printing)

Kuvatakse teade, mis kinnitab printimisele minevate lehtede arvu.

4. Printige

Kinnitage prinditavate lehekülgede arv ja klõpsake seejärel Yes.

Prinditakse parajasti kuvatud dokumendid.

Prindi valitud dokumendid

Te võite valida ja printida dokumendid, mida soovite printida.

1. Valige Vali sihtmärk (Select Target) all Valitud dokumendid (Selected Documents)

Kõikide dokumentide pealkirjad kuvatakse loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed).

2. Valige prinditavad dokumendid

Valige ja märkige loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed) prinditavate dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruudud.

Märkus

- Kui valite märkeruudu Vali automaatselt alumiste hierarhiate dokumendid (Automatically select documents in lower hierarchies), valitakse kõikide madalamal tasemel dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruudud.
- Kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutude valimiseks klõpsake Vali kõik (Select All). Märke eemaldamiseks kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutudest klõpsake Puhasta kõik (Clear All).
- Klõpsake Prindi eelvaade (Print Preview), et kontrollida, kuidas tulemus enne dokumendi tegelikku printimist välja näeb.

3. Klõpsake Prindisätteid (Print Setup)

Vahekaardil Lehe sätted (Page Setup) valige kasutatav printer ja kui vaja, täpsustage tavalise printimise sätteid.

4. Klõpsake Alusta printimist (Start Printing)

Kuvatakse teade, mis kinnitab printimisele minevate lehtede arvu.

5. Printige

Kinnitage prinditavate lehekülgede arv ja klõpsake seejärel Yes.

Kõik märkeruutudega valitud dokumendid prinditakse.

Prindi Minu juhend

Võite valida ja printida Minu juhendisse kantud dokumente.

Minu juhendi üksikasju vaadake osast „[Dokumentide kandmine Minu juhendisse](#)” alt.

1. Valige Vali sihtmärk (Select Target), seejärel Minu juhis (My Manual)

Minu juhendis sisalduvate dokumentide pealkirjad kuvatakse loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed).

2. Valige prinditavad dokumendid

Valige ja märkige loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed) prinditavate dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruudud.



Märkus

- Kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutude valimiseks klõpsake Vali kõik (Select All). Märke eemaldamiseks kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutudest klõpsake Puhasta kõik (Clear All).
- Klõpsake Prindi eelvaade (Print Preview), et kontrollida, kuidas tulemus enne dokumendi tegelikku printimist välja näeb.

3. Klõpsake Prindisätteid (Print Setup)

Vahekaardil Lehe sätted (Page Setup) valige kasutatav printer ja kui vaja, täpsustage tavalise printimise sätteid.

4. Klõpsake Alusta printimist (Start Printing)

Kuvatakse teade, mis kinnitab printimisele minevate lehtede arvu.

5. Printige

Kinnitage prinditavate lehekülgede arv ja klõpsake seejärel Yes.

Kõik märkeruutudega valitud dokumendid prinditakse.

Prindi kõik dokumendid

Võite printida kõik elektroonilise juhendi dokumendid.

1. Valige Vali sihtmärk (Select Target), seejärel Kõik dokumendid (All Documents)

Kõikide dokumentide pealkirjad kuvatakse loetelus Prinditavad dokumendid (Documents to Be Printed) ning märkeruudud on automaatselt valitud.



Märkus

- Kui eemaldate dokumendi pealkirja märkeruudu märke, siis seda dokumenti ei prindita.
- Kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutude valimiseks klõpsake Vali kõik (Select All). Märke eemaldamiseks kõigi dokumentide pealkirjade märkeruutudest klõpsake Puhasta kõik

(Clear All).

- Klõpsake Prindi eelvaade (Print Preview), et kontrollida, kuidas tulemus enne dokumendi tegelikku printimist välja näeb.
-

2. Klõpsake Prindisätteid (Print Setup)

Vahekaardil Lehe sätted (Page Setup) valige kasutatav printer ja kui vaja, täpsustage tavalise printimise sätteid.

3. Klõpsake Alusta printimist (Start Printing)

Kuvatakse teade, mis kinnitab printimisele minevate lehtede arvu.

4. Printige

Kinnitage prinditavate lehekülgede arv ja klõpsake seejärel Yes.

Kõik dokumendid prinditakse.



Tähtis!

- Kõigi dokumentide printimiseks on vaja palju paberit. Kontrollige enne printimist kindlasti prinditavate lehekülgede arvu, mida kuvatakse dialoogiaknas Prinditav. lehekülgede arvu kinnitamine (Print Page Count Confirmation).
- Dialoogiaken Prindi eelvaade (Print Preview) võimaldab muuta prinditöö suurust vastavalt paberi laiusele või määrata suurenduse. Kui aga printimisandmed ulatuvad uue suurendusega väljapoole paberit, jääb üle paberi ääre ulatuv osa dokumendist printimata.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

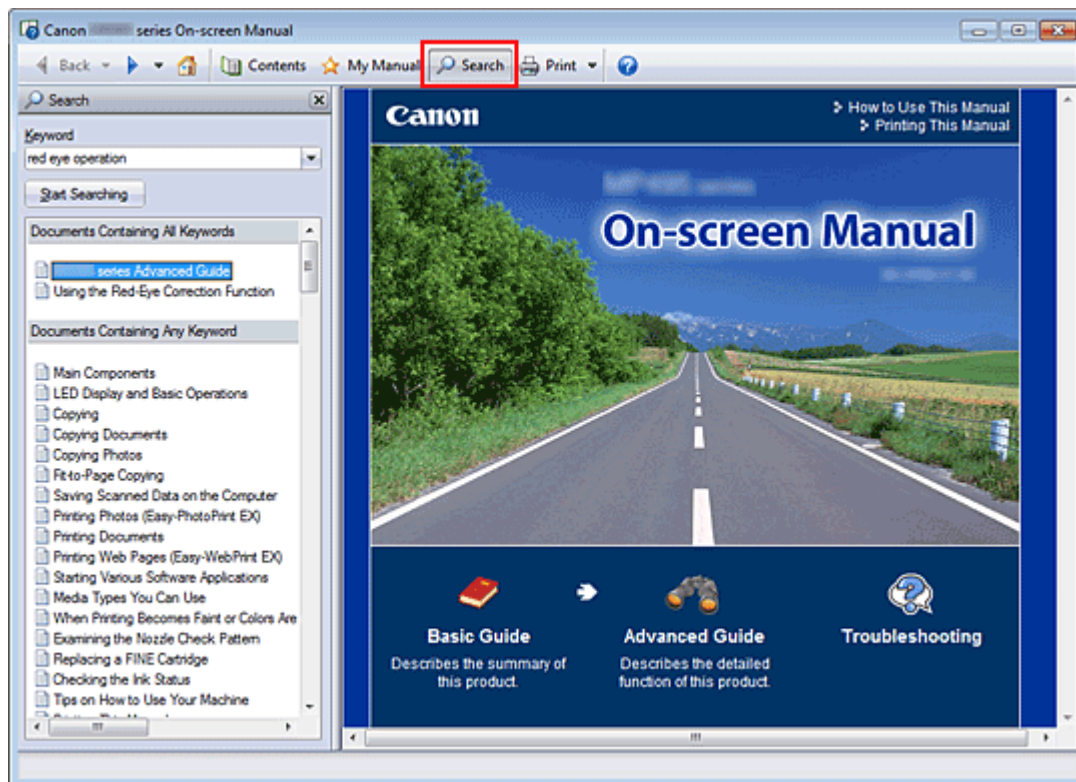
Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Märksõnade kasutamine dokumendi leidmiseks

Märksõnade kasutamine dokumendi leidmiseks

Otsitava dokumendi leidmiseks saate sisestada märksõna.

Otsitakse kuvatava elektroonilise juhendi kõigi dokumentide hulgast.



1. Klõpsake

Otsingupaan kuvatakse elektroonilisest juhendist vasakule.

Märkus

- Otsingupaani sulgemiseks või kuvamiseks klõpsake .

2. Sisestage märksõna

Märksõna (Keyword) funktsioonis sisestage otsitava teksti jaoks märksõna.

Kui soovite sisestada mitut märksõna, jätke märksõnade vahele tühikud.

Märkus

- Võimalik on sisestada kuni 10 märksõna või kuni 255 tähemärki.
- Suur- ja väiketähti ei eristata.
- Programm on võimeline otsima ka märksõnu, mis sisaldavad tühikuid.
- Mugav viis loetava dokumendi kiireks leidmiseks on sisestada märksõnad järgneval viisil.
 - Et õppida tundma kasutatavat funktsiooni: sisestage selle seadme juhtpaneelil või arvutil kuvatud menüünimi (nt raam kustuta koopja).
 - Et leida selgitus kindla eesmärgiga tehtava operatsiooni teostamiseks: sisestage funktsioon + prinditav ese (nt prindi kalender).

3. Klõpsake Alusta otsimist (Start Searching)

Otsing algab ja märksõnu sisaldavate dokumentide pealkirju näidatakse otsingu tulemuste

loetelus.

Kui teostate otsingut mitut märksõna kasutades, kuvatakse otsingu tulemused alljärgnevalt.

[Täiusliku vastega dokumendid] ([Documents Containing Perfect Match])

Dokumendid, mis sisaldavad otsitavat sõnet (k.a tühikud) täpselt sel kujul, nagu on sisestatud (täpne tabamus)

[Kõigi märksõnadega dokumendid] ([Documents Containing All Keywords])

Dokumendid, mis sisaldavad kõiki sisestatud märksõnu

[Ükskõik millise märksõnaga dokumendid] ([Documents Containing Any Keyword])

Dokumendid, mis sisaldavad vähemalt ühte sisestatud märksõna

4. Teie soovitud dokumendi kuvamine

Topeltklõpsake otsingutulemuste loendis (või valige ning vajutage sisestusklahvile Enter) selle dokumendi pealkirjal, mida soovite lugeda.

Selle pealkirja alla kuuluvate dokumentide kuvamisel on nendes dokumentides leiduvad märksõnad esile tõstetud.



Märkus

- Sisestatud märksõna muutmisel ja korduval otsimisel jääb otsingu ajalugu alles. Otsingu ajaloo kustutamiseks klõpsake , mis asub sättest Märksõna (Keyword) paremal, ja valige säte Tühjenda ajalugu (Clear History), mida kuvatakse.

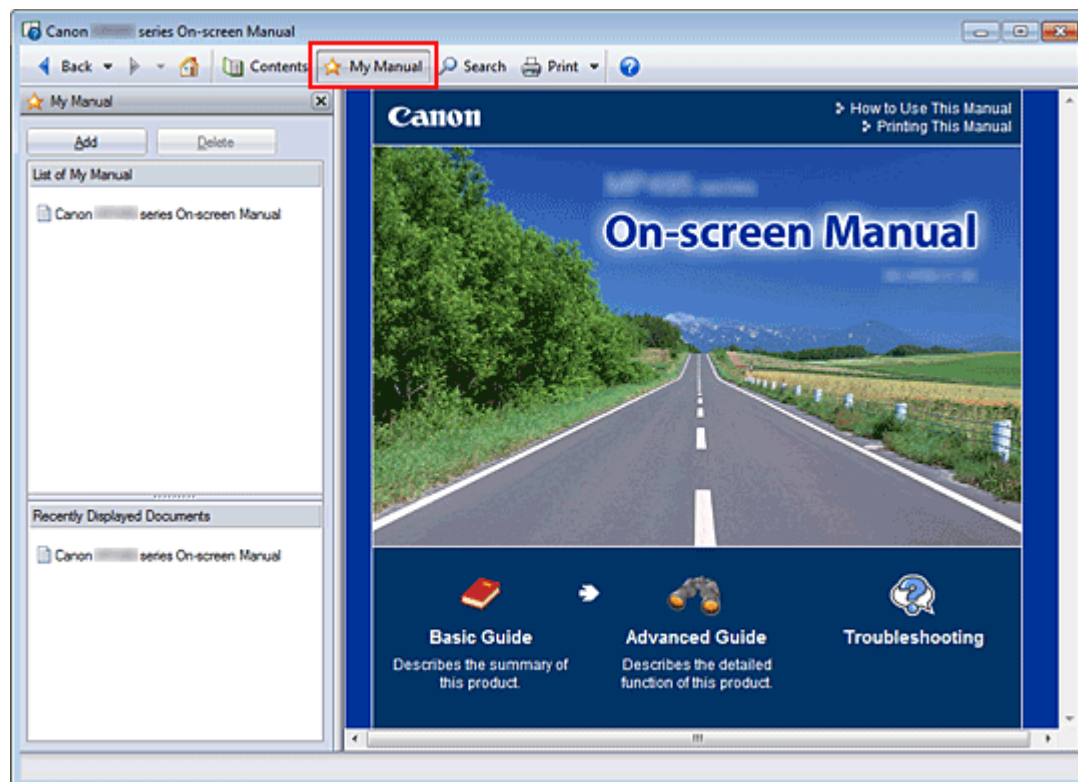
[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Dokumentide kandmine Minu juhendisse

Dokumentide kandmine Minu juhendisse

Märkige sageli vaadatavad lehed Minu juhendi dokumentidena, et teil oleks nendele lehtedele igal ajal hõlbus juurdepääs.



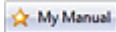
1. Kuva dokument

Kuva dokument, mida Minu juhendisse lisada.

2. Klõpsake

Minu juhendi paan on elektroonilisest juhendist vasakul.

Märkus

- Klõpsake  Minu juhendi paani sulgemiseks või kuvamiseks.

3. Dokumendi kandmine Minu juhendisse

Klõpsake Lisa (Add).

Hetkel kuvatud dokumendi pealkiri lisatakse sättesse Minu juhise loend (List of My Manual).

Märkus

- Dokumente saate lisada Minu juhendisse ka järgmisel viisil. Kui lisate dokumendi Minu juhendisse, ilmub sisukorra paanis asuvate dokumentide ikoonidele märk .
 - Topeltklõpsake nimekirjas Hiljuti kuvatud dokumendid (Recently Displayed Documents) dokumendi pealkirjale, mida soovite Minu juhendisse lisada (või valige dokument ja vajutage klahvi Enter), pealkirja kuvamiseks ning klõpsake seejärel Lisa (Add).
 - Klõpsake hiire parempoolse klahviga sisukorra paanil kuvatud dokumendi pealkirjale või tehke paremklops selgitaval aknal ning seejärel valige paremklopsuga avanenud menüüst Lisa minu juhisesse (Add to My Manual).
 - Valige sisukorra paanil dokumendi pealkiri, mida tahate Minu juhendisse lisada, ja klõpsake Lisa minu juhisesse (Add to My Manual) paani alumises paremas nurgas.

4. Minu juhendi kuvamine

Kui topeltklõpsate (või valite ja vajutate sisestusklahvile Enter) dokumendi pealkirjal, mida kuvatakse aknas Minu juhise loend (List of My Manual), siis kuvatakse seda dokumenti selgitavas aknas.



Märkus

- Dokumendi kustutamiseks loendist Minu juhise loend (List of My Manual) valige loendist dokumendi pealkiri ja klõpsake seejärel Kustuta (Delete) (või vajutage klahvi Delete).

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Juhendis kasutatavad tingmärgid

Juhendis kasutatavad tingmärgid

Hoiatus!

Juhised, mille eiramisel võivad hälbed seadme töös põhjustada surma või tõsiseid kehavigastusi. Seadme ohutuks kasutamiseks tuleb antud juhiseid järgida.

Ettevaatust

Juhised, mille eiramisel võivad hälbed seadme töös põhjustada kehavigastusi või materiaalist kahju. Seadme ohutuks kasutamiseks tuleb antud juhiseid järgida.

Tähtis!

Olulist teavet sisaldavad juhised. Lugege need juhised kindlasti läbi.

Märkus

Juhised hõlmavad tööga seotud märkusi ja täiendavaid selgitusi.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Käesoleva juhendi kasutamine > Kaubamärgid ja litsentsid

Kaubamärgid ja litsentsid

- Microsoft on ettevõtte Microsoft Corporation registreeritud kaubamärk.
- Windows on ettevõtte Microsoft Corporation kaubamärk, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja teistes riikides.
- Windows Vista on ettevõtte Microsoft Corporation kaubamärk, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja/või teistes riikides.
- Internet Explorer on ettevõtte Microsoft Corporation kaubamärk, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja/või teistes riikides.
- Macintosh ja Mac on ettevõtte Apple Inc. kaubamärgid, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja teistes riikides.
- Bonjour on ettevõtte Apple Inc. kaubamärk, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja teistes riikides.
- Adobe, Adobe Photoshop, Adobe RGB ja Adobe RGB (1998) on ettevõtte Adobe Systems Incorporated registreeritud kaubamärgid, mis on registreeritud USA-s ja/või teistes riikides.



Märkus

- Windows Vista ametlik nimi on operatsioonisüsteem Microsoft Windows Vista.

Exif Print

See seade toetab Exif Print'i.

Exif Print on digitaalkaamerate ja printerite ühenduse täiendamise standard. Exif Print'iga ühilduva digitaalkaamera ühendamisel kasutatakse kaamera kujutise pildistamishetke andmeid ning need optimeeritakse kõrgekvaliteetsete trükiste loomiseks.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Arvutist printimine

Arvutist printimine

- ➡ Printimine sidustarkvaraga
- ➡ Printimine muu rakendustarkvaraga

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > [Printimine sidustarkvaraga](#)

Printimine sidustarkvaraga

- ➡ [Mis on Easy-PhotoPrint EX?](#)
- ➡ [Fotode printimine](#)
- ➡ [Albumi loomine](#)
- ➡ [Kalendrite printimine](#)
- ➡ [Kleebiste printimine](#)
- ➡ [Prindipaigutus](#)
- ➡ [Fotode parandamine ja töötlemine](#)
- ➡ [Videotest piltide loomine](#)
- ➡ [Piltide allalaadimine fotode jagamise saitidelt](#)
- ➡ [Küsimused ja vastused](#)
- ➡ [Foto printimise sätted](#)
- ➡ [Muud sätted](#)

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

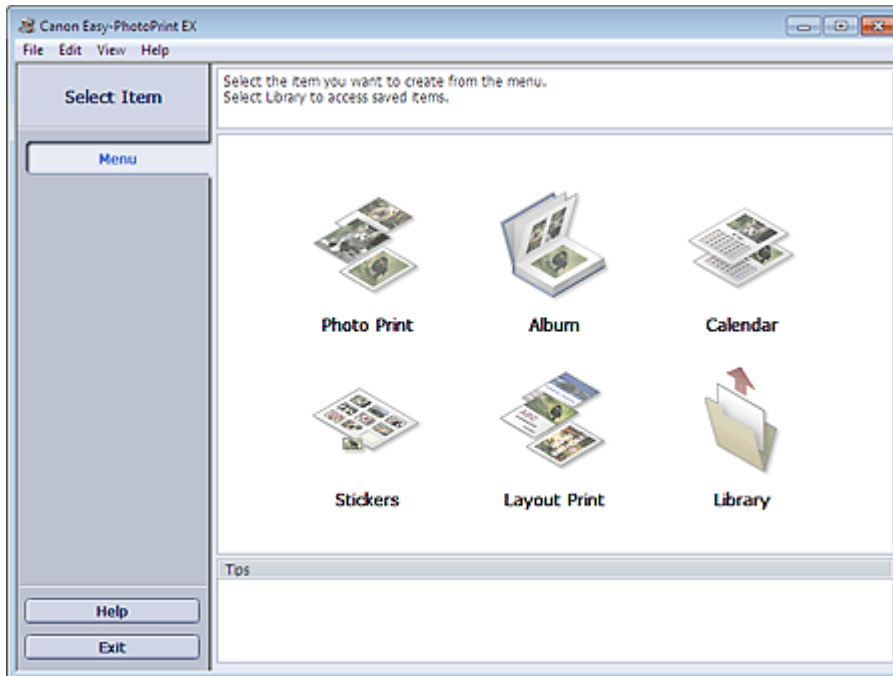
A000

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

What Is Easy-PhotoPrint EX?

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.



Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX can only be used with Canon inkjet printers. It does not support some Canon compact photo printers, including SELPHY CP series.
- If a printer that supports Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, you cannot print items you create.
- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed on a computer that already has Easy-LayoutPrint installed, Easy-LayoutPrint will be replaced by Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Note

- See Help of Easy-PhotoPrint EX for descriptions of Easy-PhotoPrint EX screens. Click Help in a screen or dialog box, or select Easy-PhotoPrint EX Help... from the Help menu. Help appears.

About Exif Print

Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports "Exif Print." Exif Print is a standard for enhancing the communication between digital cameras and printers.

By connecting to an Exif Print-compliant digital camera, the image data at the time of shooting is used and optimized, yielding extremely high quality prints.

Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX from Other Applications

Easy-PhotoPrint EX can be started from other applications.

See the application's manual for details on the procedure for starting.

- MP Navigator EX Ver.1.00 or later supports the following functions.
 - Photo Print
 - Album
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.0 or later supports the following functions.
 - Photo Print
 - Album
- ZoomBrowser EX Ver.5.8 or later supports the following function.
 - Album
- Digital Photo Professional Ver.3.2 or later supports the following function.
 - Photo Print

Important

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX is subject to the following restrictions when started from Digital Photo Professional:
 - Menu and Open do not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.
 - Images cannot be corrected/enhanced.
 - Image display order cannot be changed.
 - Edited images cannot be saved.
 - Options other than Enable ICC Profile cannot be selected for Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box. Therefore, you cannot use the Vivid Photo and Photo Noise Reduction functions.

- Solution Menu EX Ver.1.0.0 or later supports the following functions.
 - Photo Print
 - Album
 - Calendar
 - Layout Print

Important

- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started by selecting a function from Solution Menu EX, Menu does not appear in the step button area on the left side of the screen.

Supported Image/Video Data Formats (Extensions)

- BMP (.bmp)
- JPEG (.jpg, .jpeg)
- TIFF (.tif, .tiff)
- PICT (.pict, .pct)
- Easy-PhotoPrint image files (.epp)
- MOV (.mov)

Important

- Only MOV format videos recorded with Canon digital cameras are supported.
- When selecting an image, if there is a TIFF file in the selected folder, the image may not be displayed correctly or Easy-PhotoPrint EX may shut down depending on the TIFF format. In such cases, move the TIFF file to another folder or recreate the file in a different data format, and then select the folder again.

Note

- The thumbnails of files in unsupported formats are displayed as  (Question Mark).
- When Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from Digital Photo Professional, all image files supported by Digital Photo Professional will be displayed.

File Formats (Extensions) Supported by Easy-PhotoPrint EX

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
- Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos

A010

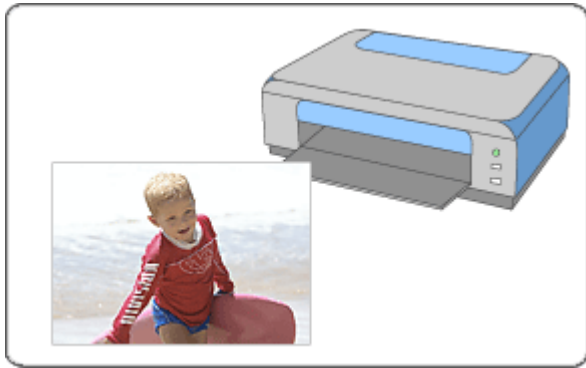
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Photos

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to print your favorite photos in a variety of layouts.

You can also create borderless photos easily.

Corrections suitable for photos can be applied automatically when printing.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting a Photo
3. Selecting the Paper
4. Printing

Try This

- ➡ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- ➡ Printing Vivid Photos
- ➡ Reducing Photo Noise
- ➡ Cropping Photos (Photo Print)
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)
- ➡ Printing Multiple Photos on One Page
- ➡ Printing an Index
- ➡ Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)
- ➡ Printing Photo Information
- ➡ Saving Photos
- ➡ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➡ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- ➡ Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?
- ➡ How Do I Print with Even Margins?

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A011

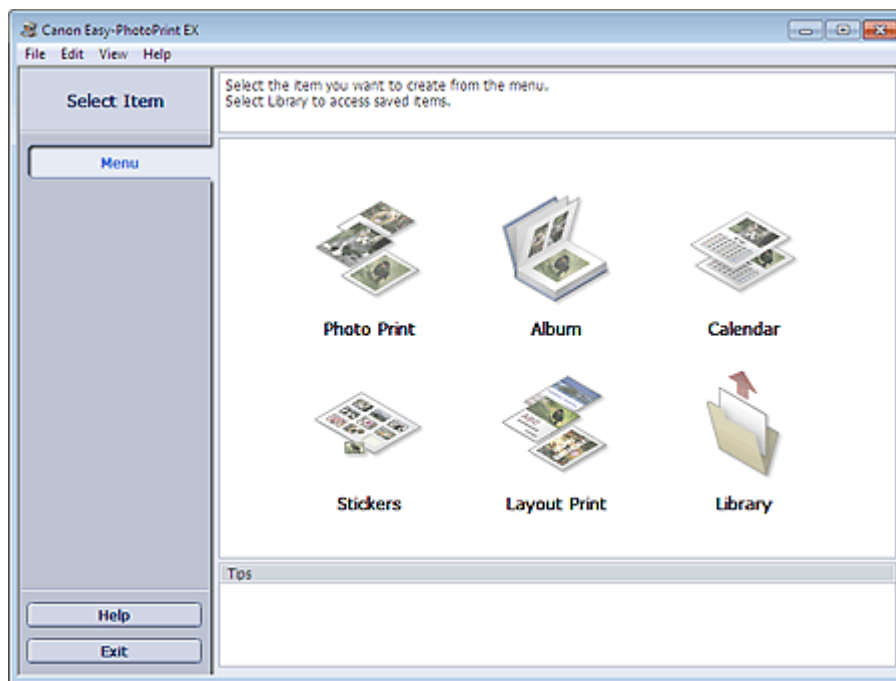
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Selecting a Photo

A012

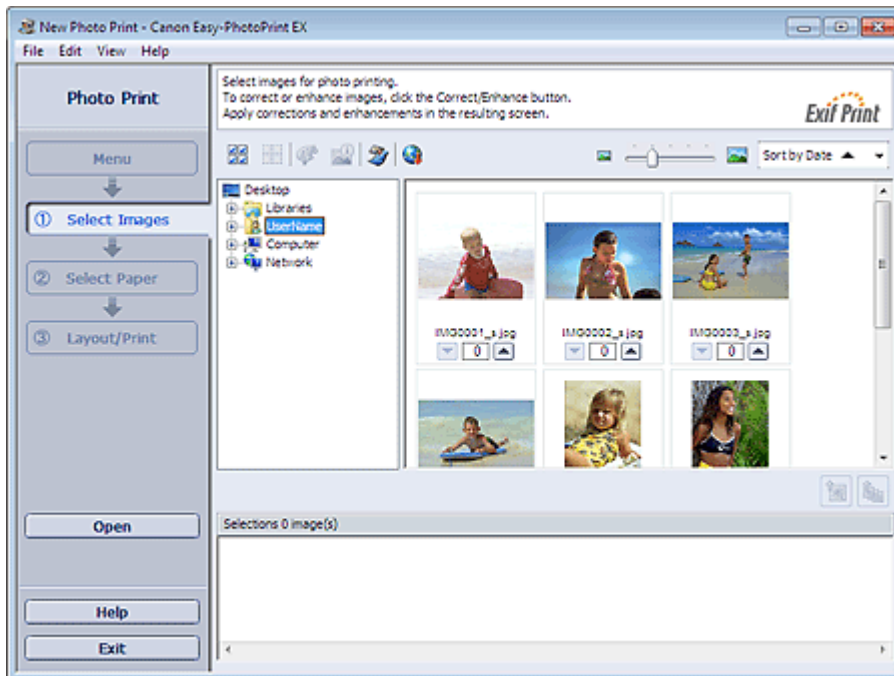
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting a Photo

1. Click Photo Print from Menu.

The Select Images screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
 - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
 - An edge of the image appears cropped.
 However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX, ZoomBrowser EX or Digital Photo Professional), the folder tree area will not be displayed. The images selected in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
 - ➡ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
 - ➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

3. Click the image you want to print.

The number of copies appears as "1" below the clicked image, while the selected image itself will appear in the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click



(Delete All Imported Images).

- To print two or more copies of an image, click  (Up arrow) until the number of copies you want is reached. To reduce the number of copies shown in the box, click  (Down arrow).
 - You can change the order of photos using the list located at the top right corner of the screen. You can select the printing order from Sort by Date and Sort by Name.
-

Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
 - See Help for details on the Select Images screen.
-



[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Selecting the Paper

A013

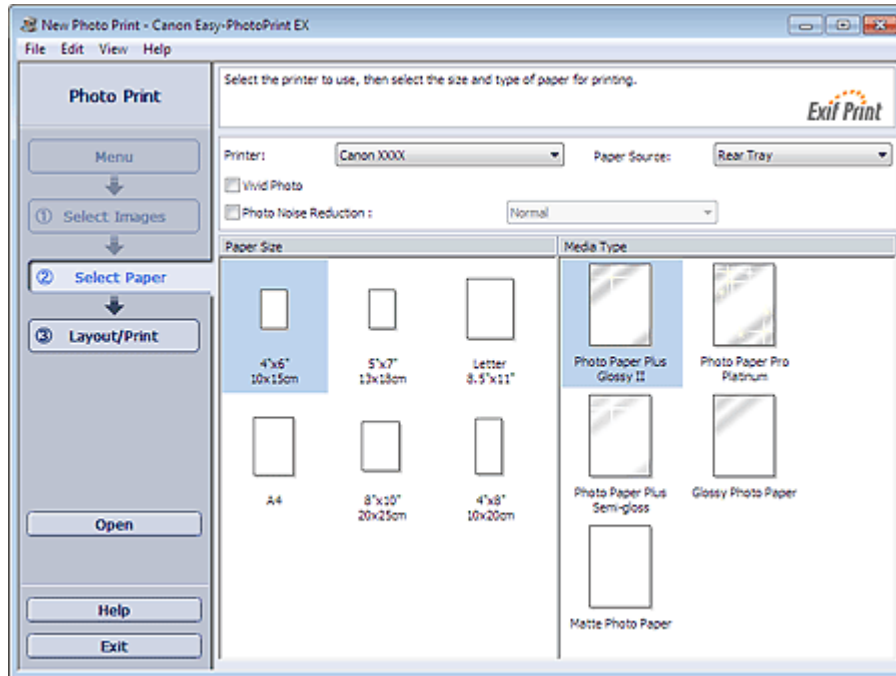
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting the Paper

1. Click Select Paper.

The Select Paper screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Paper Source

Paper Size

Media Type



Note

- The paper sizes and media types may vary depending on the printer. See Help for details.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.



Note

- You can print photos with more vivid colors or you can reduce the photo noise.
 - ➡ [Printing Vivid Photos](#)
 - ➡ [Reducing Photo Noise](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Paper screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Photos > Printing

A014

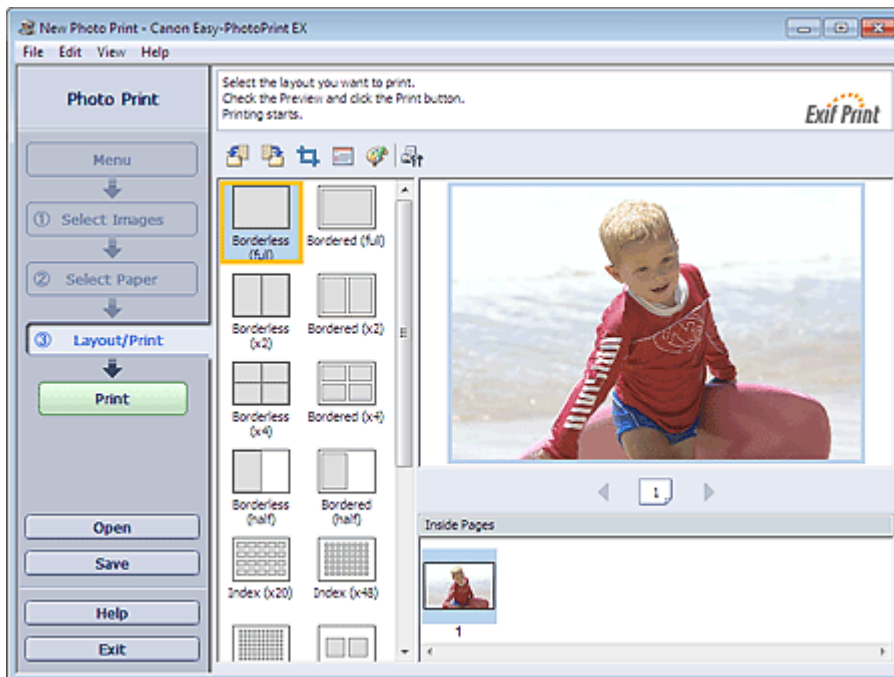
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing

1. Click Layout/Print.

The Layout/Print screen appears.



Important

- The thumbnails (reduced images) displayed in the screen may appear as follows:
 - A black line appears along an edge of the image.
 - An edge of the image appears cropped.
 However, such images will be displayed normally when enlarged or previewed, and print results will not be affected.

2. Select a layout you want to use.

Click a borderless layout to print borderless photos.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the printer, paper size, and media type.

3. Click Print.

Important

- The photo print settings will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the settings. It is recommended that you save the printed image if you want to print it again.
 - ➡ **Saving Photos**
- When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other.

➡ How Do I Print with Even Margins?

Note

- You can crop images or print dates on photos.
 - ➡ [Cropping Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)
 - ➡ [Printing Dates on Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)
 - You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
 - You can specify advanced Photo Print settings (number of copies, print quality, etc.) in the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.
 - See Help for details on the Layout/Print screen.
-



[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

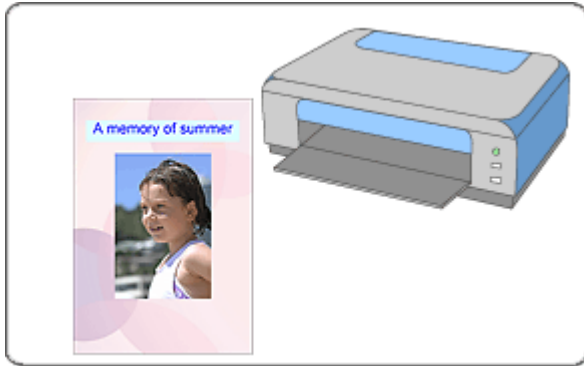
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album

A020

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Creating an Album

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own personalized photo album.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➡ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Changing Background
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Framing Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Attaching Comments to Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos
- ➡ Saving
- ➡ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➡ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?
- ➡ What Is "C1" or "C4"?

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A021

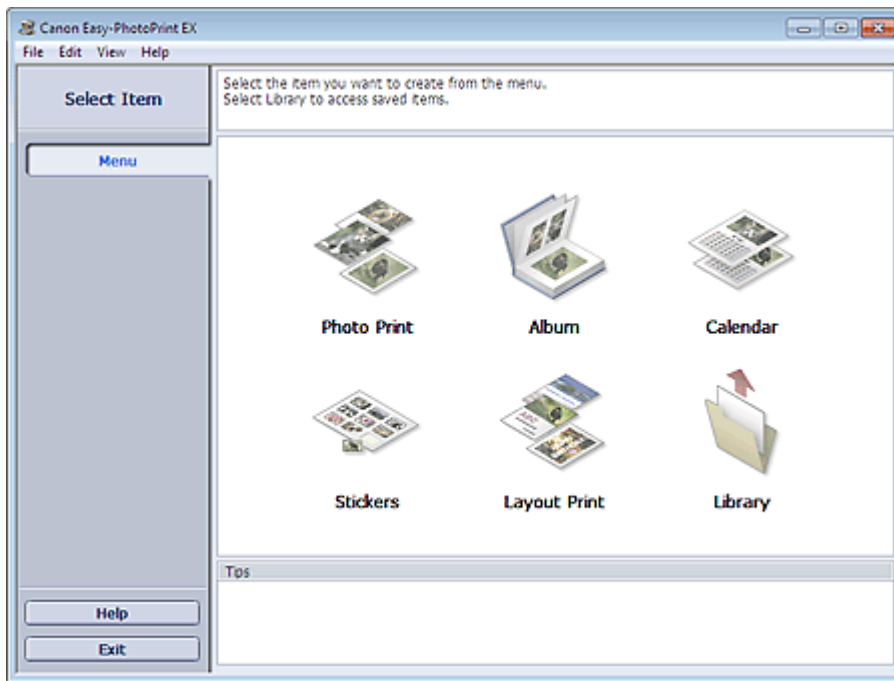
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Selecting the Paper and Layout

A022

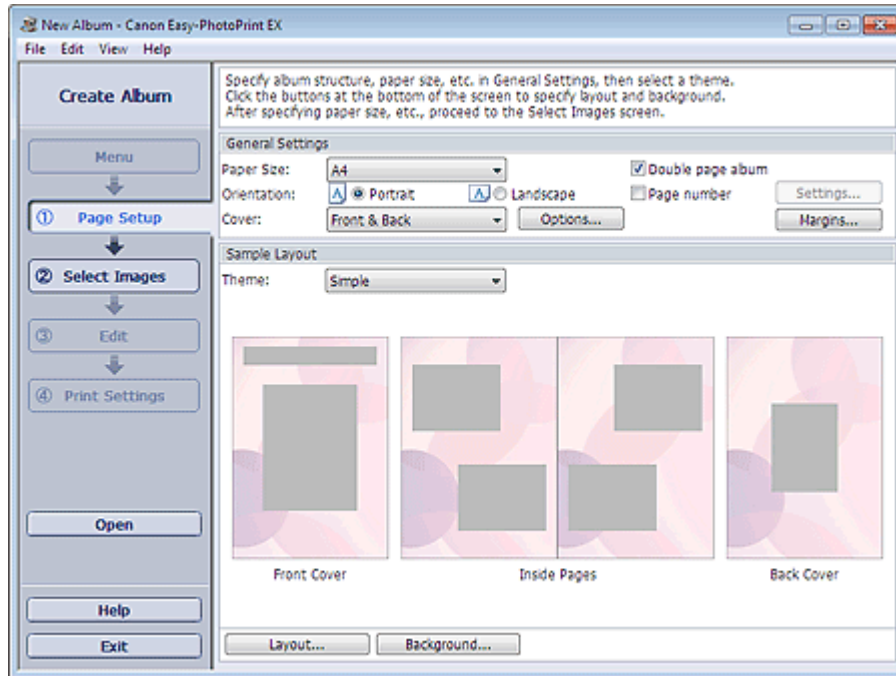
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Album from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Cover

Double page album

Page number



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can select whether to display images on the inside of the front and back covers in the Cover Options dialog box. To display the Cover Options dialog box, select Front or Front & Back for Cover and click Options....
- Select the Double page album checkbox to enable the spread page layout (consisting of two-page master). In a double-page album, you can arrange an image across the left and right pages.
- You can customize the page numbers (position, font size, etc.) in the Page Number Settings dialog box. To display the Page Number Settings dialog box, select the Page number checkbox and click Settings....
- You can customize the margins of the front cover, inside pages and back cover in the Margin Settings dialog box. To display the Margin Settings dialog box, click Margins....

3. Select the theme you want to use from Theme in Sample Layout.

4. If you want to change the layout, click Layout....

The Change Layout dialog box appears.

In the Change Layout dialog box, you can change the layout or select whether to print the date (on which the picture was taken) on the photo.



Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, Double page album, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
 - You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox in the Change Layout dialog box and click Date Settings....
-

5. If you want to change the background, click Background....

The Change Background dialog box appears.

In the Change Background dialog box, you can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it.



Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.
-



[Page top](#)[↗]

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Selecting a Photo

A023

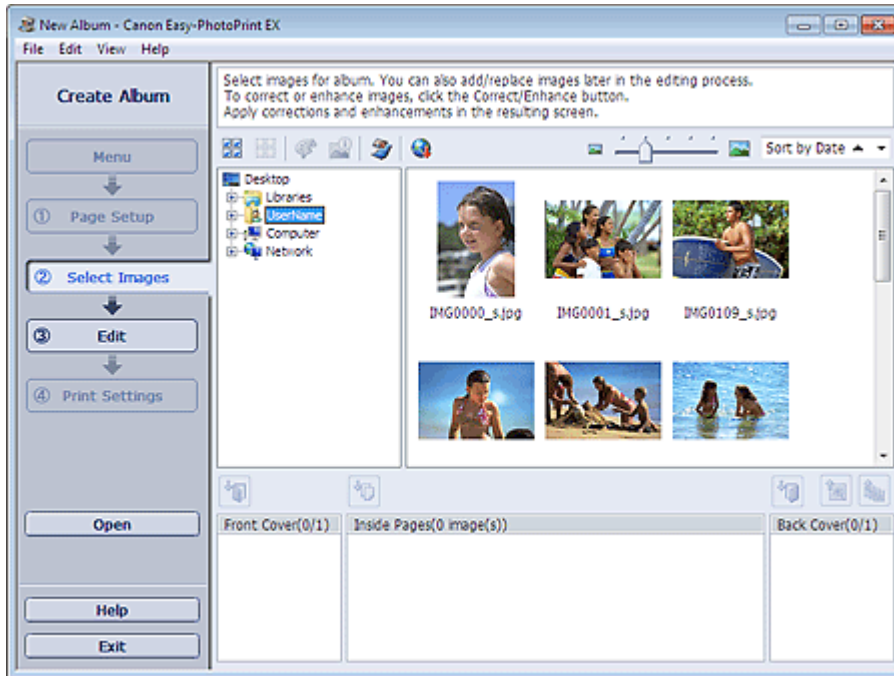
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).



Important

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started from another application (MP Navigator EX or ZoomBrowser EX), the folder tree area will not be displayed. The images selected in the application will be displayed as thumbnails.



Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
➡ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

3. Select the image(s) you want to print, and click one of the buttons below.

To print on the front cover, click  (Import to Front Cover).

To print on the inside pages, click  (Import to Inside Pages).

To print on the back cover, click  (Import to Back Cover).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.



Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click



(Delete All Imported Images).



Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.



[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Editing

A024

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit your album if necessary.

- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Changing Background
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Framing Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Attaching Comments to Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos

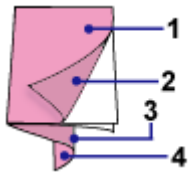
Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited album. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.

The page numbers on the front and back covers of the album are displayed as follows:

C1: Front cover

C2: Inside the front cover



C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover

- "C2"/"C3" appears only when the Leave the inside of front cover blank/Leave the inside of back cover blank checkbox is selected in the Cover Options dialog box.

➔ Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Page top 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating an Album > Printing

A025

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print each page of the album on a full page without borders.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.**Note**

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars

A040

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Calendars

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create your own calendar using your favorite photos.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➡ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Changing Background
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Framing Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos
- ➡ Setting Calendar Display
- ➡ Setting Holidays
- ➡ Saving

➡ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

➡ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A041

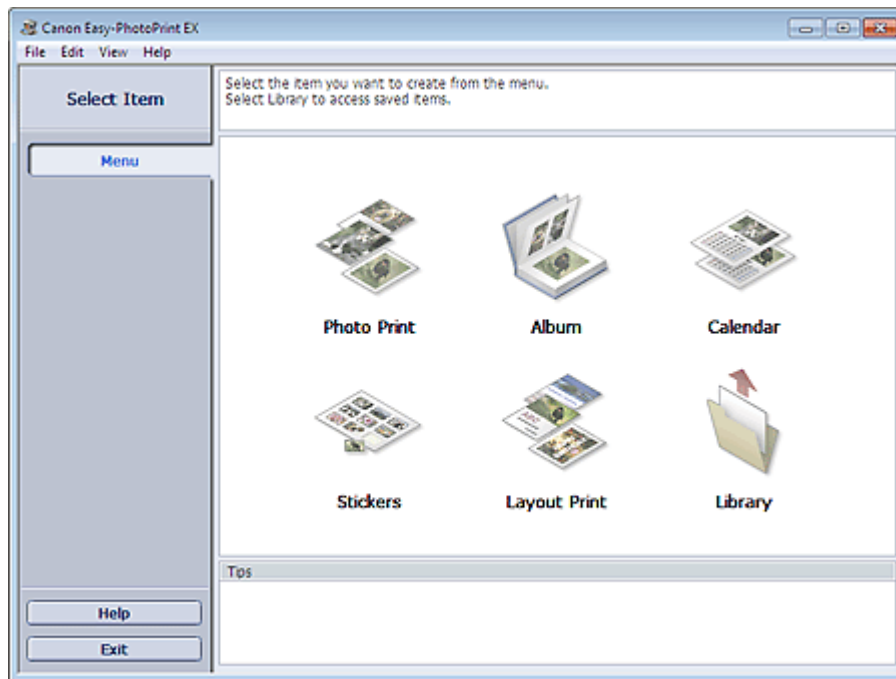
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Selecting the Paper and Layout

A042

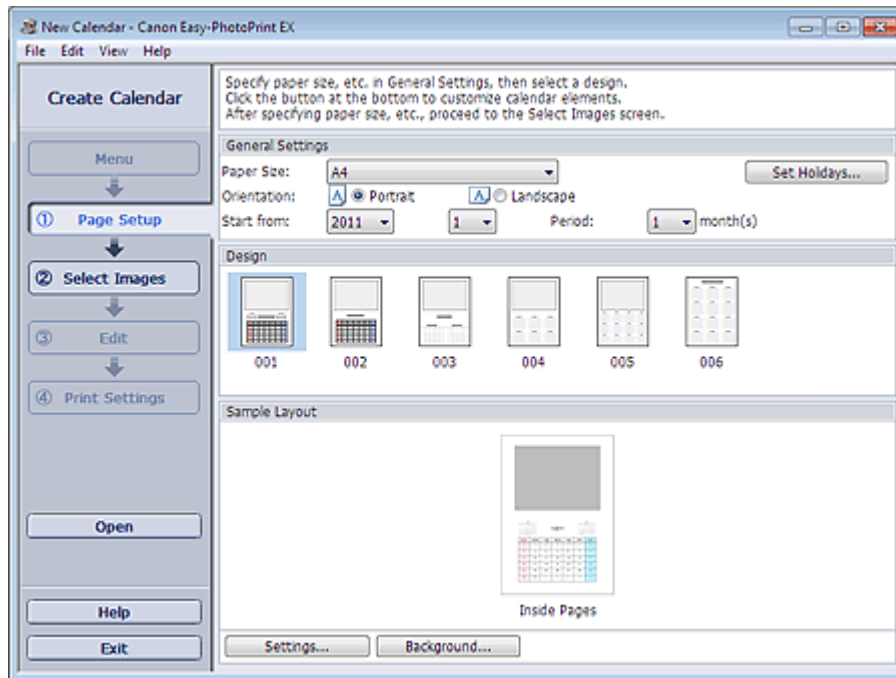
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Calendar from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Start from

Period



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can add holidays to your calendar.
➡ [Setting Holidays](#)

3. Select a layout for Design.

If necessary, make advanced settings on the calendar and set the background.



Note

- You can customize the calendar display (font colors of the dates and days of the week, position and size of the calendar, etc.).
➡ [Setting Calendar Display](#)
- You can paint the background in a single color or paste an image file to it in the Change Background dialog box. To display the Change Background dialog box, click Background....

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Selecting a Photo

A043

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
➡ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click



(Delete All Imported Images).

 Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Editing

A044

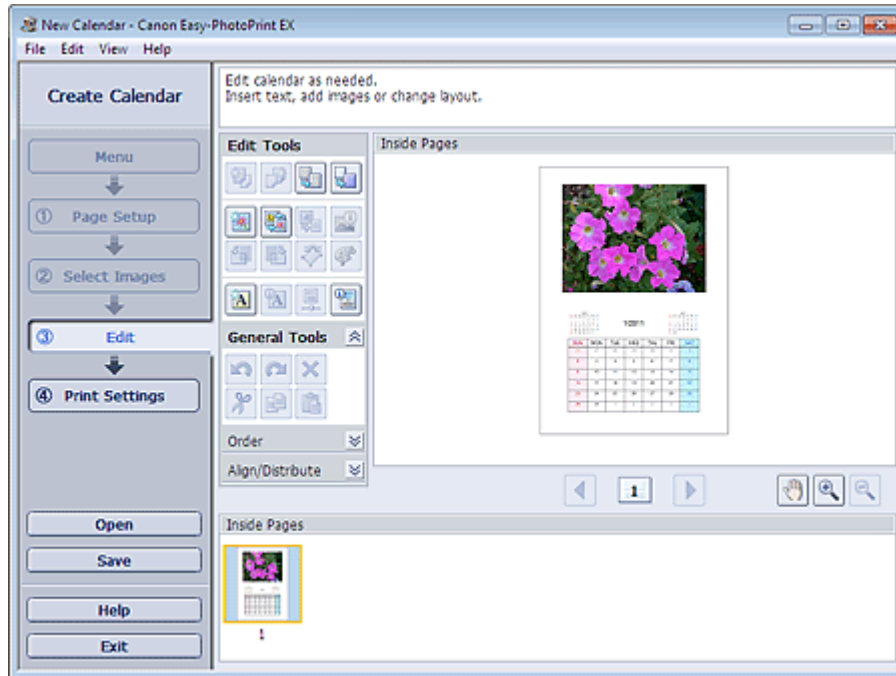
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the calendar if necessary.

- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Changing Background
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Framing Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos
- ➡ Setting Calendar Display
- ➡ Setting Holidays

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited calendar. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.

- ➡ Saving

Note

■ See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Page top↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Calendars > Printing

A045

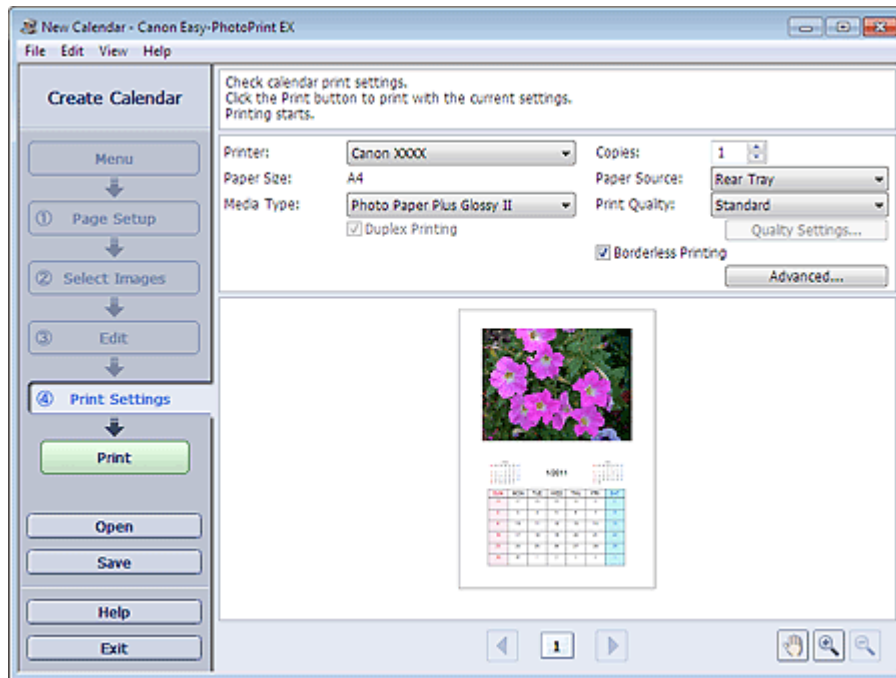
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.
-



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers

A050

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Stickers

You can print your favorite photos on compatible sticker sheets.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➡ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos
- ➡ Saving
- ➡ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

- ➡ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A051

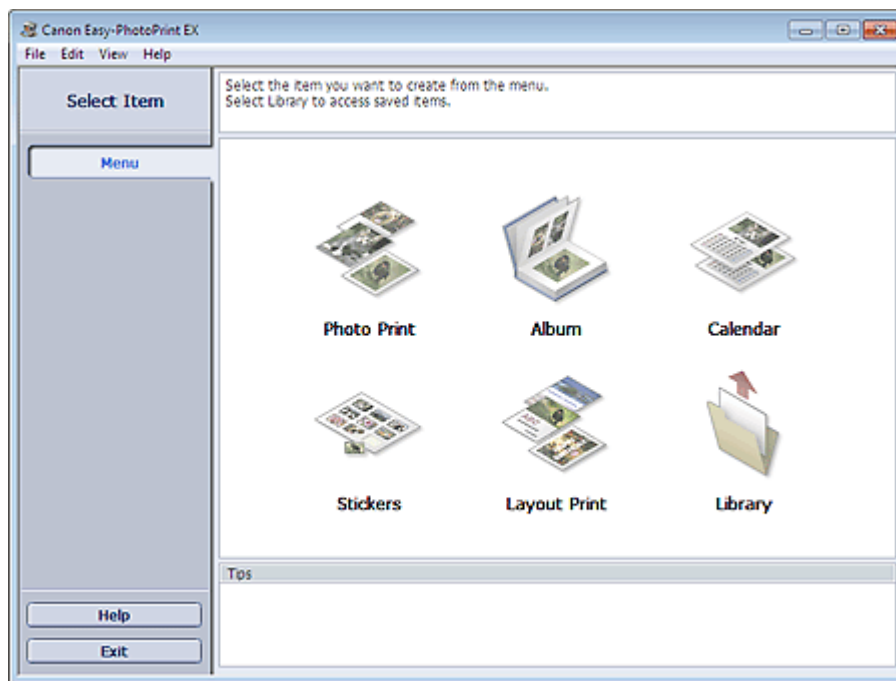
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Selecting the Paper and Layout

A052

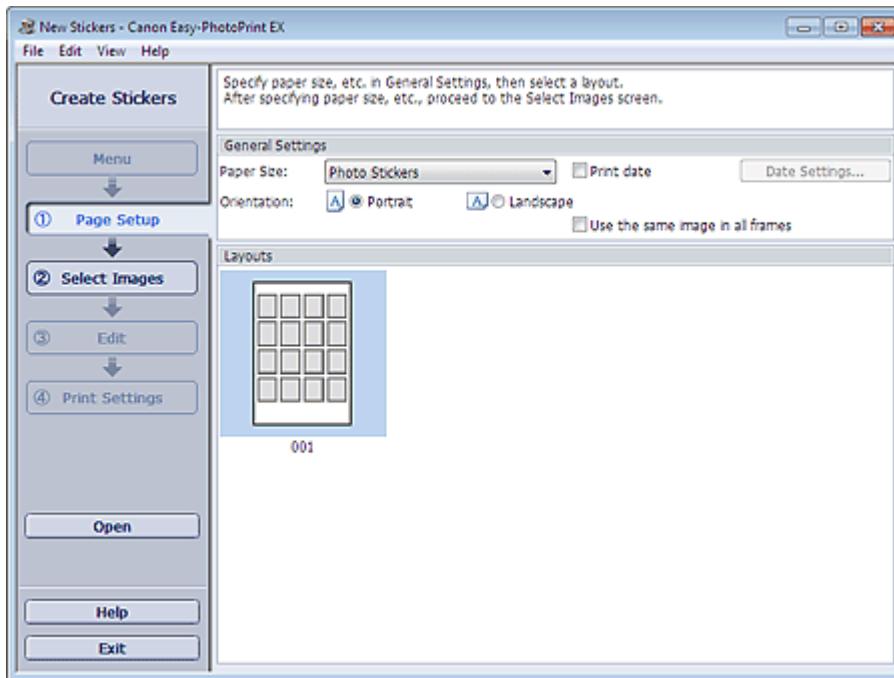
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Stickers from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date

Use the same image in all frames

Note

- Paper sizes other than Photo Stickers cannot be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....
- Select the Use the same image in all frames checkbox to use the same image in all the frames on the page.

Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Selecting a Photo

A053

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
➡ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

 Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Editing

A054

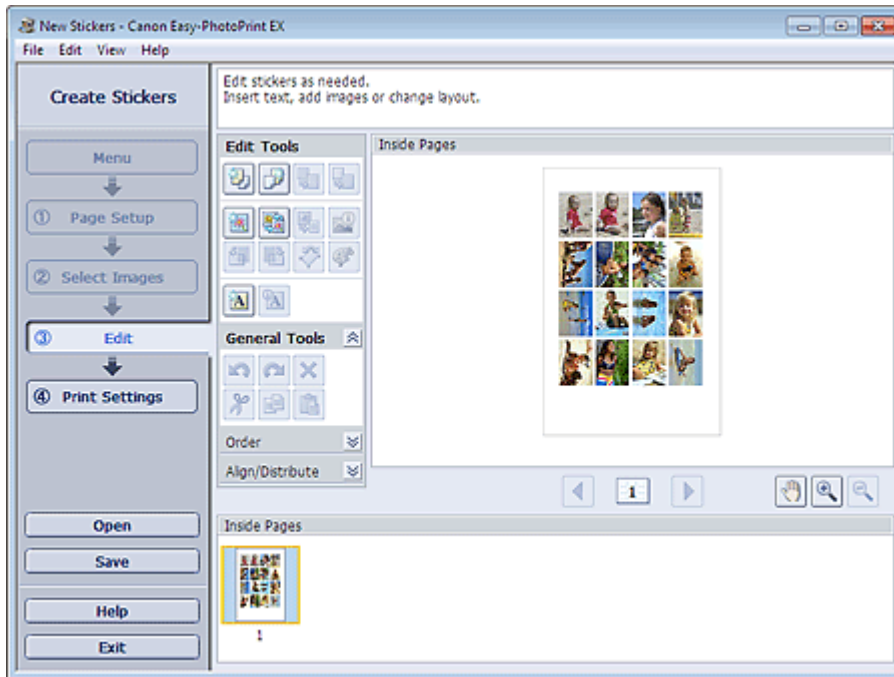
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the stickers if necessary.

- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited stickers. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
- ➡ Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Stickers > Printing

A055

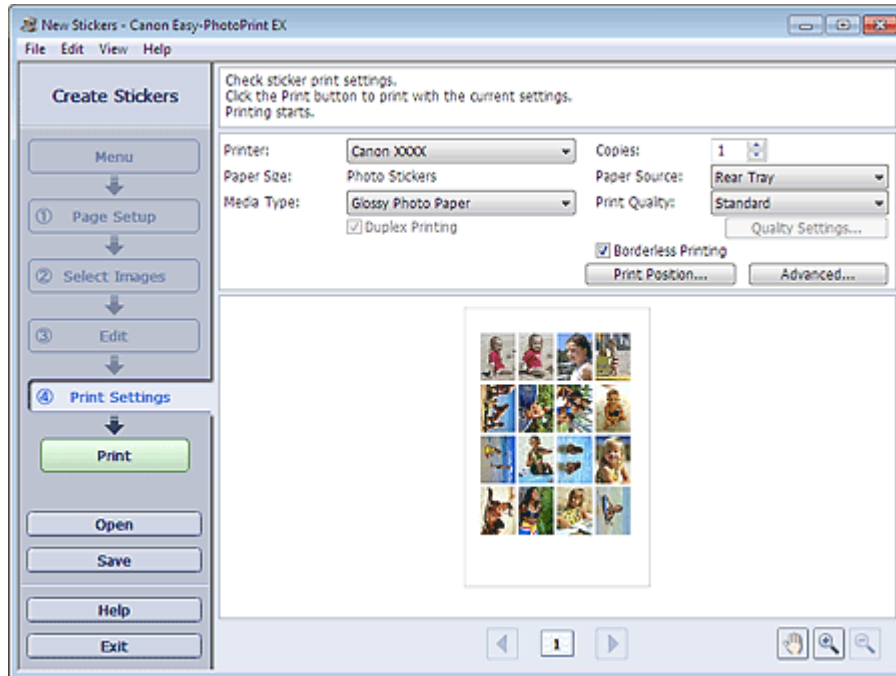
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

Printer

Media Type

Copies

Paper Source

Print Quality

Borderless Printing



Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- You can adjust the printing position in the Adjust Print Position dialog box. To display the Adjust Print Position dialog box, click Print Position....
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.



Note

■ See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



Page top 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout

A150

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Printing Layout

You can add text to your favorite photos and print them in a variety of layouts.



Steps

1. Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX
2. Selecting the Paper and Layout
3. Selecting a Photo
4. Editing
5. Printing

Try This

- ➡ Correcting and Enhancing Photos
- ➡ Creating Still Images from Videos
- ➡ Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites
- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos
- ➡ Saving
- ➡ Opening Saved Files

Questions and Answers

➡ How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

Page top↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A151

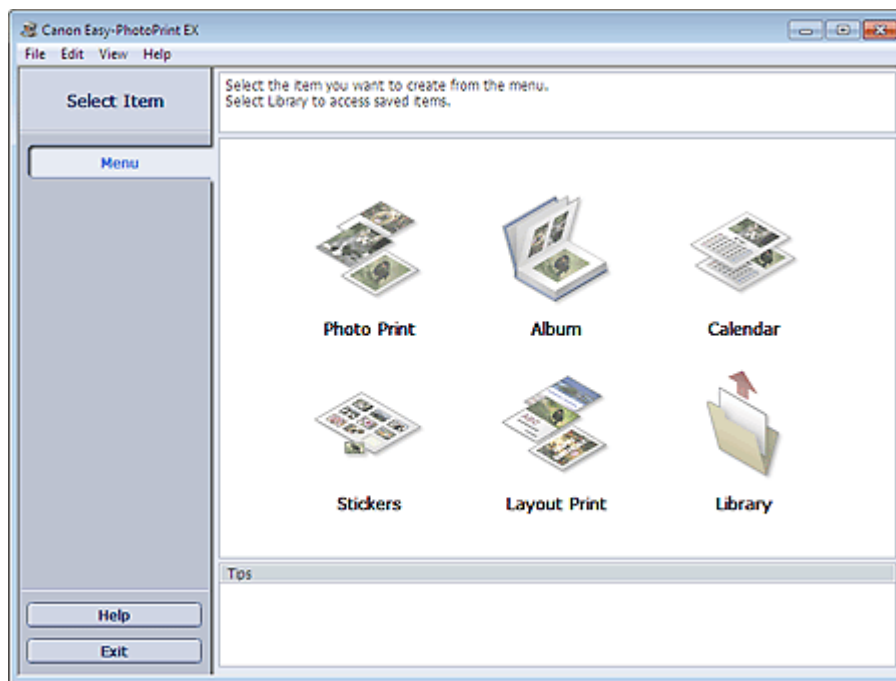
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Starting Easy-PhotoPrint EX

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > Easy-PhotoPrint EX > Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts and Menu appears.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Selecting the Paper and Layout

A152

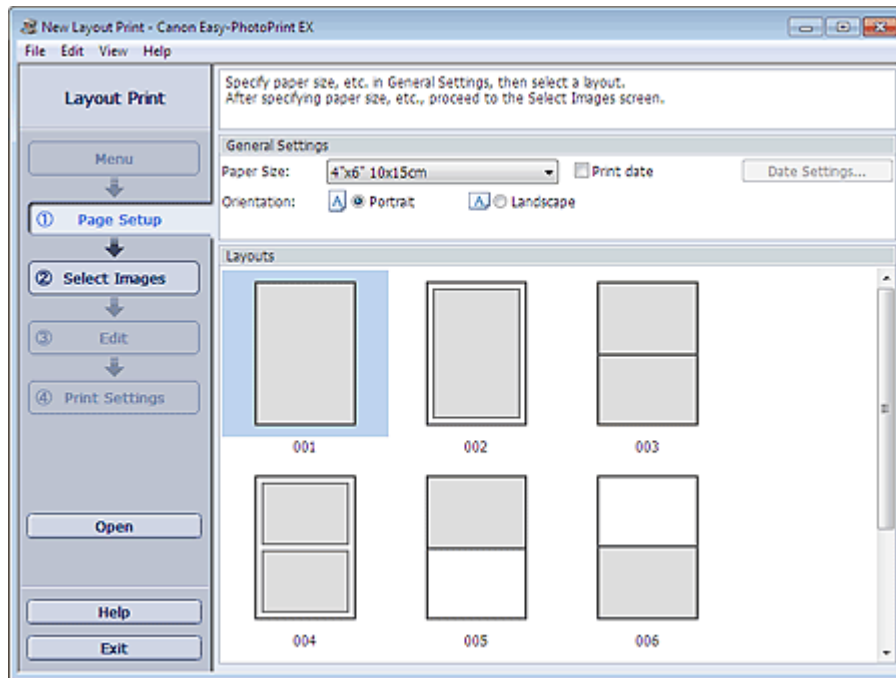
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting the Paper and Layout

1. Click Layout Print from Menu.

The Page Setup screen appears.



2. Set the following items in the General Settings section:

Paper Size

Orientation

Print date



Note

- See Help on the paper size that can be selected.
- You can customize the date (position, size, color, etc.) in the Date Settings dialog box. To display the Date Settings dialog box, select the Print date checkbox and click Date Settings....

3. Select a layout from Layouts.



Note

- The layouts may vary depending on the Orientation.



Note

- See Help for details on the Page Setup screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Selecting a Photo

A153

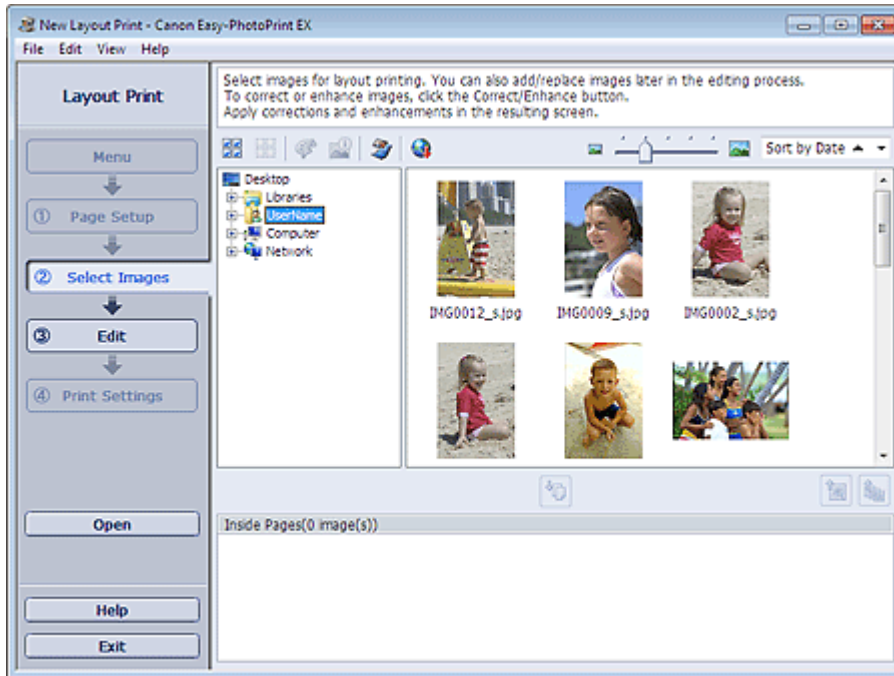
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Selecting a Photo

1. Click Select Images.

The Select Images screen appears.



2. Select the folder that contains the image you want to print from the folder tree area.

The images in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

Note

- You can also use still images captured from videos.
➡ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
➡ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

3. Select the image(s) you want to print and click (Import to Inside Pages).

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the selected image area.

You can also select the image(s) you want to print by dragging it (them) into the selected image area.

Note

- To delete an image in the selected image area, select the image you want to delete and click



(Delete Imported Image).

To delete all images from the selected image area, click  (Delete All Imported Images).

 Note

- You can correct or enhance the selected image before printing.
 - ➡ [Correcting and Enhancing Photos](#)
- See Help for details on the Select Images screen.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Editing

A154

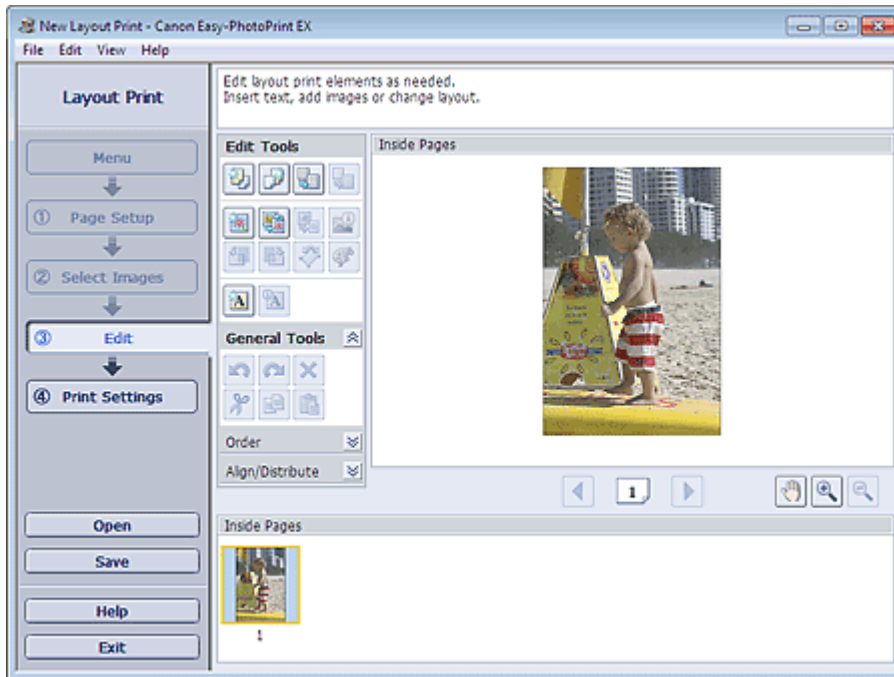
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Editing

1. Click Edit.

The Edit screen appears.



2. Edit the layout if necessary.

- ➡ Changing Layout
- ➡ Adding Photos
- ➡ Swapping Positions of Photos
- ➡ Replacing Photos
- ➡ Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos
- ➡ Cropping Photos
- ➡ Printing Dates on Photos
- ➡ Adding Text to Photos

Important

- The edit information will be discarded if you exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX without saving the edited layout. It is recommended that you save the item if you want to edit it again.
- ➡ Saving

Note

- See Help for details on the Edit screen.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Printing Layout > Printing

A155

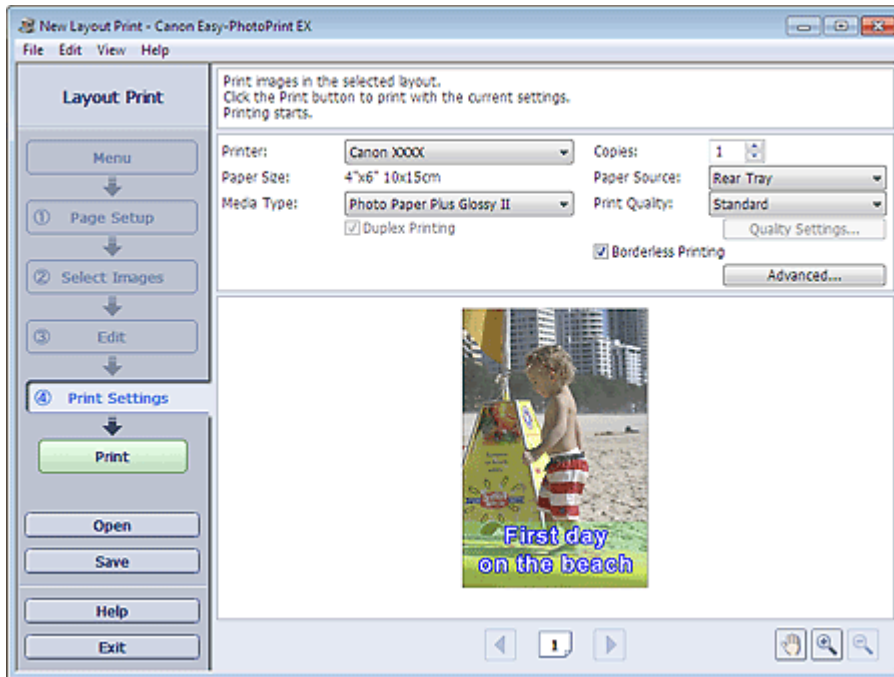
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing

1. Click Print Settings.

The Print Settings screen appears.



2. Set the following items according to the printer and paper to be used:

- Printer
- Media Type
- Copies
- Paper Source
- Print Quality
- Borderless Printing

Note

- The media types may vary depending on the printer and the paper size.
- Duplex Printing appears if the selected printer and media type support duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper.
- Automatic appears if you select the Duplex Printing checkbox after selecting a printer that supports automatic duplex printing and media type that supports duplex printing. Select this checkbox to print on both sides of the paper automatically.
- The paper sources may vary depending on the printer and the media type.
- You can set a custom print quality level in the Print Quality Settings dialog box. To display the Print Quality Settings dialog box, select Custom for Print Quality and click Quality Settings....
- Select the Borderless Printing checkbox to print borderless photos.
- You can specify the print range and the amount of extension for borderless printing in the Print Settings dialog box. To display the Print Settings dialog box, click Advanced....

3. Click Print.

Note

- See Help for details on the Print Settings screen.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos

A060

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correcting and Enhancing Photos

You can correct and enhance images.

Click  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print. You can make the following corrections and enhancements in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Important

- For Photo Print, if you select Enable ICC Profile in the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box, you cannot correct/enhance images.

Note

- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Auto Photo Fix

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

➡ [Using the Auto Photo Fix Function](#)

Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

➡ [Using the Red-Eye Correction Function](#)

Face Brightener Function

You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

➡ [Using the Face Brightener Function](#)

Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

➡ [Using the Face Sharpener Function](#)

Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

➡ [Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function](#)

Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

➡ [Using the Blemish Remover Function](#)

Image Adjustment

You can adjust brightness and contrast or sharpen the entire image.

You can also blur the outline of the subjects or remove the base color.

➡ [Adjusting Images](#)

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

A066

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Auto Photo Fix Function

This function will automatically analyze the captured scene and apply suitable corrections.

Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing, by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

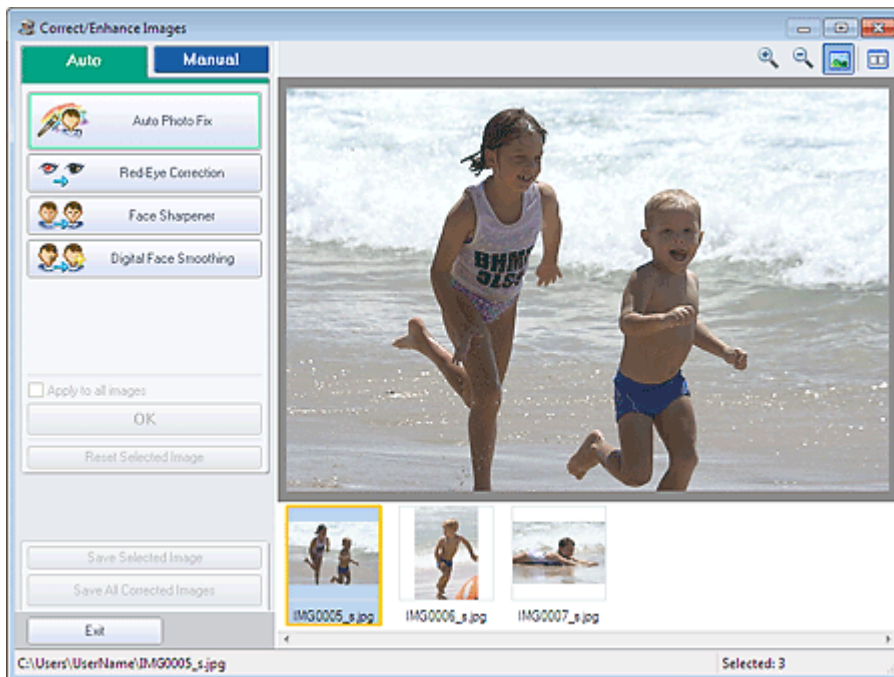
To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix.

Also, Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.



Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Auto Photo Fix, then click OK.

The entire photo is corrected automatically and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.



Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.
- Select the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.
Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.



Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

6. Click Exit.



Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

A061

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Red-Eye Correction Function

You can correct red eyes caused by a camera flash.

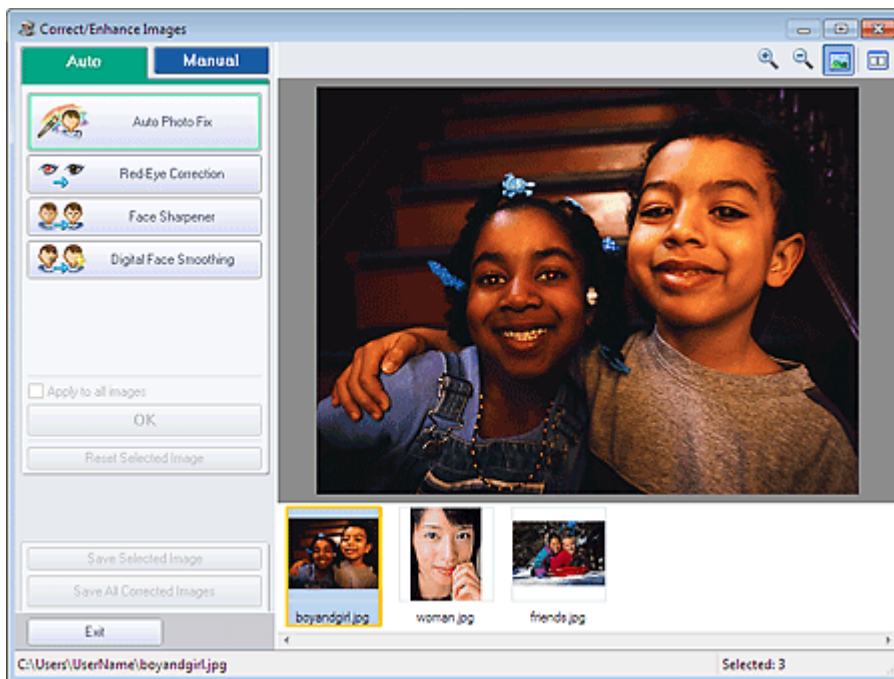
You can perform the Red-Eye Correction function either automatically or manually.

Note

- Photo Print allows you to automatically correct red eyes when printing. To correct automatically, select Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and select the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

- Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

- Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.
4. Click Red-Eye Correction.
5. Click OK.

Red eyes are corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Important

- Areas other than the eyes may be corrected depending on the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

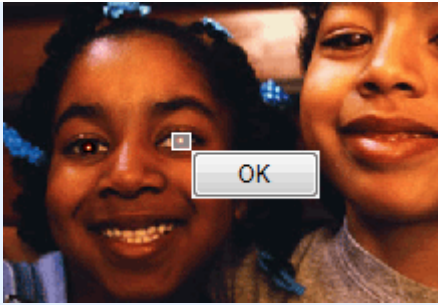
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.
4. Click Red-Eye Correction.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Red-Eye Correction.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Paintbrush).

5. Drag to select the red area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



Red eye is corrected and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Face Brightener Function

A062

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Face Brightener Function

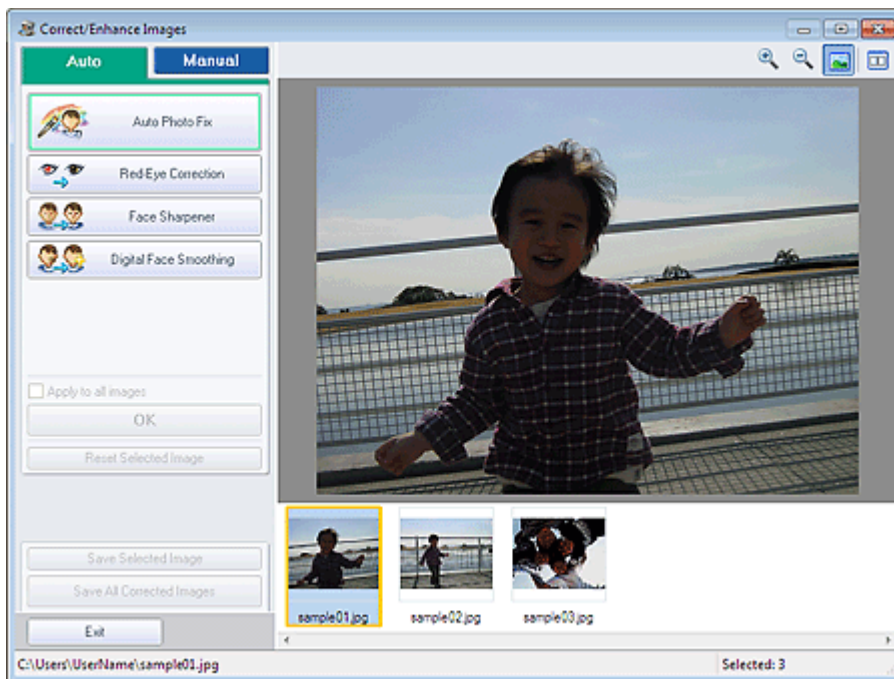
You can brighten dark faces caused by bright background.

Note

- You can brighten dark photos caused by bright background automatically by selecting Auto Photo Fix. If the correction had not been made sufficiently, applying Face Brightener function is recommended.
➡ [Using the Auto Photo Fix Function](#)

- Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

- Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

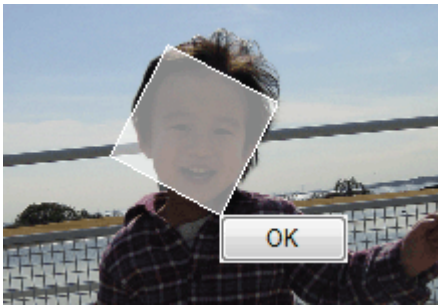
4. Click Face Brightener.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Brightener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to **+** (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The entire image is corrected so that the selected area containing the face becomes brighter, and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

 Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Face Sharpener Function

A063

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

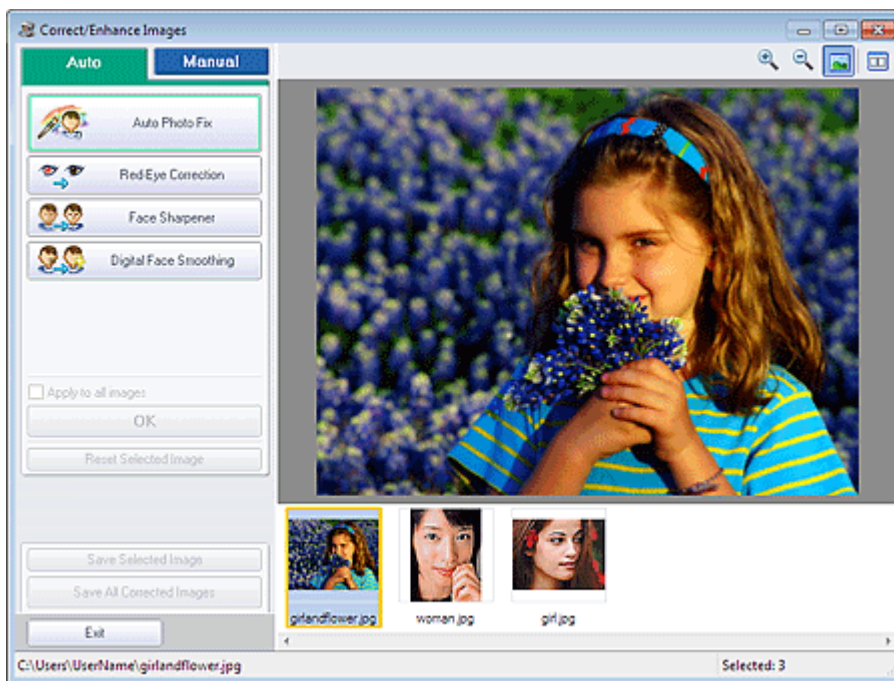
Using the Face Sharpener Function

You can sharpen out-of-focus faces in a photo.

You can perform the Face Sharpener function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to correct from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Correction

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Face Sharpener.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.

5. Click OK.

The face is sharpened and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction operation.
- If you want to apply the correction to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Correction

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

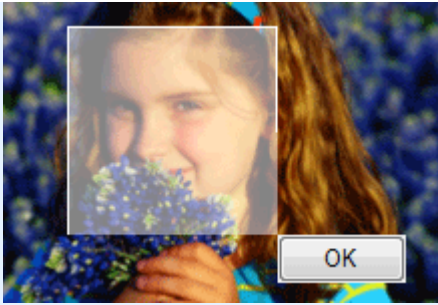
4. Click Face Sharpener.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Face Sharpener.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to correct, then click OK that appears over the image.



The facial area in and around the selected area is sharpened and the 🍏 (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the correction side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding correction operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for corrected images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections will be lost if you exit before saving corrected images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

A064

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Digital Face Smoothing Function

You can enhance skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can perform the Digital Face Smoothing function either automatically or manually.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

Auto Enhancement

3. Make sure that Auto is selected.

4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.

Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.

5. Click OK.

Skin is enhanced beautifully and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

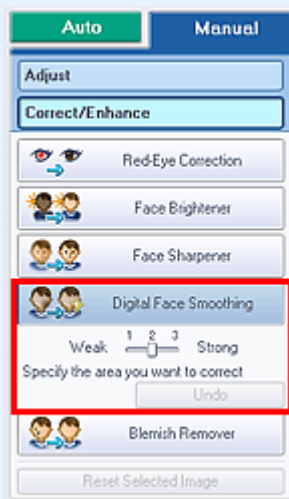
Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the enhancement operation.
- If you want to apply the enhancement to all the selected images at once, select the Apply to all images checkbox.

Manual Enhancement

3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.

4. Click Digital Face Smoothing.



Note

- Effect levels can be changed using the slider below Digital Face Smoothing.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to  (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Skin in and around the selected area is enhanced beautifully and the 🌈 (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the selected area.
- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Using the Blemish Remover Function

A065

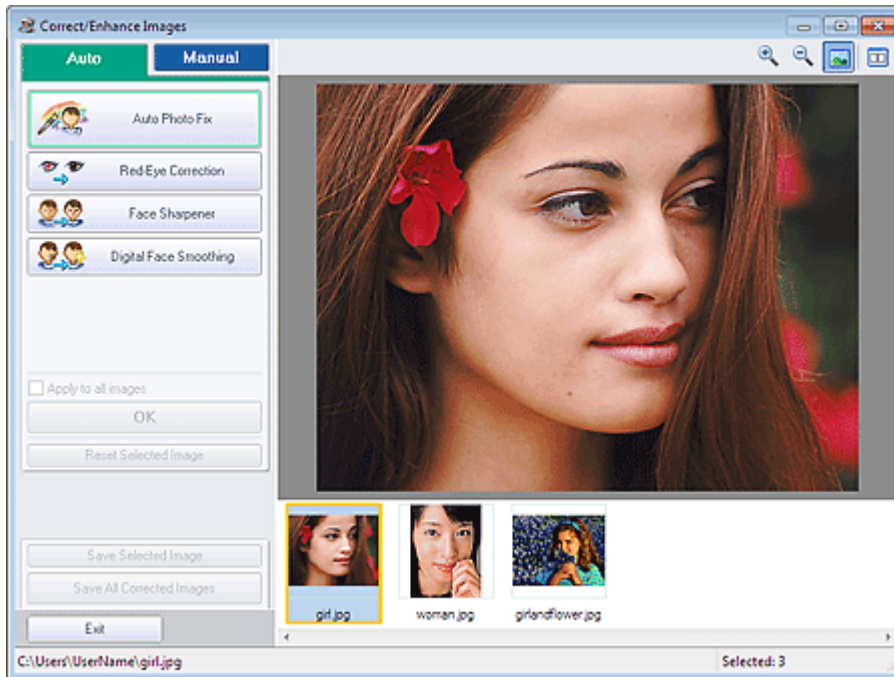
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using the Blemish Remover Function

You can remove moles.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to enhance from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

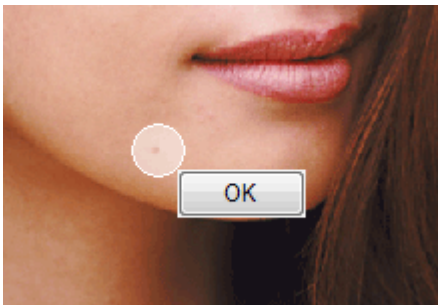
3. Click Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.
4. Click Blemish Remover.



Note

- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to **+** (Cross).

5. Drag to select the area you want to enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



Moles in and around the selected area are removed and the  (Correction/Enhancement) mark appears on the upper left of the image.

Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the enhancement side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Undo to undo the preceding enhancement operation.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for enhanced images.

7. Click Exit.

Important

- The enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving enhanced images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Adjusting Images

A067

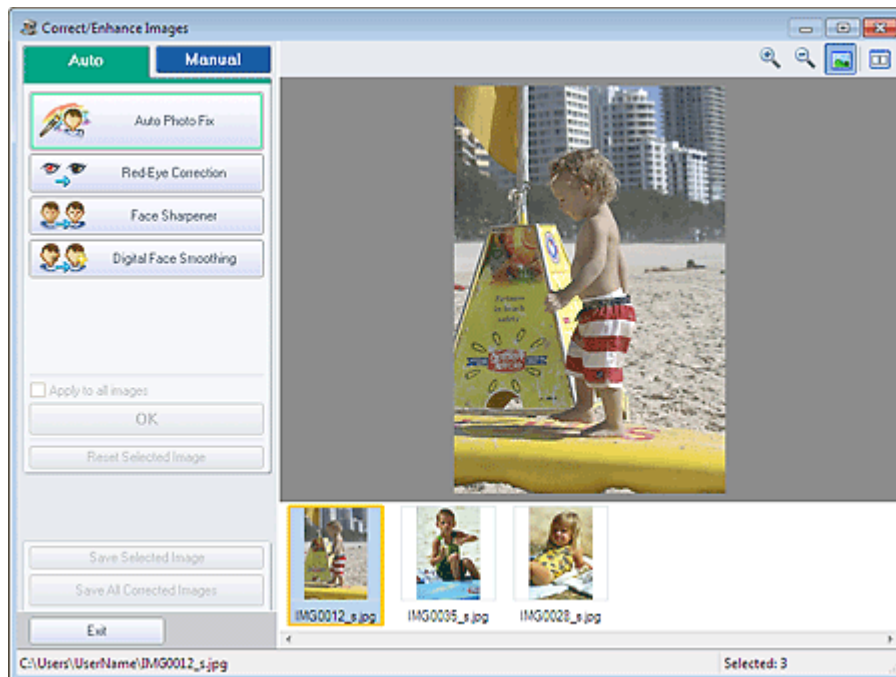
Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Adjusting Images

You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Select photos in the Select Images screen, then click  (Correct/Enhance Images).

The Correct/Enhance Images window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Correct/Enhance Images window by clicking  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Layout/Print or Edit screen. In that case, only the image displayed in Preview can be adjusted.
- See "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

2. Select the image you want to adjust from the thumbnail list in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

The image appears in Preview.

Note

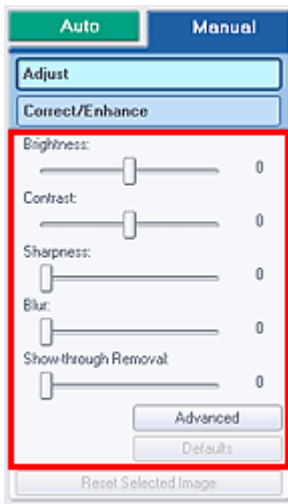
- If only one image is selected, the thumbnail list does not appear below Preview.

3. Click Manual, then click Adjust.
4. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

The following adjustments are available:

Brightness

Contrast
Sharpness
Blur
Show-through Removal



Note

- Click  (Compare) to display the images before and after the adjustment side by side so that you can compare and check the result.
- Click Advanced to make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone. See "[Advanced](#)" in the descriptions of the Correct/Enhance Images window for details.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.

5. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the image you like, click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for adjusted images.

6. Click Exit.

Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Correcting and Enhancing Photos > Correct/Enhance Images Window

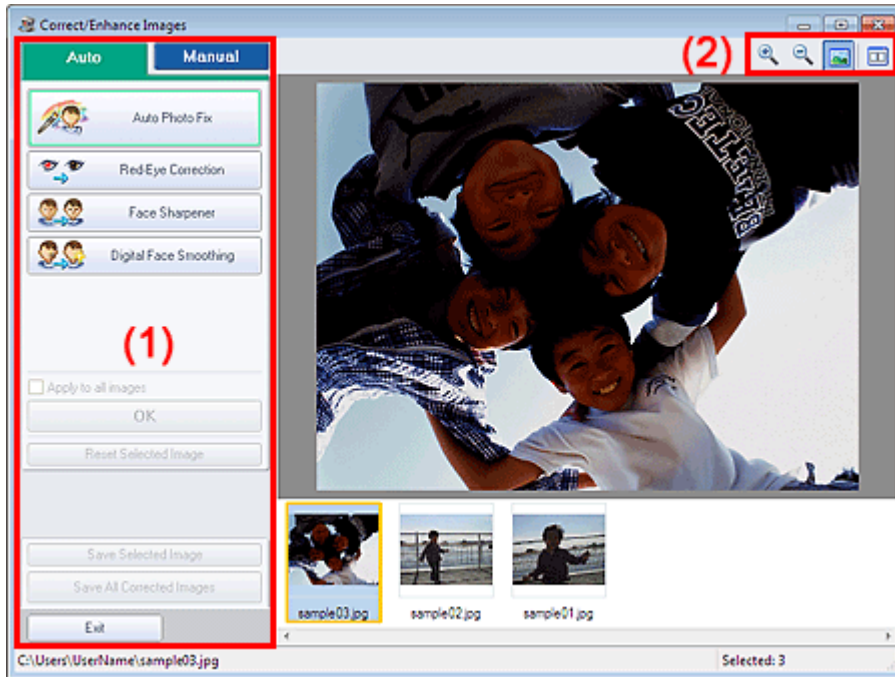
A068

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

You can correct/enhance images in this window.

To display the Correct/Enhance Images window, click  (Correct/Enhance Images) in the Select Images or Edit screen, or in the Layout/Print screen of Photo Print.



(1) Task Area

(2) Toolbar

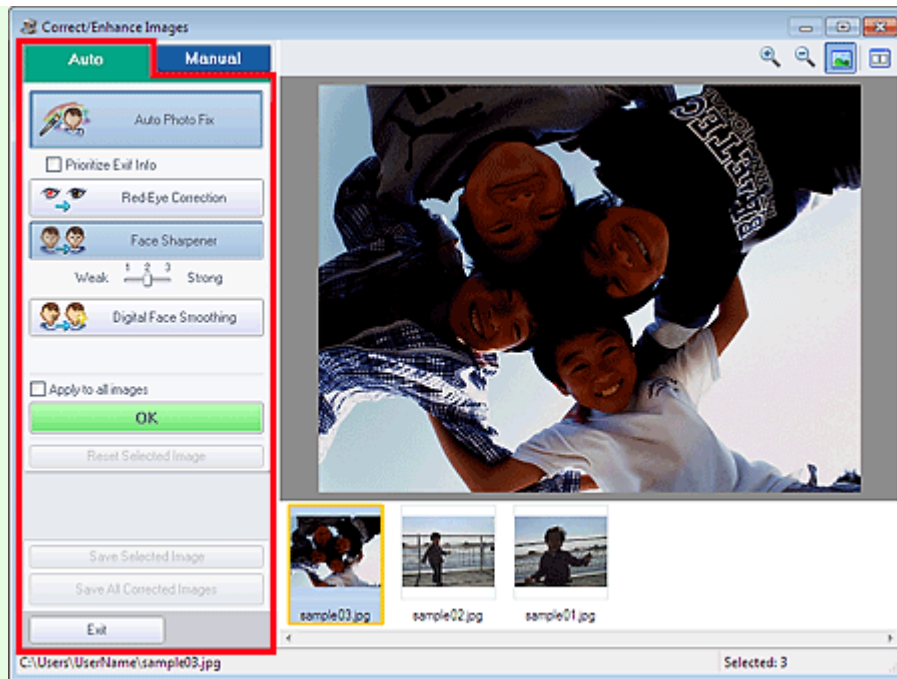
(1) Task Area

Available tasks and settings may vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click the Auto or Manual tab to display the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Use the functions in the Auto tab to apply corrections and enhancements to the entire image.



Auto Photo Fix

Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.



Important

- The Auto Photo Fix function is not available for Photo Print. Photo Print allows you to automatically apply suitable corrections to all photos when printing, by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Prioritize Exif Info

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.

Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.



Note

- Exif is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).
- For Photo Print, you can apply suitable corrections based on Exif information automatically by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Prioritize Exif Info checkbox.

Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes.



Note

- For Photo Print, you can also automatically correct red eyes by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox.

Face Sharpener

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Apply to all images

Automatically corrects/enhances all images displayed in the thumbnail list.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

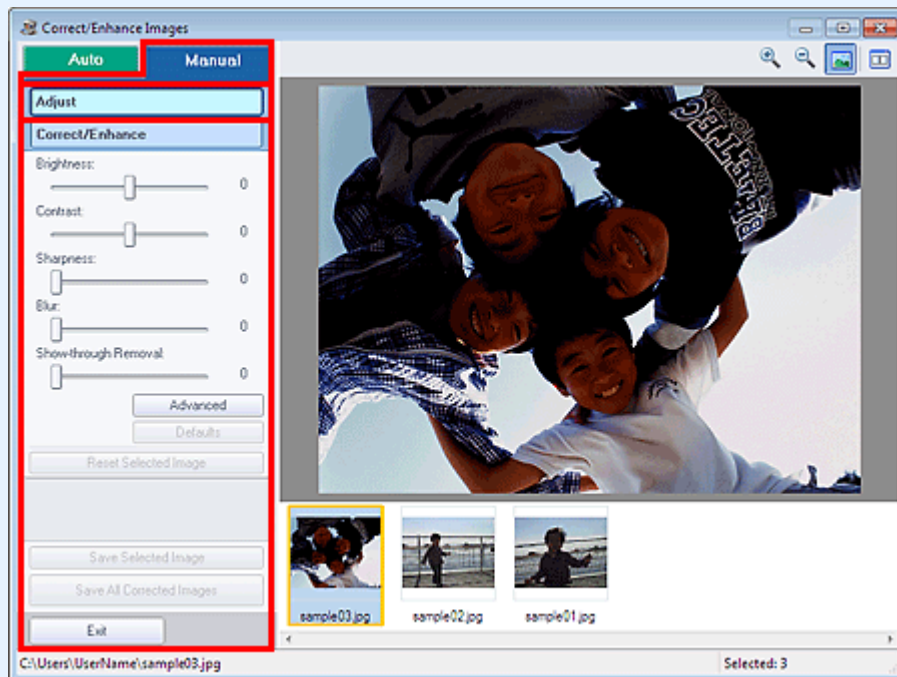
Manual Tab

There are two menus on the Manual tab: Adjust and Correct/Enhance.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

Adjust



Brightness

Adjusts the overall image brightness.

Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Contrast

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.

Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Sharpness

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.

Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

Blur

Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.

Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

Show-through Removal

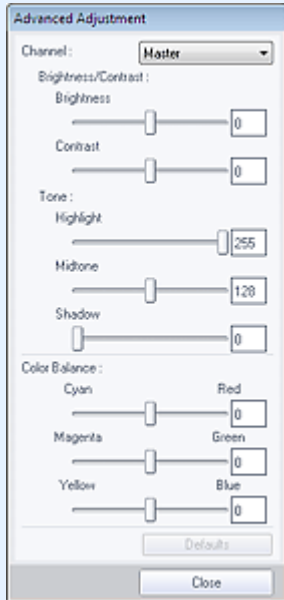
Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.

Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

Advanced

Opens the Advanced Adjustment dialog box in which you can make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone.

For Brightness/Contrast and Tone, select a color in Channel to adjust either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to adjust three colors together.



Brightness/Contrast

Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image.

Move the Brightness slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Move the Contrast slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

Tone

Adjust the brightness balance by specifying Highlight (the brightest level), Shadow (the darkest level) and Midtone (the color in the middle of Highlight and Shadow).

Move the Highlight slider to the left to brighten the image.

Move the Midtone slider to the left to brighten and right to darken the image.

Move the Shadow slider to the right to darken the image.

Color Balance

Adjust the vividness and color tone of the image.

Move the Color Balance slider to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.



Note

- These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color. Colorcast is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.
- It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

Defaults

Resets all adjustments.

Close

Closes the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.



Note

- The Brightness and Contrast values set in Adjust do not change even if the brightness and

color tone are adjusted in the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

Defaults

Resets each adjustment (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

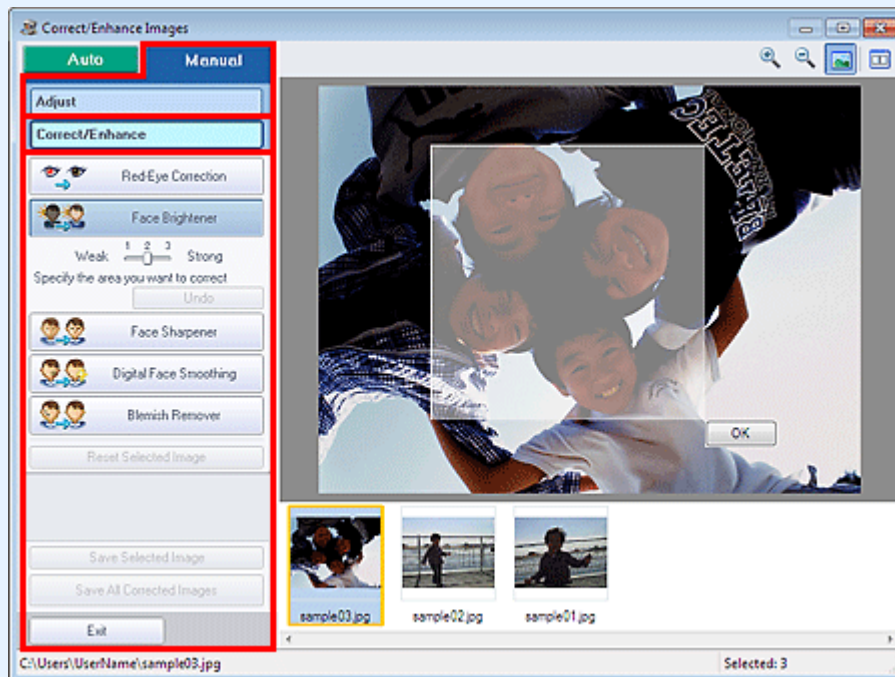
Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correct/Enhance



Red-Eye Correction

Corrects red eyes in the selected area.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Note

- For Photo Print, red eyes are automatically corrected when printing by selecting Enable Auto Photo Fix in Color correction for printing on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box and selecting the Enable Red-Eye Correction checkbox. To correct manually, deselect the checkbox.

Face Brightener

Corrects the entire image to brighten the facial area in and around the selected area.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Face Sharpener

Corrects the entire image to sharpen the facial area in and around the selected area.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Digital Face Smoothing

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles in the selected area.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

Blemish Remover

Removes moles in the selected area.

OK

Applies the selected effect to the specified area.

Undo

Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.

Reset Selected Image

Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

Save Selected Image

Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

Save All Corrected Images

Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

Exit

Click to close the Correct/Enhance Images window.

(2) Toolbar**Toolbar**

(Zoom In/Zoom Out)

Displays the enlarged or reduced preview of the image.



(Full Screen)

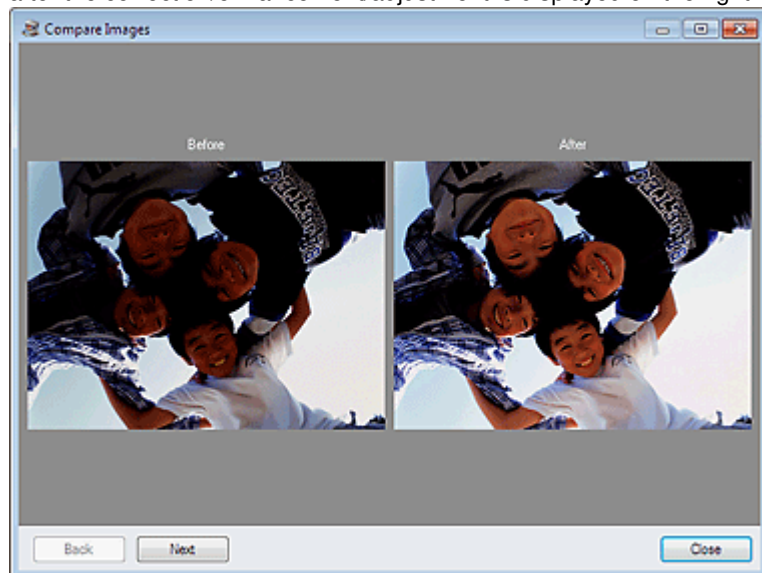
Displays the entire image in Preview.



(Compare)

Displays the Compare Images window. You can compare the images before and after the correction/enhancement/adjustment side by side.

The image before the correction/enhancement/adjustment is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction/enhancement/adjustment is displayed on the right.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating Still Images from Videos

A160

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Creating Still Images from Videos

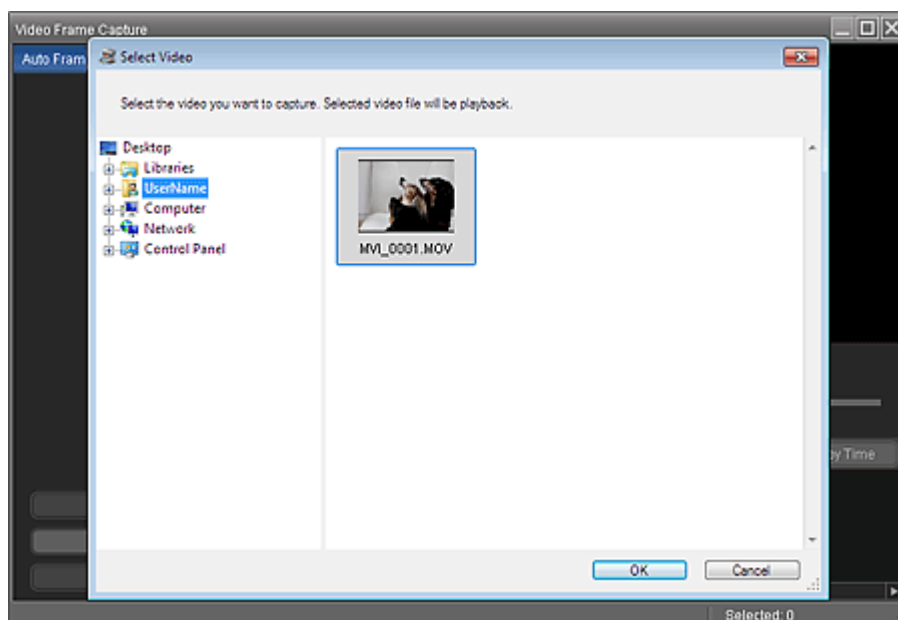
You can capture video frames and create still images.

Important

- This function is supported under Windows XP or later. However, it is not supported under the 64-bit editions of Windows XP.
- This function is not available when ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.5 or later (supplied with Canon digital cameras supporting MOV format video recording) is not installed.
- Videos may not play smoothly depending on your environment.
- When the color tone of a video is changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility, such a change is not reflected in still images captured from the video. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.

1. In the Select Images screen, click  (Capture frames from video).

The Video Frame Capture window and Select Video dialog box appear.



Note

- You can also display the Video Frame Capture window by clicking  (Capture frames from video) in the Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click  (Add Image).
- See "Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window" for details on the Video Frame Capture window.

2. In the Select Video dialog box, select the folder containing the video from which you want to capture still images.

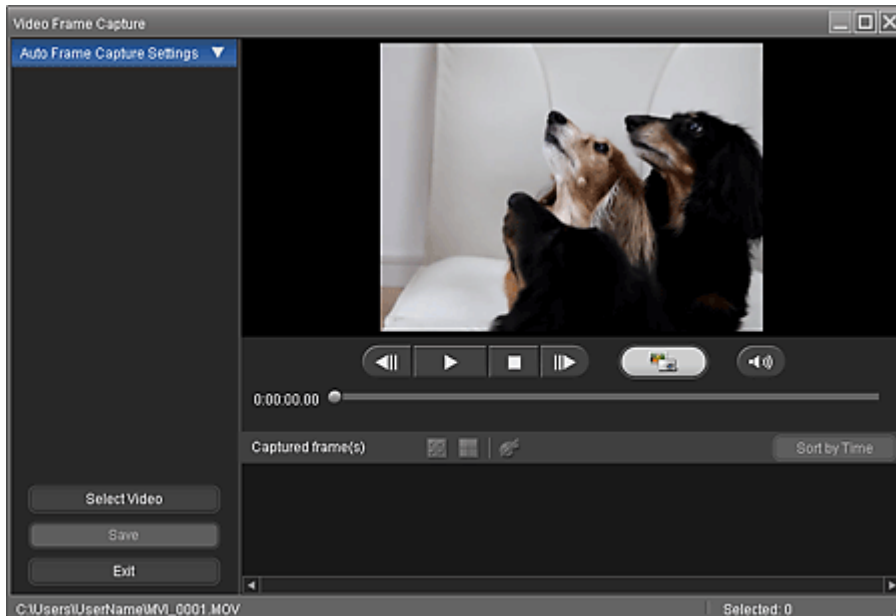
The videos in the folder will be displayed as thumbnails (miniatures).

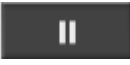
Note

- Only MOV format videos recorded with Canon digital cameras are displayed.
- The selected video plays.

3. Select the video from which you want to capture still images and click OK.

The selected video plays in Preview of the Video Frame Capture window.

**Note**

-  (Pause) appears while a video plays, and  (Playback) appears while a video is stopped.
- Use  (Pause) and  (Frame backward/Frame advance) to display the frame you want to capture.

4. Display the frame you want to capture and click (Capture).

The captured still image is displayed in the Captured frame(s) area.

Important

- You can capture up to 150 frames from one video.

5. Select the image(s) you want to save and click Save.

When the Save dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Note

- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for saving created still images.

6. Click Exit.**Important**

- The captured still images will be deleted if you exit before saving them.

Note

- You can automatically capture multiple still images from a video.

Display the Auto Frame Capture Settings area, then use  (Set start time/Set end time) in the Preview area to specify the time range. In the Auto Frame Capture Settings area, select a capture method and click Capture.

- You can correct the captured still images in the Correct Captured Frames window. To display the Correct Captured Frames window, select the image(s) you want to correct in the Captured frame(s) area, then click  (Correct image).

- When the Movie Print window is displayed via Solution Menu EX, you can print the captured still images.

To print, specify the printer and media in the Print area, then click Print.

- When you print from the Movie Print window, images are automatically cropped. Therefore, images will be printed with the left and right sides cut off.
- If you want to adjust the cropping area before printing, save the captured still image and print it from a function of Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
- The saved still images can be used along with other images to create albums, calendars, etc. in Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Creating Still Images from Videos > Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window

A161

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Video Frame Capture/Movie Print Window

You can capture video frames and create still images in these windows.

In the Movie Print window, you can print the captured still images.

Important

- This function is supported under Windows XP or later. However, it is not supported under the 64-bit editions of Windows XP.
- This function is not available when ZoomBrowser EX Ver.6.5 or later (supplied with Canon digital cameras supporting MOV format video recording) is not installed.
- When the color tone of a video is changed via the settings of the graphic driver (video card) or its utility, such a change is not reflected in still images captured from the video. Therefore, color tones may differ between videos and captured still images.

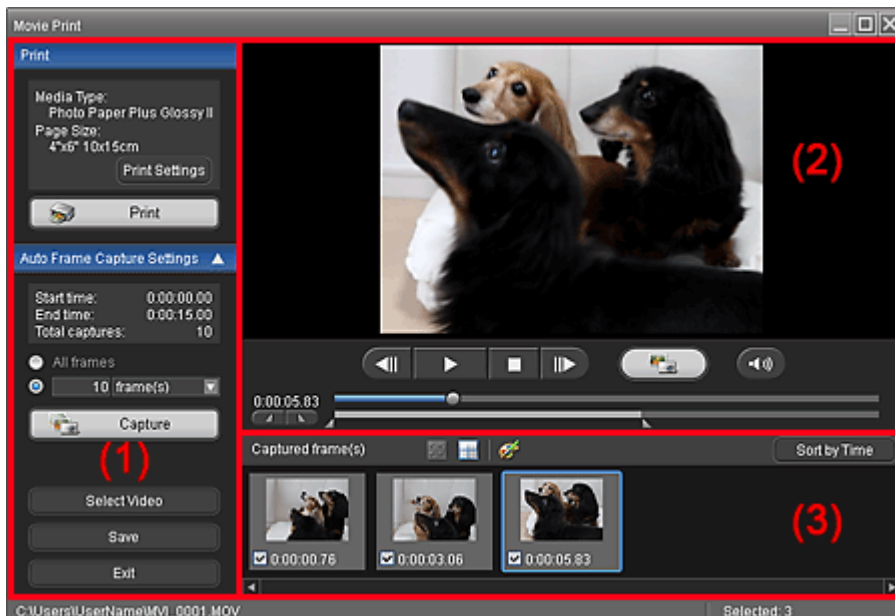
To display the Video Frame Capture window, click  (Capture frames from video) in the Select Images screen or Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add

images to in the Edit screen, then click  (Add Image).

To display the Movie Print window, select Photo Print in Solution Menu EX and click the Movie Print icon.

Note

- The Movie Print window displayed via Solution Menu EX is used as an example in the following descriptions. The window displayed varies depending on how Easy-PhotoPrint EX is started.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

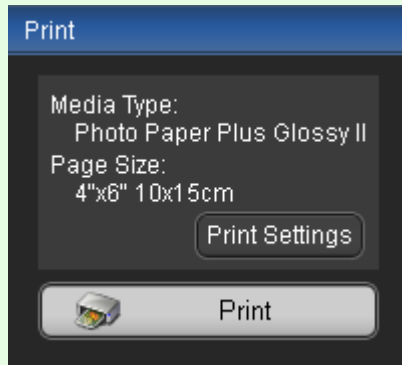
(2) Preview Area

(3) Captured Frame(s) Area

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

Print Area

You can print the captured still images.



Note

- This function is available only when the Movie Print window is displayed via Solution Menu EX.

Media Type

Displays the media type specified in the Print Settings dialog box.

Page Size

Displays the paper size specified in the Print Settings dialog box.

Print Settings

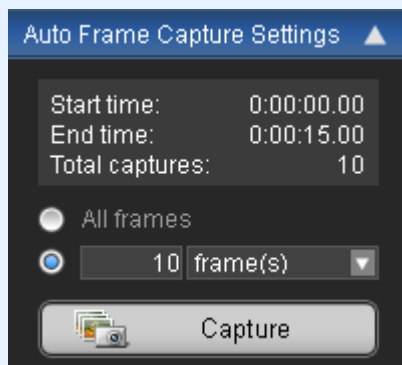
Displays the Print Settings dialog box in which you can make the basic print settings (select printer/media, etc.).

Print

Starts printing the still images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.

Auto Frame Capture Settings Area

You can capture multiple still images according to the settings.



Note

- Use   (Down arrow/Up arrow) to show/hide the Auto Frame Capture Settings area.

Start time/End time

Displays the start/end time of the time range from which to capture still images.

Total captures

Displays the number of still images to be captured.

Capture Method

Select from All frames, frame(s), sec. int. and frame int..

Capture

Captures still images according to the settings.
You can capture up to 150 frames at a time from one video.

Select Video

Displays the Select Video dialog box.

Select a folder, then select the video from which you want to capture still images.

Save

Saves the still images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.

Exit

Click to close the Video Frame Capture/Movie Print window.

(2) Preview Area

The video selected in the Select Video dialog box appears in Preview.



(Frame backward/Frame advance)

Click to reverse/advance one frame and pause.

You can also click during playback to reverse/advance one frame and pause.



(Playback/Pause)

Plays or pauses the video.



(Pause) appears while a video plays, and



(Playback) appears while a video is stopped.



(Stop)

Stops the video.



(Capture)

Captures the current frame and displays the still image in the Captured frame(s) area.

You can also capture during playback.



(Mute/Clear mute)

Switches audio OFF/ON.



Playback Slider

Displays the video playback progress.

Current playback time is displayed to the left of the slider.



(Set start time/Set end time)

Set the start/end time of the time range from which to capture still images automatically.

**Note**

- These buttons are displayed only when the Auto Frame Capture Settings area is displayed.



Time Range Slider

Displays the time range set with (Set start time/Set end time).

You can also set the start/end time by moving (Start/End point) located below the slider.

**Note**

- This slider is displayed only when the Auto Frame Capture Settings area is displayed.

(3) Captured Frame(s) Area

Displays the thumbnails of the captured still images.

Double-click a thumbnail image to display the Zoom In window in which you can check the details of the image.



(Select all frames)

Selects all the images displayed in the Captured frame(s) area.

When you select an image, a checkmark appears in its checkbox.



(Clear all check-marks)

Cancels all image selections in the Captured frame(s) area.



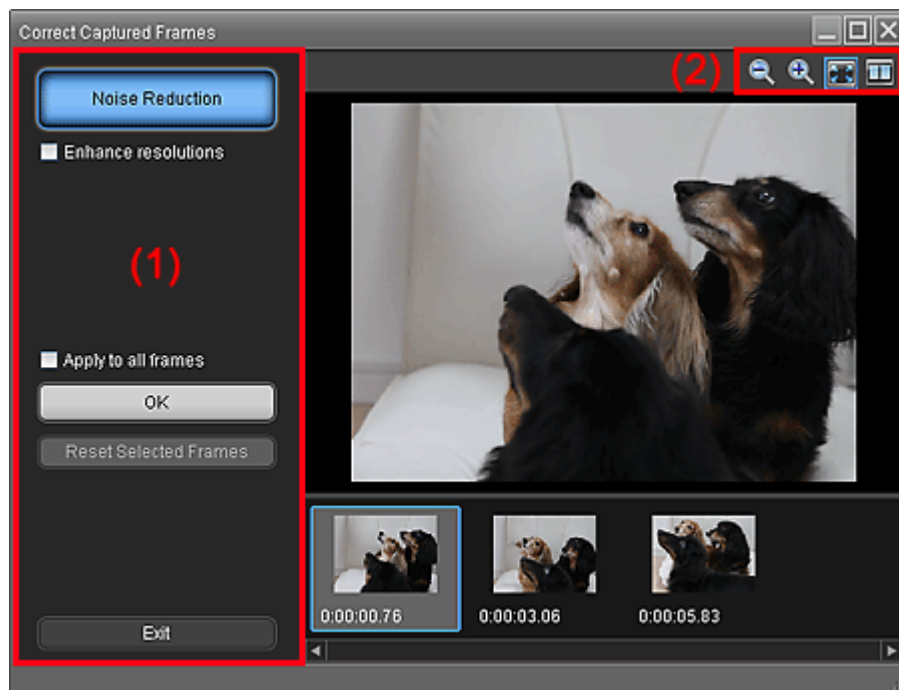
(Correct image)

Displays the Correct Captured Frames window in which you can correct all the images selected in the Captured frame(s) area.



Note

- When a frame in which the subject or camera has moved significantly is captured, the image may not be corrected properly.



(1) Task Area

Noise Reduction

Reduces noise (tonal variation that may appear in images taken in dark locations such as night scenes using a digital camera).

Enhance resolutions

Select this checkbox to reduce the jaggies (roughness) in images.

Apply to all frames

Select this checkbox to correct all the images displayed in the thumbnail list.

OK

Applies Noise Reduction to the selected images or all images. Noise will be reduced to make the images more vivid.



Note

- Correction may take time depending on your environment.
- When the Enhance resolutions checkbox is selected, Noise Reduction and Enhance resolutions are applied simultaneously.

Reset Selected Frames

Cancels all corrections applied to the selected images.

Exit

Closes the Correct Captured Frames window and returns to the Video Frame Capture or Movie Print window.

Source images will be overwritten by the corrected ones.

(2) Toolbar



(Reduce/Enlarge frame)

Reduces or enlarges the displayed image.



(Whole frame)

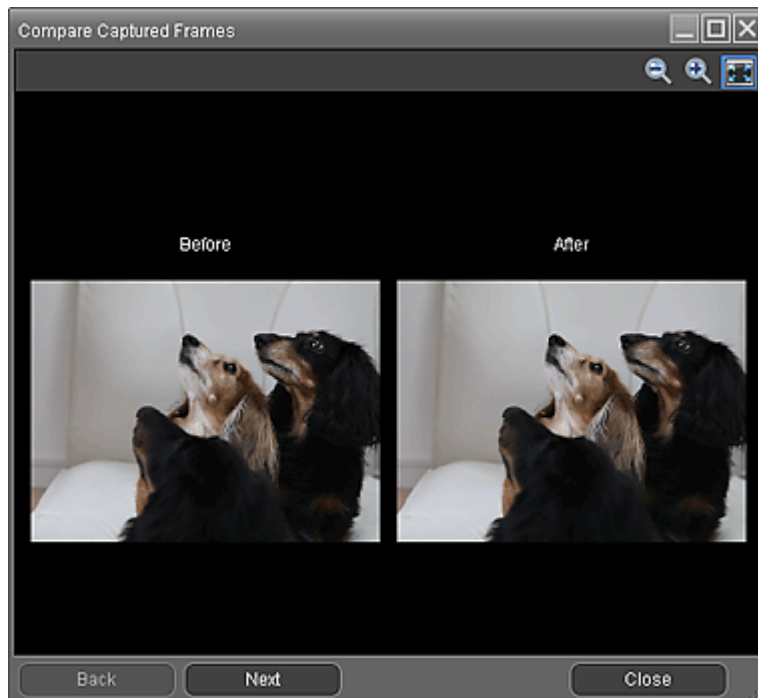
Displays the entire image in Preview.



(Compare)

Displays the Compare Captured Frames window. You can compare the images before and after the correction side by side.

The image before the correction is displayed on the left, and the image after the correction is displayed on the right of the window.



Sort by Time

Displays the captured still images in the order of the time code.



Note

- See "[Creating Still Images from Videos](#) " for details on how to create still images from videos.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

A170

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites

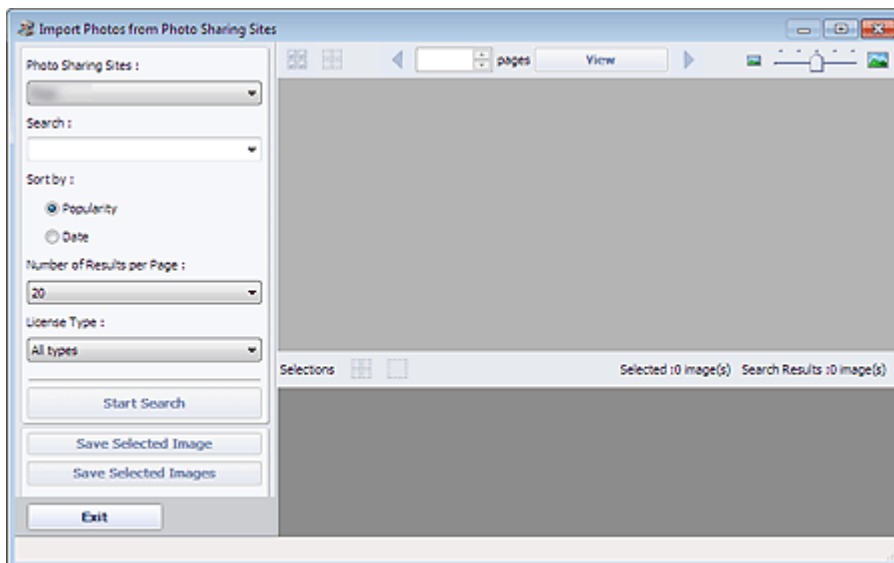
You can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- For the purpose of using this function, your product name, OS information, regional information and information that you have clicked  (Import photos from photo sharing sites) will be collected and sent to Canon.
- This function may not be available in some regions.
- It is unlawful to reproduce or edit the copyrighted work of another person without permission from the copyright holder, except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright. Additionally, reproducing or editing photographs of people may infringe on portrait rights.
- You may be required permission of way to use the work from copyright holder when using the work of others except for personal use, use within the home, or other use within the limited scope as defined by the copyright. Please check the details carefully of the web page of work in the photo sharing site. Please also check terms of service in the photo sharing site before using the work of others. Canon is not responsible for the any copyright problems by using this function.
- This function is supported under Windows XP or later.
- This product uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.

1. In the Select Images screen, click  (Import photos from photo sharing sites).

The Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window appears.



Note

- You can also display the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window by clicking  (Import photos from photo sharing sites) in the Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click



(Add Image).

- When you click (Import photos from photo sharing sites), a message about created works and personality rights appear.
To hide the message, select the Do not show this message again checkbox.
- See "[Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window](#) " for details on the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window.

2. Enter the search text in Search.

3. Set Sort by, Number of Results per Page and License Type.

4. Click Start Search.

Search starts, then the images that match the search text appear in the Thumbnail window.



Important

- Some images, such as images in formats other than JPEG, do not appear.



Note

- Click (Back to the previous page) to display the previous page. Click (Go to the next page) to display the next page.
Alternatively, enter a page number in the page number entry box and click View to display the page.
- The number of search results (images) may be small depending on the language of the search text. In that case, entering English search text may increase search results.

5. Select the image(s) you want to download.

The selected image(s) is (are) displayed in the Selections area.



Note

- You can select up to 300 images.
- Click (Cancel all image selections) to cancel all image selections in the Selections area.
Click (Cancel image selection) to cancel the selection of images selected in the Selections area.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save Selected Images.

When the Save Selected Image/Save Selected Images dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

The selected images are saved.



Note

- To save only the images you like, select them in the Selections area and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save Selected Images.
- Only JPEG/Exif data format is available for saving downloaded images.

7. Click Exit.



Important

- The search results (images) will be deleted if you exit before saving them.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites > Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window

A171

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites Window

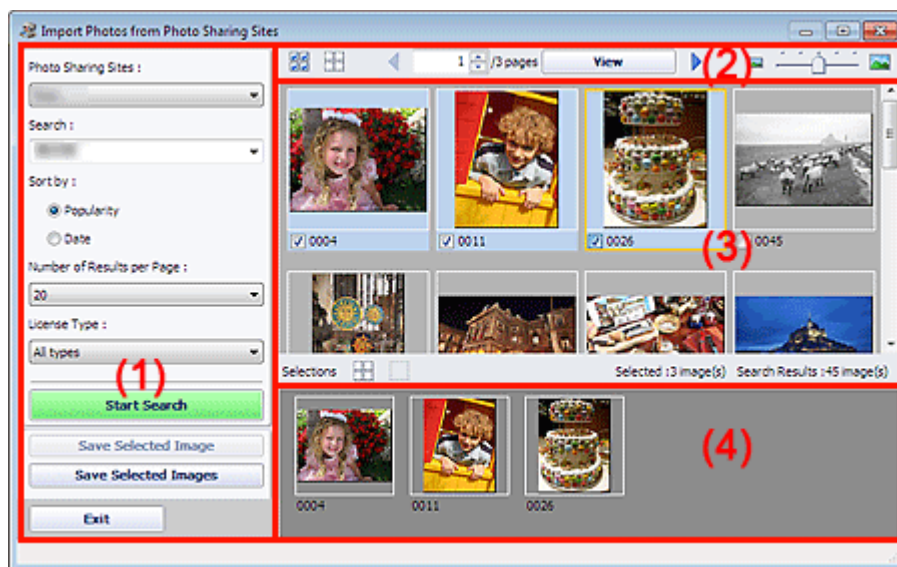
In this window, you can search for images on photo sharing sites on the Internet and download the images you want to print.

Important

- Internet connection is required to use this function. Internet connection fees apply.
- This function is supported under Windows XP or later.
- This product uses the Flickr API but is not endorsed or certified by Flickr.

To display the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window, click  (Import photos from photo sharing sites) in the Select Images screen or Add Image dialog box. To display the Add Image dialog

box, select the page you want to add images to in the Edit screen, then click  (Add Image).



- (1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area
- (2) Toolbar
- (3) Thumbnail Window
- (4) Selections Area

(1) Settings and Operation Buttons Area

Photo Sharing Sites

Displays the name of the photo sharing site.

Search

Enter the search text.

Note

- Alternatively, click  (Down arrow) to display up to 20 search history records and select among them.
- When you want to enter multiple keywords, insert a space between the keywords.

Sort by

Select how to sort the search results in the Thumbnail window. Select Popularity or Date.
You cannot change the setting after a search.

Number of Results per Page

Select the number of images displayed in the Thumbnail window, from 10, 20 and 30.
You cannot change the setting after a search.

License Type

Select the license type of images to search for, from All types, CC license (Non-Commercial) and CC license (Others).

Select All types to display all images regardless of license type.

Select CC license (Non-Commercial) to display CC licensed images that can be used for non-commercial purposes only. Select CC license (Others) to display other CC licensed images.

**Note**

- License type varies by image. Point to an image to display a tooltip in which you can check the license type.

License Type	License Type	Usage Precautions/Conditions (Comply with the following conditions when using CC licensed images except for personal use or use within the home.)
All types	All Rights Reserved	Unauthorized copying of images is illegal except for personal/home use or for use within such limited scope. Copying portraits (photographs of persons) may infringe personality rights.
	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Non-Commercial)	Attribution Non-Commercial (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes.
	Attribution Non-Commercial No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Non-	- You must show the title and licensor of the original

	Commercial Share Alike (CC license)	work along with your creation. - You may not use the work for commercial purposes. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.
CC license (Others)	Attribution (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation.
	Attribution No Derivatives (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - You may not modify the work.
	Attribution Share Alike (CC license)	- You must show the title and licensor of the original work along with your creation. - Even if your creation is built upon the work of others, you must apply the same conditions to it as those set out for the original work by the licensor.

Start Search

Starts searching for images, and displays the images that match the search text in the Thumbnail window.



Important

- Some images, such as images in formats other than JPEG, do not appear.

Save Selected Image

Saves the image selected in the Selections area.

Save Selected Images

Saves all the images displayed in the Selections area.

Exit

Click to close the Import Photos from Photo Sharing Sites window.

(2) Toolbar



(Select all images)

Selects all the images in the page displayed in the Thumbnail window.
When you select an image, a checkmark appears in its checkbox.



Note

- You can select up to 300 images.



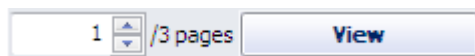
(Clear all check-marks)

Cancels all image selections in the page displayed in the Thumbnail window.



(Back to the previous page/Go to the next page)

Displays the previous/next page.



Page number entry box/Total pages/View

Enter a page number and click View to display the page.



Thumbnail Size Slider

Resizes the images in the Thumbnail window.
Move the slider to the right to enlarge and left to reduce the images.

(3) Thumbnail Window

Displays the thumbnails (miniatures) of the search results (images). The title is displayed under each

thumbnail.

To select an image, click the thumbnail or checkbox.

Important

- Due to limitations of photo sharing sites, if the search results exceed 4,000 images, the same images as those displayed in the page containing the 4,001st image will be displayed in all the subsequent pages.
For example, when Number of Results per Page is set to 20, the images displayed in page 201 are the same as those displayed in page 202 and subsequent pages.

Note

- Point to a thumbnail to display its title, license type and other information.
- Right-click a thumbnail and select Open web page of work from the displayed menu to start a browser and display the page of a photo sharing site on which the image is posted.

(4) Selections Area

Thumbnails of the images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed, along with the number of images (number of selected images/number of search results).



(Cancel all image selections)

Cancels all image selections in the Selections area.



(Cancel image selection)

Cancels the selection of images selected in the Selections area.

Note

- See "[Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)" for details on how to download images from photo sharing sites.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)

A200

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Questions and Answers

- ➡ [How Can I Move \(or Copy\) the Saved File?](#)
- ➡ [Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?](#)
- ➡ [How Do I Print with Even Margins?](#)
- ➡ [What Is "C1" or "C4"?](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)
> [How Can I Move \(or Copy\) the Saved File?](#)

A095

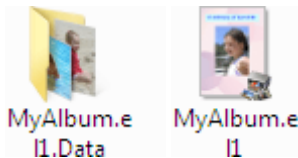
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



How Can I Move (or Copy) the Saved File?

If you want to move (or copy) a file created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX from one folder to another, you need to move (or copy) the folder that was automatically created when originally saving that file as well.

For example, when you save a file named "MyAlbum.el1," a folder named "MyAlbum.el1.Data" is automatically created in the same folder that contains the "MyAlbum.el1" file. If you want to move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1" file to another folder, move (or copy) the "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder as well. The "MyAlbum.el1.Data" folder contains the photos used in the album.



Note

- The icons may vary depending on the items.

Important

- Do not change the Data folder name; otherwise you will not be able to display the photos you edited with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Questions and Answers
> Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

A096

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Which Side of the Displayed Image Does the Printing Start from?

As shown below, printing starts from the left side of the image displayed in the Layout/Print screen.



Outputs the paper in the direction as the arrow indicates.

See your printer manual for details on how to load paper (to print on the front/back, etc.).

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Questions and Answers](#)
> [How Do I Print with Even Margins?](#)

A097

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



How Do I Print with Even Margins?

When you print on a bordered layout, the margins on the left and right or the top and bottom may become wider than the other, depending on the image and printer.

To always print with even margins, select the Always crop images when selecting a layout with margins checkbox on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) in the Layout/Print screen or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Crop the photo to apply even margins individually.

➡ [Cropping Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)



Note

- This setting is available only when Photo Print is selected.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Questions and Answers
> What Is "C1" or "C4"?

A098

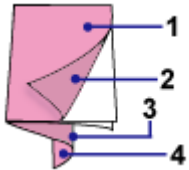
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



What Is "C1" or "C4"?

When an album is printed, labels such as "C1" and "C4" are printed as page numbers.

The "C1" and "C4" represent the front cover and back cover, respectively.



C1: Front cover

C2: Inside the front cover

C3: Inside the back cover

C4: Back cover



Note

- "C2"/"C3" appears only when the Leave the inside of front cover blank/Leave the inside of back cover blank checkbox is selected in the Cover Options dialog box.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Photo Print Settings](#)

A101

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Photo Print Settings

- ➡ [Printing Vivid Photos](#)
- ➡ [Reducing Photo Noise](#)
- ➡ [Cropping Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)
- ➡ [Printing Dates on Photos \(Photo Print\)](#)
- ➡ [Printing Multiple Photos on One Page](#)
- ➡ [Printing an Index](#)
- ➡ [Printing ID Photos \(ID Photo Print\)](#)
- ➡ [Printing Photo Information](#)
- ➡ [Saving Photos](#)
- ➡ [Opening Saved Files](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing Vivid Photos

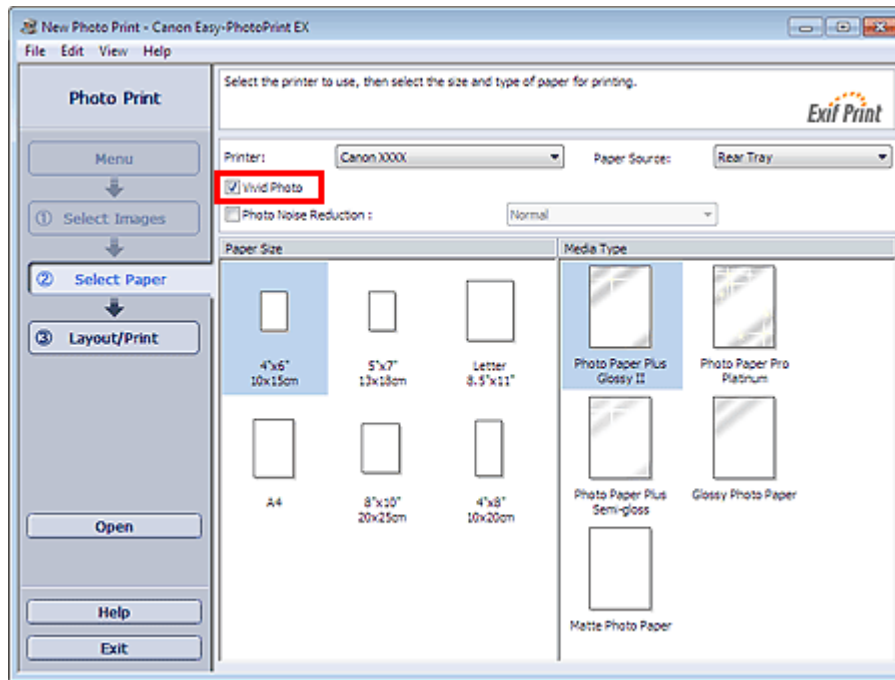
A071

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing Vivid Photos

Select the Vivid Photo checkbox in the Select Paper screen to boost the colors in a photo before printing.



Important

- This function is available only with a printer that supports Vivid Photo.
- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Even if you select the Vivid Photo checkbox, this effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Reducing Photo Noise

A072

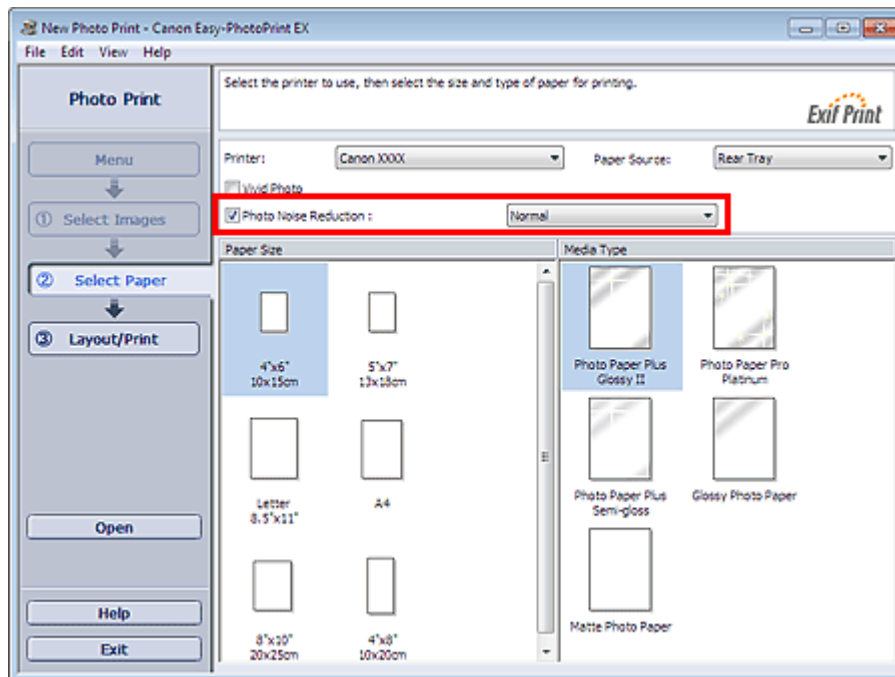
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Reducing Photo Noise

When a photo is taken in a dark location such as night scene using digital camera, noise may appear in the image.

Select the Photo Noise Reduction checkbox in the Select Paper screen to reduce noise in the image and make the printed photos more vivid.



Important

- This function is not available when Enable ICC Profile is selected on the Advanced tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- When the noise is severe, change Normal to Strong.
- The noise reduction effect applies only to the print result. The original image or preview image will not be affected.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

A073

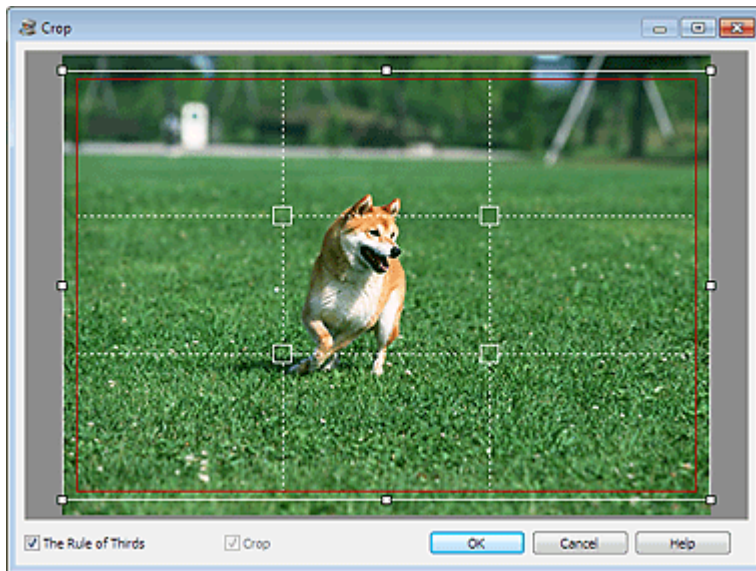
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Cropping Photos (Photo Print)

Cropping a photo is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the photo by selecting the necessary portions.

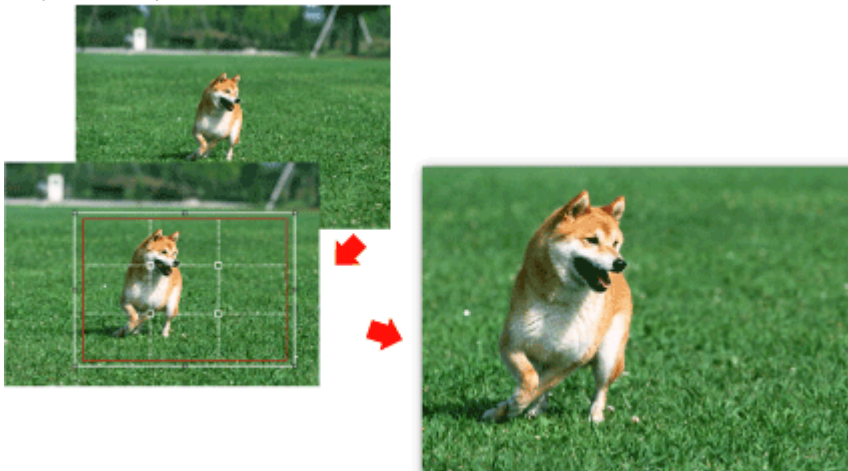
Click  (Crop Image) in the Layout/Print screen or double-click the preview image.



Drag the white squares on the image to adjust the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- To move the cropping area, place the cursor within the white frame and drag it. Drag the white lines to enlarge/reduce the cropping area.
- Select the The Rule of Thirds checkbox to display white broken lines. To create a balanced composition, drag any of the intersecting points (white squares) or white broken lines over the main subject of the photo.



- The cropping effect applies only to the print result. The original image will not be cropped.
- See Help for details on the Crop window.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

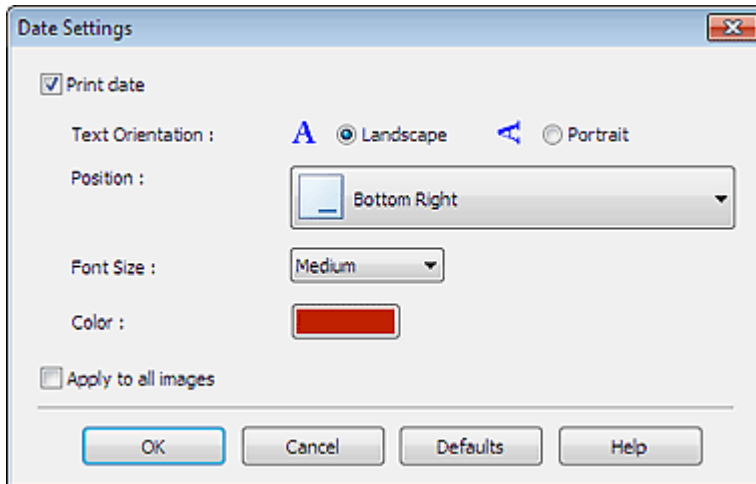
A074

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing Dates on Photos (Photo Print)

To print the date the photo was taken on the photo, click  (Date Settings) in the Layout/Print screen, then select the Print date checkbox in the Date Settings dialog box.



Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

A076

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing Multiple Photos on One Page

You can print multiple photos on one page by selecting a multiple-photo layout in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
➡ **Selecting a Photo**
- The available number of photos and layout may vary depending on the media type.
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
Example: Borderless (x4)

1	3
2	4

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.
To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing an Index

A077

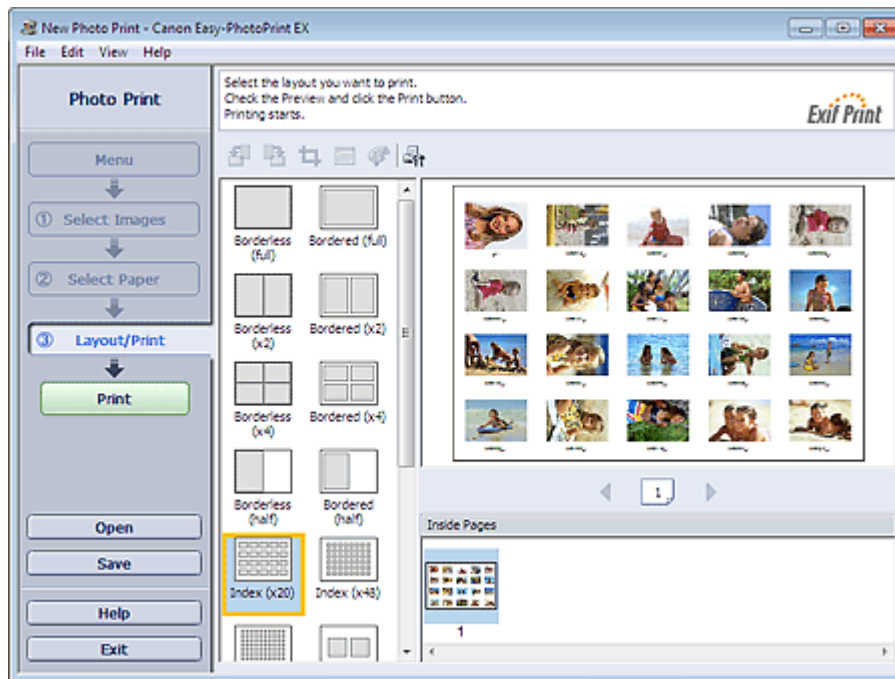
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing an Index

You can print an index of selected photos. An index print shows the thumbnails of the photos in one page. It is convenient for managing your photos.

To print an index, select Index from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Important

- Index cannot be printed if you select any of the following paper sizes.
 - Credit Card
- You can print up to 80 images on one page.

Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
 - ➔ [Selecting a Photo](#)
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
Example: Index (x20)

1	2	3	4	5
6	7	8	9	10
11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20

- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

A078

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



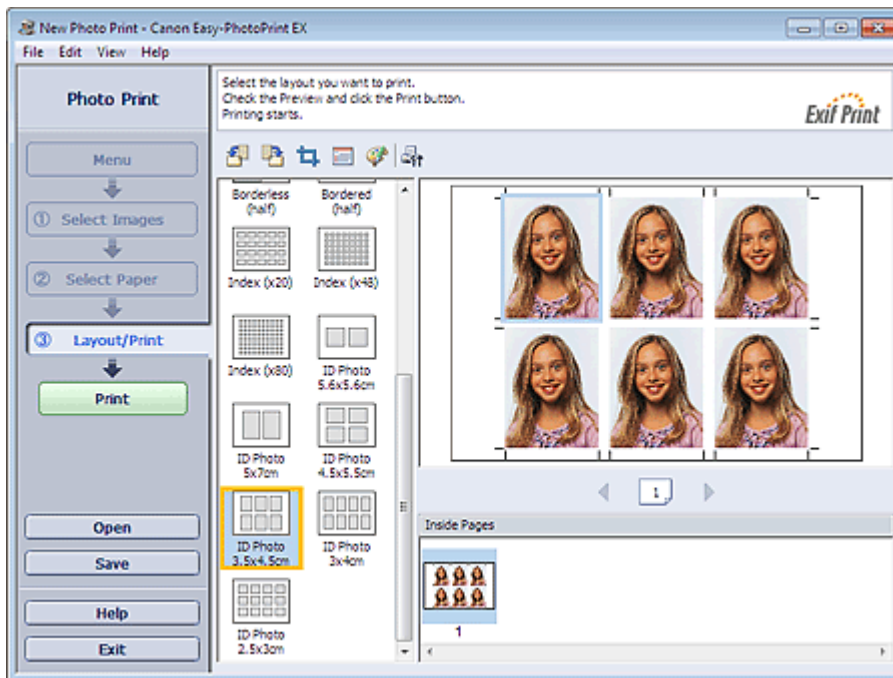
Printing ID Photos (ID Photo Print)

You can print a variety of ID photos.

Important

- The photo may not qualify as an official ID photo depending on its use. For details, contact the party to whom you will be submitting the photo.

To print ID photos, select 4"x6" 10x15cm for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select a layout of the ID photo from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- The number of frames per page varies depending on the size of the ID photo to create. Check the number of frames in the layouts displayed in the Layout/Print screen, then specify the number of copies in the Select Images screen.
You can select two or more images and print different types of ID photos on one page.
- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
➡ **Selecting a Photo**
- Photos are arranged in the following order.
Example: ID Photo 3.5x4.5cm



- You can change the printing order in Printing Order on the Print tab of the Preferences dialog box. You can select the printing order from By Date, By Name, and By Selection.

To display the Preferences dialog box, click  (Settings) or select Preferences... from the File menu.

- ID photos can only be printed on 4"x6" 10x15cm paper.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Printing Photo Information

A079

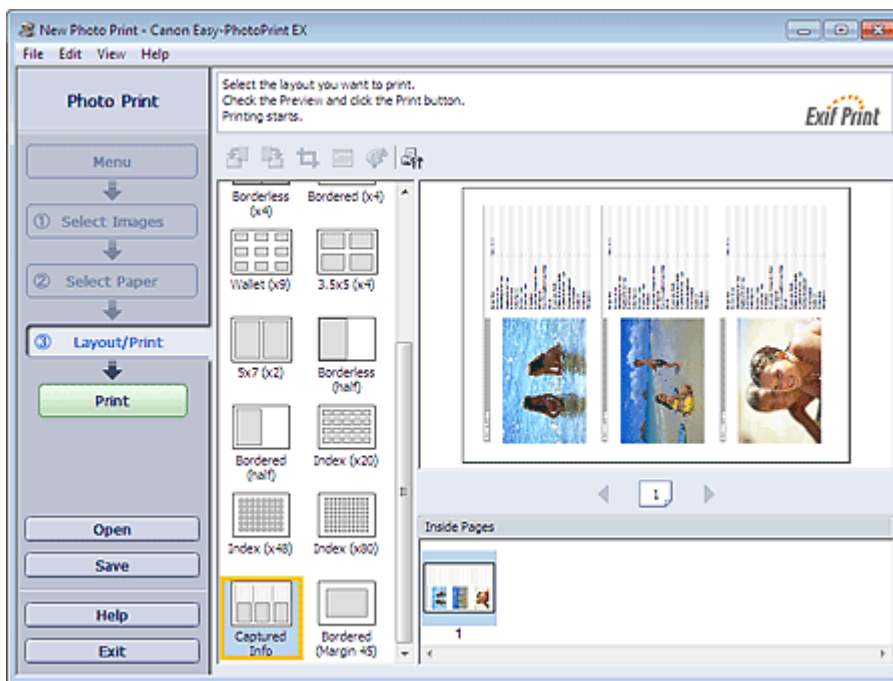
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing Photo Information

You can print the photo and the Exif information side by side.

To print them, select Letter 8.5"x11" or A4 for Paper Size in the Select Paper screen, and select Captured Info from the layouts in the Layout/Print screen.



Note

- See the following section for details on how to select photos.
➡ [Selecting a Photo](#)
- This function is available only on paper sizes Letter 8.5"x11" and A4.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Saving Photos

A092

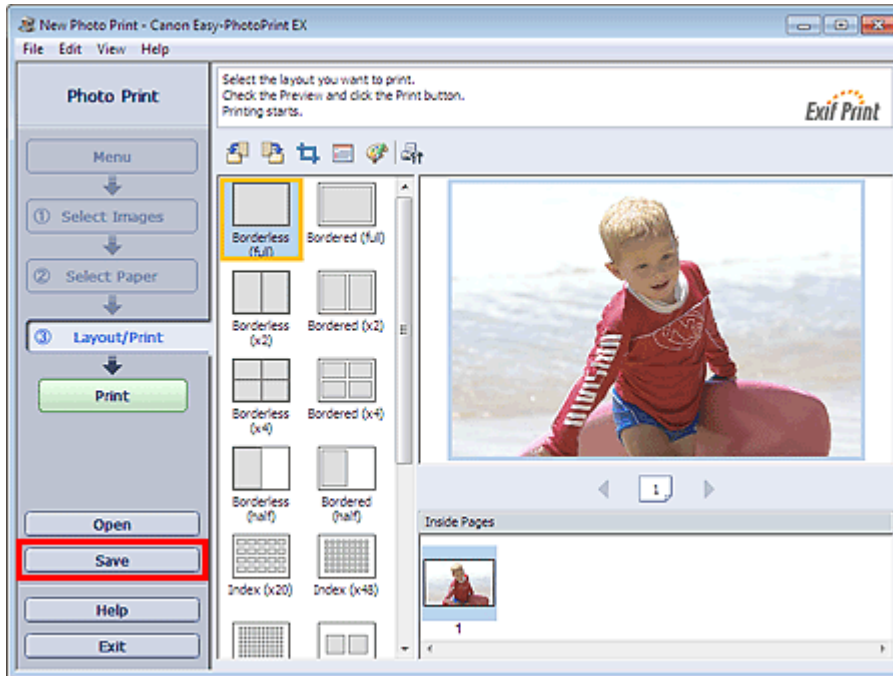
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Saving Photos

You can save edited photos. The information of cropping and layout can be saved.

Click Save in the Layout/Print screen.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.

Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.

Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Select Images or Select Paper screen.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Photo Print Settings > Opening Saved Files

A093

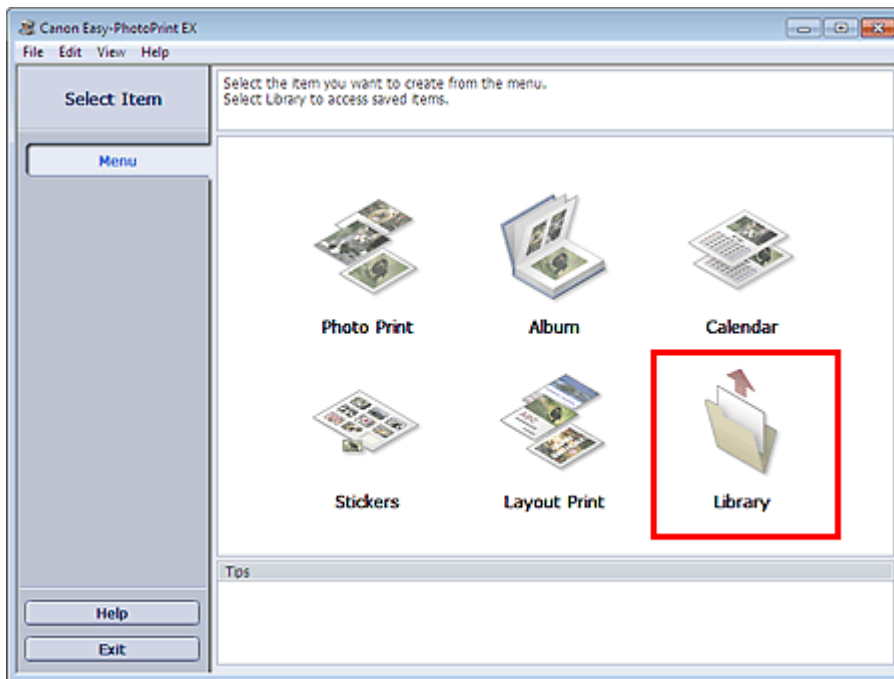
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.

You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX in icon view (only for Windows 7/Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64-bit editions of Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Layout/Print screen appears.

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file format (extension).
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Photo Print file (.el6)
- You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
 - Click Open in the step button area of each screen, then select the file you want to edit.
 - Double-click the file.
 - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
- You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Other Settings](#)

A102

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Other Settings

- ➡ [Changing Layout](#)
- ➡ [Changing Background](#)
- ➡ [Adding Photos](#)
- ➡ [Swapping Positions of Photos](#)
- ➡ [Replacing Photos](#)
- ➡ [Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos](#)
- ➡ [Cropping Photos](#)
- ➡ [Framing Photos](#)
- ➡ [Printing Dates on Photos](#)
- ➡ [Attaching Comments to Photos](#)
- ➡ [Adding Text to Photos](#)
- ➡ [Saving](#)
- ➡ [Setting Holidays](#)
- ➡ [Setting Calendar Display](#)
- ➡ [Opening Saved Files](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Changing Layout

A080

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

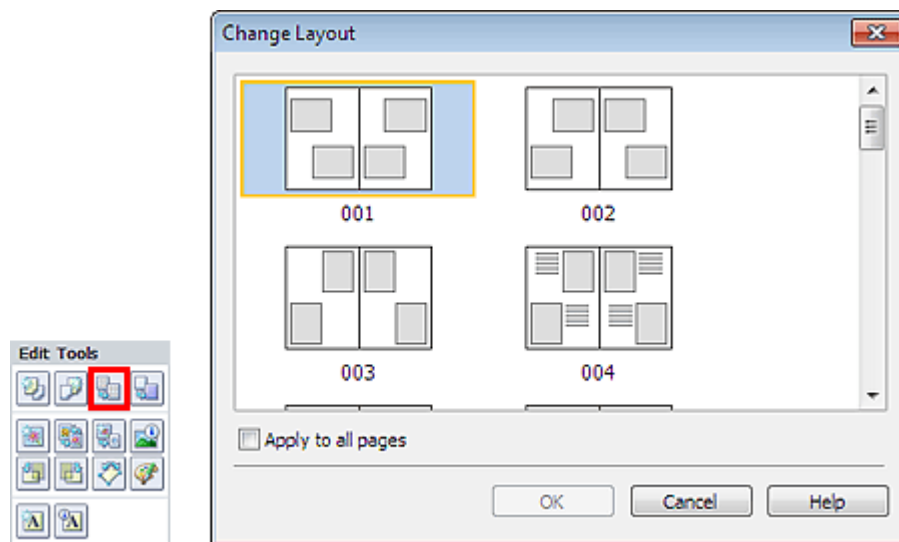


Changing Layout

You can change the layout of each page separately.

Select the page you want to change the layout of in the Edit screen, then click  (Change Layout).
Select the layout you want to use in the Change Layout dialog box and click OK.

Album



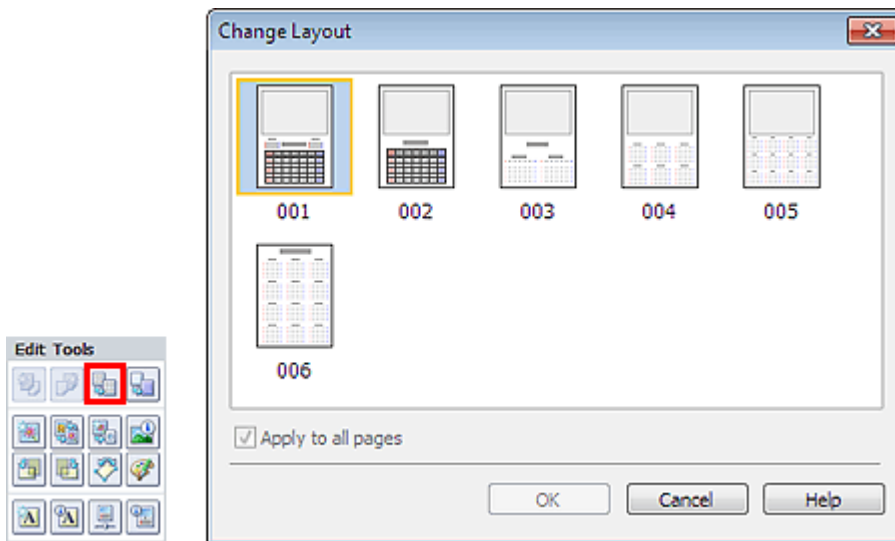
Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:
 - If the number of layout frames is increased : Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout.
 - If the number of layout frames is decreased : Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.
- If you change the current layout for the front or back cover to one that has fewer layout frames, any image that does not fit in the new layout will be deleted, starting with the last image that was added to the former layout page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size, Orientation, or the type of page selected (front cover, inside pages or back cover).
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Calendar



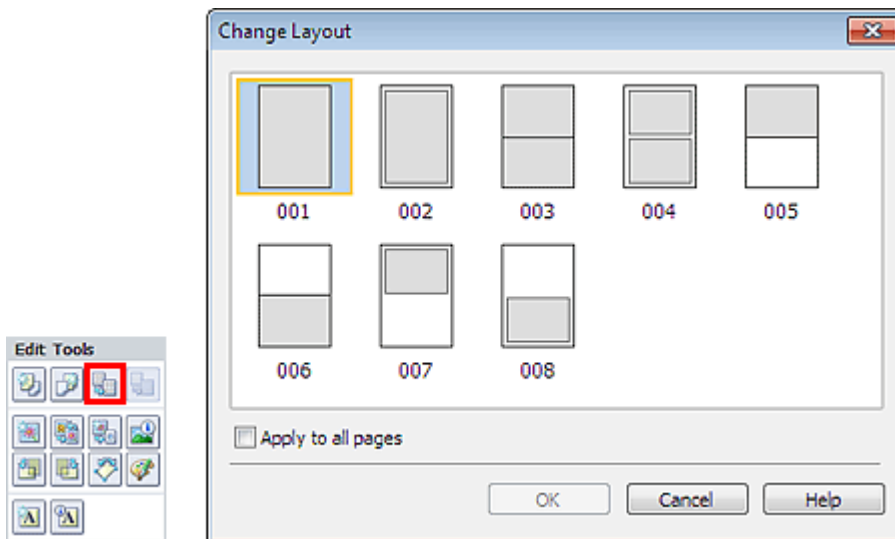
Important

- The layouts of all pages are changed to the selected layout.
- All images that do not fit in the new layout will be collected on the last page.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.

Layout Print



Important

- If the new layout has a different number of frames per page from the current layout, the following will happen:

If the number of layout frames is increased If the number of layout frames is decreased	: Images will move from the subsequent pages to fill all the frames in the new layout. : Pages with the new layout will be added until all the images on the pages with the current layout can be fitted.

Note

- The layouts that can be selected may vary depending on the Paper Size and Orientation.
- Select the Apply to all pages checkbox to change the layouts of all pages to the one you newly selected.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Changing Background

A081

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Changing Background

You can change the background of each page.

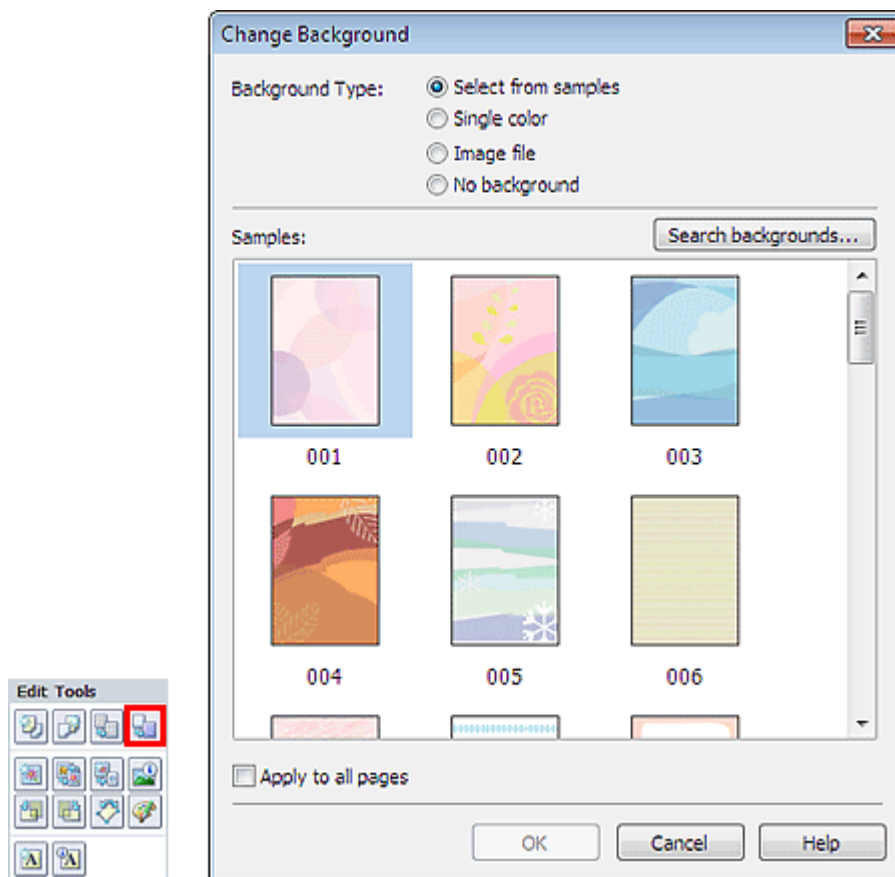
Important

- You cannot change the background of the Stickers and Layout Print.

Click Background... in the Page Setup screen or select the page you want to change the background of in the Edit screen, then click  (Change Background).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the type of background you want to use in the Change Background dialog box.

When Select from samples Is Selected

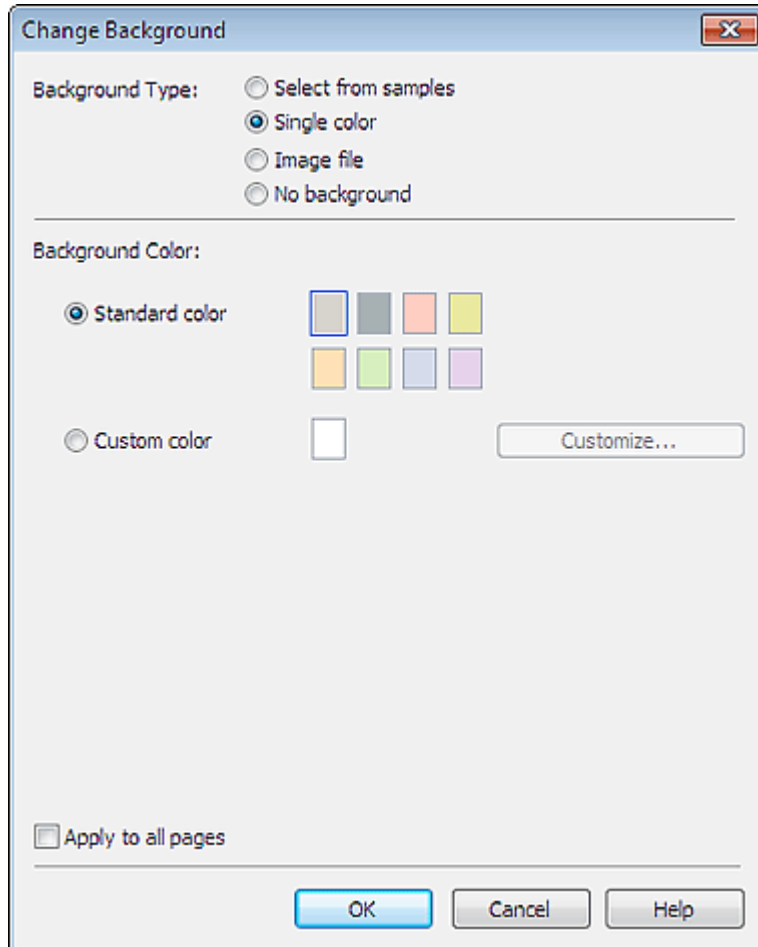
Select the image you want to use from Samples and click OK.

Note

- Select from samples will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
 - Various backgrounds are available on our website besides those saved in the application.
Click Search backgrounds... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.
 - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
 - Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing backgrounds.
-

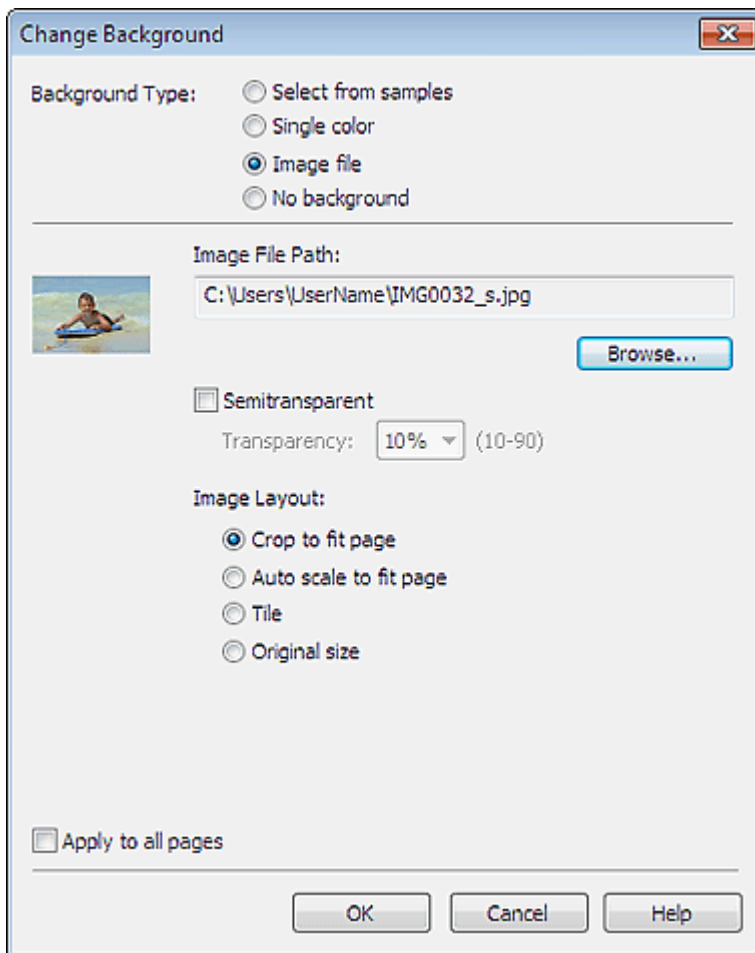
When Single color Is Selected

Select the color you want to use from Standard color or Custom color and click OK.



When Image file Is Selected

Set Image File Path and Image Layout, then click OK.



Note

- See Help for details on how to set the background in the Change Background dialog box.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Adding Photos

A082

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



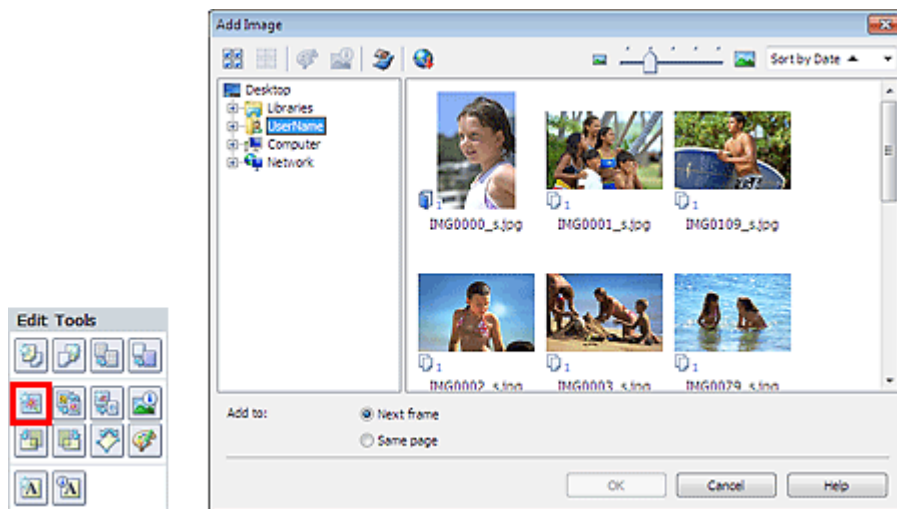
Adding Photos

You can add images to pages.

Select the page you want to add photos to in the Edit screen, then click  (Add Image).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the folder containing the image you want to add from the folder tree area on the left of the Add Image dialog box, and select the image you want to add from the thumbnail window on the right.

Note

- Click an image to select it (background turns blue) or deselect it (background turns white). You can also select multiple images.
- You can also use still images captured from videos.
 - ➔ [Creating Still Images from Videos](#)
- You can also use images downloaded from photo sharing sites on the Internet.
 - ➔ [Downloading Images from Photo Sharing Sites](#)

Select an option for Add to and click OK.

Important

- You can add up to 20 images at one time.
- You cannot add two or more of the same image at one time. Add it one at a time.
- Up to 99 of the same images can be added to all pages combined.
- When the number of pages increases due to added images, you cannot add images beyond page 400.

Note

- In the Add Image dialog box, you can select all images at one time or change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Swapping Positions of Photos

A083

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Swapping Positions of Photos

You can swap the positions of images.



Click (Swap Image Positions) in the Edit screen.



Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the target and source images you want to swap, then click Swap.

When you finish swapping all images you want to swap, click Back to Edit.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Replacing Photos

A084

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



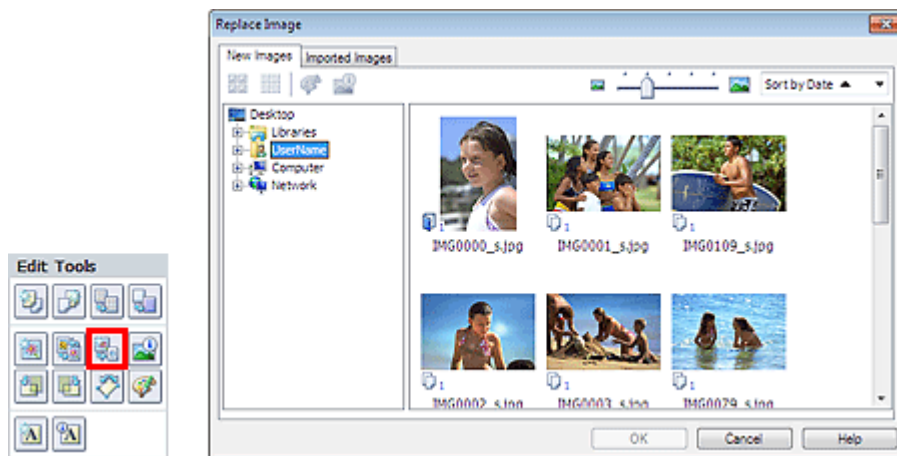
Replacing Photos

You can replace an image with another image.

Select the image you want to replace in the Edit screen, then click  (Replace Selected Image).

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the folder containing the image you want to replace with from the folder tree area on the left of the Replace Image dialog box. Select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window on the right of the screen and click OK.

If you want to select from the images already imported, click the Imported Images tab and select the image you want to replace with from the thumbnail window and click OK.

Important

- You cannot select multiple images in the Replace Image dialog box.

Note

- If you select multiple images in the Edit screen and use the replacement function, all the images selected in the Edit screen will be replaced with the image selected in the Replace Image dialog box.
- When images are replaced, the following settings of the old image are inherited to the new image.
 - Position
 - Size
 - Frame
 - Position and size of the date
 The cropping information and image orientation are not inherited.
- In the Replace Image dialog box, you can change the display size and order of the thumbnails. See Help for details.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

A085

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



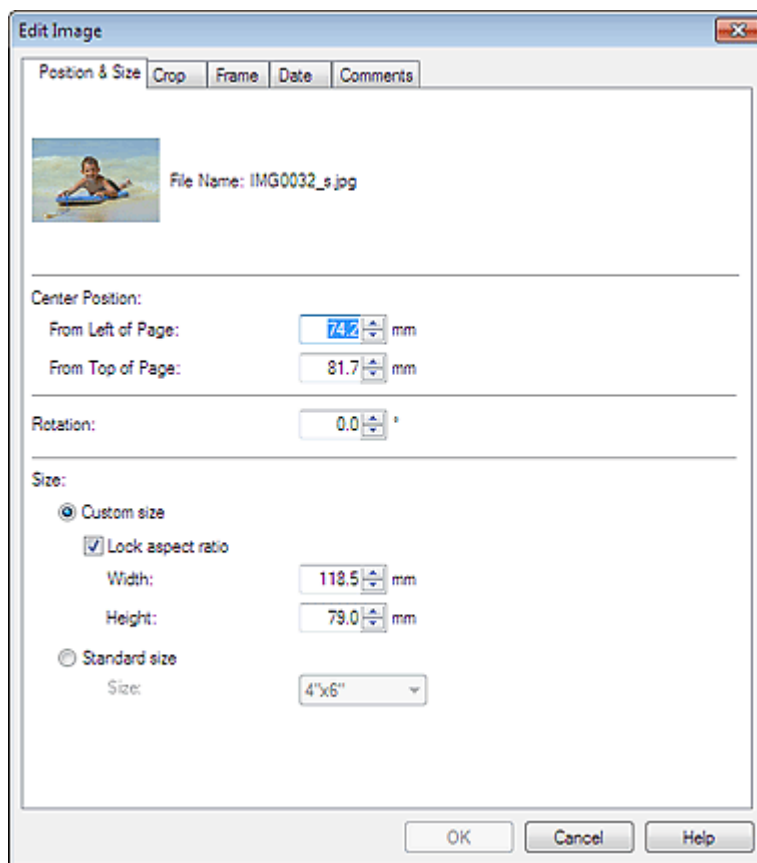
Changing Position, Angle and Size of Photos

You can adjust the position, angle and size of images.

Select the image of which you want to change the position or size in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Set the Center Position, Rotation and Size, then click OK.

Note

- You can also change the position and size of an image by dragging it in the Edit screen.
- Select an image in the Edit screen, then click  (Free Rotate) and drag a corner of the image to rotate it.
- See Help for details on the position and size of images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Cropping Photos

A086

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Cropping Photos

Cropping an image is the act of removing the unnecessary portions of the image by selecting the necessary portions.

Select the image you want to crop in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Crop tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Drag the white squares on the image to adjust the area to be cropped and click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on cropping.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Framing Photos

A087

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Framing Photos

You can add frames to images.

Important

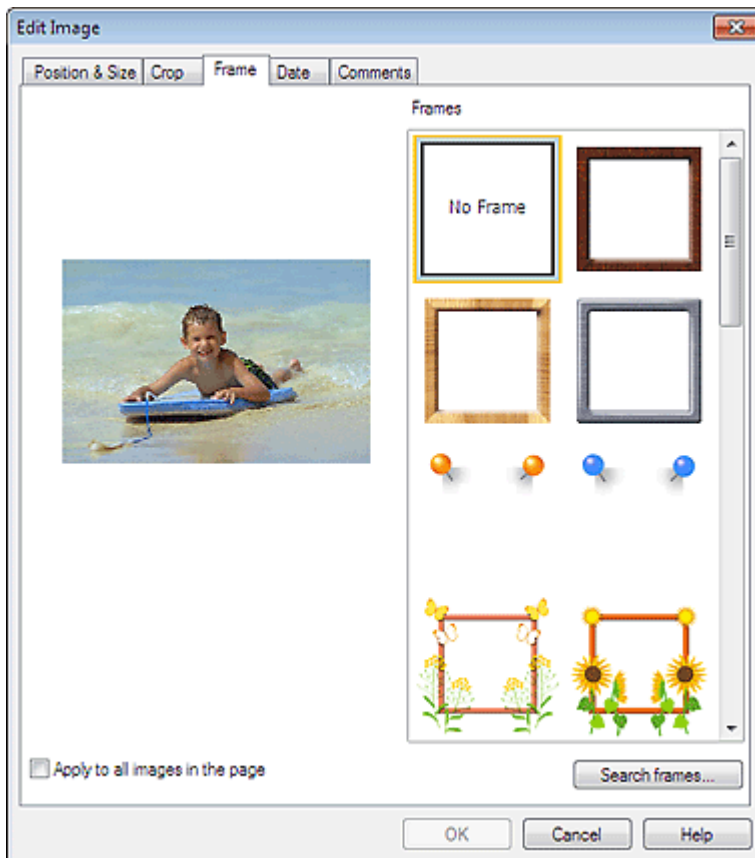
- You cannot add frames to images in Stickers and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to frame in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Frame tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the frame you want to use from Frames and click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed photos.

Note

- Select the Apply to all images in the page checkbox to add the same frame to all the images on a selected page at one time.
 - Various frames are available on our website besides those saved in the application. Click Search frames... to access the Canon website from which you can download additional materials for free.
 - Internet connection is required to access the website. Internet connection fees apply.
 - Exit Easy-PhotoPrint EX before installing frames.
 - Search frames... will be displayed only if Album has been selected.
 - See Help for details on frames.
-

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Printing Dates on Photos

A088

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Printing Dates on Photos

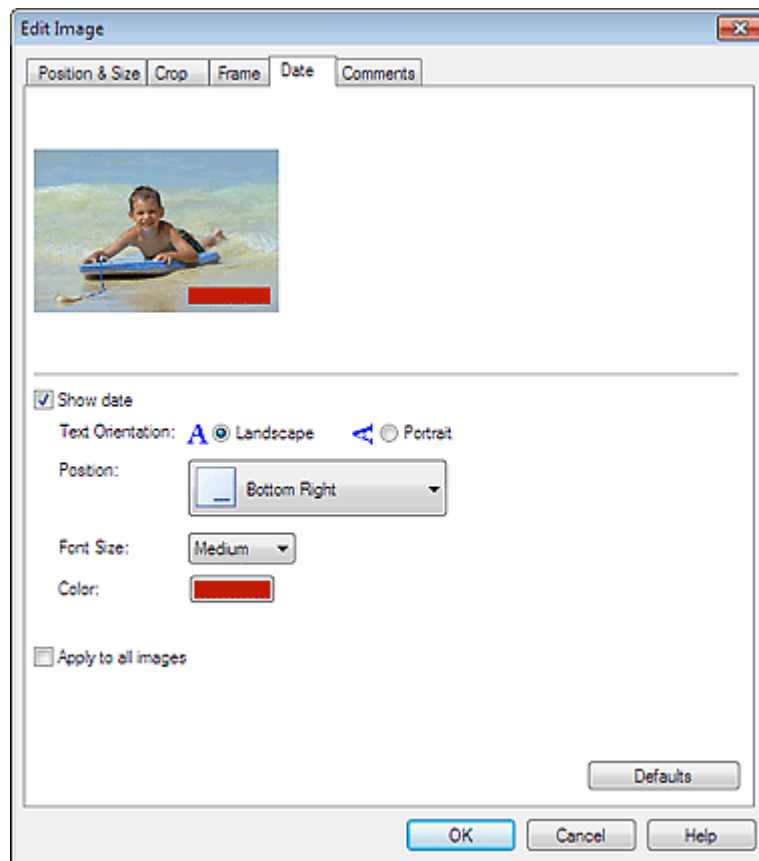
You can print dates on images.

Select the image you want to print the date on in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Date tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Show date checkbox.

Set the Text Orientation, Position, Font Size and Color, then click OK.

Important

- You cannot print dates on framed images.

Note

- The date is displayed in the short date format (mm/dd/yyyy, etc.) specified in your operating system.
- See Help for details on setting dates.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Other Settings](#) > [Attaching Comments to Photos](#)

A089

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Attaching Comments to Photos

You can attach comments to images and display them in your album. The photo name, shooting date and comments are displayed (from top to bottom) in a comment box.



Important

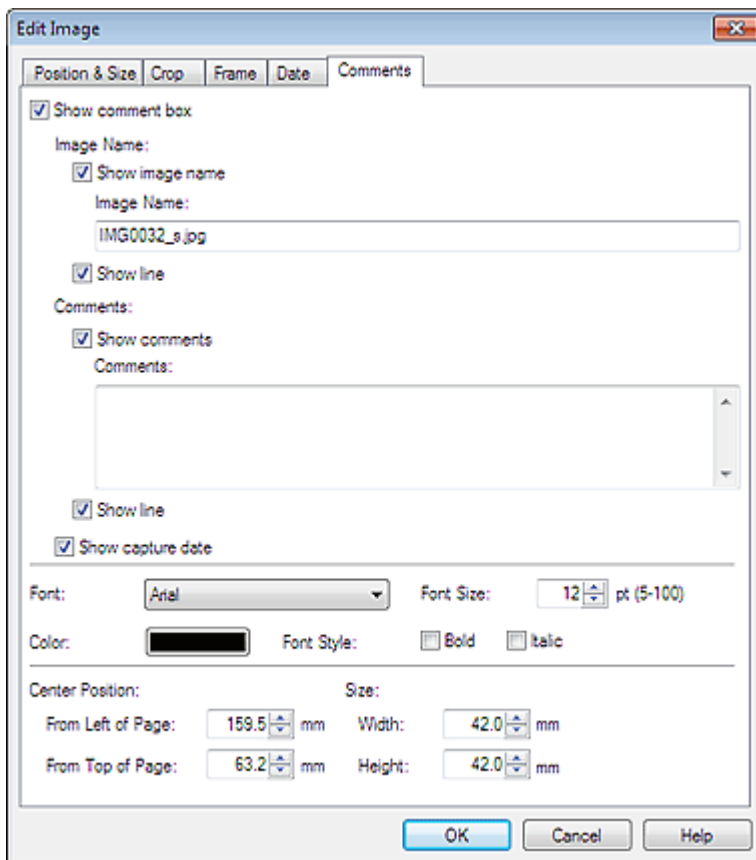
- You cannot attach comments to Calendar, Stickers, and Layout Print.

Select the image you want to attach comments to in the Edit screen and click  (Edit Image) or double-click the image.

Click the Comments tab in the Edit Image dialog box.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Show comment box checkbox.

Select the checkboxes of the items you want to display, and enter comments.

Set the size and color of font, and position of the comments, etc., then click OK.

Note

- See Help for details on comments.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Adding Text to Photos

A090

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Adding Text to Photos

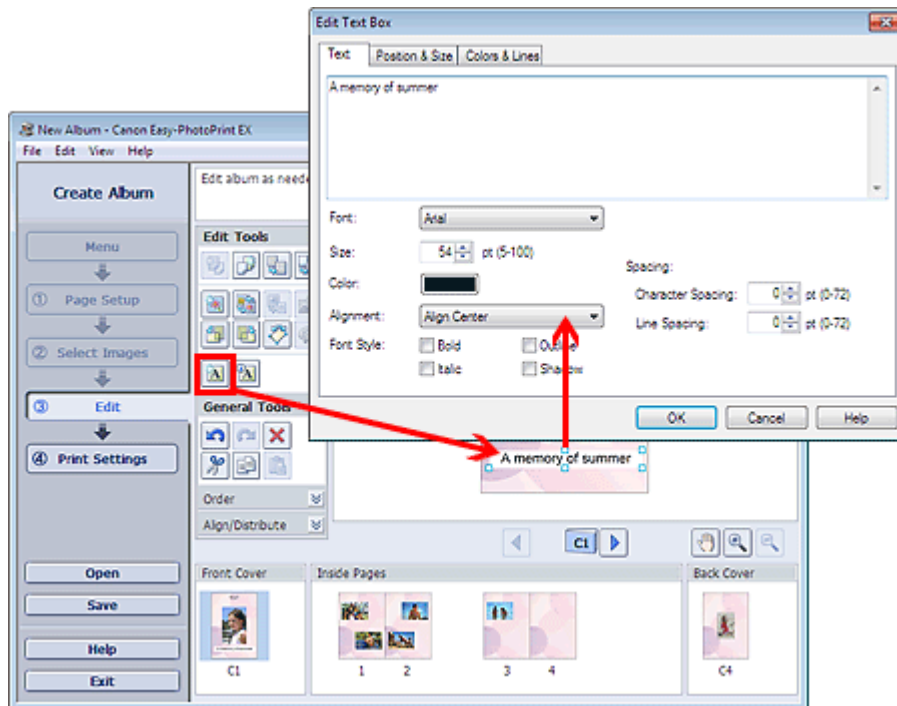
You can add text to photos.



Click (Add Text) in the Edit screen and drag the mouse over the area in which you want to add text.

Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



Select the Text tab in the Edit Text Box dialog box and enter text, then click OK.

Note

- In the Edit Text Box dialog box, you can change the position, angle and size of the text. You can also set the color and line of the text box. See Help for details.
- To change the entered text, select the text box and click (Edit Text Box). The Edit Text Box dialog box appears. You can change the text.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Saving

A091

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Saving

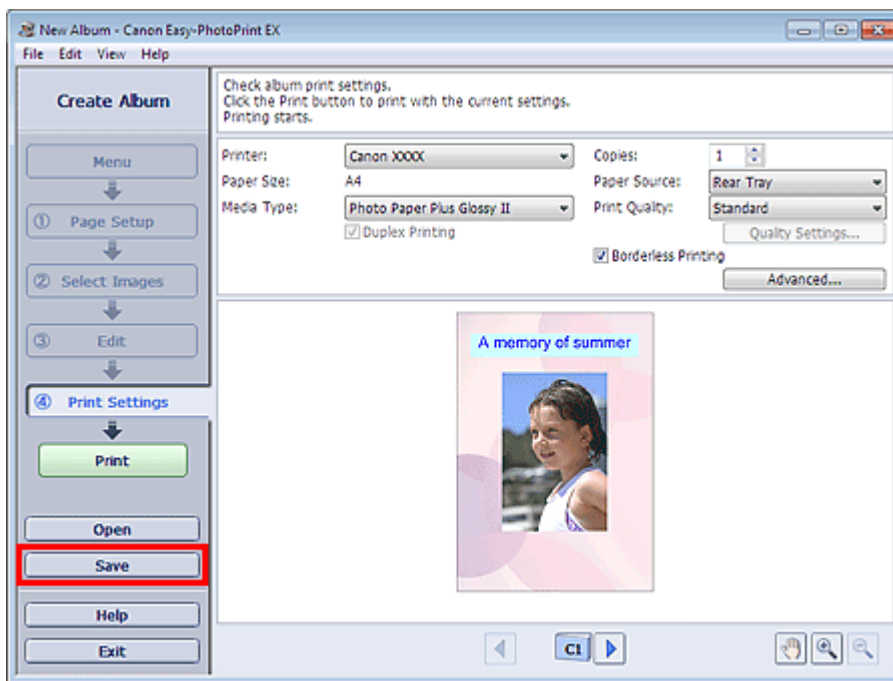
You can save edited items.

Click Save in the Edit or Print Settings screen.



Note

- The screen(s) for Album printing is (are) used as example(s) in the following descriptions. The screen(s) may vary depending on what you create.



When the Save As dialog box appears, specify the save location and file name, then click Save.



Important

- If you edit a saved file and save it again, the file will be overwritten.
To save a file again with a new name or to a different location, select Save As... from the File menu and save.



Note

- Save will not be displayed in the Page Setup or Select Images screen.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Setting Holidays

A099

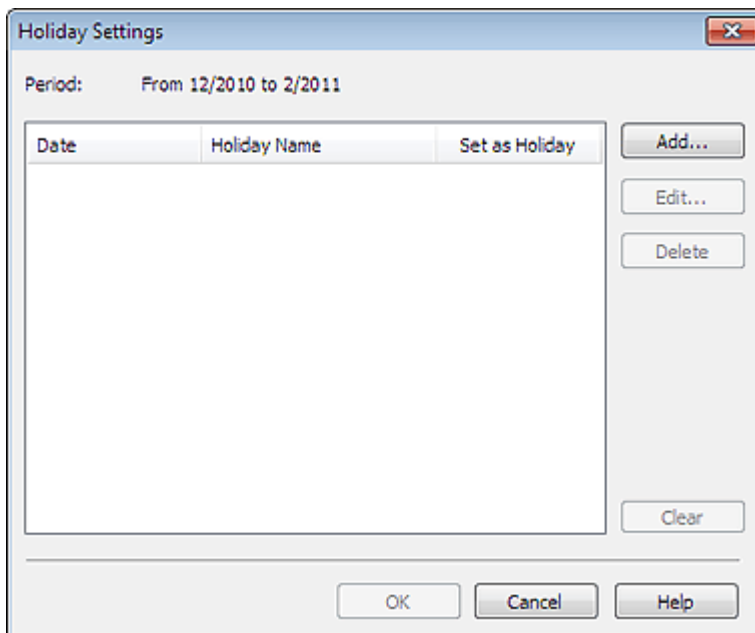
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Setting Holidays

You can add holidays to your calendar.

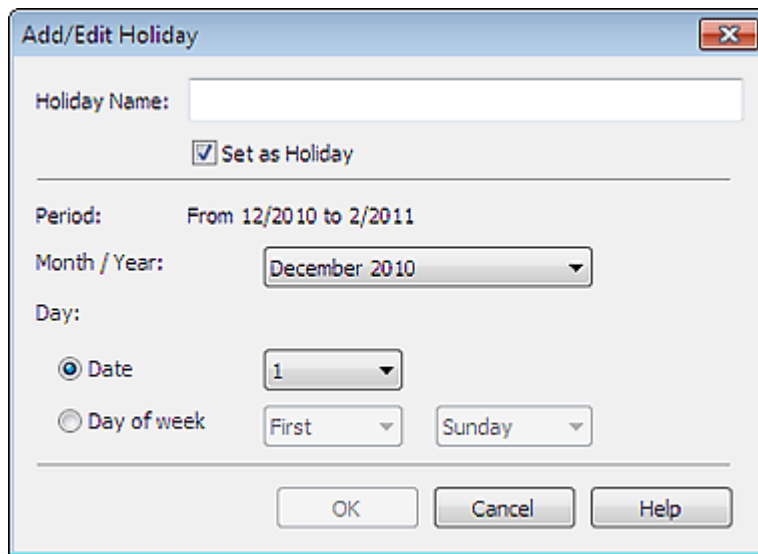
Click Set Holidays... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or click  (Setup Period/Holiday) in the Edit screen and click Set Holidays... in the Calendar General Settings dialog box to display the Holiday Settings dialog box.



To add a holiday, click Add.... The Add/Edit Holiday dialog box appears. To edit a saved holiday, select it and click Edit....

To delete a holiday, select it and click Delete. To delete all the saved holidays within your calendar period, click Clear.

In the Add/Edit Holiday dialog box that appears by clicking Add... or Edit..., you can specify the name and date of the holiday.



The dialog box is titled "Add/Edit Holiday" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following fields and controls:

- Holiday Name:** A text input field.
- Set as Holiday:** A checked checkbox.
- Period:** A label followed by the text "From 12/2010 to 2/2011".
- Month / Year:** A dropdown menu showing "December 2010".
- Day:** A label followed by two options:
 - Date:** A radio button (selected) followed by a dropdown menu showing "1".
 - Day of week:** A radio button (unselected) followed by two dropdown menus showing "First" and "Sunday".
- Buttons:** "OK", "Cancel", and "Help" buttons at the bottom.

Enter the name in Holiday Name and specify the date.

Select the Set as Holiday checkbox to display that day as a holiday in your calendar.

Note

- See Help for details on each dialog box.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Setting Calendar Display

A100

Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Setting Calendar Display

You can customize the calendar display (fonts, lines, colors, position, size, etc.).

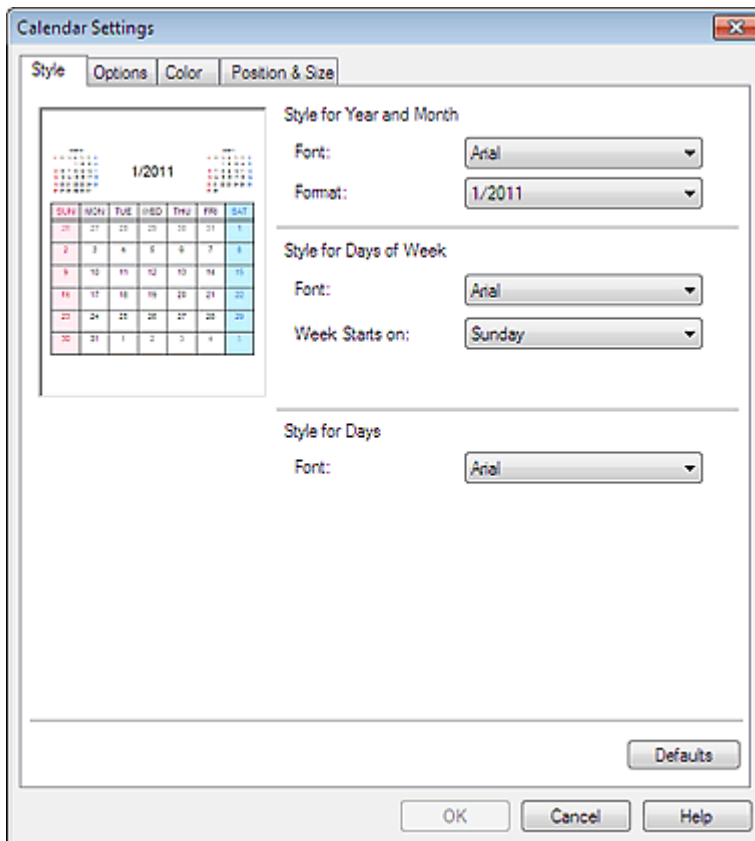
Click Settings... in the Page Setup screen of Calendar, or select a calendar in the Edit screen and click



(Setup Calendar) to display the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Important

- The Position & Size tab is displayed only when the Calendar Settings dialog box is displayed from the Edit screen.



Note

- See Help for details on the Calendar Settings dialog box.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with the Bundled Application Software > Other Settings > Opening Saved Files

A103

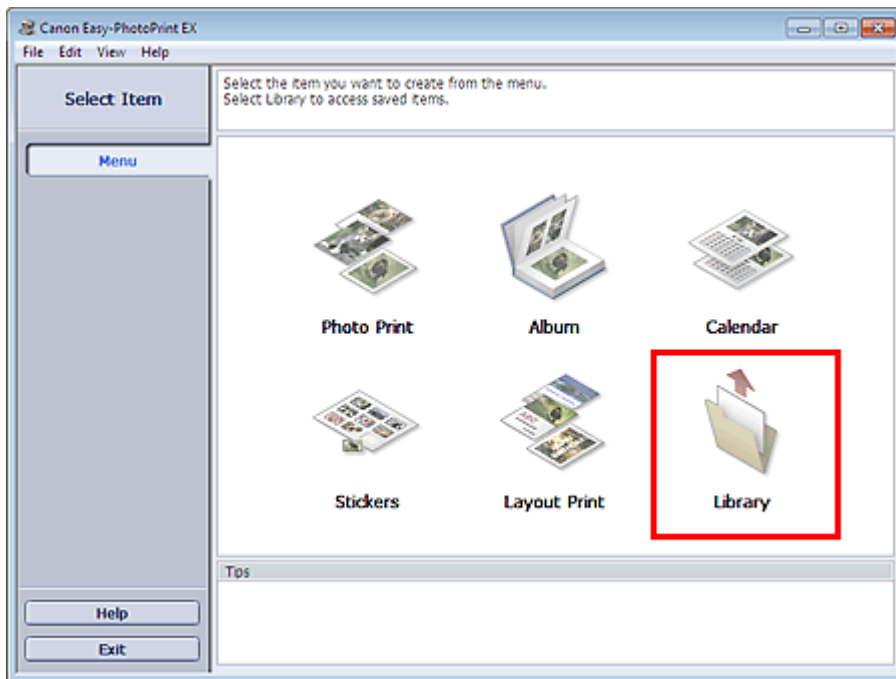
Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Opening Saved Files

You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX.

1. Click Library from Menu.



The Open dialog box appears.

You can check files created and saved with Easy-PhotoPrint EX in icon view (only for Windows 7/ Windows Vista) or thumbnail view.

Important

- When using 64-bit editions of Windows 7, Windows Vista, or Windows XP, the contents of files cannot be displayed on Explorer.

2. Select the file you want to open and click Open.

The Edit screen appears.

3. Edit the file if necessary.

Note

- See the following sections for details on the editing procedures.
 - ➡ Editing Album
 - ➡ Editing Calendar
 - ➡ Editing Stickers
 - ➡ Editing Layout Print

Note

- Easy-PhotoPrint EX supports the following file formats (extensions).
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Album file (.el1)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Stickers file (.el2)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Calendar file (.el4)
 - Easy-PhotoPrint EX Layout file (.el5)
 - You can open files created with Easy-PhotoPrint EX with the following methods, besides from Library in Menu.
 - Click Open in the step button area of each screen, then select the file you want to edit.
 - Double-click the file.
 - From the File menu, click Open..., then select the file you want to edit.
 - You can also open a recently used file by clicking the file name shown in the File menu.
-

[Page top](#) 

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Arvutist printimine](#) > [Printimine muu rakendustarkvaraga](#)

Printimine muu rakendustarkvaraga

- ➡ Erinevad printimisviisid
- ➡ Prindikvaliteedi muutmine ja pildiandmete korrigeerimine
- ➡ Ülevaade printeridraiverist

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Various Printing Methods](#)

Various Printing Methods

- ➡ [Printing with Easy Setup](#)
- ➡ [Setting a Page Size and Orientation](#)
- ➡ [Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order](#)
- ➡ [Setting the Stapling Margin](#)
- ➡ [Execute Borderless Printing](#)
- ➡ [Fit-to-Page Printing](#)
- ➡ [Scaled Printing](#)
- ➡ [Page Layout Printing](#)
- ➡ [Poster Printing](#)
- ➡ [Booklet Printing](#)
- ➡ [Duplex Printing](#)
- ➡ [Stamp/Background Printing](#)
- ➡ [Registering a Stamp](#)
- ➡ [Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background](#)
- ➡ [Printing an Envelope](#)
- ➡ [Displaying the Print Results before Printing](#)
- ➡ [Setting Paper Dimensions \(Custom Size\)](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Printing with Easy Setup

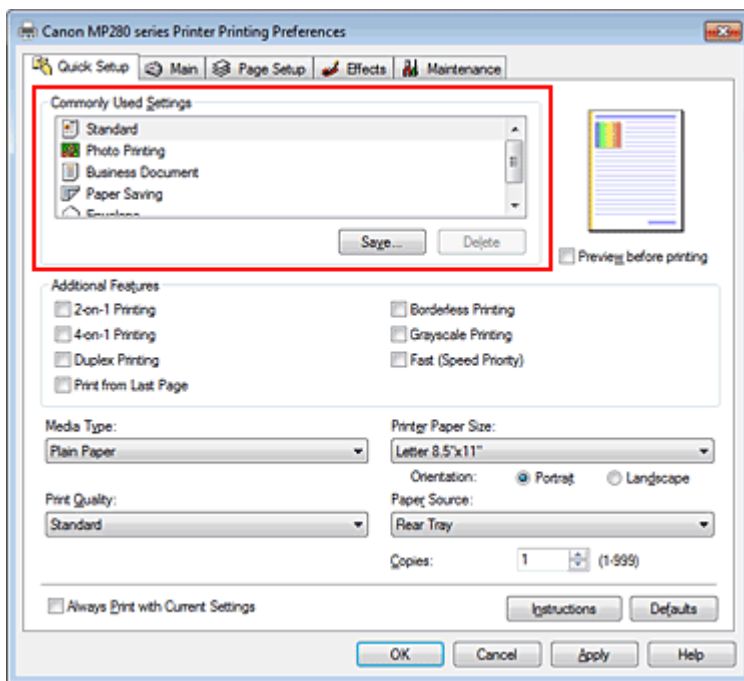
P000

Printing with Easy Setup

The simple setup procedure for carrying out appropriate printing on this machine, is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select a frequently used profile

In Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select a printing profile suited for the purpose. When you select a printing profile, the Additional Features, Media Type, and Printer Paper Size settings are automatically switched to the values that were preset.



3. Select the print quality

For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document is printed with settings that matches your purpose.

Important

- When you select the Always Print with Current Settings check box, all settings specified on the Quick Setup, Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs are saved, and you can print with the same settings from the next time as well. (Effects tab cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.)
- Click Save... to register the specified settings. For instructions on registering settings, see "[Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile.](#)"

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting a Page Size and Orientation

P400

Setting a Page Size and Orientation

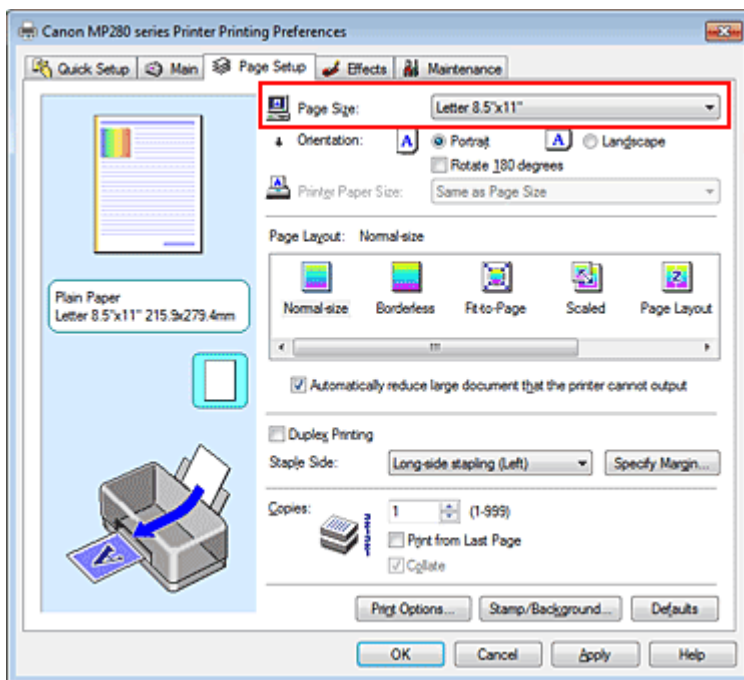
The paper size and orientation are essentially determined by the application. When the page size and orientation set for Page Size and Orientation on the Page Setup tab are same as those set with the application, you do not need to select them on the Page Setup tab.

When you are not able to specify them with the application, the procedure for selecting a page size and orientation is as follows:

You can also set page size and Orientation on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the paper size

Select a page size from the Page Size list on the Page Setup tab.



3. Set Orientation

Select Portrait or Landscape for Orientation. Check Rotate 180 degrees check box when you want to perform printing with the original being rotated 180 degrees.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the selected page size and the orientation.

Note

- If Normal-size is selected for Page Layout, then Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output is displayed. Normally, you can leave the Automatically reduce large document that the printer cannot output check box checked. During printing, if you do not want to reduce large documents that cannot be printed on the printer, uncheck the check box.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

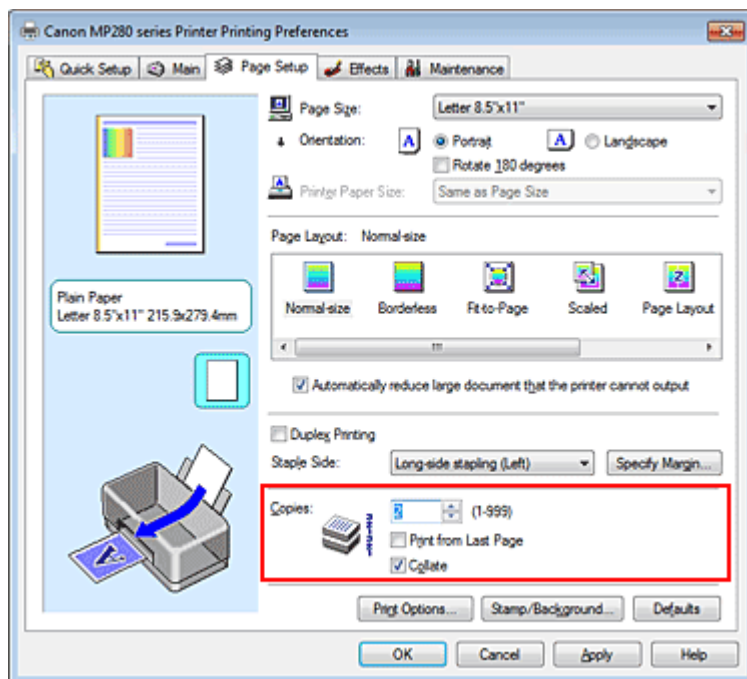
P001

Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order

The procedure for specifying the number of copies and printing order is as follows:
You can also set the number of copies on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Specify the number of copies to be printed

For Copies on the Page Setup tab, specify the number of copies to be printed.

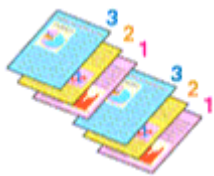


3. Specify the print order

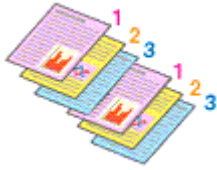
Check the Print from Last Page check box when you want to print from the last page in order, and uncheck the check box when you want to print from the first page.

Check the Collate check box when you are printing multiple copies of a document and want to print out all pages in each copy together. Uncheck this check box when you want to print all pages with the same page number together.

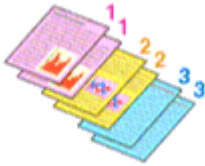
- Print from Last Page: ☐ /Collate: ☒



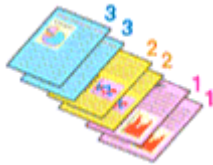
- Print from Last Page: ☒ /Collate: ☒



- Print from Last Page: ☒ /Collate: ☐



- Print from Last Page: ☐ /Collate: ☐



4. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the specified number of copies will be printed with the specified printing order.

Important

- When the application software that you used to create the document has the same function, give priority to the printer driver settings. However, if the print results are not acceptable, specify the function settings on the application software. When you specify the number of copies and the printing order with both the application and this printer driver, the number of copies may be multiplied numbers of the two settings or the specified printing order may not be enabled.
- Print from Last Page and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable when Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
- Print from Last Page appears grayed out and is unavailable when Poster is selected for Page Layout.

Note

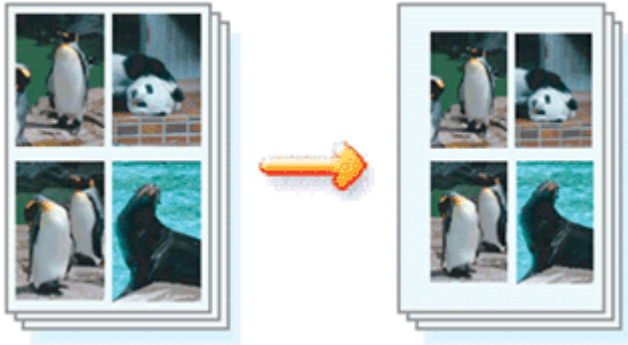
- By setting both Print from Last Page and Collate, you can perform printing so that papers are collated one by one starting from the last page. These settings can be used in combination with Normal-size, Borderless, Fit-to-Page, Scaled, Page Layout, and Duplex Printing.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting the Stapling Margin

P002

Setting the Stapling Margin

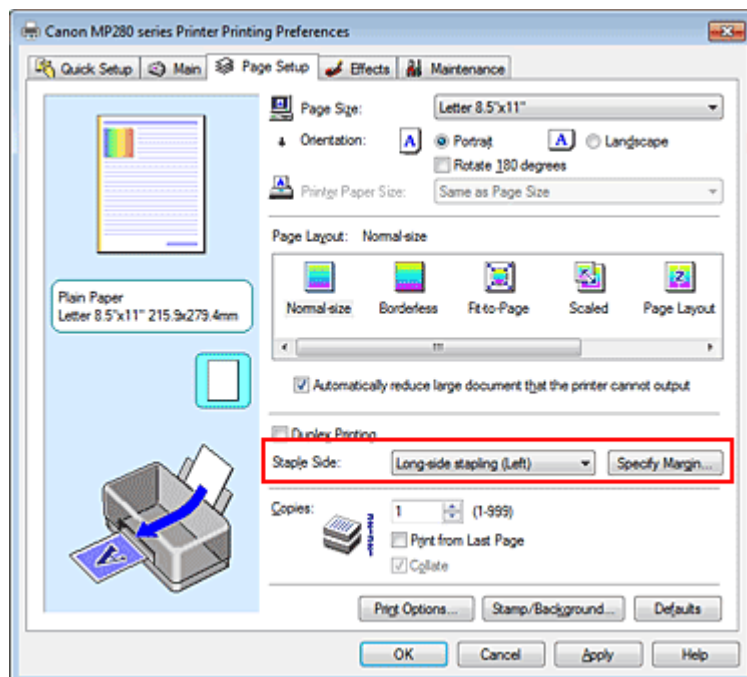


The procedure for setting the staple side and the margin width is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Specify the side to be stapled

Check the position of the stapling margin from Staple Side on the Page Setup tab.

The printer analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best staple position. When you want to change the setting, select from the list.



3. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.



**Note**

- The printer automatically reduces the print area depending on the staple position margin.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified staple side and margin width.

**Important**

- Staple Side and Specify Margin... appear grayed out and are unavailable when:
 - Borderless, Poster, or Booklet is selected for Page Layout.
 - Scaled is selected for Page Layout (When Duplex Printing is also selected, only Staple Side can be specified).

[Page top](#) ↑

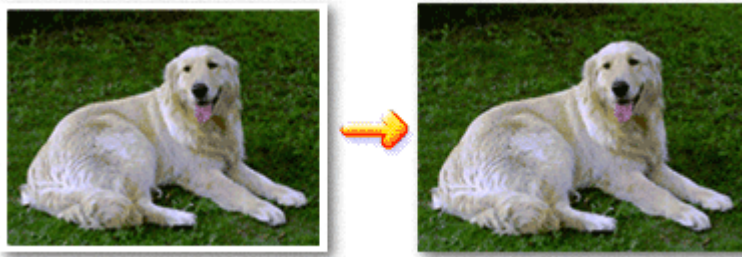
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Execute Borderless Printing

P003

Execute Borderless Printing

The borderless printing function allows you to print data without any margin by enlarging the data so that it extends slightly off the paper. Without the borderless printing function, a margin is provided around the printed data. When you want to print data such as a photo without providing any margin around it, set borderless printing.



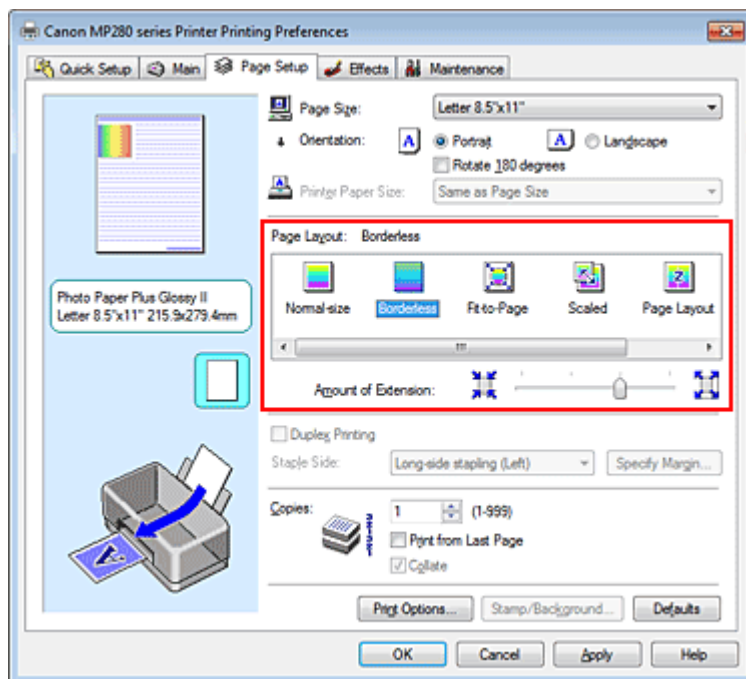
The procedure for performing borderless printing is as follows:

You can also set borderless printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

Setting Borderless Printing

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set borderless printing

Select Borderless from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

When a message prompting you to change the media type appears, select a media type from the list and click OK.

3. Check the paper size

Check the Page Size list. When you want to change, select another page size from the list. The list displays only sizes that can be used for borderless printing.

4. Adjust the amount of extension from the paper

If necessary, adjust the amount of extension using the Amount of Extension slider.

Moving the slider to the right increases the amount extending off the paper, and moving the slider to the left decreases the amount.

It is recommended to set the slider at the second position from the right for most cases.



Important

- When you set the slider at the rightmost position, the back side of the paper may become smudged.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the data is printed without any margins on the paper.



Important

- When a page size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected, the size is automatically changed to the valid page sizes for borderless printing.
- When High Resolution Paper, T-Shirt Transfers, or Envelope is selected from the Media Type list on the Main tab, you cannot perform borderless printing.
- When Borderless is selected, the Printer Paper Size, Duplex Printing, Staple Side settings, and the Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) button on the Page Setup tab appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Depending on the type of the media used during borderless printing, the print quality may deteriorate at the top and bottom of the sheet or stains may form.
- When the ratio of the height to the width differs from the image data, a portion of the image may not be printed depending on the size of the media used.
In this case, crop the image data with an application software according to the paper size.



Note

- When Plain Paper is selected for Media Type on the Main tab, borderless printing is not recommended, and therefore the message for media selection appears.
When you are using plain paper for test printing, select Plain Paper, and click OK.

Expanding the Range of the Document to Print

Setting a large amount of extension allows you to perform borderless printing with no problems. However, the portion of the document extending off the paper range will not be printed. Subjects around the perimeter of a photo may not be printed.

Try borderless printing once. When you are not satisfied with the result of borderless printing, reduce the amount of extension. The extension amount decreases as the Amount of Extension slider is moved to the left.



Important

- When the amount of extension is decreased, an unexpected margin may be produced on the print, depending on the size of the paper.



Note

- When the Amount of Extension slider is set to the leftmost position, image data will be printed in the full size.
- When Preview before printing is checked on the Main tab, you can confirm whether there will be no

border before printing.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Fit-to-Page Printing

P004

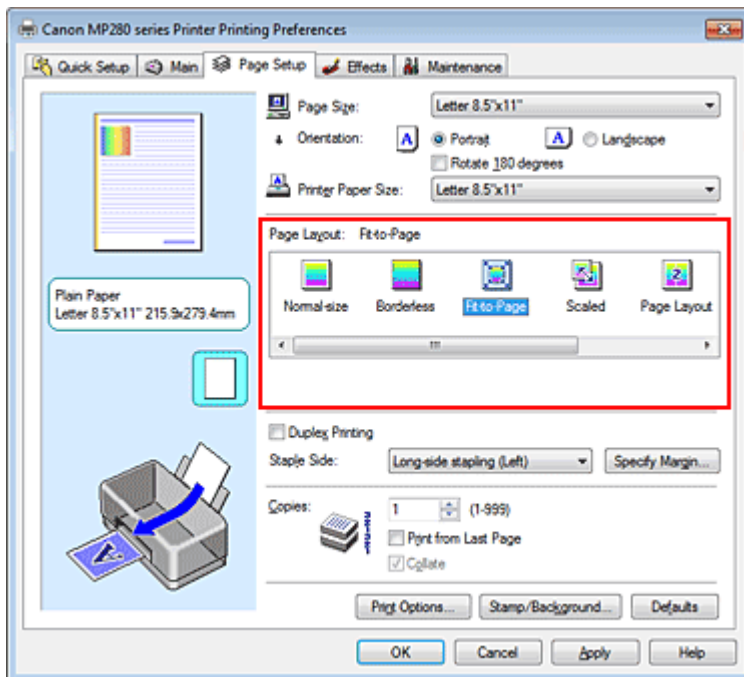
Fit-to-Page Printing



The procedure for printing a document that is automatically enlarged or reduced to fit the page size to be used is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set fit-to-page printing

Select Fit-to-Page from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



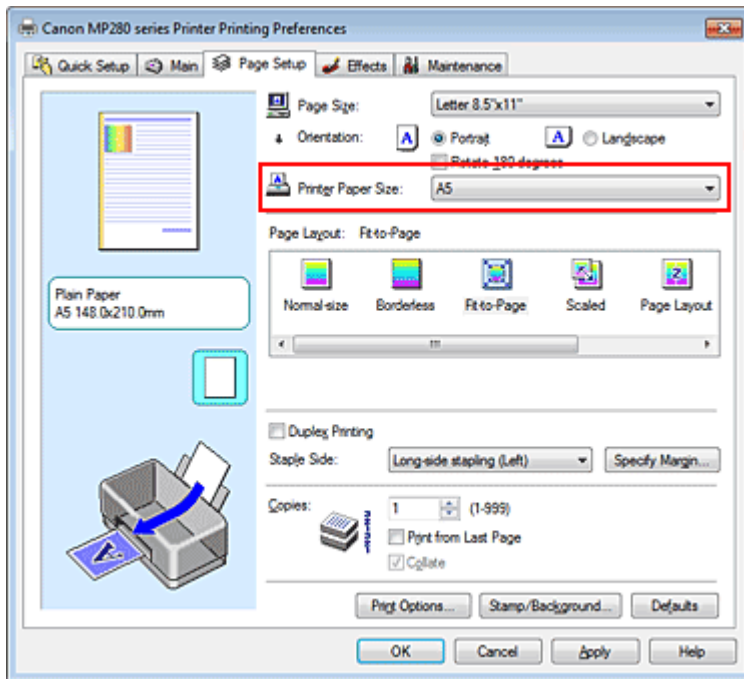
3. Select the paper size for the data

Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list. When the Printer Paper Size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced. When the Printer Paper Size is larger than the Page Size, the page image will be enlarged.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be enlarged or reduced to fit to the page size.

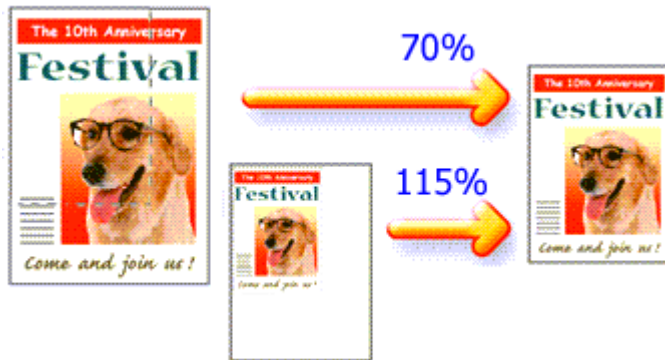
[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Scaled Printing

P005

Scaled Printing

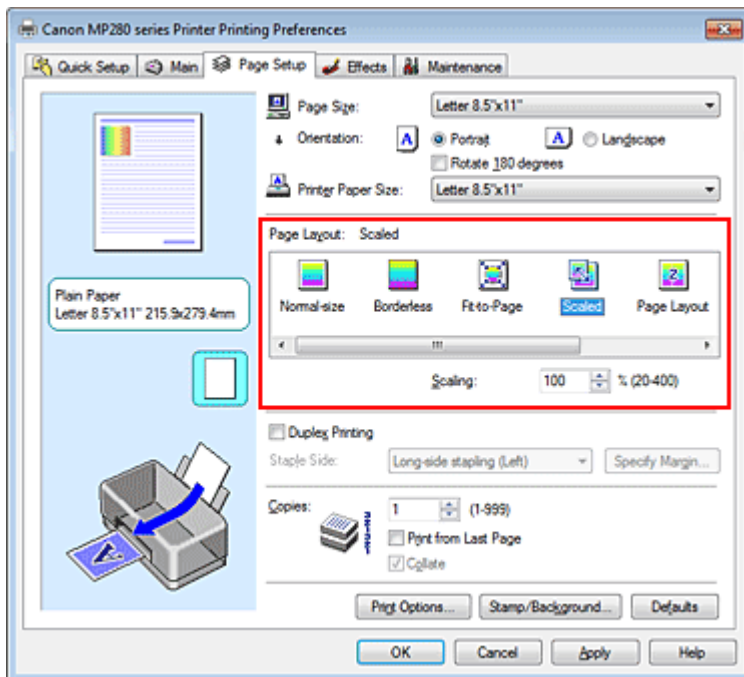


The procedure for printing a document with pages enlarged or reduced is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**

2. Set scaled printing

Select Scaled from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.



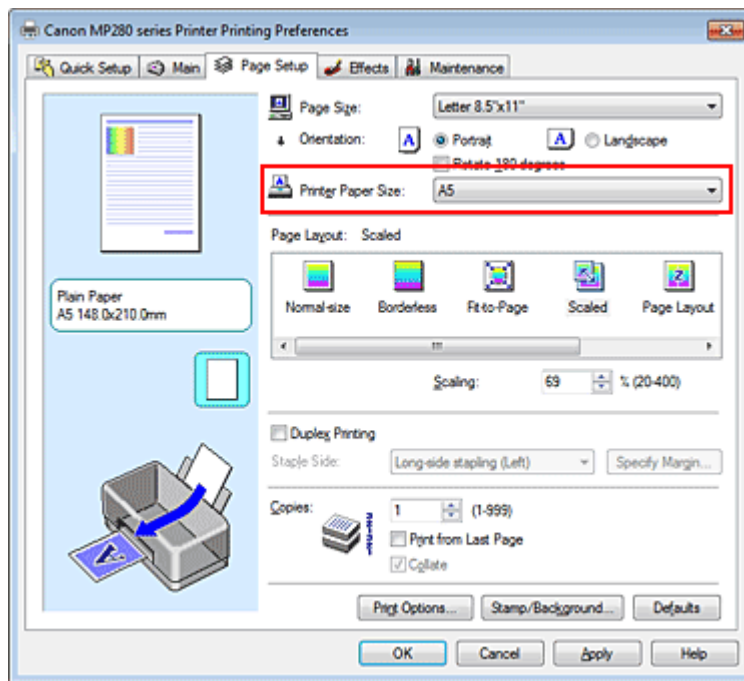
3. Select the paper size for the data

Using Page Size, select the page size that is set with your application.

4. Set the scaling rate by using one of the following methods:

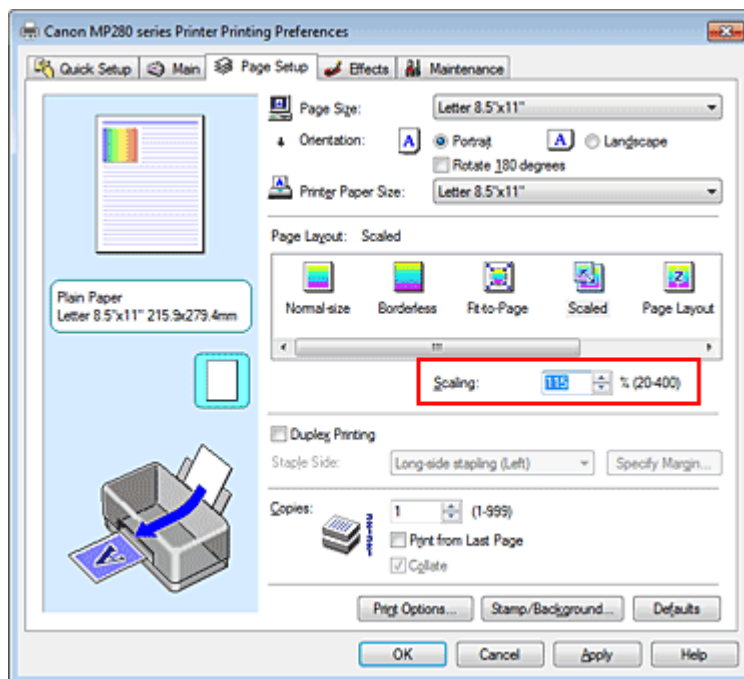
- **Select a Printer Paper Size**

When the printer paper size is smaller than the Page Size, the page image will be reduced.
When the printer paper size is larger than the Page Size, the page image will be enlarged.



- **Specify a scaling factor**

Directly type in a value into the Scaling box.



The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document will be printed with the specified scale.

Important

- When the application software which you created the original has the scaled printing function, configure the settings on your application software. You do not need to configure the same setting in the printer driver.
- When Scaled is selected, the Staple Side list box appears grayed out and is unavailable (when Duplex Printing is not selected).

Note

- Selecting Scaled changes the printable area of the document.
-

[Page top](#) ↑

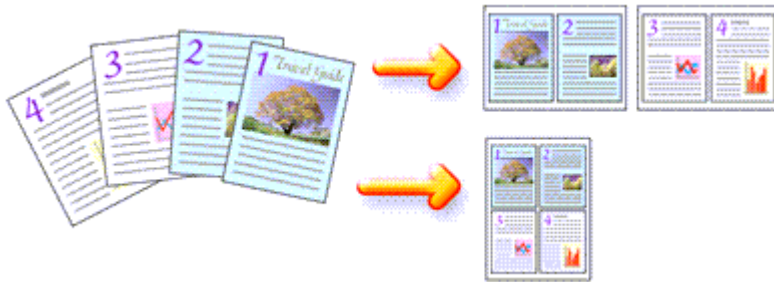
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Page Layout Printing

P006

Page Layout Printing

The page layout printing function allows you to print more than one page image on a single sheet of paper.

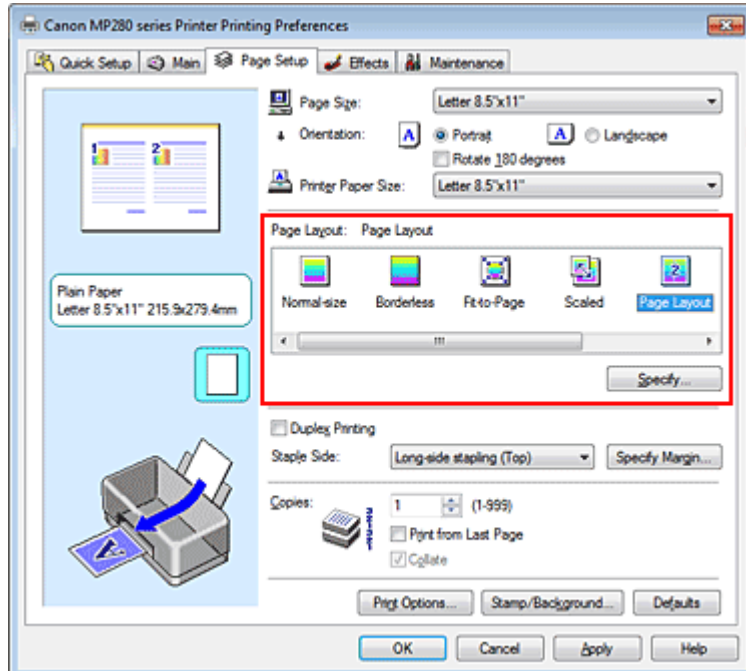


The procedure for performing page layout printing is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set page layout printing

Select Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

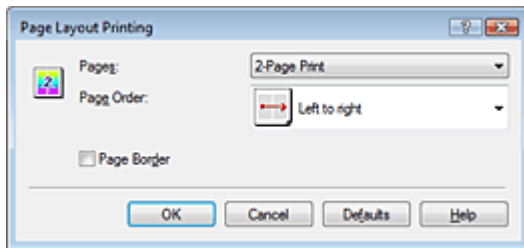
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Select the print paper size
4. Set the number of pages to be printed on one sheet and the page order

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list. Setting the layout of two pages of the document from left to right is complete.

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Page Layout Printing dialog box, and click OK.

**Pages**

To change the number of pages to be printed on a single sheet of paper, select the number of pages from the list.

You can also set 2-Page Print or 4-Page Print on the Quick Setup tab.

Page Order

To change the page arrangement order, select an icon from the list to change the page placement order.

Page Border

To print a page border around each document page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the specified number of pages will be arranged on each sheet of paper in the specified order.

[Page top](#) ↑

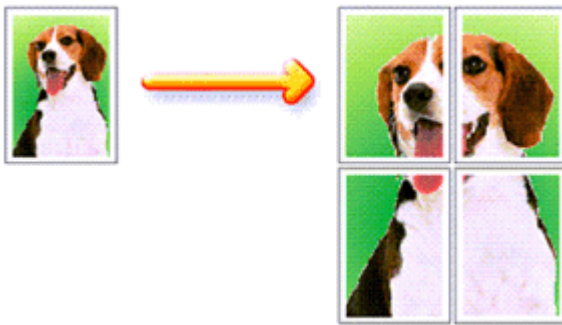
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Poster Printing

P401

Poster Printing

The poster printing function allows you to enlarge image data, divide it into several pages, and print these pages on separate sheets of paper. When the pages are pasted together, they form a large print like a poster.



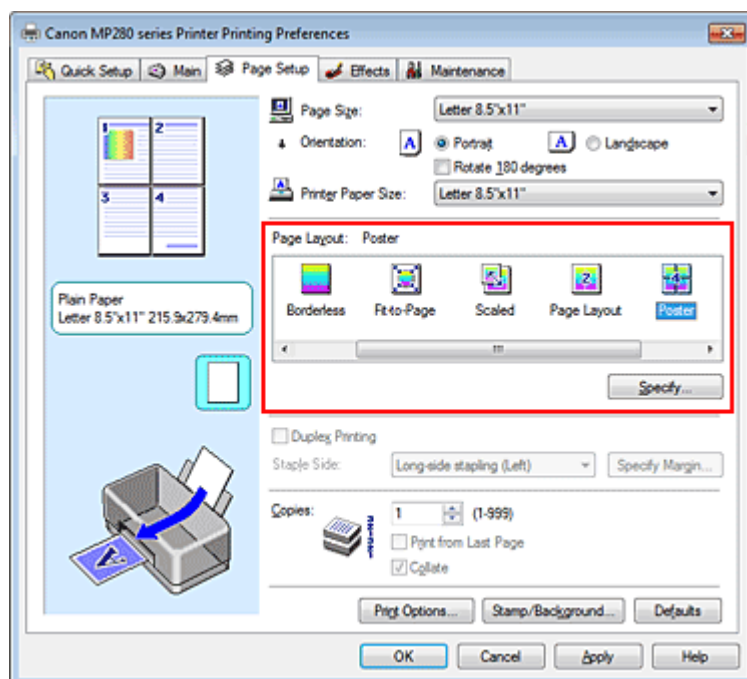
The procedure for performing poster printing is as follows:

Setting Poster Printing

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Set poster printing

Select Poster from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list. Setting 2 by 2-page poster printing is complete.

4. Set the number of image divisions and the pages to be printed

If necessary, click Specify..., specify the following settings in the Poster Printing dialog box, and then click OK.

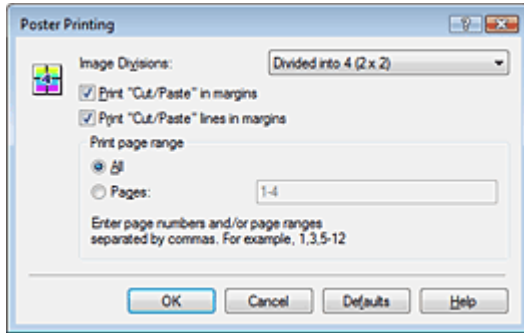


Image Divisions

Select the number of divisions (vertical x horizontal). As the number of divisions increases, the number of sheets used for printing increases, allowing you to create a larger poster.

Print "Cut/Paste" in margins

To leave out words "Cut" and "Paste", uncheck this check box.



Note

- This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

Print "Cut/Paste" lines in margins

To leave out cut lines, uncheck this check box.

Print page range

Specifies the printing range. Select All under normal circumstances.

To reprint only a specific page, select Pages and enter the page number you want to print. To specify multiple pages, enter the page numbers by separating them with commas or by entering a hyphen between the page numbers.



Note

- You can also specify the print range by clicking the pages in the settings preview.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be divided into several pages during printing.

After all poster pages have been printed, paste the pages together to create a poster.

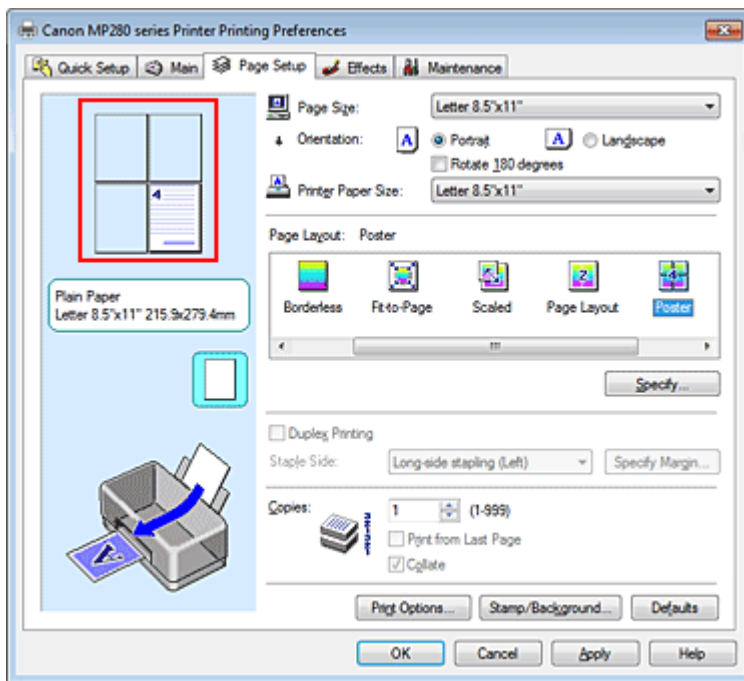
Printing Only Specific Pages

If ink becomes faint or runs out during printing, you can reprint only the specific pages by following the procedure below:

1. Set the print range

In the settings preview on the left of the Page Setup tab, click the pages that do not need to be printed.

The pages that were clicked are deleted, and only the pages to be printed are displayed.



Note

- Click the deleted pages to display them again.
- Right-click the settings preview to select Print all pages or Delete all pages.

2. Complete the setup

After completing the page selection, click OK.

When you execute print, only specified pages will be printed.

Important

- When Poster is selected, the Duplex Printing, Staple Side and Print from Last Page appear grayed out and are unavailable.
- Since poster printing enlarges the document when printing it, the print results may become coarse.

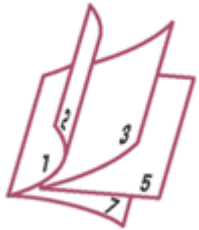
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Booklet Printing

P402

Booklet Printing

The booklet printing function allows you to print data for a booklet. Data is printed on both sides of the paper. This type of printing ensures that pages can be collated properly, in page number order, when the printed sheets are folded and stapled at the center.

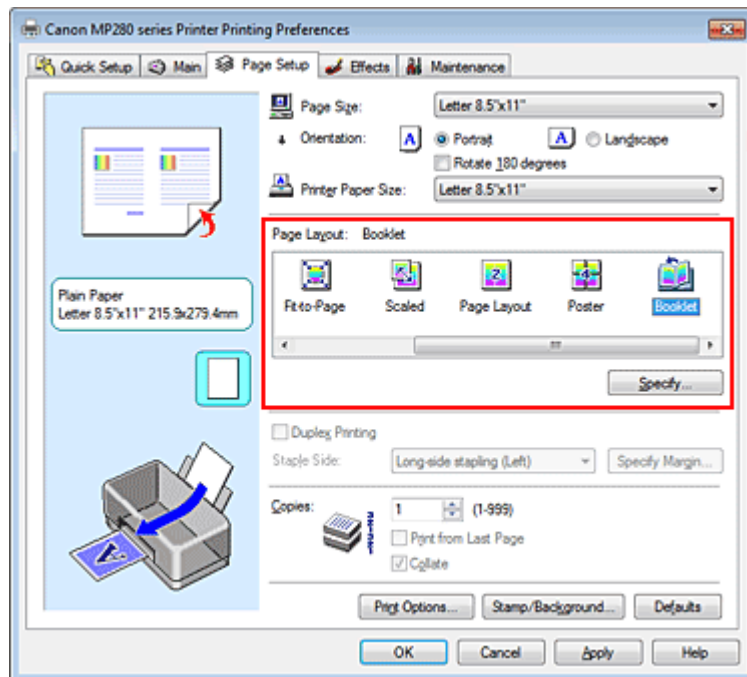


The procedure for performing booklet printing is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set booklet printing

Select Booklet from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the window.

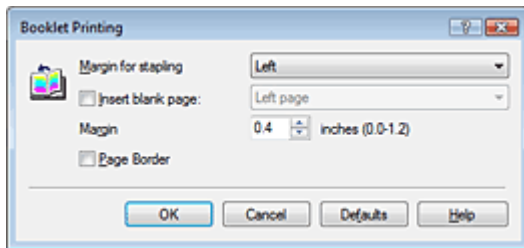


3. Select the print paper size

Select the size of the paper loaded in the machine from the Printer Paper Size list.

4. Set the margin for stapling and the margin width

Click Specify... and specify the following settings in the Booklet Printing dialog box, and then click OK.

**Margin for stapling**

Select which side should the stapling margin be on when the booklet is completed.

Insert blank page

To leave one side of a sheet blank, check the check box, and select the page to be left blank.

Margin

Enter the margin width. The specified width from the center of the sheet becomes the margin width for one page.

Page Border

To print a page border around each document page, check the check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document will be printed on one side of a sheet of paper. When the printing of one side is complete, set the paper correctly by following the message and click OK. When the printing of the other side is complete, fold the paper at the center of the margin and make a booklet.

Important

- Booklet cannot be selected when a media type other than Plain Paper is selected for Media Type on the Main tab.
- When Booklet is selected, Duplex Printing, Staple Side, Print from Last Page, and Collate appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Note

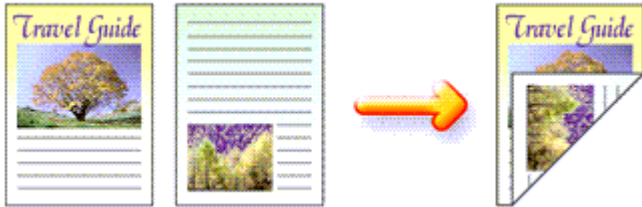
- The stamp and background are not printed on the inserted blank sheets with the Insert blank page function of booklet printing.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Duplex Printing

P007

Duplex Printing

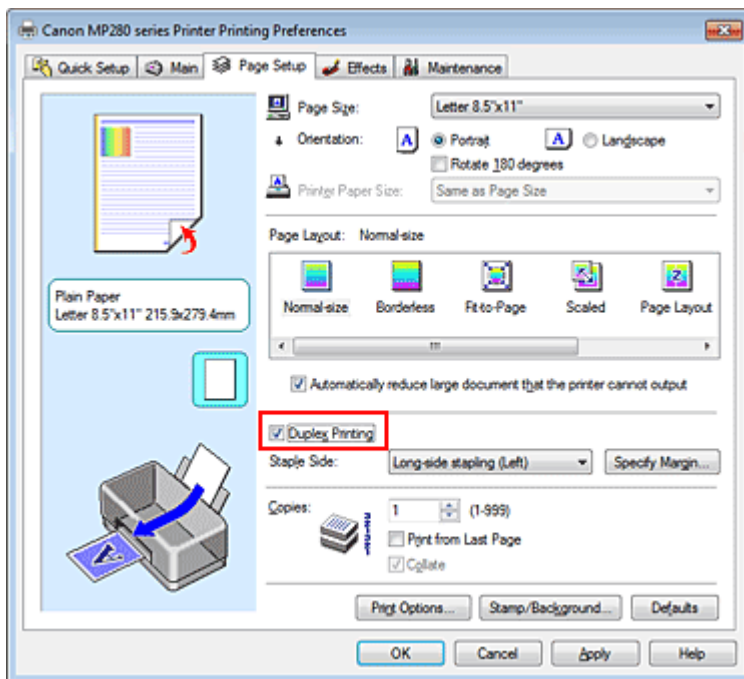


The procedure for printing data on both sides of a sheet of paper is as follows:
You can also set duplex printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set duplex printing

Check the Duplex Printing check box on the Page Setup tab.



3. Select the layout

Select Normal-size (or Fit-to-Page, Scaled, or Page Layout) from the Page Layout list.

4. Specify the side to be stapled

The machine analyzes the Orientation and Page Layout settings, and automatically selects the best Staple Side. When you want to change the setting, select another value from the list.

5. Set the margin width

If necessary, click Specify Margin... and set the margin width, and then click OK.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the document is first printed on one side of a sheet of paper. After one side is printed, reload the paper correctly according to the message.

Then click OK to print the opposite side.

Important

- When a media type other than Plain Paper is selected from Media Type, Duplex Printing appears grayed out and is unavailable.
- When Borderless, Poster or Booklet is selected from the Page Layout list, Duplex Printing and Staple Side appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Note

- If the back side of the paper becomes smudged during duplex printing, perform Bottom Plate Cleaning in the Maintenance tab.

Related Topic

➡ [Cleaning Inside the Machine](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing

P403

Stamp/Background Printing

Stamp or Background may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

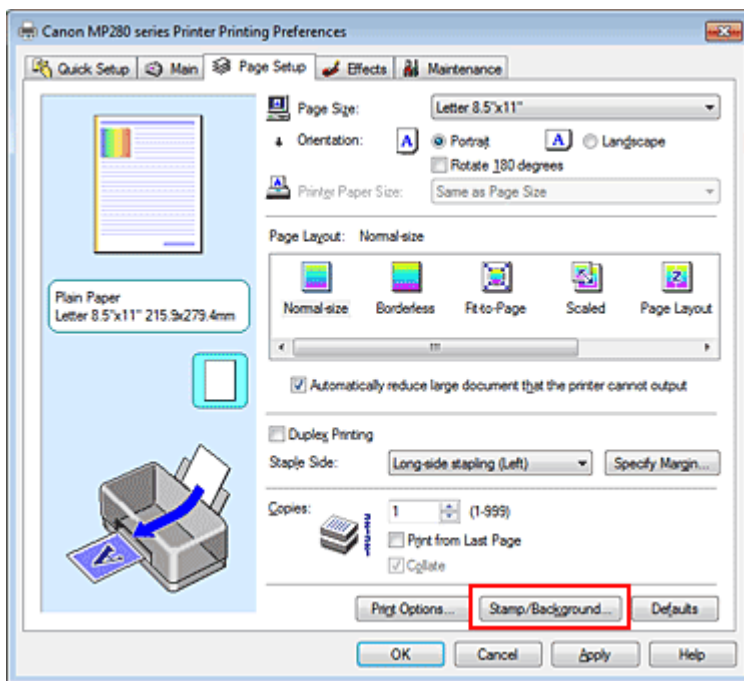
The Stamp function allows you to print a stamp text or a bitmap over or behind document data. It also allows you to print date, time and user name. The Background function allows you to print a light illustration behind the document data.

The procedure for performing stamp/background printing is as follows:

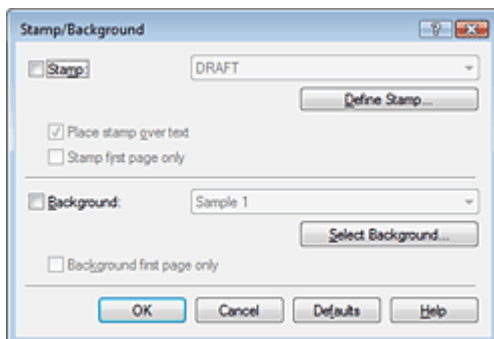
Printing a Stamp

"CONFIDENTIAL," "IMPORTANT," and other stamps that are used often in companies are pre-registered.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Click Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens.



- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button and only the stamp function can be used.
-

3. Select a stamp

Check the Stamp check box, and select the stamp to be used from the list.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the stamp details

If necessary, specify the following settings, and then click OK.

Define Stamp... button

To change the stamp text, bitmap, or position, click this (see " [Registering a Stamp](#) ").

Place stamp over text

To print the stamp on the front of the document, check this check box.



Note

- The stamp is given priority because the stamp is printed over the document data in the sections where the stamp and the document data overlap. When this check box is unchecked, the stamp is printed behind the document data and may be hidden in the overlapping sections depending on the application used.
 - Place stamp over text cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.
When the XPS printer driver is used, the stamp is normally printed in the foreground of the document.
-

Print semitransparent stamp

Check this check box to print a semi-transparent stamp on the document.
This function is available only when the XPS printer driver is used.

Stamp first page only

To print the stamp only on the first page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.
When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified stamp.

Printing a Background

Two bitmap files are pre-registered as samples.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab

The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.

3. Select the background

Check the Background check box, and select the background to be used from the list.
The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the Page Setup tab.

4. Set the background details

If necessary, complete the following settings, and then click OK.

Select Background... button

To use another background or change the layout or density of a background, click this (see " [Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background](#) ").

Background first page only

To print the background only on the first page, check this check box.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified background.

Important

- When Borderless is selected, the Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) button appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Note

- The stamp and background are not printed on blank sheets inserted with the Insert blank page function of booklet printing.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Registering a Stamp](#)
- ➡ [Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing > Registering a Stamp

P404

Registering a Stamp

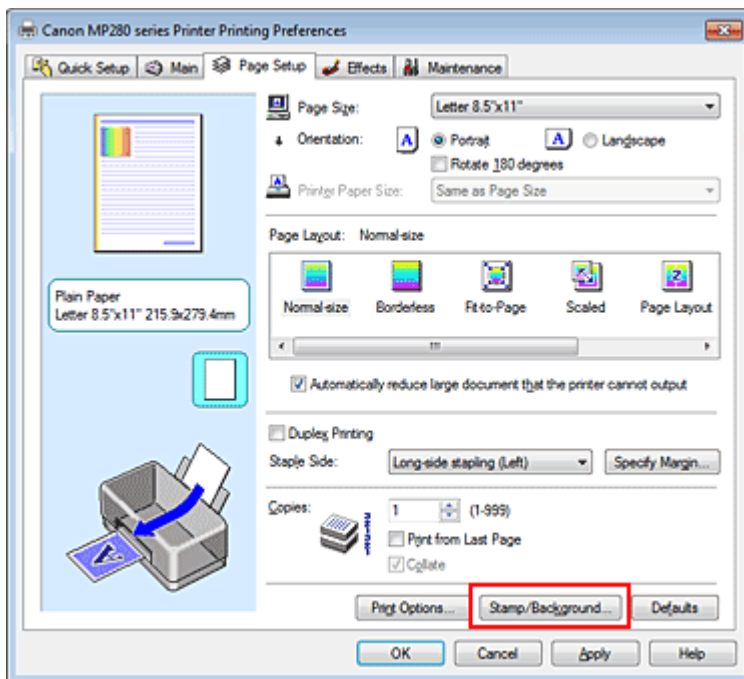
This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

You can create and register a new stamp. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing stamp. Unnecessary stamps can be deleted at any time.

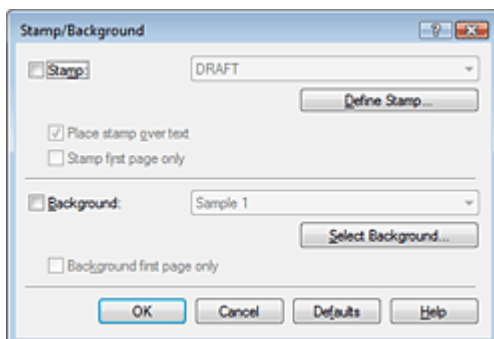
The procedure for registering a new stamp is as follows:

Registering a New Stamp

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Click Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens.

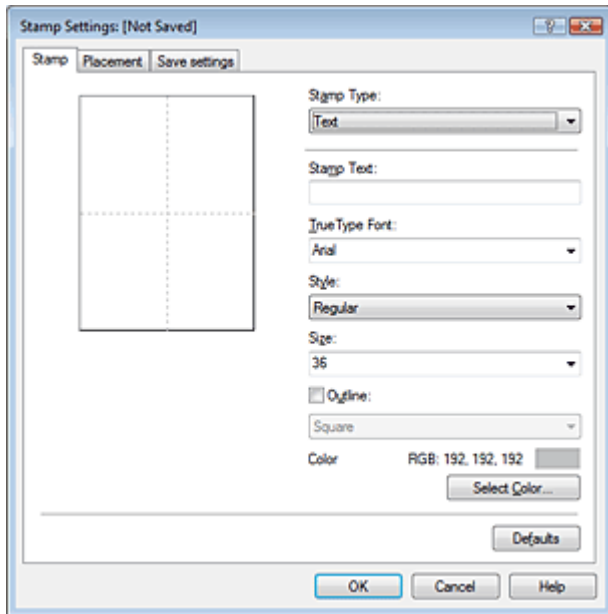


Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button and only the stamp function can be used.

3. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.



4. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

• Stamp tab

Select Text, Bitmap, or Date/Time/User Name that matches your purpose for Stamp Type.

- For Text registration, the characters must already be entered in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline settings. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....
- For Bitmap, click Select File... and select the bitmap file (.bmp) to be used. If necessary, change the settings of the Size and Transparent white area.
- For Date/Time/User Name, the creation date/time and user name of the printed object are displayed in Stamp Text. If necessary, change the settings of TrueType Font, Style, Size, and Outline. You can select the color of the stamp by clicking Select Color....

Important

- Stamp Text appears grayed out and is unavailable when Date/Time/User Name is selected.

• Placement tab

Select the stamp position from the Position list. You can also select Custom from the Position list and specify coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.

You can also change the stamp position by dragging the stamp in the preview window.

To change the stamp position angle, type a value in the Orientation box directly.

5. Save the stamp

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

6. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Changing and Registering Some of Stamp Settings

1. Select the stamp for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Stamp check box in the Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box, and then select the title of the stamp to be changed from the Stamp list.

2. Click Define Stamp...

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

3. Configure the stamp while viewing the preview window

4. Overwrite save the stamp

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab.

When you want to save the stamp with a different title, type a new title in the Title box and click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Stamp list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Stamp

1. Click Define Stamp... in the Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box

The Stamp Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the stamp to be deleted

Select the title of the stamp you want to delete from the Stamps list on the Save settings tab. Then click Delete.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background (Stamp) dialog box opens again.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Stamp/Background Printing > Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

P405

Registering Image Data to be Used as a Background

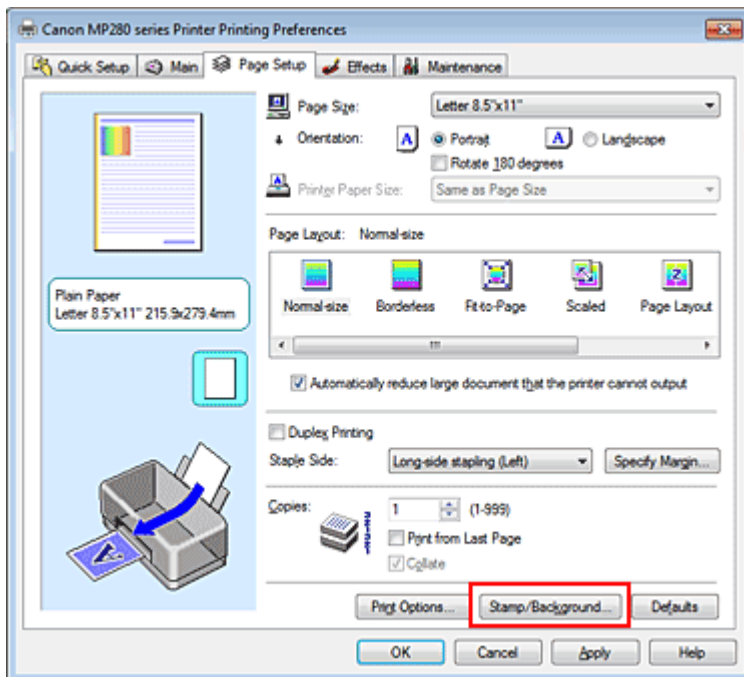
This feature may be unavailable when certain printer drivers are used.

You can select a bitmap file (.bmp) and register it as a new background. You can also change and register some of the settings of an existing background. An unnecessary background can be deleted at any time.

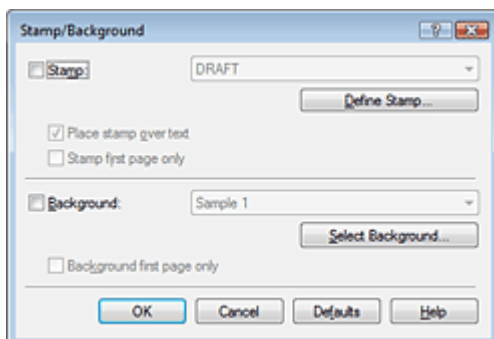
The procedure for registering image data to be used as a background is as follows:

Registering New Background

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Click Stamp/Background... on the Page Setup tab



The Stamp/Background dialog box opens.



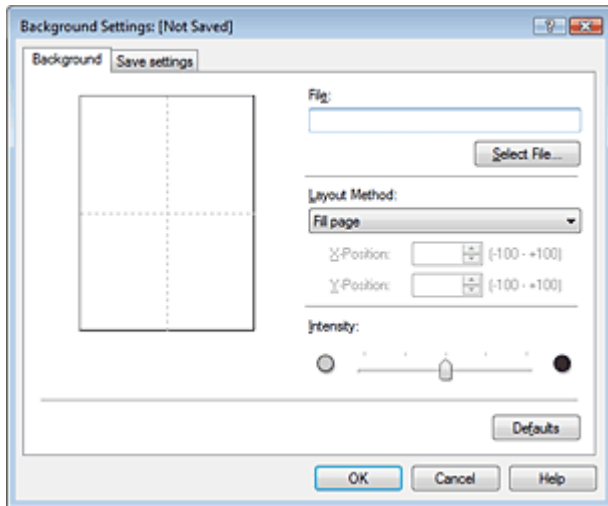
Note

- With the XPS printer driver, the Stamp/Background... button has become the Stamp... button

and Background cannot be used.

3. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.



4. Select the image data to be registered to the background

Click Select File.... Select the target bitmap file (.bmp), and then click Open.

5. Specify the following settings while viewing the preview window

Layout Method

Select how the background image data is to be placed.

When Custom is selected, you can set coordinates for X-Position and Y-Position.

You can also change the background position by dragging the image in the preview window.

Intensity

Set the intensity of the background image data with the Intensity slider. To lighten the background, move the slider to the left. To darken the background, move the slider to the right. To print the background at the original bitmap intensity, move the slider to the rightmost position.

6. Save the background

Click the Save settings tab and enter a title in the Title box, and then click Save.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.

The registered title appears in the Background list.

Changing and Registering Some Background Settings

1. Select the background for which the settings are to be changed

Check the Background check box in the Stamp/Background dialog box, and then select the title of the background you want to change from the Background list.

2. Click Select Background...

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

3. Specify the items on the Background tab while viewing the preview window

4. Save the background

Click Save overwrite on the Save settings tab. When you want to save the background with a different title, enter a new title in the Title box and click Save.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.
The registered title appears in the Background list.

Deleting an Unnecessary Background

1. Click Select Background... in the Stamp/Background dialog box

The Background Settings dialog box opens.

2. Select the background to be deleted

Select the title of the background you want to delete from the Backgrounds list on the Save settings tab, and then click Delete.
Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK. The Stamp/Background dialog box opens again.



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Various Printing Methods](#) > [Printing an Envelope](#)

P406

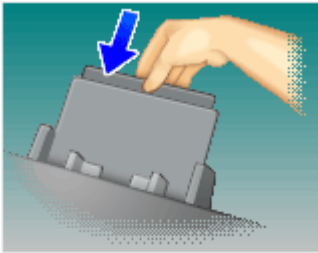
Printing an Envelope

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

For details on how to load an envelope into the machine, refer to "Loading Paper" in the manual: Basic Guide.

The procedure for performing envelope printing is as follows:

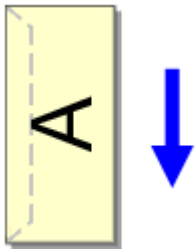
1. Fold down the paper support



2. Load an envelope into the machine

Fold down the envelope flap.

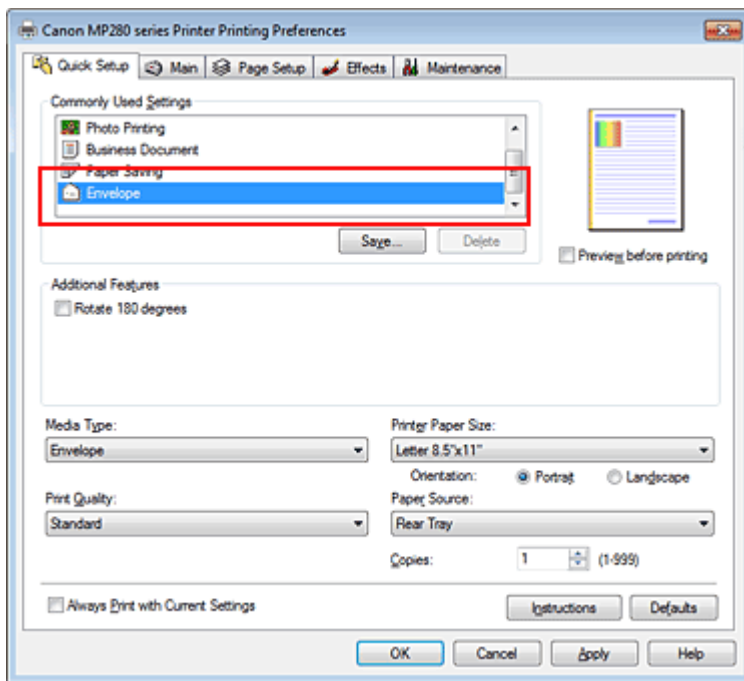
Orient the envelope so that the address side is on top and the flap is on the left, and then load the envelope vertically in the rear tray.



3. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

4. Select the media type

Select Envelope from Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab.



5. Select the paper size

When the Envelope Size Setting dialog box is displayed, select Comm.Env. #10, DL Env., Youkei 4 105x235mm, or Youkei 6 98x190mm, and then click OK.

6. Set the orientation

To print the addressee horizontally, select Landscape for Orientation.

7. Select the print quality

Select High or Standard that matches your purpose for Print Quality.

8. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the information is printed on the envelope.

Important

- When you execute envelope printing, guide messages are displayed.
To hide the guide messages, check the Do not show this message again. check box.
To show the guide again, click the View Printer Status... button on the Maintenance tab, and start the Canon IJ Status Monitor.
Then click Envelope Printing from Display Guide Message of the Option menu, and change the setting to on.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Displaying the Print Results before Printing

P009

Displaying the Print Results before Printing

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

You can display and check the print result before printing.

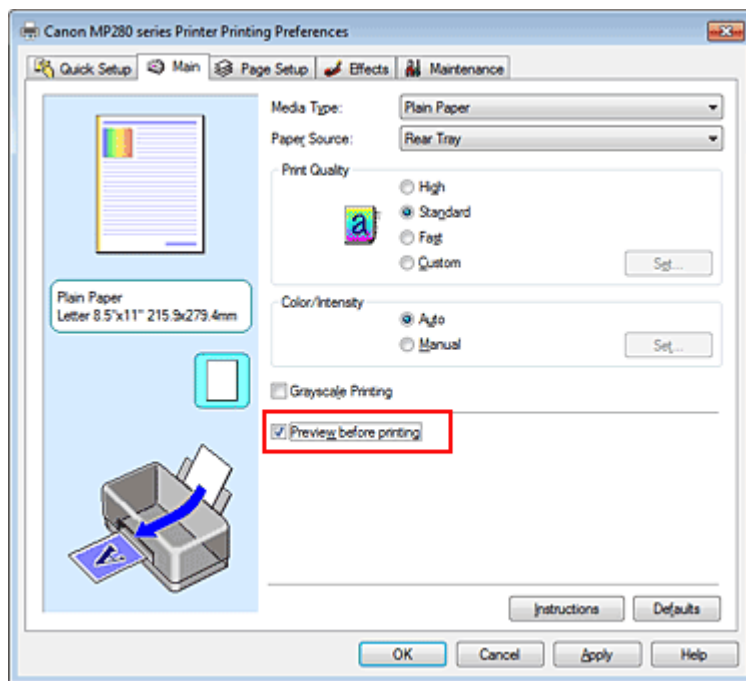
The procedure for displaying the print result before printing is as follows:

You can also set the print results display on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the preview

Check the Preview before printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the Canon IJ Preview opens and displays the print results.

Related Topic

➡ Canon IJ Preview

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Various Printing Methods > Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

P010

Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

You can specify the height and width of paper when its size cannot be selected from the Page Size. Such a paper size is called "custom size."

The procedure for specifying a custom size is as follows:

You can also set a custom size in Printer Paper Size on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Set the custom size in the application software

On your application's paper size feature, specify the custom size.

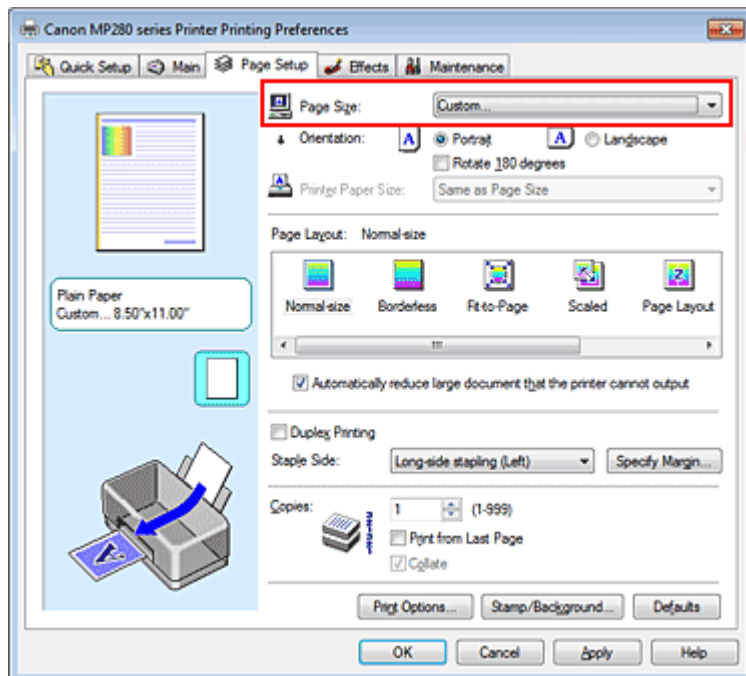
Important

- When the application software that created the document has a function for specifying the height and width values, use the application software to set the values. When the application software does not have such a function or if the document does not print correctly, use the printer driver to set the values.

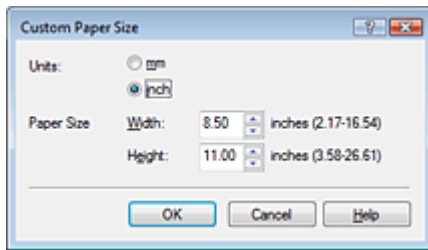
2. Open the printer driver setup window

3. Select the paper size

Select Custom... for Page Size on the Page Setup tab.



The Custom Paper Size dialog box opens.



4. Set the custom paper size

Specify Units, and enter the Width and Height of the paper to be used. Then click OK.

5. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Page Setup tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified paper size.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#)

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- ➡ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➡ [Printing a Color Document in Monochrome](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [Printing with ICC Profiles](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)
- ➡ [Simulating an Illustration](#)
- ➡ [Representing Image Data with a Single Color](#)
- ➡ [Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors](#)
- ➡ [Smoothing Jagged Outlines](#)
- ➡ [Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration](#)
- ➡ [Reducing Photo Noise](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

P011

Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method

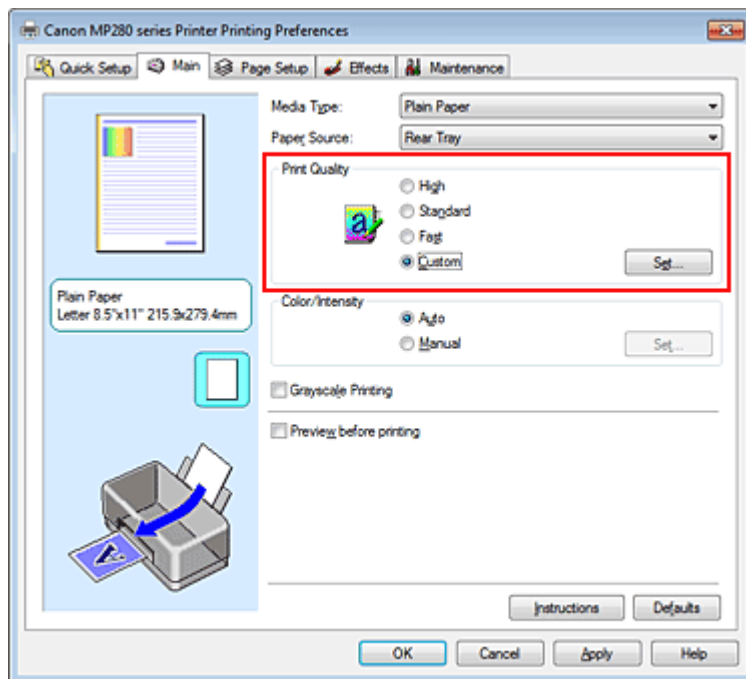
You can individually set the combined representation method for the print quality level and the halftoning method.



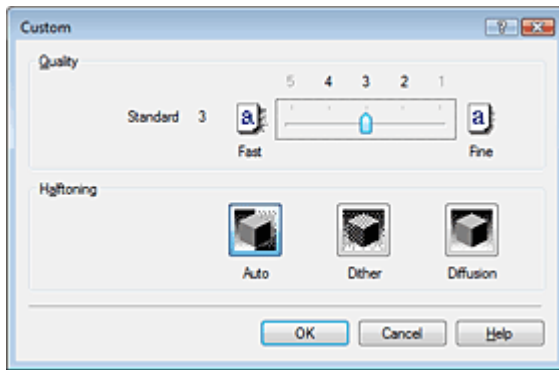
The procedure for setting the print quality level and the halftoning method is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the print quality

Select Custom for Print Quality on the Main tab, and click Set...



The Custom dialog box opens.



3. Setting the print quality and halftone expression method

Move the Quality slider to select the quality level.

Select the expression method in Halftoning and click OK.

Note

- Halftones refer to color shades between the darkest color and the brightest color. The printer replaces the color shades with a collection of small dots to express the halftones. When you select Auto, the data is printed with the optimal halftoning method for the selected print quality. Dither arranges the dots according to fixed rules to express the halftones. Diffusion places the dots randomly to express the halftones.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the image data is printed with the selected print quality level and halftoning method.

Important

- Certain quality levels and halftoning methods cannot be selected depending on the settings of Media Type.

Note

- If part of an object is not printed, selecting Diffusion for Halftoning may solve the problem.

Related Topics

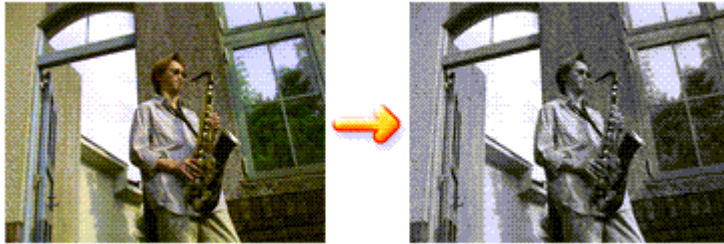
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➡ Adjusting Brightness
- ➡ Adjusting Intensity
- ➡ Adjusting Contrast

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Printing a Color Document in Monochrome

P012

Printing a Color Document in Monochrome



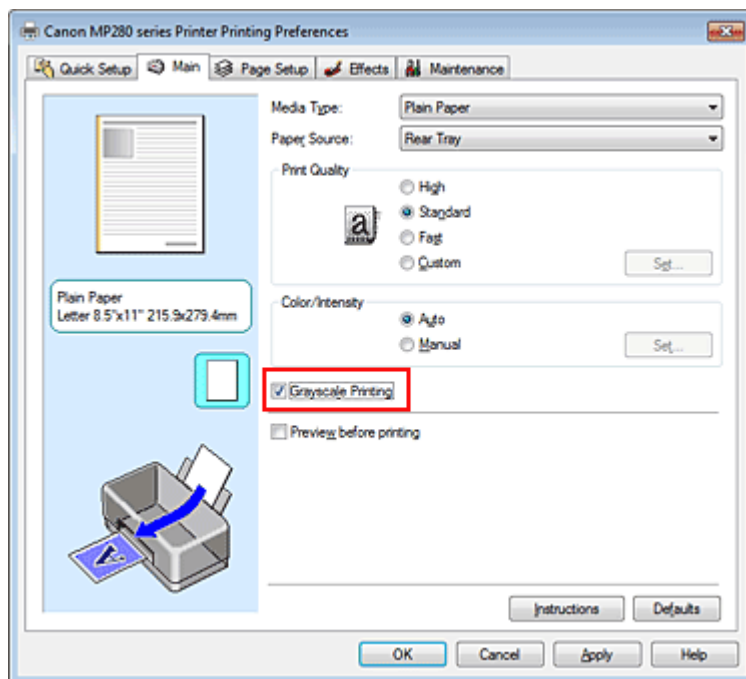
The procedure for printing a color document in monochrome is as follows:

You can also set a grayscale printing in Additional Features on the Quick Setup tab.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set grayscale printing

Check the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the document is converted to grayscale data. It allows you to print the color document in monochrome.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box is checked, the printer driver processes image data as sRGB data. In this case, actual colors printed may differ from those in the original image data. When using the grayscale printing function to print Adobe RGB data, convert the data to sRGB data using an application software.

Note

- During Grayscale Printing, color inks may be used as well as black ink.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction

P013

Specifying Color Correction

You can specify the color correction method suited to the type of document to be printed. Normally, the printer driver adjusts the colors by using Canon Digital Photo Color so that data is printed with color tints that most people prefer. This method is suitable for printing sRGB data.

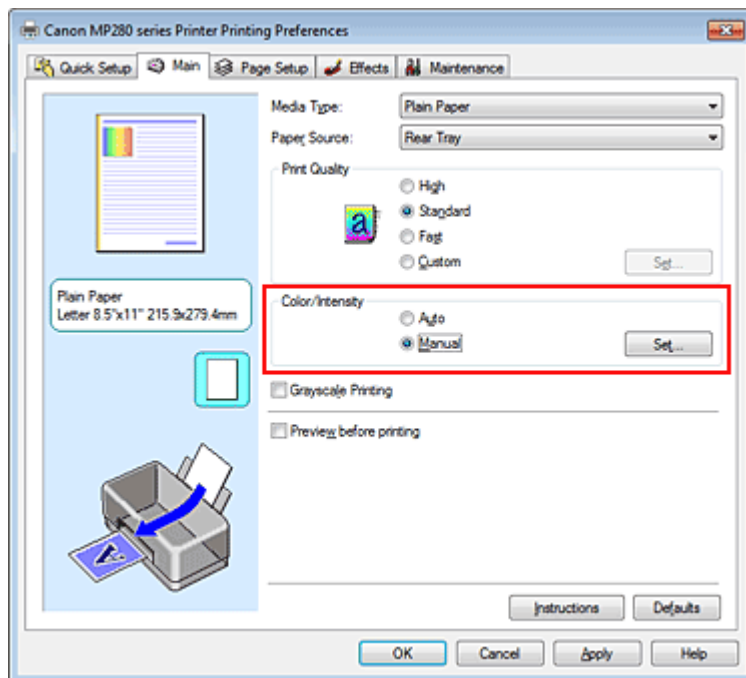
When you want to print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data effectively, select ICM or ICC Profile Matching. When you want to use an application software to specify a printing ICC profile, select None.

The procedure for specifying color correction is as follows:

You can also set color correction on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the manual color adjustment

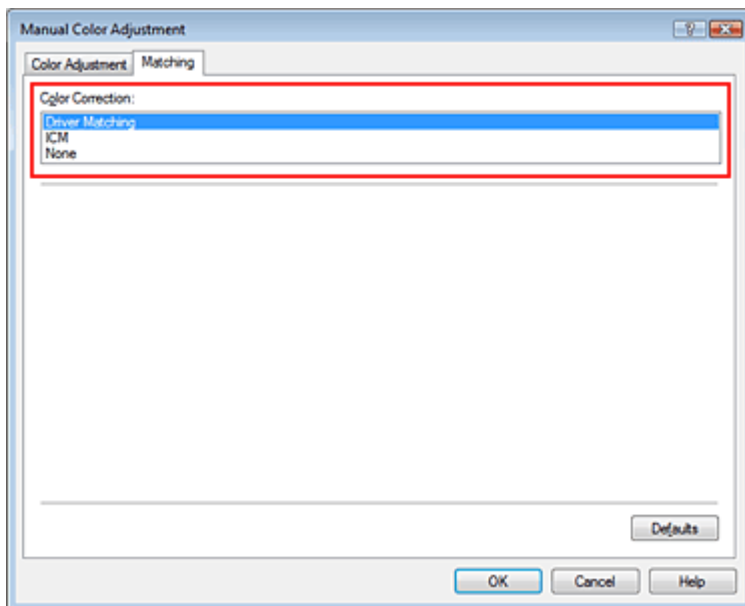
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, select Color Correction setting that matches your purpose from the following, and click OK.

**Driver Matching**

By using Canon Digital Photo Color, you can print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer. Driver Matching is the default setting for color correction.

ICM/ICC Profile Matching

Adjusts the colors by using an ICC profile when printing. Specify the input profile to be used.

None

The printer driver does not perform color correction. Select this value when you are specifying an individually created printing ICC profile in an application software to print data.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed with the specified color correction method.

Important

- When ICM is disabled in the application software, ICM is unavailable for Color Correction and the printer may not be able to print the image data properly.
- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Color Correction appears grayed out and is unavailable.

Related Topics

- ➡ Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data
- ➡ Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver
- ➡ Printing with ICC Profiles



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data](#) > [Specifying Color Correction](#) > [Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data](#)

P014

Optimal Photo Printing of Image Data

When people print images taken with digital cameras, they sometimes feel that the printed color tones differ from those of actual image or those displayed on the monitor.

To get the print results as close as possible to the desired color tones, you must select a printing method that is best suited to the application software used or to your purpose.

Color Management

Devices such as digital cameras, scanners, monitors, and printers handle color differently. Color management (color matching) is a method that manages device-dependent "colors" as a common color space. For Windows, a color management system called "ICM" is built into the operating system. Adobe RGB and sRGB are popularly used as common color spaces. Adobe RGB has a wider color space than sRGB.

ICC profiles convert device-dependent "colors" into a common color space. By using an ICC profile and carrying out color management, you can draw out the color space of the image data within the color reproduction area that the printer can express.

Selecting a Printing Method Suited to the Image Data

The recommended printing method depends on the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data or the application software to be used. There are two typical printing methods. Check the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the image data and the application software to be used, and then select the printing method suited to your purpose.

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

Describes the procedure for printing sRGB data by using the color correction function of the printer driver.

- **To print using Canon Digital Photo Color**

The printer prints data with color tints that most people prefer, reproducing colors of the original image data and producing three-dimensional effects and high, sharp contrasts.

- **To print by directly applying editing and touch-up results of an application software**

When printing the data, the printer brings out subtle color difference between dark and light areas, while leaving the darkest and lightest areas intact.

When printing the data, the printer applies fine adjustment results, such as brightness adjustments made with an application software.

Printing with ICC Profiles

Describes the procedure for printing by using the color space of Adobe RGB or sRGB effectively.

You can print with a common color space by setting up the application software and the printer driver so that the color management matches the input ICC profile of the image data.

The method for setting up the printer driver differs depending on the application software to be used.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction > Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

P015

Adjusting Colors with the Printer Driver

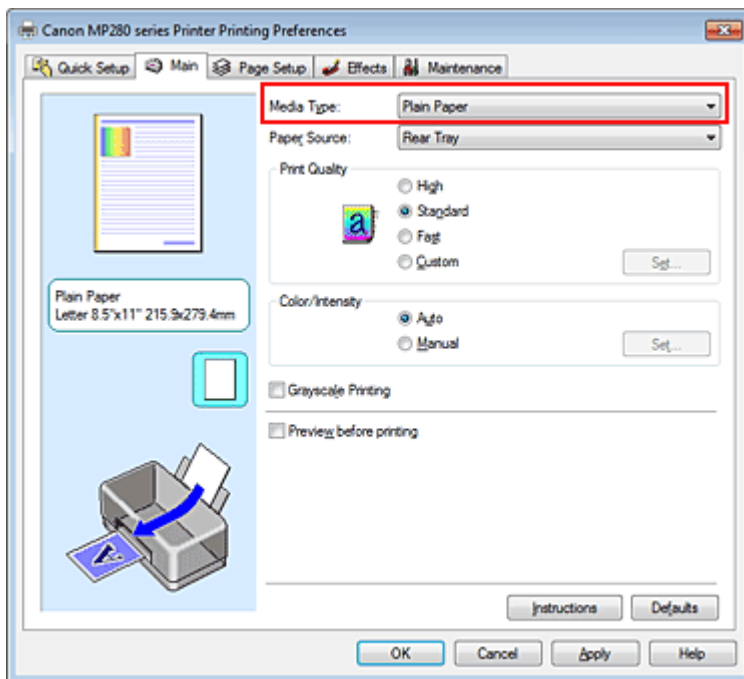
You can specify the color correction function of the printer driver to print sRGB data with color tints that most people prefer through the use of Canon Digital Photo Color.

When printing from an application software that can identify ICC profiles and allows you to specify them, use a printing ICC profile in the application software, and select settings for color management.

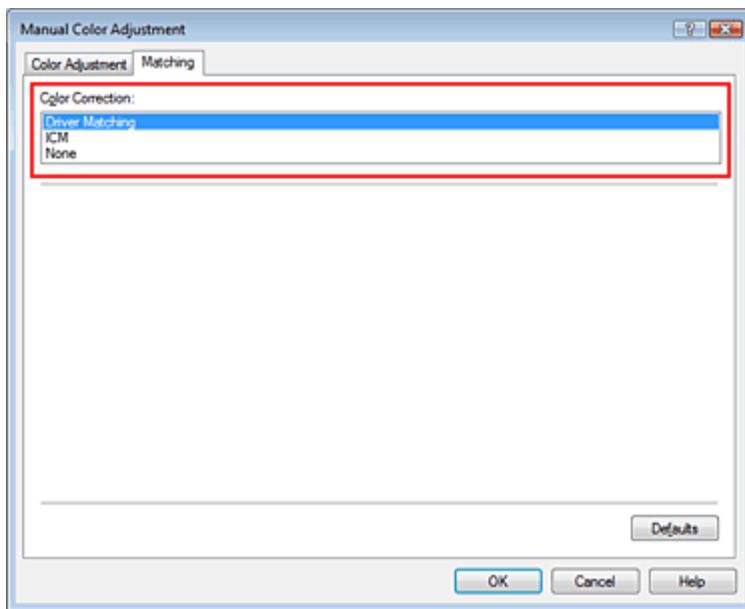
The procedure for adjusting colors with the printer driver is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.
4. Select the manual color adjustment
Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.
5. Select color correction
Click Matching tab, and select Driver Matching for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the printer driver adjusts the colors when printing the data.

Related Topics

- ➡ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➡ Adjusting Brightness
- ➡ Adjusting Intensity
- ➡ Adjusting Contrast



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Specifying Color Correction > Printing with ICC Profiles

P016

Printing with ICC Profiles

When the image data has a specified input ICC profile, you can print by using the color space (Adobe RGB or sRGB) of the data effectively.

The printer driver setting procedure varies depending on the application software used to print.

Specify an ICC Profile from the Application Software and Print the Data

When you print the editing and touch-up results of Adobe Photoshop, Canon Digital Photo Professional, or any application software that allows you to specify input and printing ICC profiles, you print by effectively using the color space of the input ICC profile specified in the image data.

To use this printing method, use your application software to select color management items and specify an input ICC profile and a printing ICC profile in the image data.

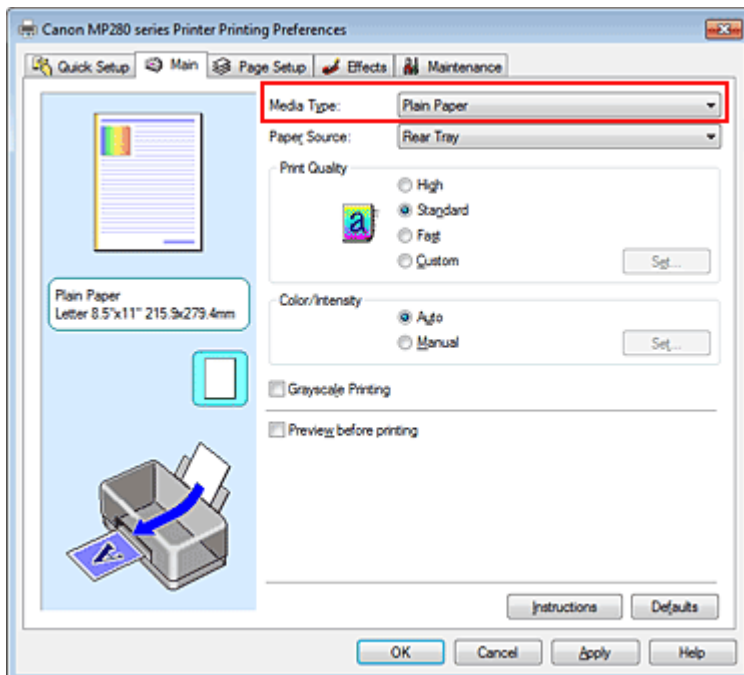
Even if you print using a printing ICC profile that you created yourself from your application software, be sure to select color management items from your application software.

For instructions, refer to the manual of the application software you are using.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

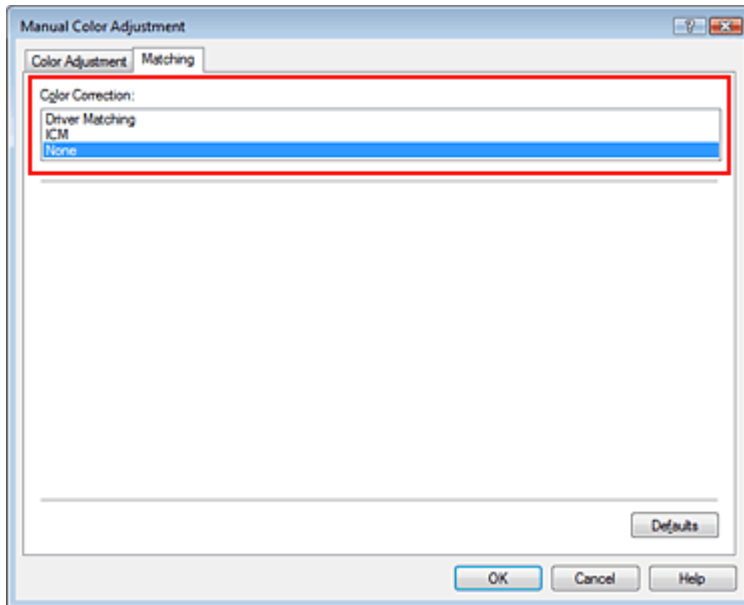
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select None for Color Correction.



6. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

7. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

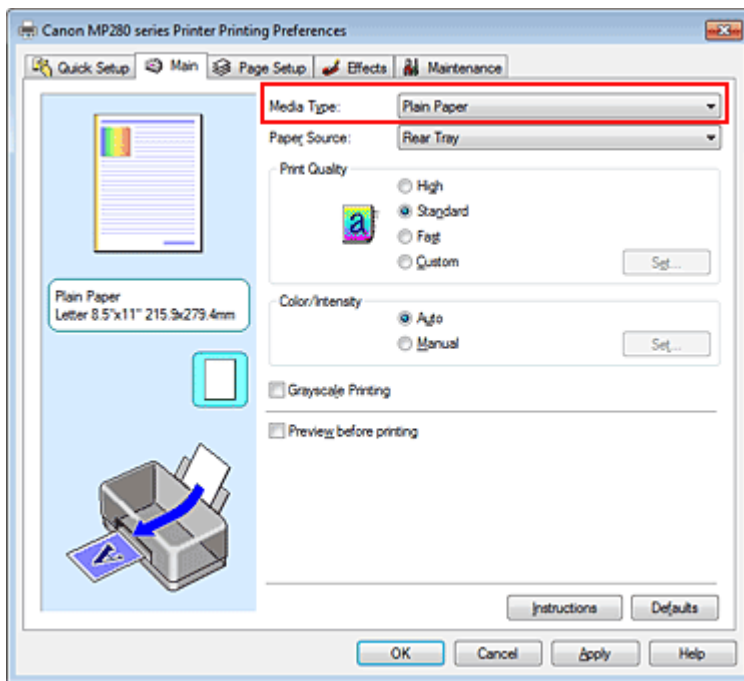
Specify an ICC Profile with the Printer Driver, and then Print

Print from an application software that cannot identify input ICC profiles or does allow you to specify one by using the color space of the input ICC profile (sRGB) found in the data. When printing Adobe RGB data, you can print the data with the Adobe RGB color space even if the application software does not support Adobe RGB.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the media type

Select the type of paper loaded in the machine from the Media Type list on the Main tab.



3. Select the print quality

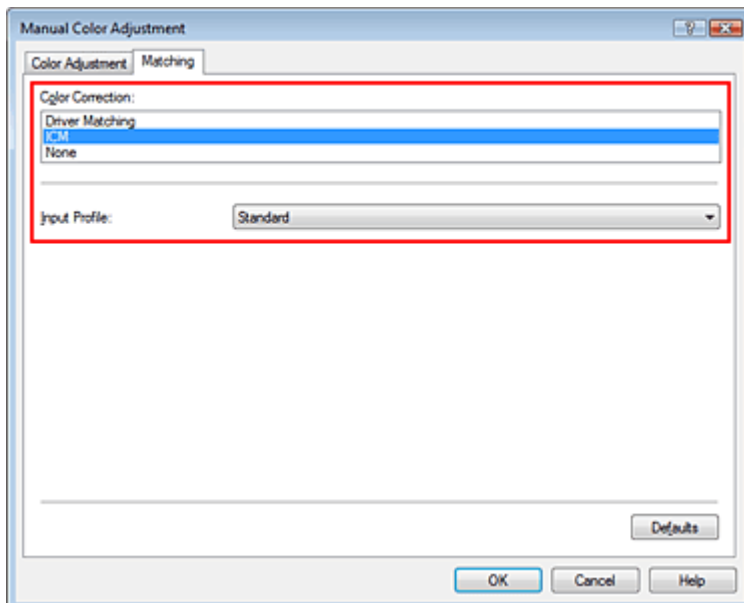
For Print Quality, select High, Standard, or Fast according to your purpose.

4. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....
Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

5. Select color correction

Click Matching tab, and select ICM or ICC Profile Matching for Color Correction.



6. Select the input profile

Select an Input Profile that matches the color space of the image data.

- **For sRGB data or data without an input ICC profile:**
Select Standard.
- **For Adobe RGB data:**

Select Adobe RGB (1998).

Important

- When the application software specifies an input profile, the input profile setting of the printer driver becomes invalid.
- When no input ICC profiles are installed on your computer, Adobe RGB (1998) will not be displayed. You can install ICC profiles from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the machine.

7. Set the other items

If necessary, click Color Adjustment tab, and adjust the color balance (Cyan, Magenta, Yellow) and adjust Brightness, Intensity, and Contrast settings, and then click OK.

8. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the printer uses the color space of the image data.

Related Topics

- ➡ [Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method](#)
- ➡ [Specifying Color Correction](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Color Balance](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Brightness](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Intensity](#)
- ➡ [Adjusting Contrast](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Color Balance

P017

Adjusting Color Balance

You can adjust the color tints when printing.

Since this function adjusts color balance of the output by changing the ink ratios of each color, it changes the total color balance of the document. Use the application software when you want to change the color balance significantly. Use the printer driver only when you want to adjust the color balance slightly.

The following sample shows the case when color balance is used to intensify cyan and to diminish yellow so that the overall colors are more uniform.



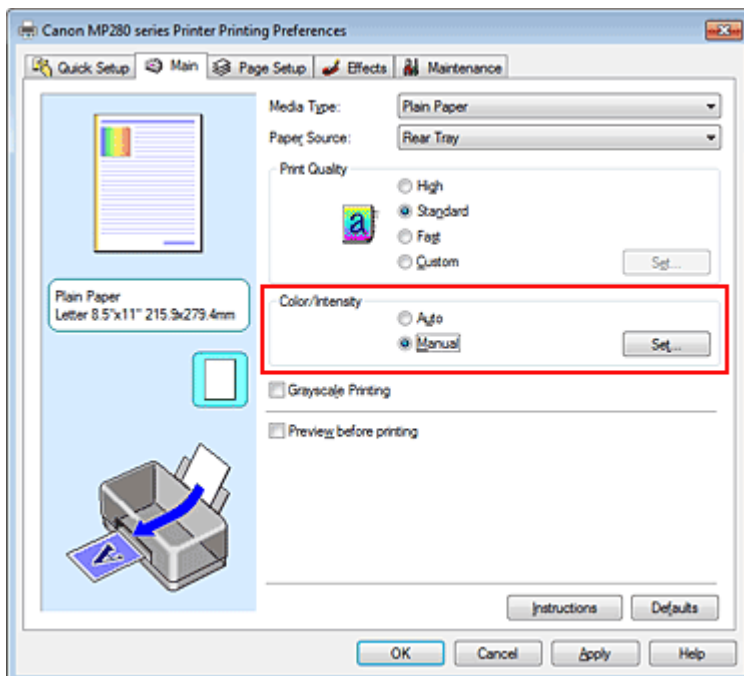
No adjustment Adjust color balance

The procedure for adjusting color balance is as follows:

You can also set color balance on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window
2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....

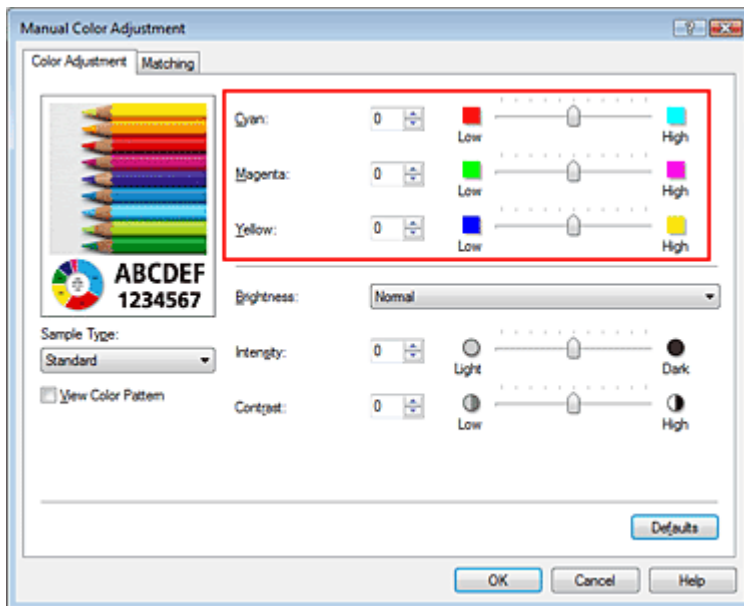


The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust color balance

There are individual sliders for Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow. Each color becomes stronger when the corresponding slider is moved to the right, and becomes weaker when the corresponding slider is moved to the left. For example, when cyan becomes weaker, the color red becomes stronger. You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the document is printed with the adjusted color balance.

Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Cyan, Magenta, and Yellow appear grayed out and are unavailable.

Related Topics

- ➡ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Brightness
- ➡ Adjusting Intensity
- ➡ Adjusting Contrast

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Brightness

P018

Adjusting Brightness

You can change the brightness of the overall image data during printing.

This function does not change pure white or pure black but it changes the brightness of the intermediate colors.

The following sample shows the print result when the brightness setting is changed.



Light is selected

Normal is selected

Dark is selected

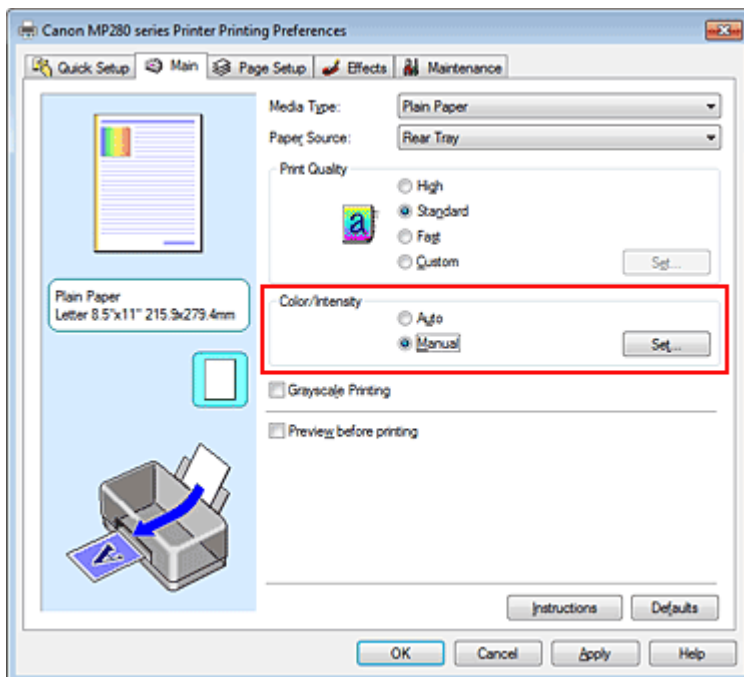
The procedure for adjusting brightness is as follows:

You can also set brightness on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

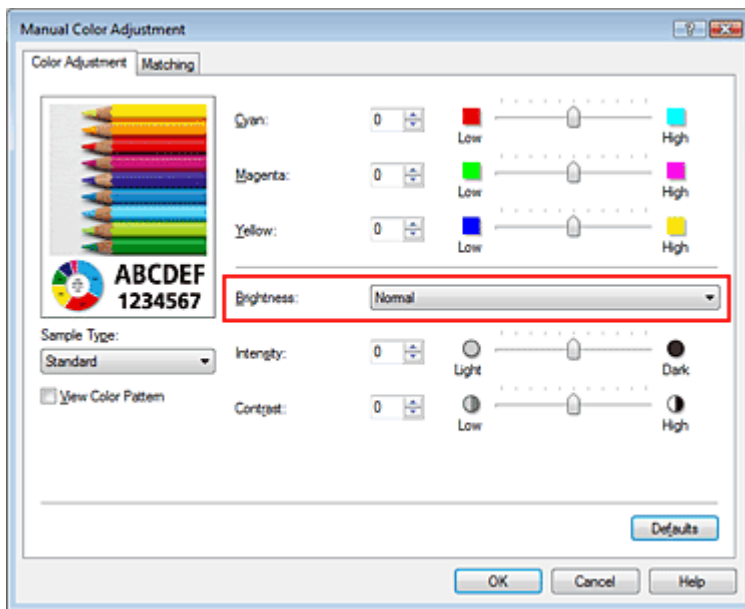
On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Specify the brightness

Select Light, Normal, or Dark for Brightness, and click OK. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the data is printed at the specified brightness.

Related Topics

- ➡ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➡ Adjusting Intensity
- ➡ Adjusting Contrast

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Intensity

P019

Adjusting Intensity

You can dilute (brighten) or intensify (darken) the colors of the overall image data during printing. The following sample shows the case when the intensity is increased so that all colors become more intense when the image data is printed.



No adjustment

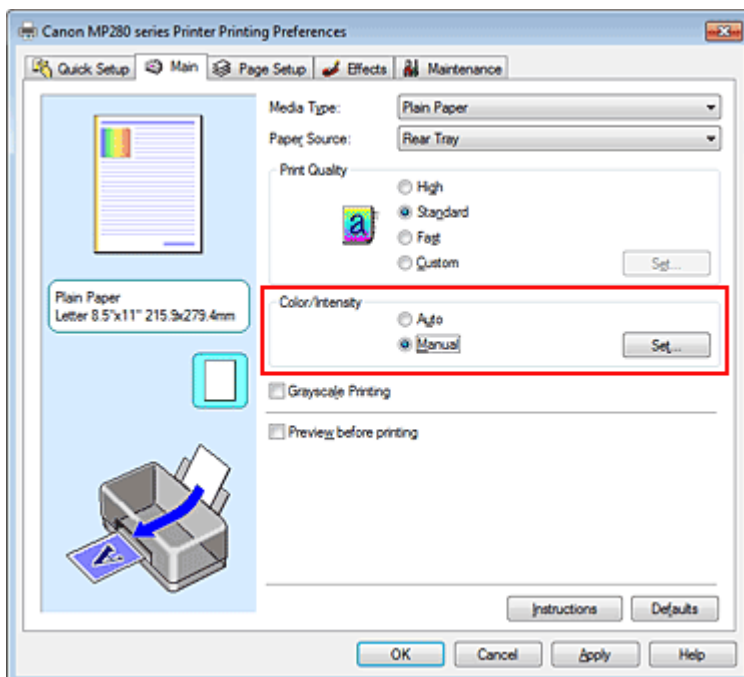
Higher intensity

The procedure for adjusting intensity is as follows:

You can also set intensity on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Select the manual color adjustment

Select Manual for Color/Intensity on the Main tab, and click Set....



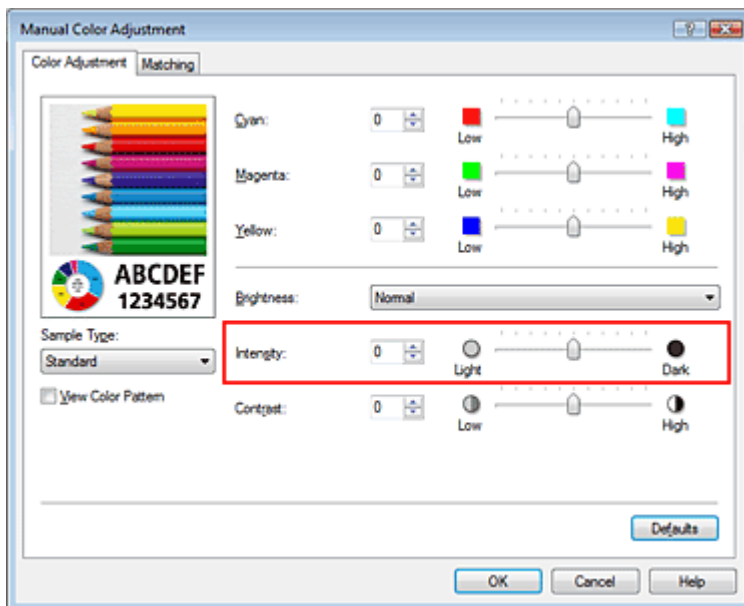
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust intensity

Moving the Intensity slider to the right intensifies (darkens) the colors. Moving the slider to the left dilutes (brightens) the colors.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the image data is printed with the adjusted intensity.

Related Topics

- ➡ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➡ Adjusting Brightness
- ➡ Adjusting Contrast

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Adjusting Contrast

P020

Adjusting Contrast

You can adjust the image contrast during printing.

To make the differences between the light and dark portions of images greater and more distinct, increase the contrast. On the other hand, to make the differences between the light and dark portions of images smaller and less distinct, reduce the contrast.



No adjustment

Adjust the contrast

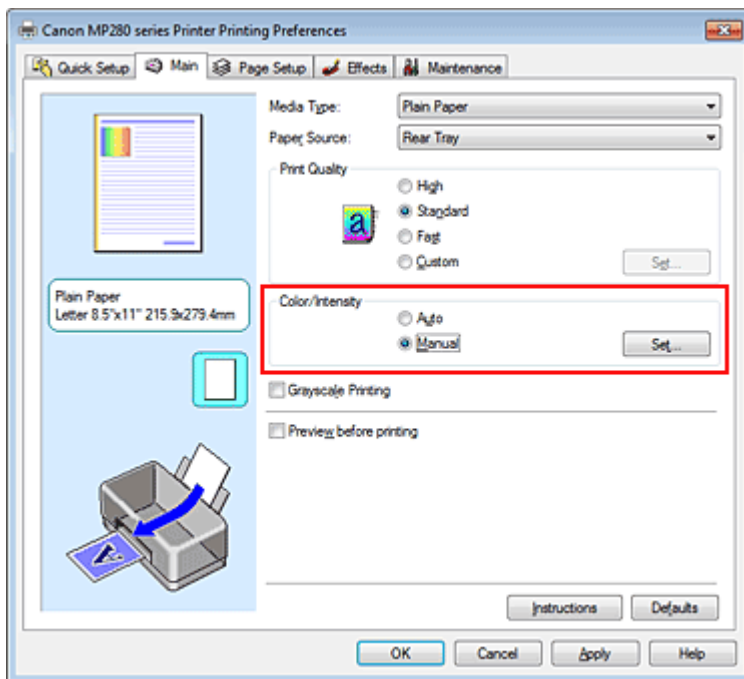
The procedure for adjusting contrast is as follows:

You can also set contrast on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Color/Intensity Manual Adjustment under Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Select the manual color adjustment

On the Main tab, select Manual for Color/Intensity, and click Set....



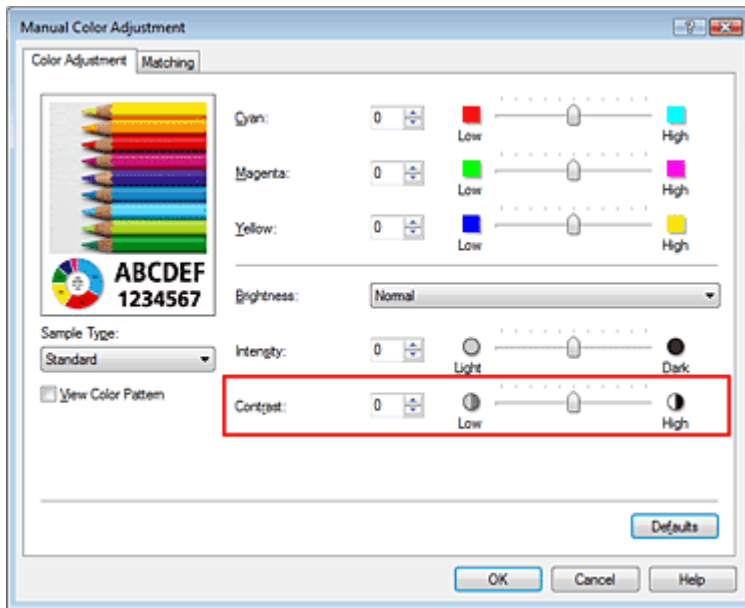
The Manual Color Adjustment dialog box opens.

3. Adjust the contrast

Moving the Contrast slider to the right increases the contrast, and moving it to the left decreases the contrast.

You can also directly enter a value linked to the slider. Enter a value in the range from -50 to 50. The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.

After adjusting each color, click OK.



Important

- Adjust the slider gradually.

4. Complete the setup

Click OK on the Main tab.

When you execute print, the image is printed with the adjusted contrast.

Related Topics

- ➡ Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- ➡ Specifying Color Correction
- ➡ Adjusting Color Balance
- ➡ Adjusting Brightness
- ➡ Adjusting Intensity

Advanced Guide

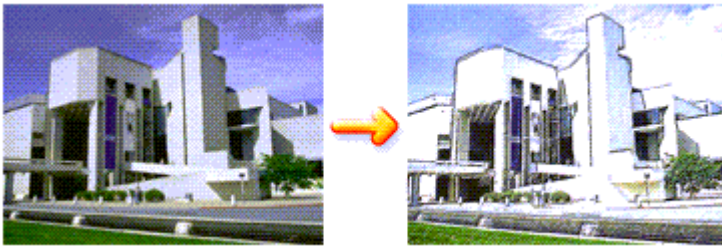
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Simulating an Illustration

P021

Simulating an Illustration

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

With the Simulate Illustration function, you can print full-color or 256-color image data so that it looks like a hand-drawn illustration. This function adds different effects to the original profile and colors.

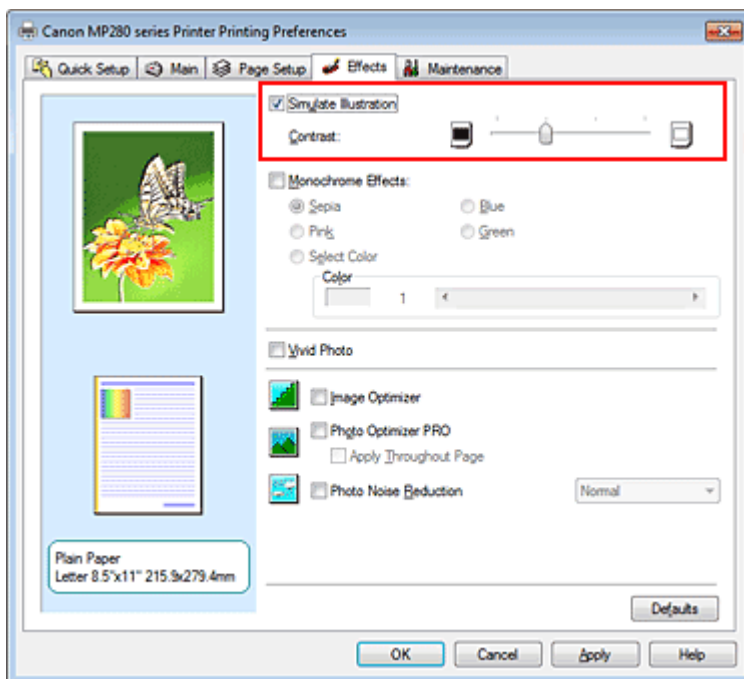


The procedure for performing Simulate Illustration is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set the Simulate Illustration

If necessary, check the Simulate Illustration check box on the Effects tab, and adjust the Contrast. Moving the slider to the right lightens the image data and moving the slider to the left darkens the image data.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed so that it looks hand-drawn.

Advanced Guide

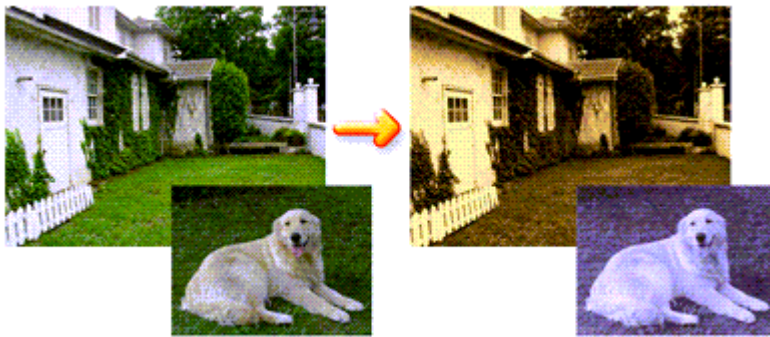
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Representing Image Data with a Single Color

P022

Representing Image Data with a Single Color

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

With the Monochrome Effects function, you can benefit from coloring effects such as changing a photograph to a sepia tone image.



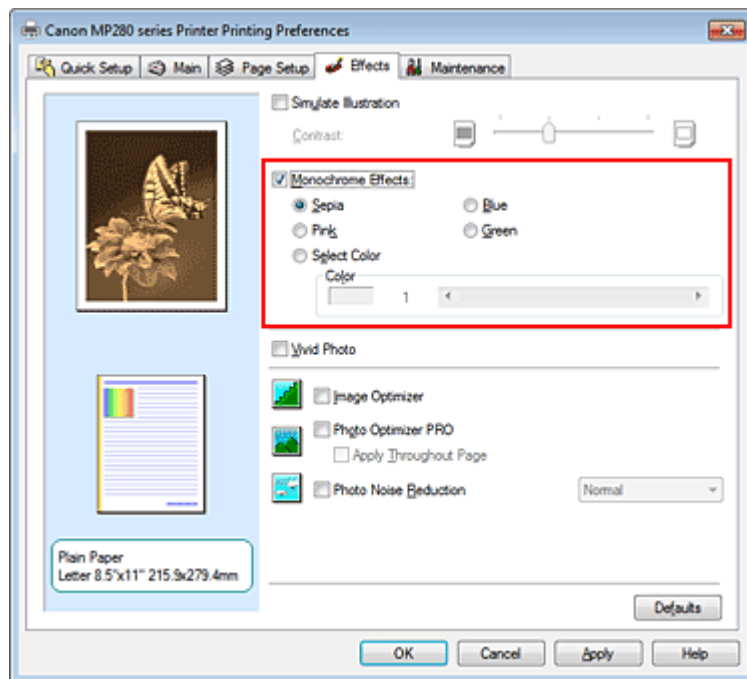
The procedure for performing Monochrome Effects is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set Monochrome Effects

Check the Monochrome Effects check box on the Effects tab and select your desired color.

When you use Select Color, move the Color slider to specify the color you want.

The current settings are displayed in the settings preview on the left side of the printer driver.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with a single color.

 Important

- When the Grayscale Printing check box on the Main tab is checked, Monochrome Effects appears grayed out and is unavailable.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

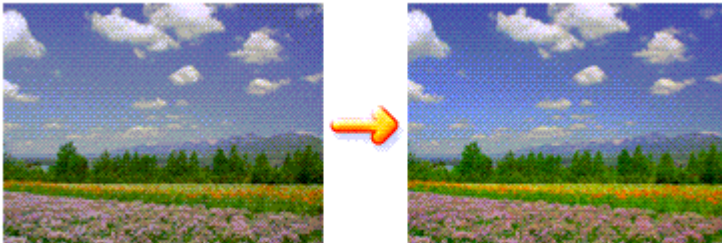
P023

Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

The Vivid Photo function allows you to print image data with vivid colors.

The vivid photo function emphasizes the colors in background sceneries while maintaining the human skin color natural. By using this function, you can make vivid hues appear even more vivid.



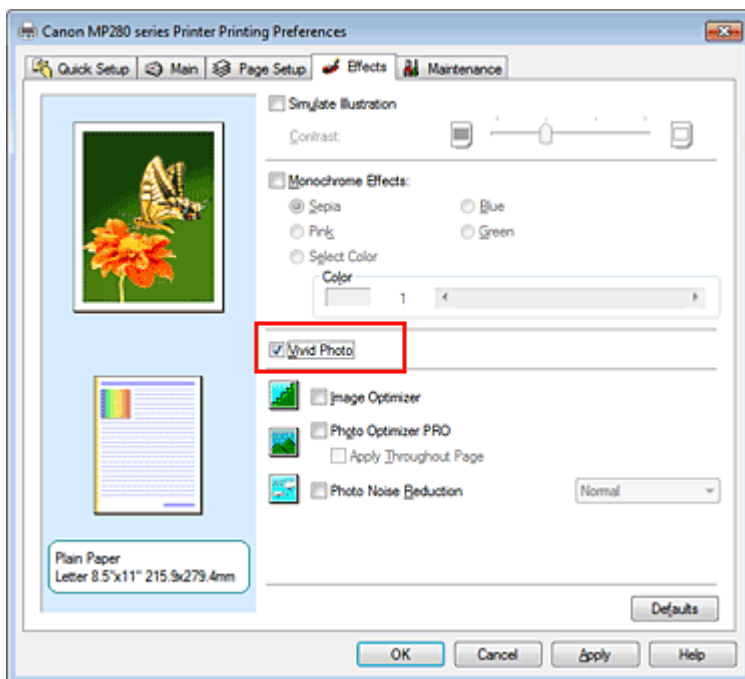
The procedure for performing Vivid Photo is as follows:

You can also set vivid photos on the Quick Setup tab by choosing Photo Printing under Commonly Used Settings, and then choosing Additional Features.

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set Vivid Photo

Check the Vivid Photo check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with vivid colors.

Advanced Guide

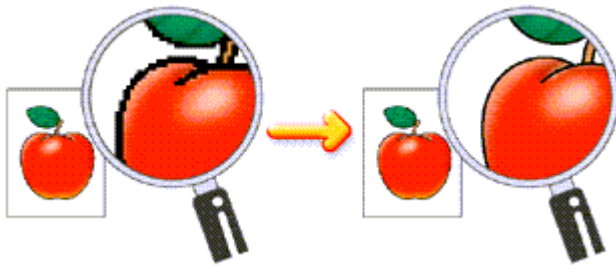
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Smoothing Jagged Outlines

P407

Smoothing Jagged Outlines

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

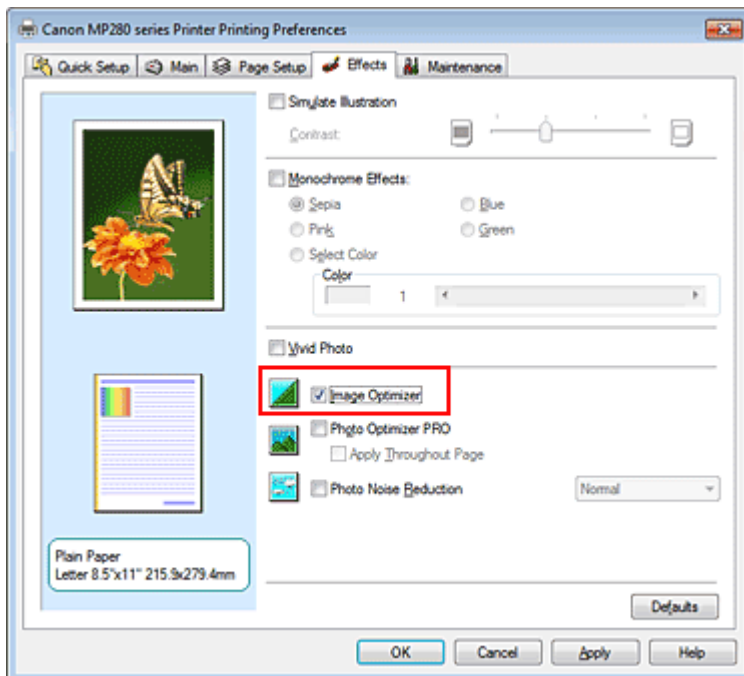
The Image Optimizer function reduces the jagged outlines that are produced when photos and graphics are enlarged with your application. It allows you to print smooth outlines. This feature is especially useful when printing low-resolution images from Web pages.



The procedure for performing Image Optimizer is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set image optimizer

Check the Image Optimizer check box on the Effects tab.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The photos and graphics will be adjusted and printed with smooth outlines.

Note

- Depending on application software or resolution of image data, the image optimizer may have no discernible effects.

- It may take longer to complete printing when the image optimizer is used.
-

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

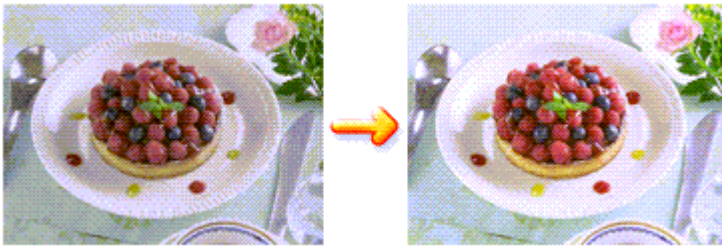
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

P408

Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

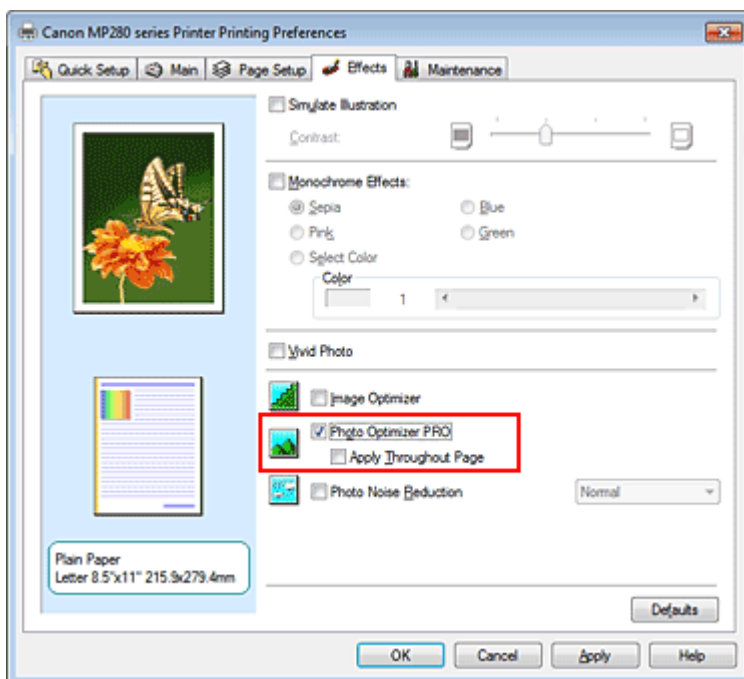
The Photo Optimizer PRO function corrects colors of digital camera images or scanned images. It is specially designed to compensate for color shift, overexposure, and underexposure.



The procedure for performing Photo Optimizer PRO is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set Photo Optimizer PRO

Check the Photo Optimizer PRO check box on the Effects tab.



Normally there is no need to check the Apply Throughout Page check box. Images within each page are optimized on an image-by-image basis.

Note

- Check the Apply Throughout Page check box when printing image data that has been processed, such as being cropped or rotated. In this case the entire page will be treated as a single image to be optimized.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the printer corrects the photo coloring and prints out the photos.

Important

- Photo Optimizer PRO does not function when:
 - Background is set in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab.
 - Define Stamp... is selected in the Stamp/Background dialog box on the Page Setup tab, and the bitmapped stamp is configured.

Note

- Depending on images, the Photo Optimizer PRO may have no discernible effect.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

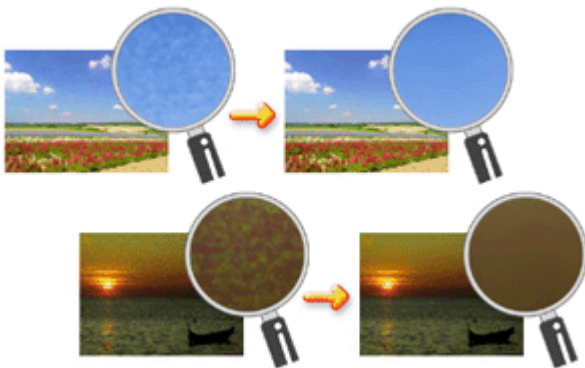
Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data > Reducing Photo Noise

P024

Reducing Photo Noise

This feature is unavailable when the XPS printer driver is used.

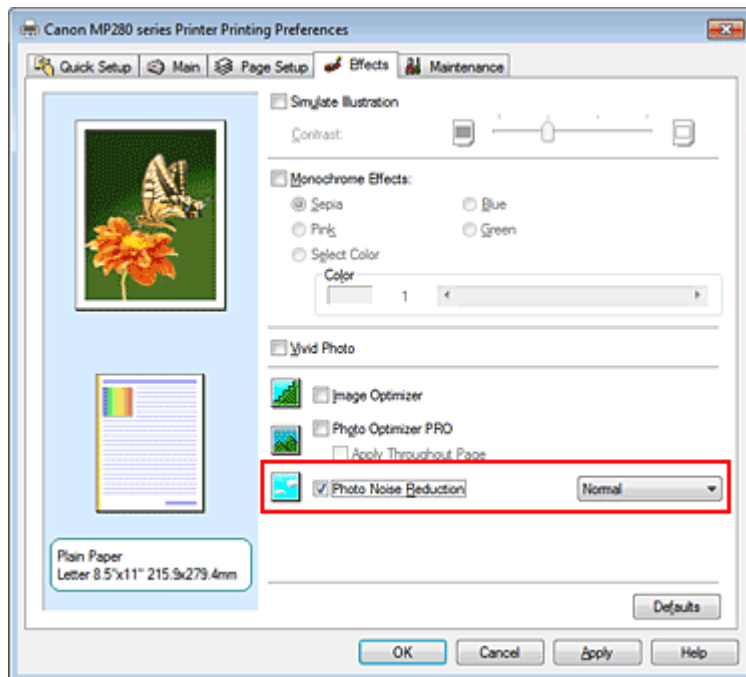
With the Photo Noise Reduction function, you can reduce the digital camera noise and improve the image quality of the digital print.



The procedure for performing Photo Noise Reduction is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Set Photo Noise Reduction

Check the Photo Noise Reduction check box on the Effects tab and select Normal or Strong for the level.



3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

When you execute print, the image will be printed with the digital camera noise being reduced.

 Note

-
- It is recommended to select Normal for most cases. Select Strong if you have selected Normal and the noise still bothers you.
 - Depending on application software or resolution of image data, effects of digital camera noise reduction may not be obvious.
 - When this function is used for other than photos taken by digital cameras, image may be distorted.
-

[Page top ↗](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)

Overview of the Printer Driver

- ➡ [Printer Driver Operations](#)
- ➡ [Canon IJ Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [XPS Printer Driver](#)
- ➡ [How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)
- ➡ [Maintenance Tab](#)
- ➡ [Canon IJ Status Monitor](#)
- ➡ [Canon IJ Preview](#)

[Page top](#) ↑



Printer Driver Operations

MA-6355-V1.00



| Instructions for Use (Printer Driver) | How to Use This Manual | Printing This Manual |

Various Printing Methods

- Printing with Easy Setup
- Setting a Page Size and Orientation
- Setting the Number of Copies and Printing Order
- Setting the Stapling Margin
- Execute Borderless Printing
- Fit-to-Page Printing
- Scaled Printing
- Page Layout Printing
- Poster Printing
- Booklet Printing
- Duplex Printing
- Stamp/Background Printing
- Printing an Envelope
- Displaying the Print Results before Printing
- Setting Paper Dimensions (Custom Size)

Changing the Print Quality and Correcting Image Data

- Selecting a Combination of the Print Quality Level and a Halftoning Method
- Printing a Color Document in Monochrome
- Specifying Color Correction
- Adjusting Color Balance
- Adjusting Brightness
- Adjusting Intensity
- Adjusting Contrast
- Simulating an Illustration
- Representing Image Data with a Single Color
- Presenting Image Data with Vivid Colors
- Smoothing Jagged Outlines
- Changing Color Properties to Improve Coloration
- Reducing Photo Noise

Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer

- Changing the Print Options
- Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile
- Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used
- Managing the Machine Power
- Reducing the Machine Noise
- Changing the Machine Operation Mode

Performing Maintenance from a Computer

- Cleaning the Print Heads
- Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- Aligning the Print Head Position
- Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- Cleaning Inside the Machine

Overview of the Printer Driver

- Canon IJ Printer Driver
- XPS Printer Driver
- How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window
- Maintenance Tab
- Canon IJ Status Monitor
- Canon IJ Preview

Updating the MP Drivers

- Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers
- Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers
- Before Installing the MP Drivers
- Installing the MP Drivers

Appendix

- Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History
- Deleting the Undesired Print Job
- Sharing the Printer on a Network

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> Canon IJ Printer Driver

P025

Canon IJ Printer Driver

The Canon IJ printer driver is software that is installed on your computer for printing data on this machine.

The Canon IJ printer driver converts the print data created by your Windows application into data that your printer can understand, and sends the converted data to the printer.

Because different models support different print data formats, you need a Canon IJ printer driver for the specific model you are using.

How to Use Printer Driver Help

You can display the Help describing the driver setting items through the printing preferences screen of the Canon IJ printer driver.

- **To view all descriptions of a tab...**

Click the Help button on each tab. A dialog box opens, displaying a description of each item on the tab.

You can also click the link found in the description of an item to display a description of the linked dialog box.

- **To see a description for each item...**

Right-click the item you want to learn about and then click What's This?.

Alternatively, when the  Help button is found at the right end of the title bar, click that button, and then click the item you want to learn about.

A description of the item is displayed.

Related Topic

➡ [How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> [Canon IJ Printer Driver](#) > [XPS Printer Driver](#)

P416

XPS Printer Driver

The following two printer drivers can be installed on Windows Vista SP1 or later:

- IJ printer driver
- XPS printer driver

The XPS printer driver is suited to print from an application that supports XPS printing.

Important

- To use the XPS printer driver, the standard IJ printer driver must already be installed on your computer.
- With the XPS printer driver, application software distributed with printers, such as Easy-PhotoPrint EX and My Printer, cannot be used.

Installing the XPS Printer Driver

Load the Setup CD-ROM that comes with the machine, and then select "XPS Printer Driver" from Custom Install to install the driver.

Using the XPS Printer Driver

To use the XPS printer driver for printing, open the Print dialog box in application you are using, and select "your printer name XPS."



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Overview of the Printer Driver
> Canon IJ Printer Driver > How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

P409

How to Open the Printer Driver Setup Window

The printer driver setup window can be displayed through the application software in use or the Start menu of the Windows.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Application Software

Follow the procedure below to configure printing profile when printing.

1. Select the command that you perform printing on the application software

In general, select Print on the File menu to open the Print dialog box.

2. Select your model name and click Preferences (or Properties)

The printer driver setup window appears.



Note

- Depending on application software you use, command names or menu names may vary and there may be more steps. For details, refer to the user's manual of your application software.

Open the Printer Driver Setup Window through the Start Menu

Follow the procedure below to perform maintenance operations such as print head cleaning, or to configure printing profile that are common for all application software.

1. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:

- If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
- If you are using Windows XP, select the start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.

2. Right-click your model name icon, and then select Printing Preferences from the displayed menu

The printer driver setup window appears.



Important

- Opening the printer driver setup window through Printer properties (Windows 7) or Properties (Windows Vista, Windows XP) displays such tabs regarding the Windows functions as the Ports (or Advanced) tab. Those tabs do not appear when opening through Printing Preferences or application software. For tabs regarding Windows functions, refer to the user's manual for the Windows.



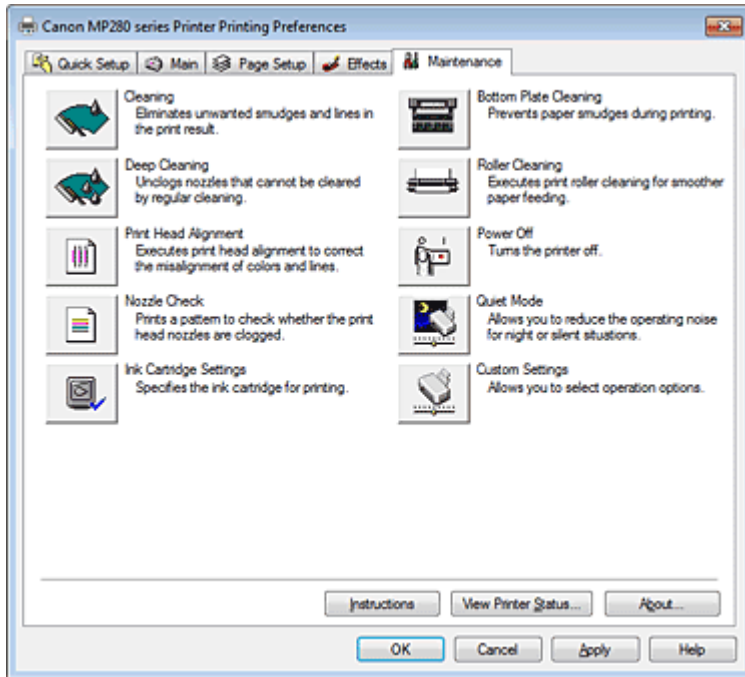
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Printing from a Computer > Printing with Other Application Software > Overview of the Printer Driver
> Canon IJ Printer Driver > Maintenance Tab

P410

Maintenance Tab

The Maintenance tab allows you to perform machine maintenance or change the settings of the machine.



Features

- ➡ Cleaning the Print Heads
- ➡ Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers
- ➡ Aligning the Print Head Position
- ➡ Checking the Print Head Nozzles
- ➡ Cleaning Inside the Machine
- ➡ Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used
- ➡ Managing the Machine Power

Related Features

- ➡ Reducing the Machine Noise
- ➡ Changing the Machine Operation Mode



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> Canon IJ Status Monitor

P411

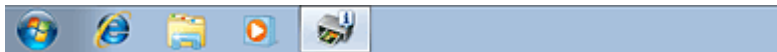
Canon IJ Status Monitor

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

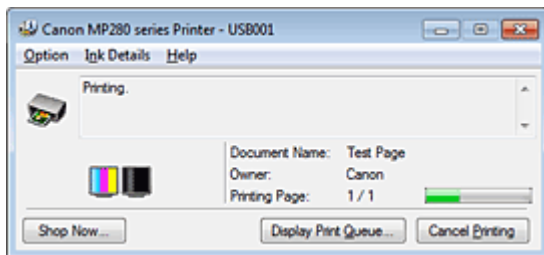
The Canon IJ Status Monitor is an application software that shows the status of the printer and the progress of printing on the Windows screen. You will know the status of the printer with graphics, icons, and messages.

Launching the Canon IJ Status Monitor

The Canon IJ Status Monitor launches automatically when data is sent to the printer. When launched, the Canon IJ Status Monitor appears as a button on the task bar.



Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar. The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

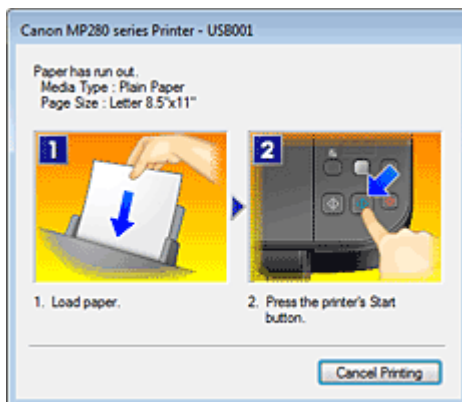


Note

- To open the Canon IJ Status Monitor when the printer is not printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#) and click View Printer Status... on the Maintenance tab.
- The information displayed on the Canon IJ Status Monitor may differ depending on the country or region where you are using your machine.

When Errors Occur

The Canon IJ Status Monitor is automatically displayed if an error occurs (e.g., if the printer runs out of paper or if the ink is low).



In such cases, take the appropriate action as described.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Printing from a Computer](#) > [Printing with Other Application Software](#) > [Overview of the Printer Driver](#)
> [Canon IJ Preview](#)

P412

Canon IJ Preview

The Canon IJ Preview is an application software that displays what the print result will look like before a document is actually printed.

The preview reflects the information that is set within the printer driver and allows you to check the document layout, print order, and number of pages. You can also change the media type settings.

When you want to display a preview before printing, open the [printer driver setup window](#) , click the Quick Setup tab or the Main tab, and check the Preview before printing check box.

When you do not want to display a preview before printing, uncheck the check box.

Important

- If you are using the XPS printer driver, see "[Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History.](#)"

Related Topic

➡ [Displaying the Print Results before Printing](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

➡ Kopeerimine

Lehekülje algusesse ↗

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades > Kopeerimine

Kopeerimine

- ➡ Koopiate tegemine
- ➡ Koopia vähendamine või suurendamine
- ➡ Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades](#) > [Kopeerimine](#) > [Koopiate tegemine](#)

U031

Koopiate tegemine

Koopiate tegemise põhitoiminguid vt [Kopeerimine](#).

- ➡ Koopia vähendamine või suurendamine
- ➡ Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades > Kopeerimine > Koopia vähendamine või suurendamine

U033

Koopia vähendamine või suurendamine

Lehele sobitamise kopeerimise funktsioon võimaldab originaali kopeerida nii, et seda suurendatakse või vähendatakse vastavalt valitud lehe vormingule automaatselt.

Märkus

- Saate vahetada tagasalve lisatud paberi vormingute A4 ja 8,5 x 11 tolli (Letter) vahel, hoolimata juhtpaneelil näidatud vormingust.
➔ [Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel](#)

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.
2. Asetage tagasalve tavapaberit.
3. Asetage originaal klaasplaadile.
4. Vastavalt 2. sammus asetatud paberile lehekülje formaadi ja prindikandja valimiseks vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Paber (Paper)**.

Märkus

- Kui prindikandja tüübiks on valitud tavapaber, siis originaal kopeeritakse koos ääristega. Kui prindikandja tüübiks on valitud fotopaber, siis originaal kopeeritakse ääristeta ja see täidab kogu lehe.

5. Vajutage nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**.

Tuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** hakkab põlema.

Märkus

- Vastavalt lehe formaadile koopiade tegemise tühistamiseks vajutage uuesti nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**. Nupu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** vajutamisel tuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** kustub ja lehele sobitamiseq
- Nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** saate kasutada ainult siis, kui kasutate kopeerimise funktsiooni.

6. Määrake koopiade arv (max 20 koopiat).

1 kuni 9 või 20 koopia tegemine

Kuvage LED-näidikul koopiade soovitud arv. Iga kord, kui vajutate nuppu **+**, suureneb LED-näidikul kuvatud number ühe võrra.

Kui LED-näidiku kuva on selline, siis on määratud koopiade arv „20“. Uuesti arvu „1“ määramiseks vajutage veel kord nuppu **+**.



10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

1. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **+**, kuni LED-näidikule ilmub järgmine kuva.



2. Asetage seadmesse ainult nii palju lehti, kui soovite kopeerida.

Märkus

- Nupu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** vajutamine viib koopiate arvu tagasi 1 peale.

7. Vajutage värvikoopia tegemiseks nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** ja mustvalge koopia tegemiseks nuppu **Must režiim (Black)**.

Seade alustab koopia tegemist vastavalt lehe formaadile.

Kui kopeerimine on lõppenud, eemaldage kopeerimisalusel olev originaal.

10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

Kui kõik seadmesse asetatud paberilehed otsa saavad, ilmneb paberi otsasaamise viga. Vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** tõrke nullimiseks.

Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage dokumenti kopeerimisaluselt enne, kui paljundamine on lõppenud.

Märkus

- Koopiate tegemise tühistamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.
- **Prindikvaliteedi seadmine olekusse „Kiire“ (kiirus on prioriteetne)**

Saate prindikvaliteediks olekuks seada „Kiire“ (kiirus on prioriteetne) ainult siis, kui lehe vorminguks ja prindikandja tüübiks on valitud A4- või Letter-vormingus tavapaber.

1. 7. sammus vajutage ja hoidke all nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** või **Must režiim (Black)** 2 sekundit või kauem.

LED-näidik vilgub üks kord.

2. Vabastage nupp.

Seade alustab kopeerimist.

Kui prindikvaliteet on seatud olekusse „Kiire“, siis eelistatakse prindikvaliteedi asemel prindikiirust.

Et muuta kvaliteet prioriteetseks, vajutage prindikvaliteediga „Standardne“ kopeerimiseks nuppu

Värvirežiim (Color) või **Must režiim (Black)** vähem kui 2 sekundit.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades](#) > [Kopeerimine](#) > Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine

U036

Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine

- **Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel**

Tagasalve laaditava paberi formaadiks saate valida A4 või Letter.

➡ [Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel](#)

- **Ääristeta kopeerimine**

Pilte saab kopeerida nii, et kujutis täidab kogu lehekülje servast servani.

➡ [Ääristeta kopeerimine \(Ääristeta koopia\)](#)

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades > Kopeerimine > Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine
> Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel

U097

Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel

Tagasalve laaditava paberi formaadiks saate valida A4 või Letter.

Antud säte on kasulik siis, kui lisate tagasalve tavaliselt Letter-vormingus paberit, hoolimata juhtpaneelil näidatud paberivormingust „A4“ või vastupidi.

1. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Hooldus (Maintenance)**, kuni LED-ile ilmub järgmine kuva.



2. Vajutage formaadi A4 valimiseks nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või formaadi Letter valimiseks nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.



Märkus

- Kui vahetate paberi vorminguks A4 või Letter, lisage valitud vormingus paber juhtpaneelil näidatud vormingust hoolimata.
Kui lehe vorminguks on määratud A4, lisage seadmesse A4-vormingus tava- või fotopaberit.
Kui lehe vorminguks on seatud Letter, lisage seadmesse Letter-vormingus tava- või fotopaberit.
- See säte jääb samaks, isegi kui seade välja lülitatakse.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

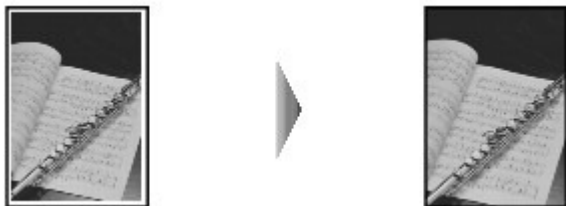
Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Printimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades > Kopeerimine > Kasulike kopeerimisfunktsioonide kasutamine > Ääristeta kopeerimine (Ääristeta koopia)

U039

Ääristeta kopeerimine (Ääristeta koopia)

Pilte saab fotopaberile kopeerida nii, et kujutis täidab kogu lehekülje servast servani.



1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.
2. Asetage fotopaber tagasalve.
3. Lehe formaadi valimiseks vajutage nuppu **Paber (Paper)**.

Valige tagasalve asetatud paberi leheküljeformaad.

Märkus

- Tagasalve laaditava paberi formaadiks saate valida A4 või Letter.
➔ [Paberi suuruse vahetamine A4- ja Letter-formaadi vahel](#)
- Kui on valitud tavaline paber, ei ole ääristeta kopeerimine võimalik.

4. Vajutage nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**.

Tuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** hakkab põlema.

Märkus

- Ääristeta koopiade tegemise tühistamiseks vajutage uuesti nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)**. Nupu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** vajutamisel tuli **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** kustub ja ääristeta kopeerimise funktsioon peatatakse.
- Nuppu **Sobita lehele (Fit to Page)** saate kasutada ainult siis, kui kasutate kopeerimise funktsiooni.

5. Määrake koopiade arv (max 20 koopiat).

1 kuni 9 või 20 koopia tegemine

Kuvage LED-näidikul koopiade soovitud arv. Iga kord, kui vajutate nuppu **+**, suureneb LED-näidikul kuvatud number ühe võrra.

Kui LED-näidiku kuva on selline, siis on määratud koopiade arv „20“. Uuesti arvu „1“ määramiseks vajutage veel kord nuppu **+**.



10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

1. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **+**, kuni LED-näidikule ilmub järgmine kuva.



2. Asetage seadmesse ainult nii palju lehti, kui soovite kopeerida.

Märkus

- Nupu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** vajutamine viib koopiate arvu tagasi 1 peale.
-

6. Vajutage värvikoopia tegemiseks nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)** ja mustvalge koopia tegemiseks nuppu **Must režiim (Black)**.

Seade alustab ääristeta koopiate tegemist.

Kui kopeerimine on lõppenud, eemaldage kopeerimisalusel olev originaal.

10 kuni 19 koopia tegemine

Kui kõik seadmesse asetatud paberilehed otsa saavad, ilmneb paberi otsasaamise viga. Vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)** tõrke nullimiseks.

 Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage dokumenti kopeerimisaluselt enne, kui paljundamine on lõppenud.

 Märkus

- Servadest võidakse pilti vähesel määral kärpida, kuna kopeeritud pilti suurendatakse nii, et see täidaks kogu lehe.
 - Koopiate tegemise tühistamiseks vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.
-

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) 

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Skannimine

Skannimine

- ➡ Piltide skannimine
- ➡ Skannimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades
- ➡ Kaasasoleva rakendustarkvaraga skannimine
- ➡ Muu rakendustarkvaraga skannimine
- ➡ Muud skannismetodid

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Piltide skannimine](#)

Piltide skannimine

- ➡ Piltide skannimine
- ➡ Enne skannimist
- ➡ Dokumentide alusele asetamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Piltide skannimine](#) > [Piltide skannimine](#)

U046

Piltide skannimine

Saate skannida pilte seadmest ja hõlpsasti need arvutisse salvestada.

Lisaks saate pilte arvutist skannida täpsemate sätetega, kasutades rakenduse tarkvara.

Valige skannimismeetod vastavalt oma vajadustele.

- ➡ Skannitud andmete edastamine arvutisse seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades
- ➡ Kaasasoleva rakendustarkvaraga skannimine
- ➡ Muu rakendustarkvaraga skannimine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Piltide skannimine](#) > Enne skannimist

U047

Enne skannimist

Kontrollige, et skannitav originaal vastab klaasalusele asetatava originaali nõuetele.

Vt nõudeid ja kopeerimisalusele originaali asetamise viisi jaotisest [Dokumentide alusele asetamine](#) .

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning Images > Placing Documents

S005

Placing Documents

Learn how to place documents on the machine's Platen. Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.

Important

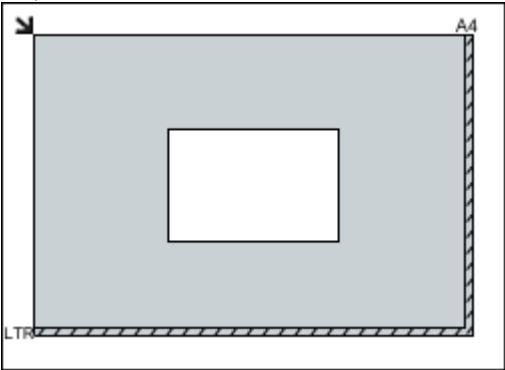
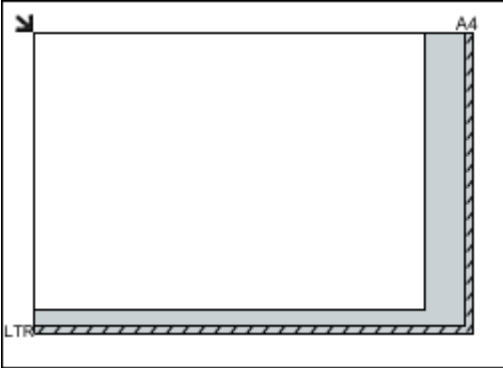
- Do not place objects on the Document Cover. The objects may fall into the machine when the Document Cover is opened. This may damage the machine.
- Close the Document Cover when scanning.

Placing Documents

Place documents as described below to allow the machine to detect the document type or size automatically.

Important

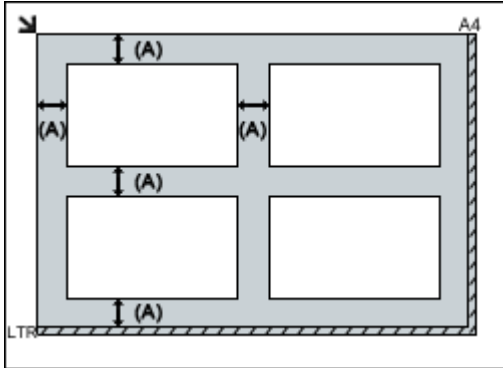
- When scanning by specifying the document size in MP Navigator EX or ScanGear (scanner driver), align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- Photos that have been cut to various shapes and documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square cannot be cropped accurately when scanning.
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.

For Photos, Postcards, Business Cards or BD/ DVD/CD	For Magazines, Newspapers or Text Documents
 Placing a Single Document Place the document face-down on the Platen, with 0.39 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the Platen and the document. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.  Important ■ Large documents (such as A4 size photos)	 Place the document face-down on the Platen and align an upper corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.  Important ■ The portion within 0.039 inches (1 mm) inwards from the alignment mark cannot be

that cannot be placed away from the edges/ arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen may be saved as PDF files. To save in a format other than PDF, scan by specifying the file format.

Placing Multiple Documents

Allow 0.39 inches (1 cm) or more space between the edges (diagonally striped area) of the Platen and documents, and between documents. Portions placed on the diagonally striped area cannot be scanned.



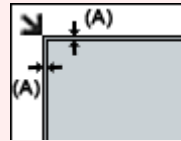
(A) more than 0.39 inches (1 cm)



Note

- You can place up to 12 documents.
- Positions of slanted documents (10 degrees or less) are corrected automatically.

scanned.



(A) 0.039 inches (1 mm)

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > Skannimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

Skannimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

- ➡ Skannitud andmete edastamine arvutisse seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades
- ➡ Lisa: mitmesugused skannimissätted

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Skannimine > Skannimine seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades > Skannitud andmete edastamine arvutisse seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

U051

Skannitud andmete edastamine arvutisse seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades

Saate skannitud andmeid arvutisse edastada seadme juhtpaneeli abil.

Seade tuvastab automaatselt klaasalusele asetatud originaali tüübi ja kujutis edastatakse optimaalse suuruse ja eraldusvõimega.

Tähtis!

- Laadige originaalid vastavalt tüübile, vastasel korral võib juhtuda, et mõningaid originaale ei skannita õigesti.
- Originaali kopeerimisalusele asetamist vt jaotisest [Dokumentide alusele asetamine](#).
- Skannida saab järgmisi esemeid:
fotod, postkaardid, visiitkaardid, ajakirjad, ajalehed, dokumendid, BD-d, DVD-d ja CD-d
- Järgmisi esemeid ei saa õigesti skannida.
 - A4-suuruses fotod
 - Dokumendid, mis on väiksemad kui 127 mm x 178 mm (5 tolli x 7 tolli), näiteks pehmekaaneline raamat, mille seljaosa on ära lõigatud
 - Õhukesel valgel paberil originaalid
 - Pikad ja kitsad originaalid, näiteks panoraamfotod

Enne skannitud andmete arvutisse edastamist kontrollige järgmist.

• Vajalik rakendustarkvara (MP Drivers ja MP Navigator EX) on installitud.

Kui rakendustarkvara (MP-draiverid ja MP Navigator EX) on veel installimata, sisestage *Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)* arvuti kettaseadmesse, viige läbi Custom Install ning valige installimiseks MP Drivers ja MP Navigator EX.

• Seade on arvutiga õigesti ühendatud.

Veenduge, et seade oleks arvutiga õigesti ühendatud.

Ärge ühendage ega eemaldage USB-kaablit piltide skannimise ajal ega siis, kui arvuti on une- või ooterežiimil.

• Sihtkoht ja failinimed on määratud MP Navigator EX-is.

Võite määrata sihtkoha ja failinimed MP Navigator EX-is. Seadme sätete või algsätete muutmise üksikasju vaadake osast [Scanner Button Settings vahekaart \(salvesta PC-sse\)](#).



Märkus

- Kui skannite seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades, tuvastatakse automaatselt klaasalusele asetatud originaali tüüp ja määratakse automaatselt dokumendi formaadi ja eraldusvõime sätted.

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.

2. Asetage originaal klaasplaadile.



Märkus

- Originaali kopeerimisalusele asetamist vt jaotisest [Dokumentide alusele asetamine](#).

3. Vajutage nuppu **Skanni (SCAN)**.

Algab skannimine ja pildid saadetakse edasi arvutisse vastavalt rakenduses MP Navigator EX määratud sätetele.

Kui skannimine on lõppenud, eemaldage originaal kopeerimisaluselt.

4. MP Navigator EX 4.0 määramine

Kui kasutate Windows 7-t või Windows Vistat.

Pärast nupu **Skanni (SCAN)** vajutamist võidakse kuvada programmi valikuekraan. Sellisel juhul valige MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 ja klõpsake OK.

Saate seadistada MP Navigator EX-i käivituma iga kord nupu **Skanni (SCAN)** vajutamisel. Täpsemat teavet leiate jaotisest [Windowsi kasutajatele](#).

Kui kasutate Windows XP-d:

Pärast nupu **Skanni (SCAN)** esmakordset vajutamist võidakse kuvada programmi valikuekraan. Sel juhul määra MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 kasutatavaks rakendustarkvaraks, valides Kasuta alati seda programmi selleks toiminguks (Always use this program for this action) ja klõpsates seejärel OK. Järgmisest kasutuskorrast alates käivitub MP Navigator EX automaatselt.



Tähtis!

- Kui pildi asend ja suurus ei ole korrektselt sisse skannitud, siis olenevalt originaali tüübist. Sellisel juhul vaadake [Fotode ja dokumentide skannimine](#) ja muutke MP Navigator EX-i seaded Dokumendi tüüp (Document Type) ja Dokumendi formaat (Document Size) originaalile sobivaks ja skannige MP Navigator EX-iga.

Kui soovite originaale täpsemate seadetega skannida või skannitud pilte muuta või printida, tehke järgmist.

Kui skannite originaale arvutist rakenduse MP Navigator EX abil, võimaldab see teil skannitud pilte redigeerida, näiteks optimeerida või lõigata.

Lisaks võite skannitud pilte muuta ja printida ka kaasasoleva rakendustarkvara abil, et neid paremini kasutada.

➡ [Proovige skannida](#)



Märkus

- Saate originaalide skannimiseks selle seadmega kasutada WIA-ga ühilduvat rakendustarkvara ja juhtpaneeli (ainult Windows XP puhul).
- Üksikasju vt [Muud skannimismeetodid](#).
- Kui soovite skannitud dokumenti muuta tekstidokumendiks, vt lisateavet jaotisest [Failide redigeerimine](#).

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Using the Operation Panel of the Machine](#) > [Appendix: Various Scan Settings](#)

S010

Appendix: Various Scan Settings

- **Specifying how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine**
 - ➡ [Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX](#)

[Page top](#)[↗]

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Using the Operation Panel of the Machine > Appendix: Various Scan Settings > Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

S007

MP Navigator EX

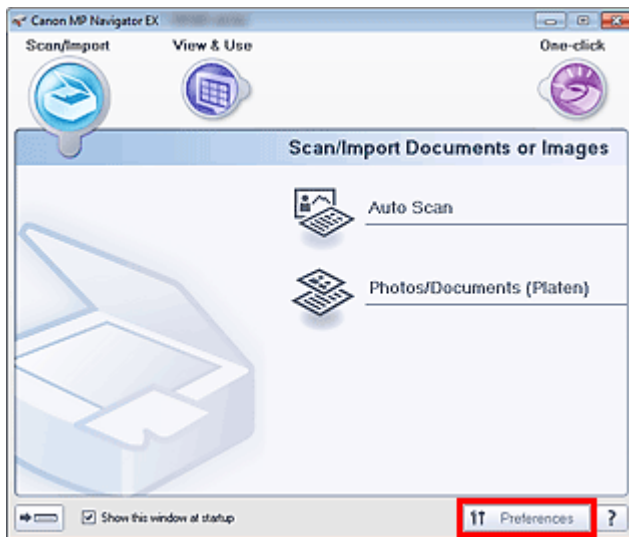
Selecting a Response to Commands from the Operation Panel Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX enables you to specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

1. Start MP Navigator EX.

➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

2. Click Preferences.

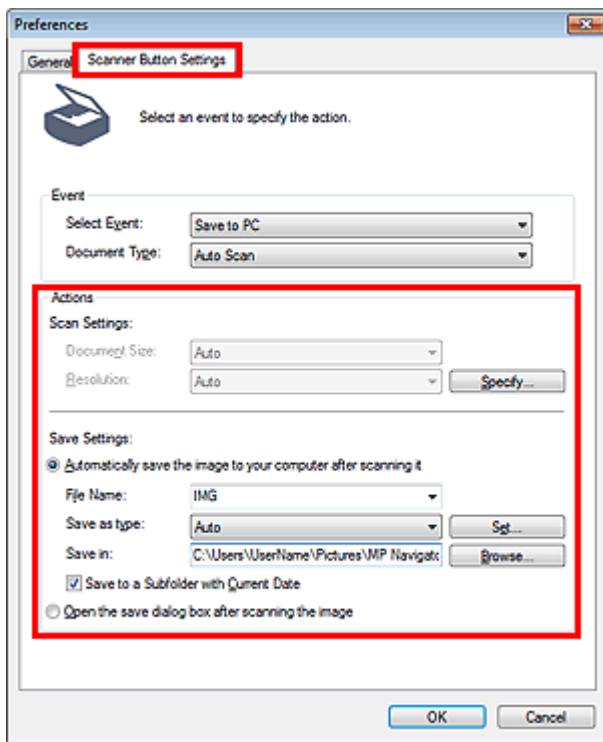


The Preferences dialog box opens.

Note

- The Preferences dialog box can also be opened by clicking Preferences in the One-click Mode screen.

3. On the Scanner Button Settings tab, specify Actions.



Note

- See the section below for details.
 ➡ [Scanner Button Settings Tab \(Save to PC\)](#)

4. Click OK.

The operation will be performed according to the settings when you start scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Kaasasoleva rakendustarkvaraga skannimine](#)

Kaasasoleva rakendustarkvaraga skannimine

- ➡ Mis on MP Navigator EX (kaasasolev skanneritarkvara)?
- ➡ Proovige skannida
- ➡ Kasulikud MP Navigator EX-i funktsioonid
- ➡ Piltide MP Navigator EX-is kasutamine
- ➡ Tarkvara MP Navigator EX kuvad
- ➡ Lisa: muude kui skannitud piltide avamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) > What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?

S101

MP Navigator EX

What Is MP Navigator EX (Supplied Scanner Software)?

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos and documents. It is suitable even for beginners.

Important

- MP Navigator EX may not start from the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.

What You Can Do with This Software

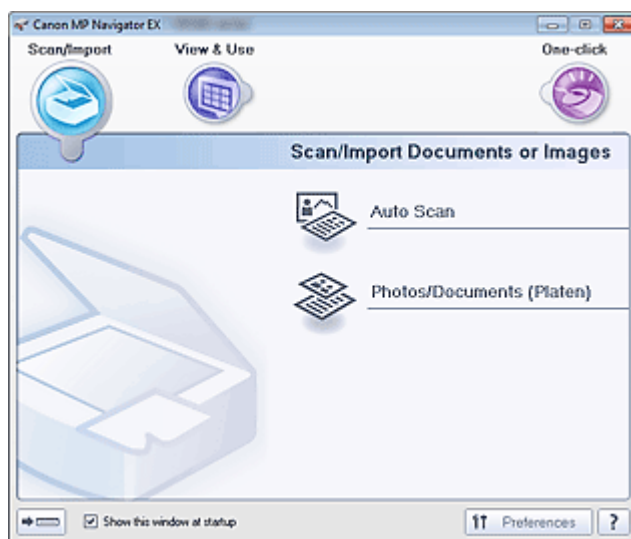
This software allows you to scan multiple documents at one time, or scan images larger than the Platen. You can also save scanned images, attach them to e-mail or print them using the supplied applications.

Screens

There are two types of MP Navigator EX Main Menu: Navigation Mode screen and One-click Mode screen.

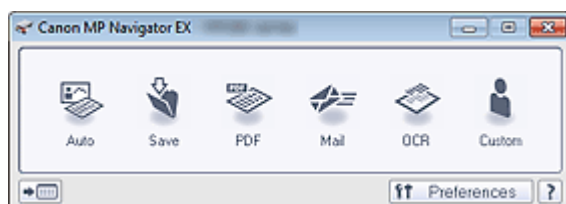
Navigation Mode Screen

You can start various tasks from the Navigation Mode screen, including simple scanning, scanning using ScanGear (scanner driver), and enhancing/correcting images.



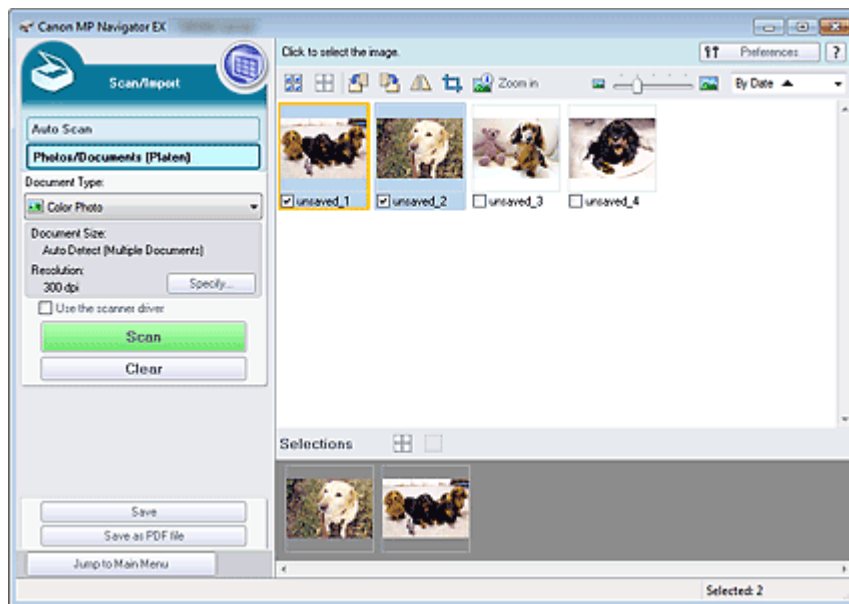
One-click Mode Screen

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen.



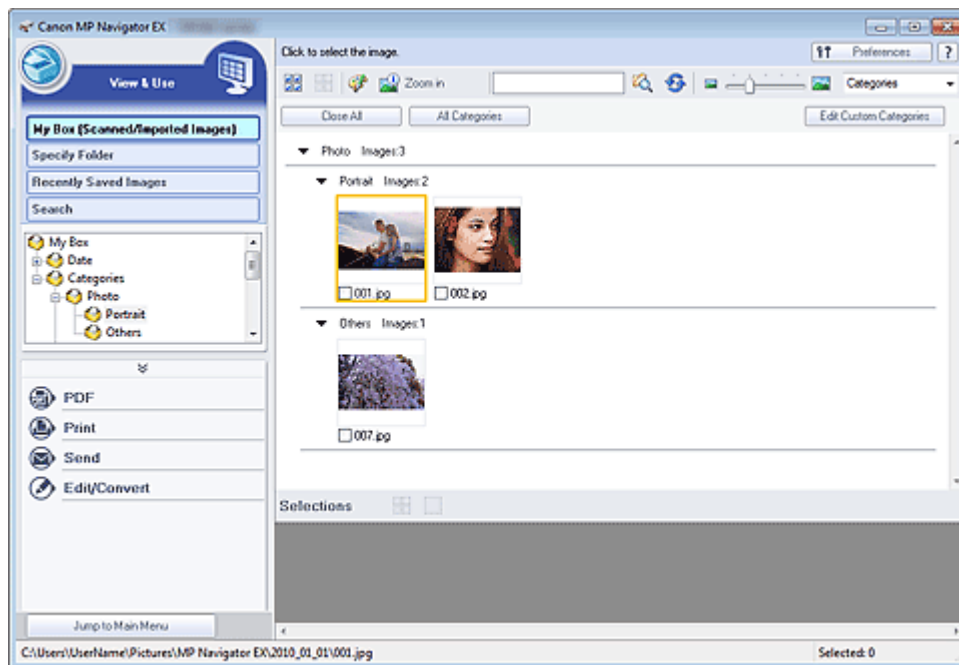
Scan/Import Window

Use the Scan/Import window to scan photos and documents.



View & Use Window

Use the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the scanned images.



Note

- See "File Formats" for data formats (extensions) supported by MP Navigator EX.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Let's Try Scanning](#)

S100

MP Navigator EX

Let's Try Scanning

Try scanning using MP Navigator EX.

- **Starting MP Navigator EX**
 - ➔ [Starting MP Navigator EX](#)
- **Scanning with a simple operation**
 - ➔ [Easy Scanning with Auto Scan](#)
- **Scanning documents, photos, magazines, etc. from the Platen**
 - ➔ [Scanning Photos and Documents](#)
- **Scanning two or more photos (small documents) at one time**
 - ➔ [Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time](#)
- **Scanning images larger than the Platen**
 - ➔ [Scanning Images Larger than the Platen \(Stitch Assist\)](#)
- **Scanning easily according to purpose (scan and save, attach to e-mail, etc.)**
 - ➔ [Easy Scanning with One-click](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Starting MP Navigator EX

S111

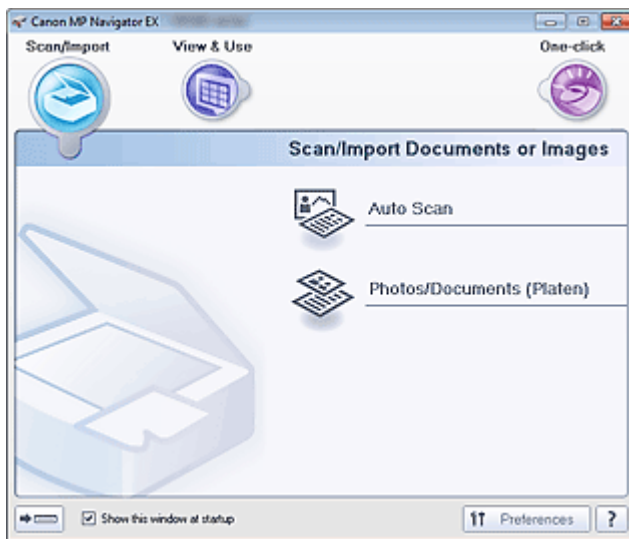
MP Navigator EX

Starting MP Navigator EX

Starting MP Navigator EX

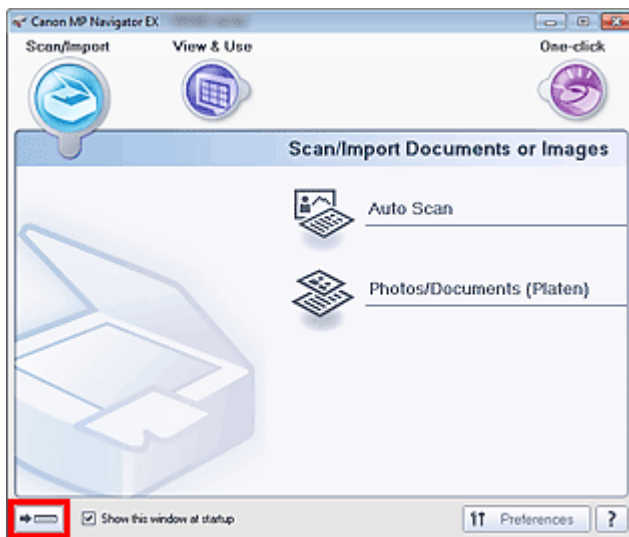
1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 4.0 > MP Navigator EX 4.0.

MP Navigator EX starts.

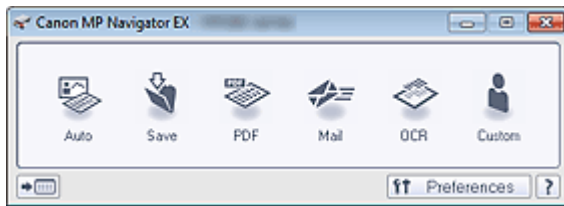


Starting One-click Mode

1. Click  (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the screen.



The One-click Mode screen appears.



Note

- Select the Show this window at startup checkbox in the Navigation Mode screen to always open the Navigation Mode screen at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears at startup.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

S108

MP Navigator EX

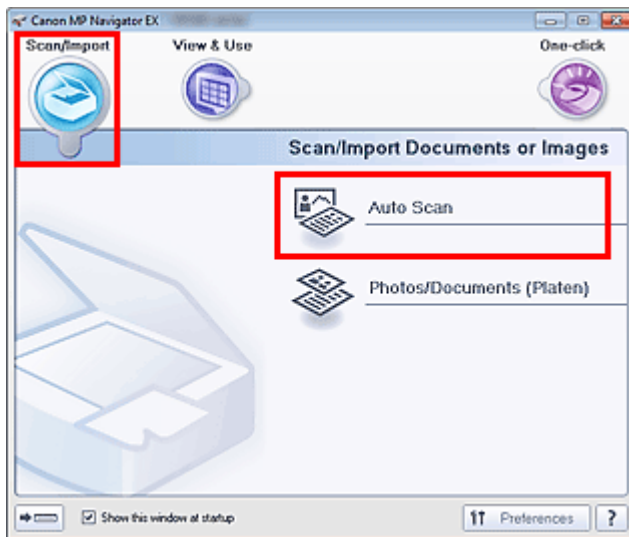
Easy Scanning with Auto Scan

Scan documents easily by automatically detecting the document type.

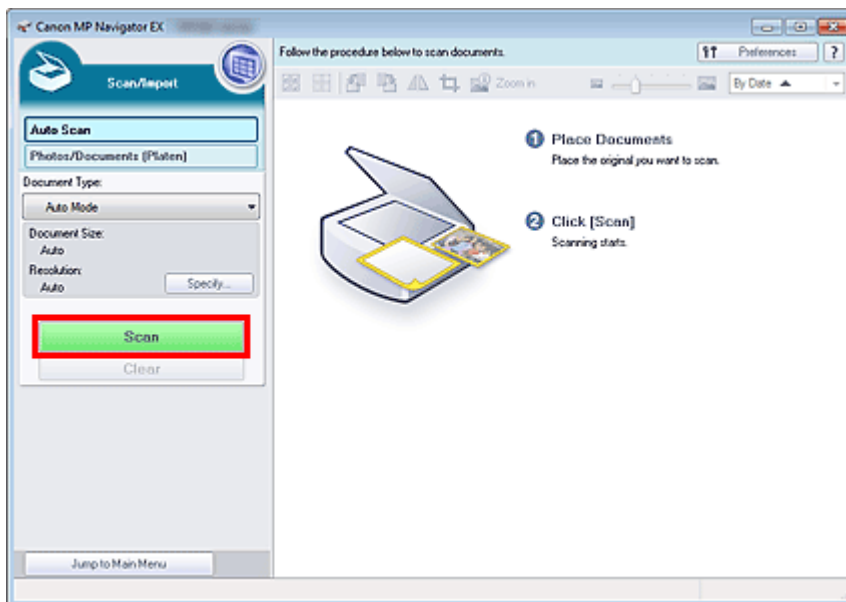
Important

- Supported document types are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD. To scan other documents, specify the document type.
➡ [Scanning Photos and Documents](#)

- Place the document on the Platen.
➡ [Placing Documents](#)
- Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
➡ [Starting MP Navigator EX](#)
- In Scan/Import, click Auto Scan.



- Click Specify... as required.
Set the preferences if you want to apply suitable corrections based on the document type.
When setting is completed, click OK.
➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Auto Scan\)](#)
- Click Scan.



A message about placing documents appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

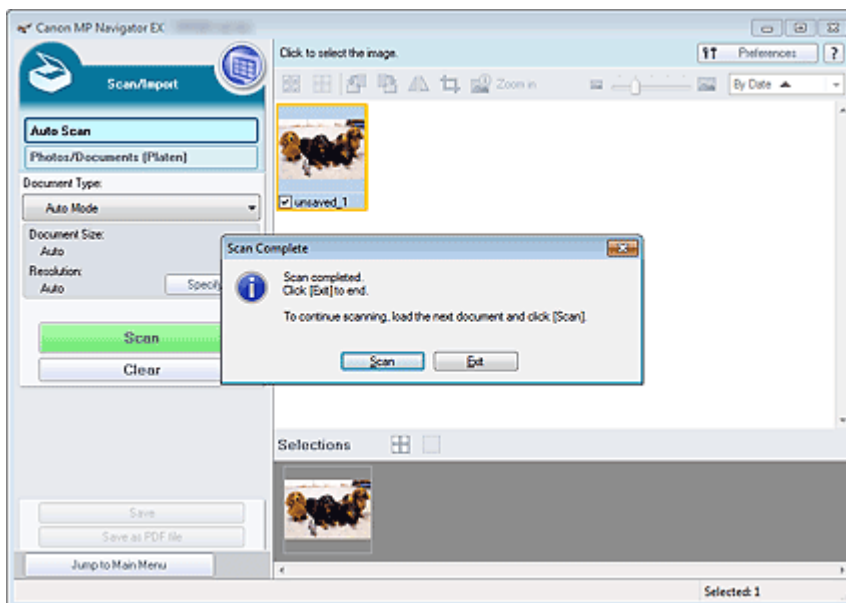
Click OK to start scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



6. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in "Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)" for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

7. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

Page top↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Scanning Photos and Documents

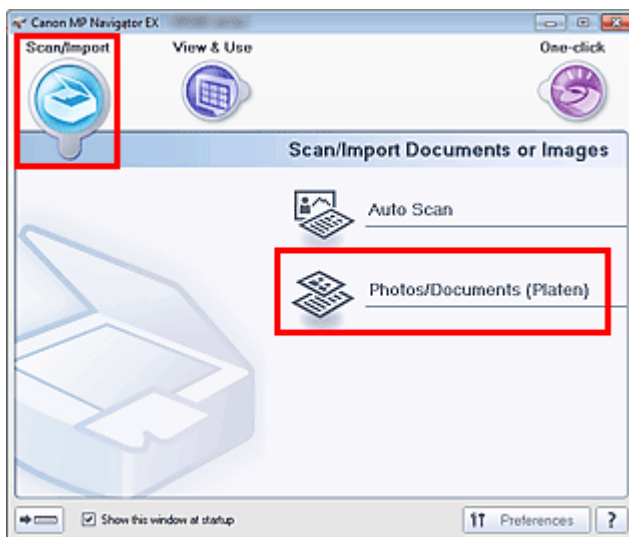
S102

MP Navigator EX

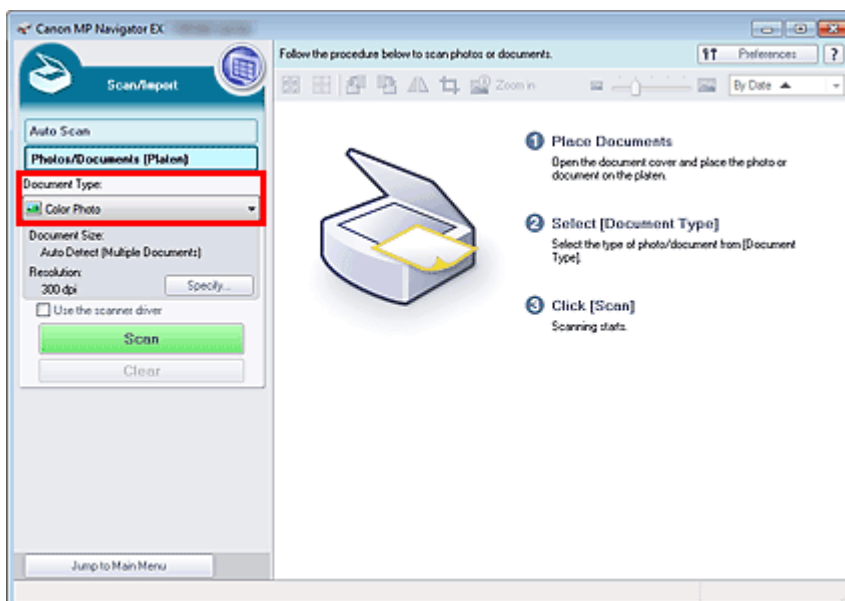
Scanning Photos and Documents

Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.

1. Place the document on the Platen.
➡ Placing Documents
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX
3. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



4. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- When you select Magazine(Color), the descreen function will be enabled and scanning takes longer than usual. To disable the descreen function, deselect the Descreen checkbox in the Scan Settings dialog box.
- Select Text(OCR) to extract the text in the image and convert to editable text data using MP Navigator EX.
- Color scanning is not available for Text(OCR). To scan in color, open the OCR dialog box from the One-click Mode screen and scan with Color Mode set to Color.

5. Click Specify... to set the document size and scanning resolution as required.

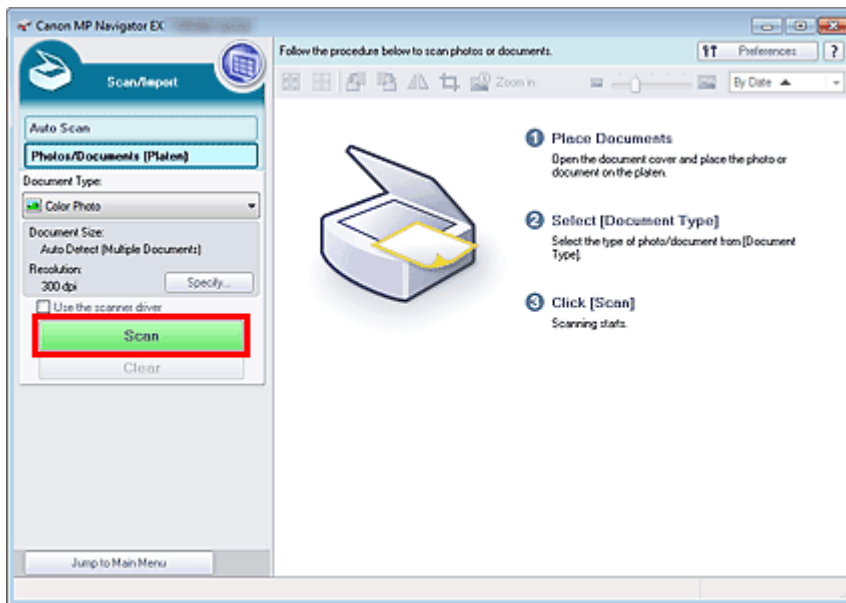
When setting is completed, click OK.

➔ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Important

- When scanning a large document (such as an A4 size photo), align its corner with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen and specify the document size in the Scan Settings dialog box.

6. Click Scan.



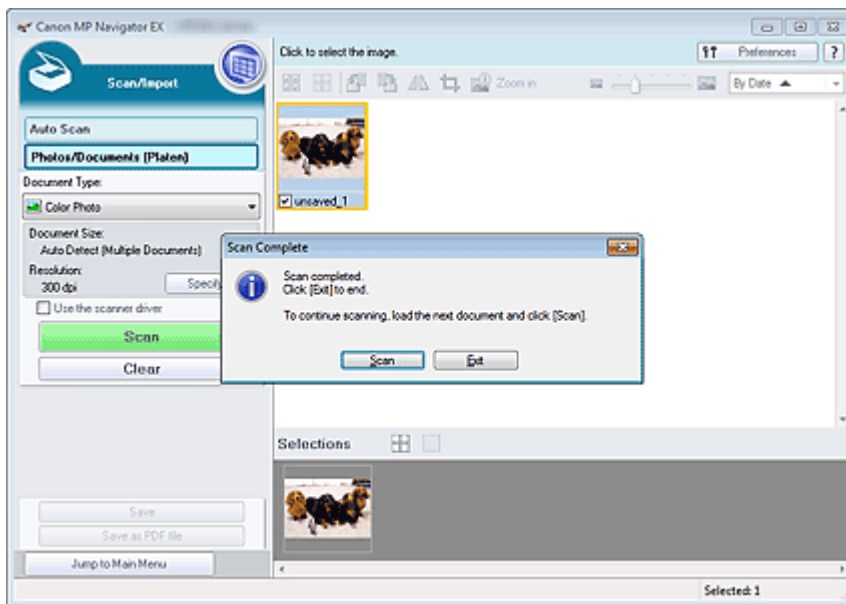
Starts scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in "Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

8. Save the scanned images.

➡ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time

S105

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time

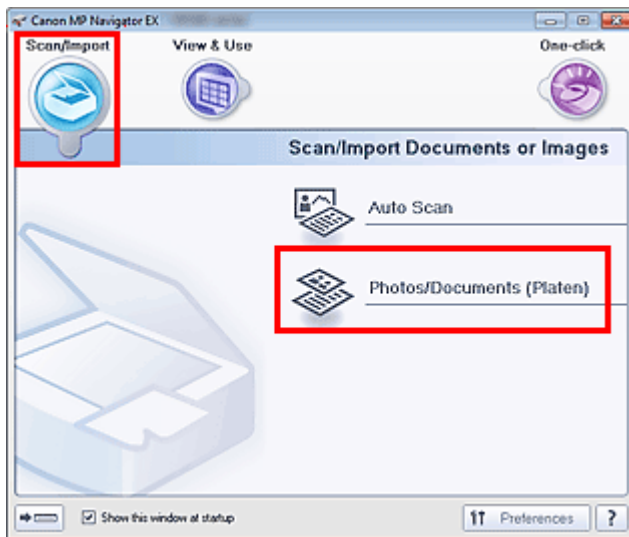
You can scan two or more photos (small documents) at one time by setting Document Size to Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) in the Scan Settings dialog box of MP Navigator EX.

Important

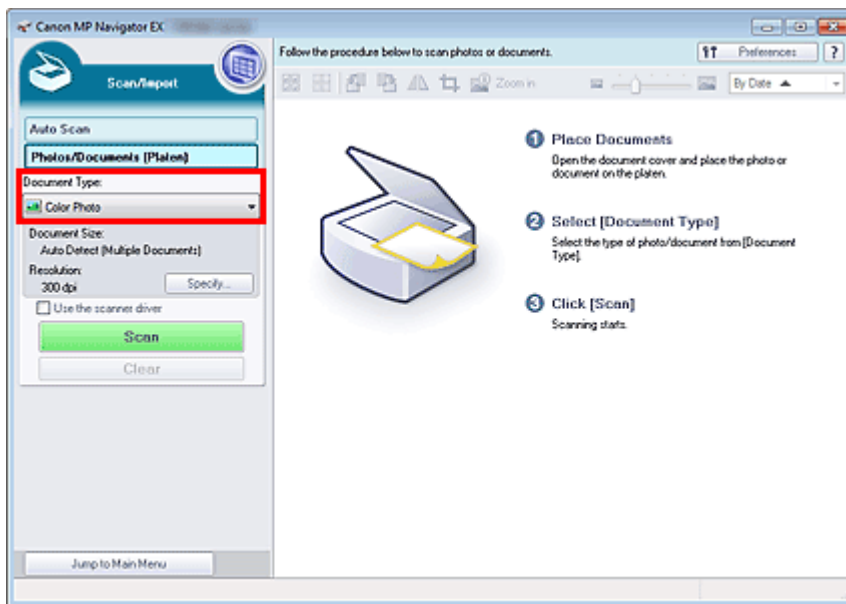
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, start ScanGear (scanner driver), then adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan again.
 - Photos that have a whitish border
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents

➡ Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

1. Place the document on the Platen.
➡ Placing Documents
2. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX
3. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



4. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.

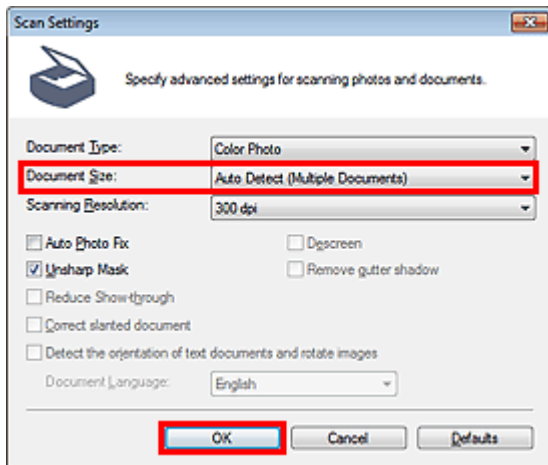


5. Click Specify....

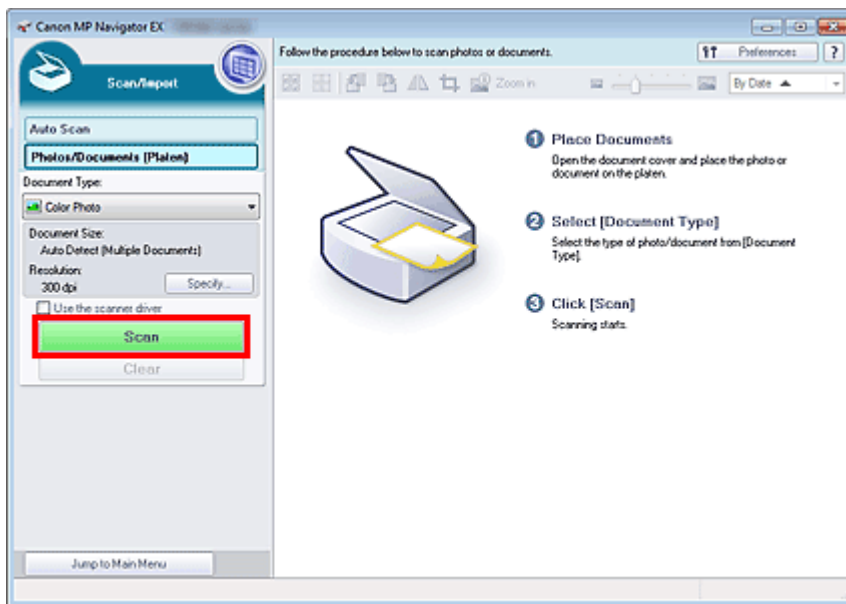
Select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) for Document Size.

When setting is completed, click OK.

➔ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



6. Click Scan.



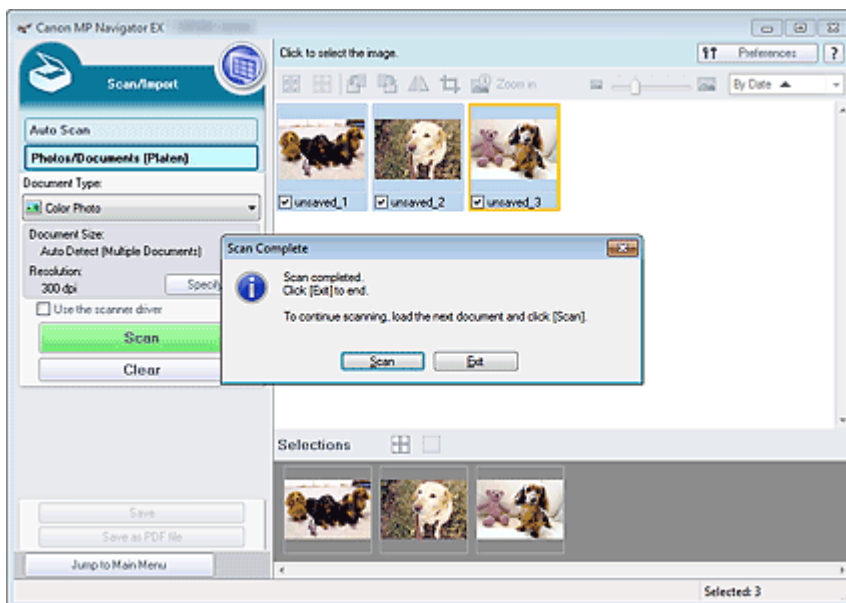
Multiple documents are scanned at one time.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



7. Edit the scanned images as required.

Use Edit Tools to rotate images, select a part of an image, etc.

See the Edit Tools in "Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window) " for details.

Note

- First select images to edit. (Selected images are outlined in orange.) Drag the mouse or use Shift + arrow keys to select multiple images. You can also select images by dragging and dropping them into the Selected Images area.

8. Save the scanned images.

➔ Saving

➡ Saving as PDF Files

Note

- If you want to preview the images before scanning, use ScanGear.
 - ➡ [Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
-

Page top↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)

S106

MP Navigator EX

Scanning Images Larger than the Platen (Stitch Assist)

Stitch Assist allows you to scan the left and right halves of a large document separately and combine the scanned images back into one image. You can scan documents that are up to twice as large as the Platen.

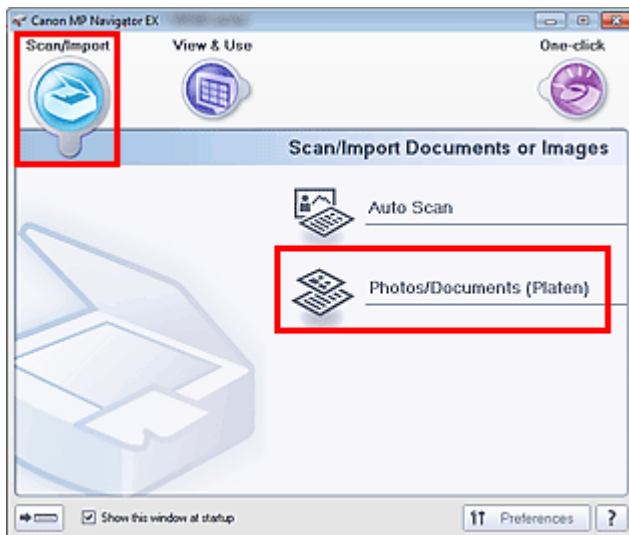
1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

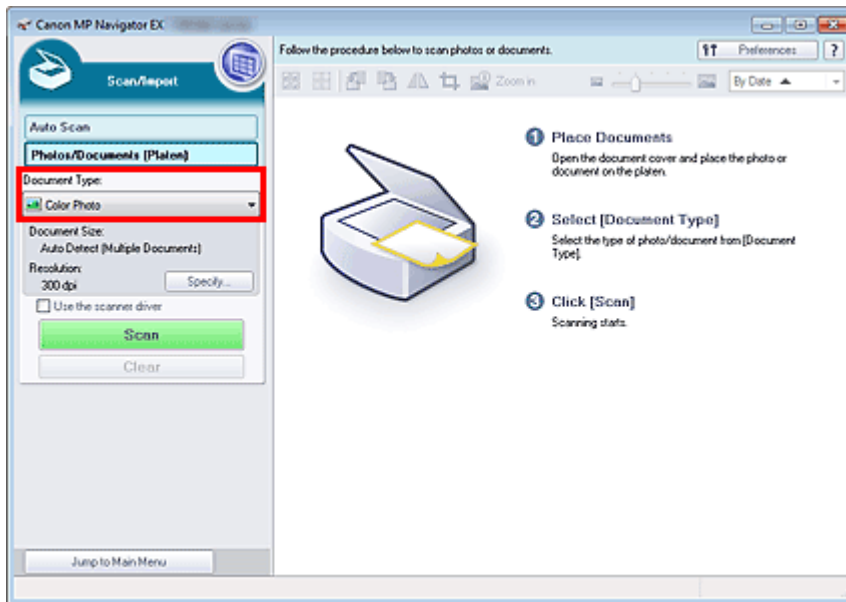
Note

- You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon in the One-click Mode screen. Stitch Assist is available from the One-click Mode screen as well, by changing the document size. Click the corresponding icon and select Stitch Assist for Document Size. Then skip ahead to Step 5.

2. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).



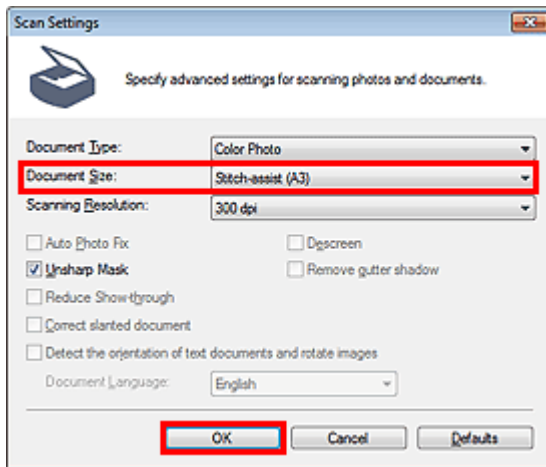
3. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.



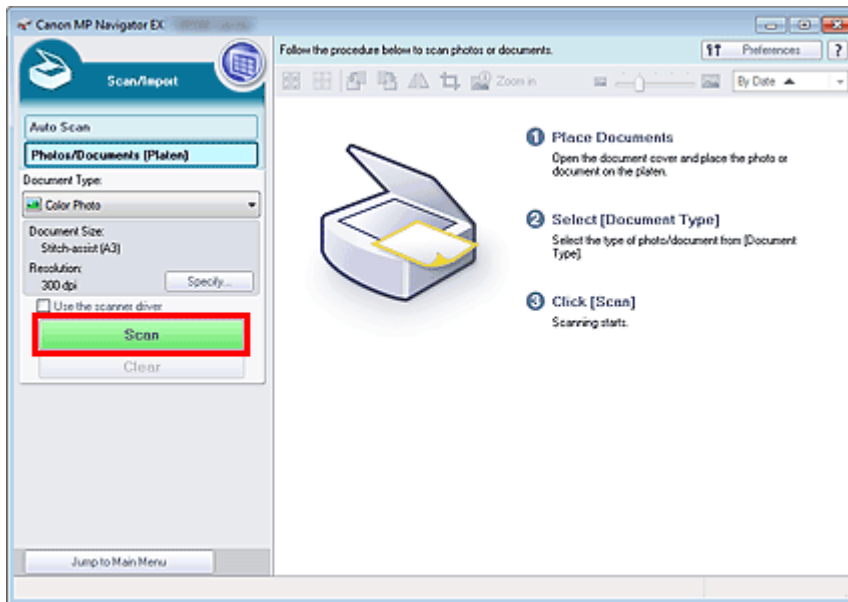
4. Click Specify....

Select Stitch Assist for Document Size, then specify the scanning resolution as required.
When setting is completed, click OK.

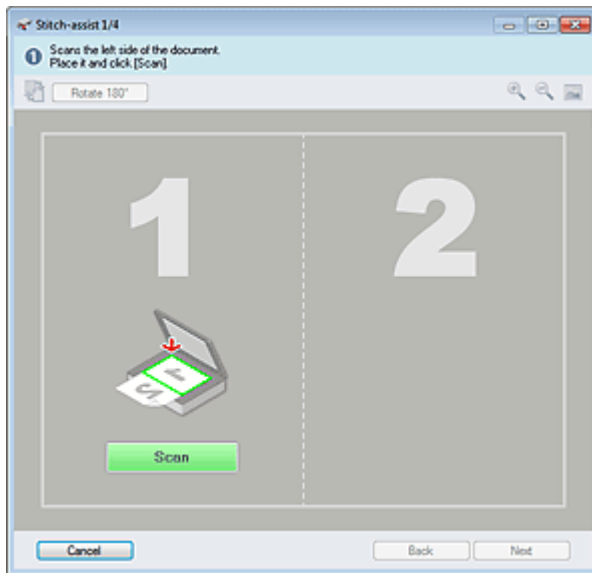
➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)



5. Click Scan.



The Stitch-assist window opens.



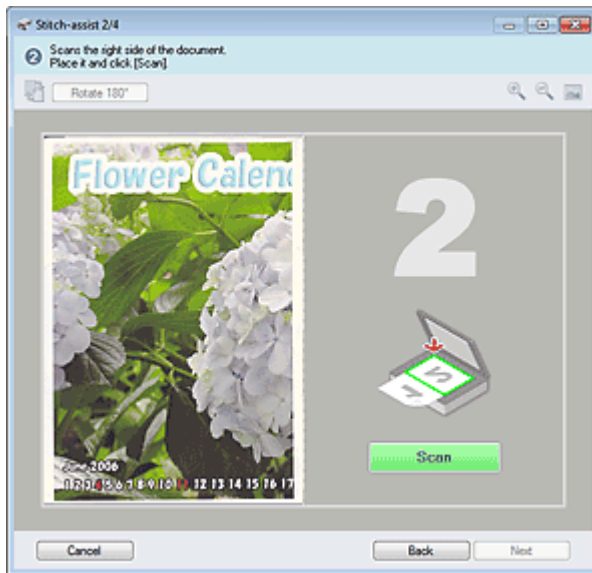
6. Place the left half of the document face-down on the Platen.

7. Click Scan.

The left half of the document is scanned and appears in the Stitch-assist window.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.



8. Place the right half of the document face-down on the Platen.

9. Click Scan.

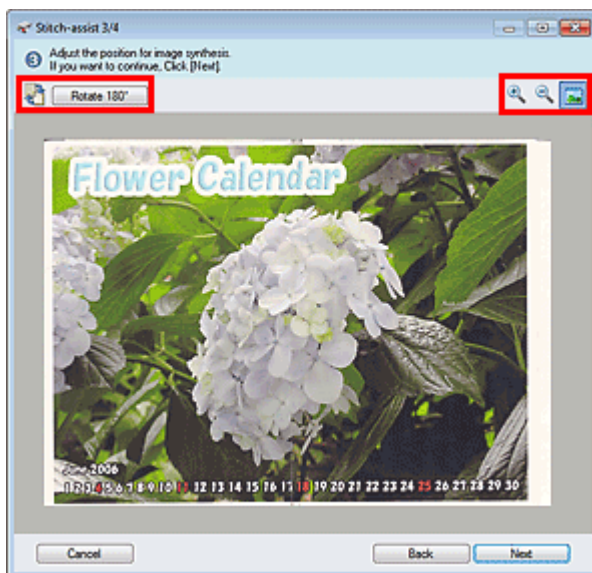
The right half of the document is scanned.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

10. Adjust the scanned image as required.

Use the icons to swap the left and right halves, rotate the image 180 degrees or enlarge/reduce the image.



(Swap Left & Right)

Swaps the left and right halves.



Important

- This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

• **Rotate 180°**

Rotates right half of the image 180 degrees.

Important

- This function is not available while the image is enlarged/reduced.

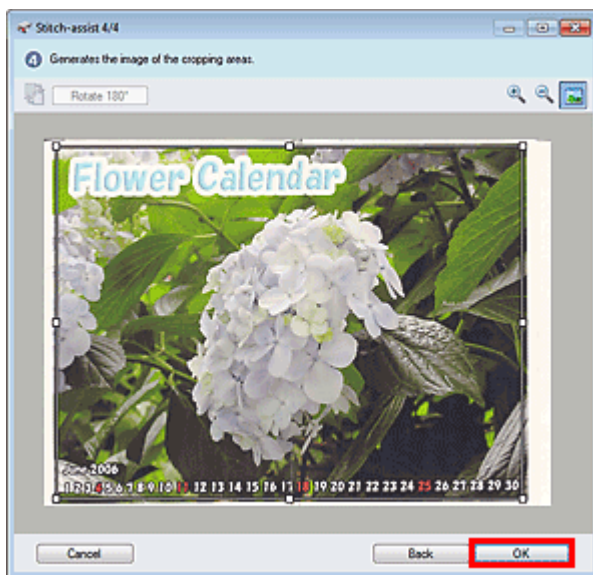
-  **(Enlarge)**
Enlarges the displayed image.
-  **(Reduce)**
Reduces the displayed image.
-  **(Full-screen)**
Displays the entire image.

Note

- Enlarge/Reduce does not affect the actual size of the scanned image.
- When the document is scanned upside down, the image displayed in the Stitch-assist window will also be upside down. Click Rotate 180° to rotate the image to the correct orientation.
- You can drag the right half of the image from right to left or up and down to adjust the position.
- If the left and right halves do not match due to a slanted document, place the document correctly and click Back, then scan again.

11. Click Next.

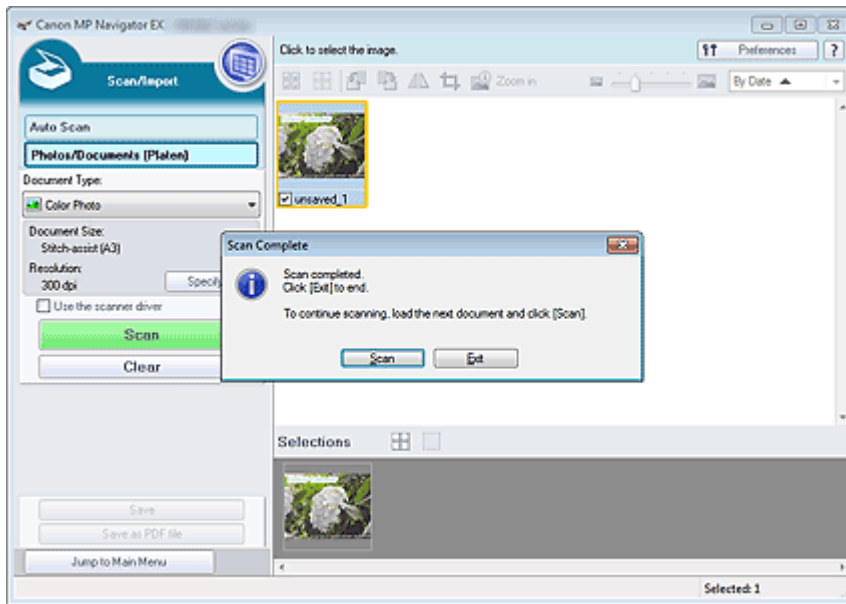
12. Drag the mouse to specify the area to be saved, then click OK.



The combined image is created.

When scanning is completed, the Scan Complete dialog box opens. Select Scan or Exit. Select Scan to scan the next document, or select Exit to end.

The scanned images appear in the Thumbnail window.



13. Save the scanned images.

- ➡ Saving
- ➡ Saving as PDF Files

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Let's Try Scanning > Easy Scanning with One-click

S104

MP Navigator EX

Easy Scanning with One-click

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

1. Place the document on the Platen.

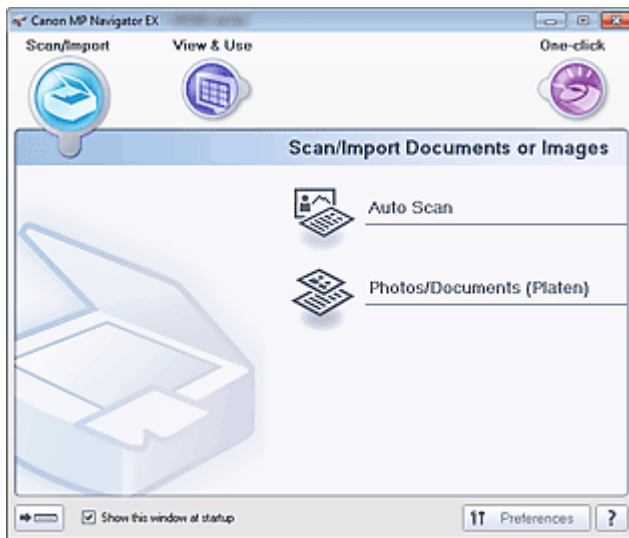
➡ Placing Documents

2. Start MP Navigator EX.

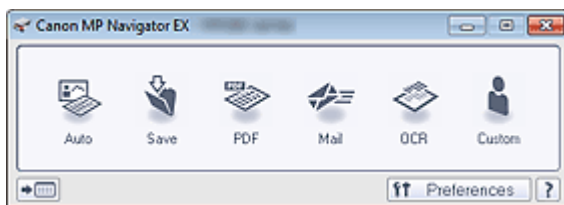
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

The MP Navigator EX Navigation Mode screen or One-click Mode screen appears.

Navigation Mode Screen



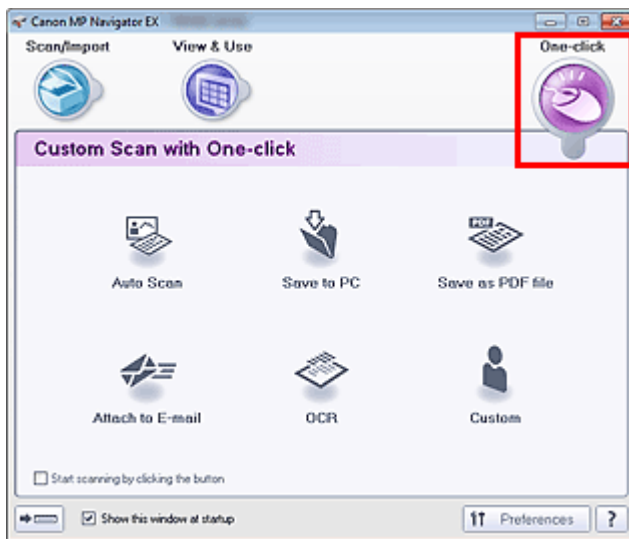
One-click Mode Screen



Note

- Skip ahead to Step 4 if One-click Mode screen is open.

3. Click One-click.



4. Click the corresponding icon.
 - ➡ Custom Scan with One-click Tab
 - ➡ One-click Mode Screen
5. Select Document Type according to the document to be scanned.
6. Set the document size and scanning resolution as required.
7. Start scanning.
Starts scanning.

Note

- Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Useful MP Navigator EX Functions](#)

S400

MP Navigator EX

Useful MP Navigator EX Functions

With MP Navigator EX, you can correct/enhance scanned images beautifully, and search saved images quickly.

- **Correcting/enhancing images automatically**
 - ➔ [Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically](#)
- **Correcting/enhancing images manually**
 - ➔ [Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually](#)
- **Adjusting color characteristics such as brightness and contrast**
 - ➔ [Adjusting Images](#)
- **Searching for lost images**
 - ➔ [Searching Images](#)
- **Classifying and sorting images**
 - ➔ [Classifying Images into Categories](#)

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Useful MP Navigator EX Functions > Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically

S401

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically

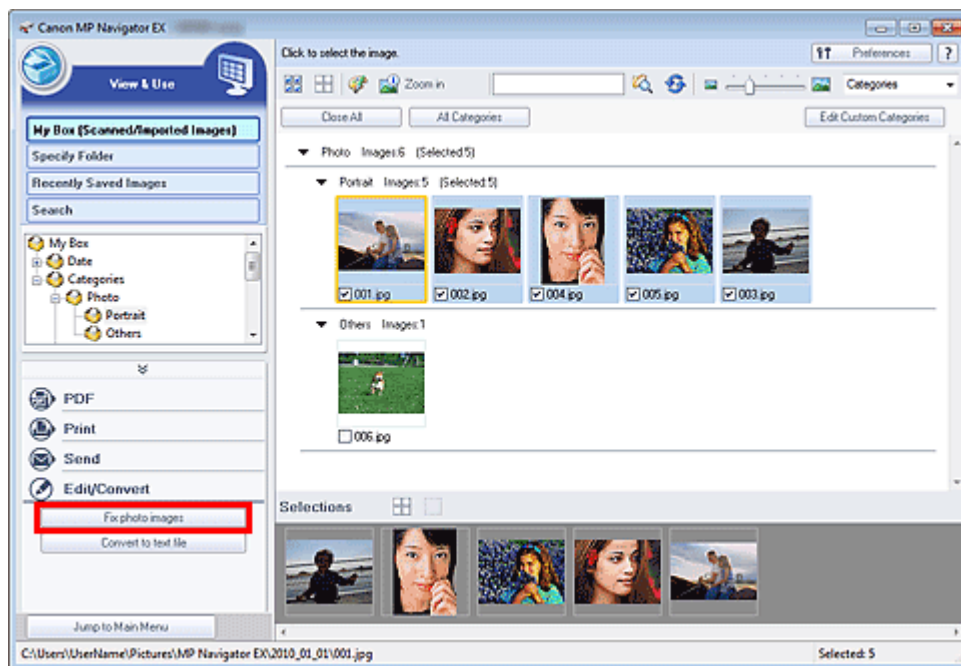
MP Navigator EX will analyze and correct/enhance scanned images automatically.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking  (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

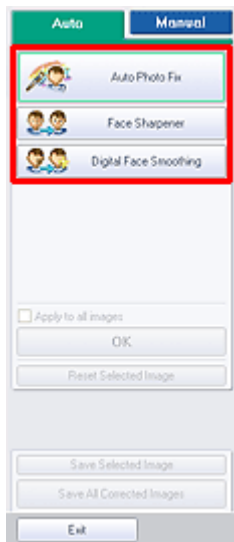
The selected image appears in Preview.



Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Make sure that Auto is selected.
5. Click Auto Photo Fix, Face Sharpener or Digital Face Smoothing.



Important

- Once image is corrected with Auto Photo Fix and saved, it cannot be corrected again with Auto Photo Fix. Auto Photo Fix may not be available for images edited using an application, digital camera, etc. manufactured by other companies.

Note

- The Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- When you apply Auto Photo Fix, dark backlit photos will be corrected automatically. If the image is not corrected enough using Auto Photo Fix, it is recommended that you apply Face Brightener on the Manual tab.

➡ [Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually](#)

6. Click OK.

The entire image is corrected/enhanced automatically and  (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- Click Reset Selected Image to undo the correction/enhancement.
- Select the Apply to all images checkbox to correct/enhance all selected images.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.
- Adobe RGB images are saved as sRGB images.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Useful MP Navigator EX Functions > Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

S402

MP Navigator EX

Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

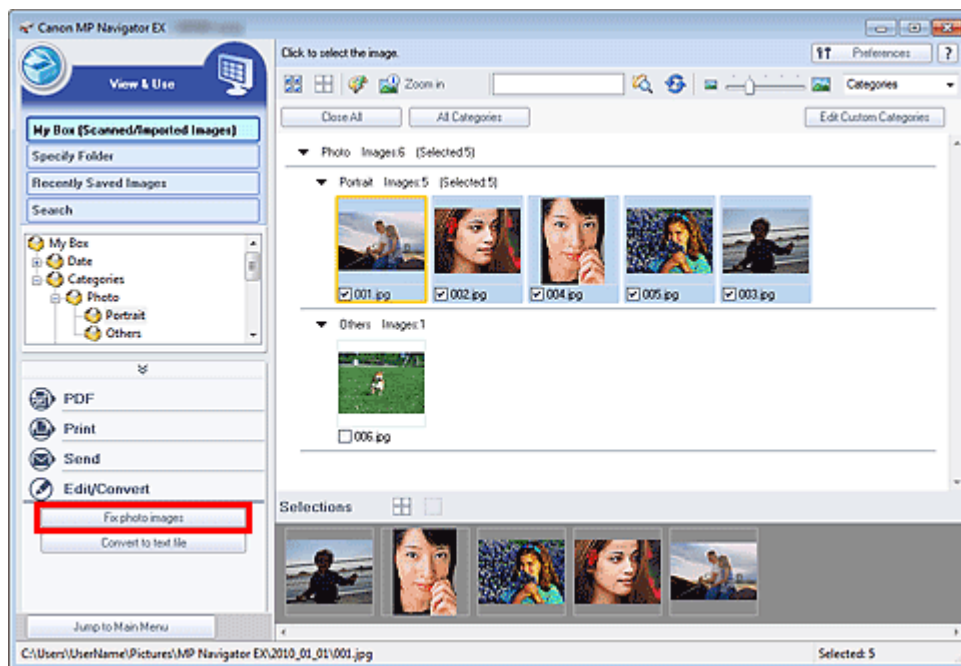
You can correct/enhance scanned images manually.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to correct/enhance.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking  (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to correct/enhance from the thumbnail list.

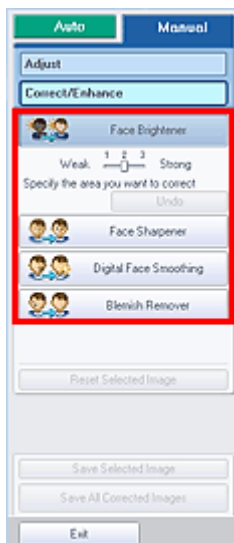
The selected image appears in Preview.



Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

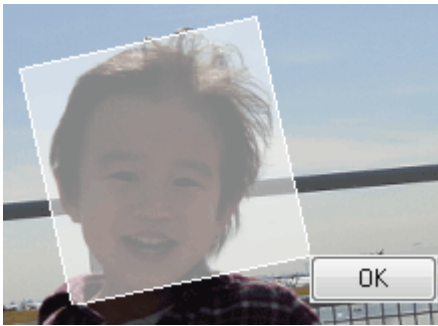
4. Select Manual, then click Correct/Enhance.
5. Click Face Brightener, Face Sharpener, Digital Face Smoothing or Blemish Remover.



Note

- The Face Brightener, Face Sharpener and Digital Face Smoothing effect levels can be changed using the slider that appears by clicking the corresponding buttons.
- Move the cursor over the image. The shape of the cursor changes to **+** (Cross).

6. Drag to select the area you want to correct/enhance, then click OK that appears over the image.



The portion in and around the selected area is corrected/enhanced and  (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.

Note

- You can also drag to rotate the rectangle.
- Click Undo to undo the latest correction/enhancement.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

7. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save corrected/enhanced images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
- The file format of corrected/enhanced images is JPEG/Exif.

8. Click Exit.

Important

- The corrections/enhancements will be lost if you exit before saving corrected/enhanced images.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Useful MP Navigator EX Functions > Adjusting Images

S406

MP Navigator EX

Adjusting Images

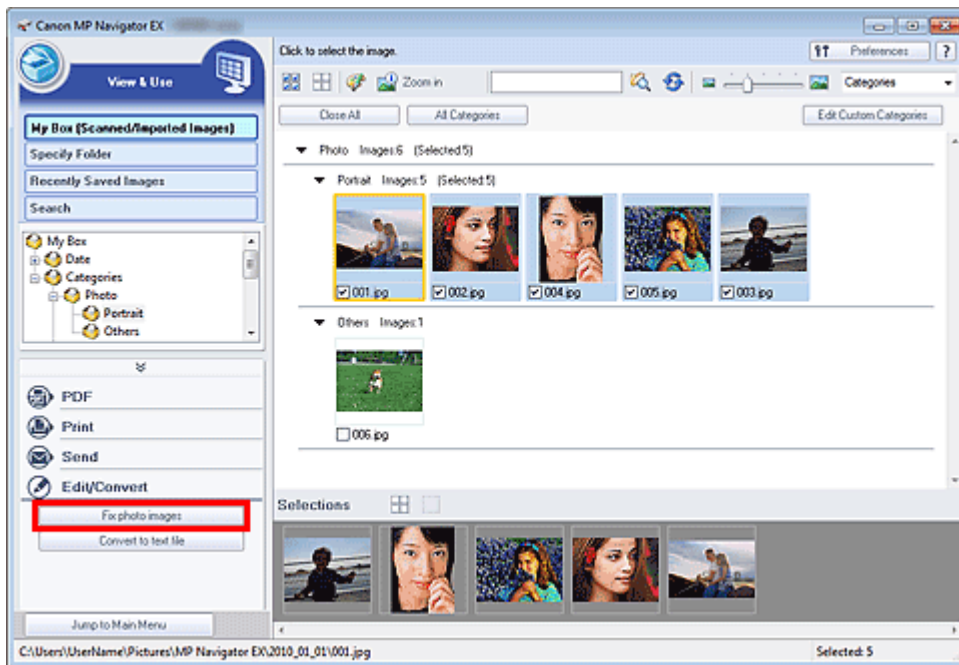
You can make fine adjustments to the overall brightness, contrast, etc. of images.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select the photos you want to adjust.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

2. Click Edit/Convert, then click Fix photo images on the list.



The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking  (Image Correction/Enhancement) on the Toolbar or in the Zoom in dialog box. In that case, only the target image (outlined in orange) can be corrected/enhanced.
- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.

3. Select the image you want to adjust from the thumbnail list.

The selected image appears in Preview.



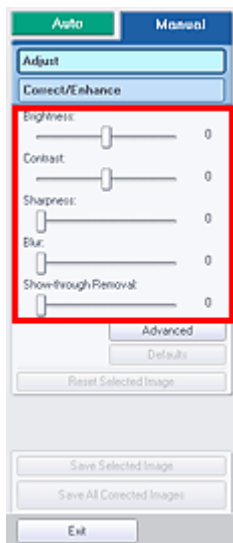
Note

- If you selected only one image in the View & Use window, the thumbnail list does not appear and only the preview image appears.

4. Select Manual, then click Adjust.

5. Move the slider of the item you want to adjust and set the effect level.

When you move a slider,  (Correct/Enhance) mark appears on the upper left of the thumbnail and preview image.



Note

- Click Advanced to make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone. See "Advanced" in the descriptions of the Correct/Enhance Images window for details.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments.
- Click Reset Selected Image to cancel all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

6. Click Save Selected Image or Save All Corrected Images.

You can save adjusted images as new files.

Note

- To save only the images you like, select them and click Save Selected Image. To save all images, click Save All Corrected Images.
 - The file format of adjusted images is JPEG/Exif.
-

7. Click Exit.



Important

- The adjustments will be lost if you exit before saving adjusted images.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

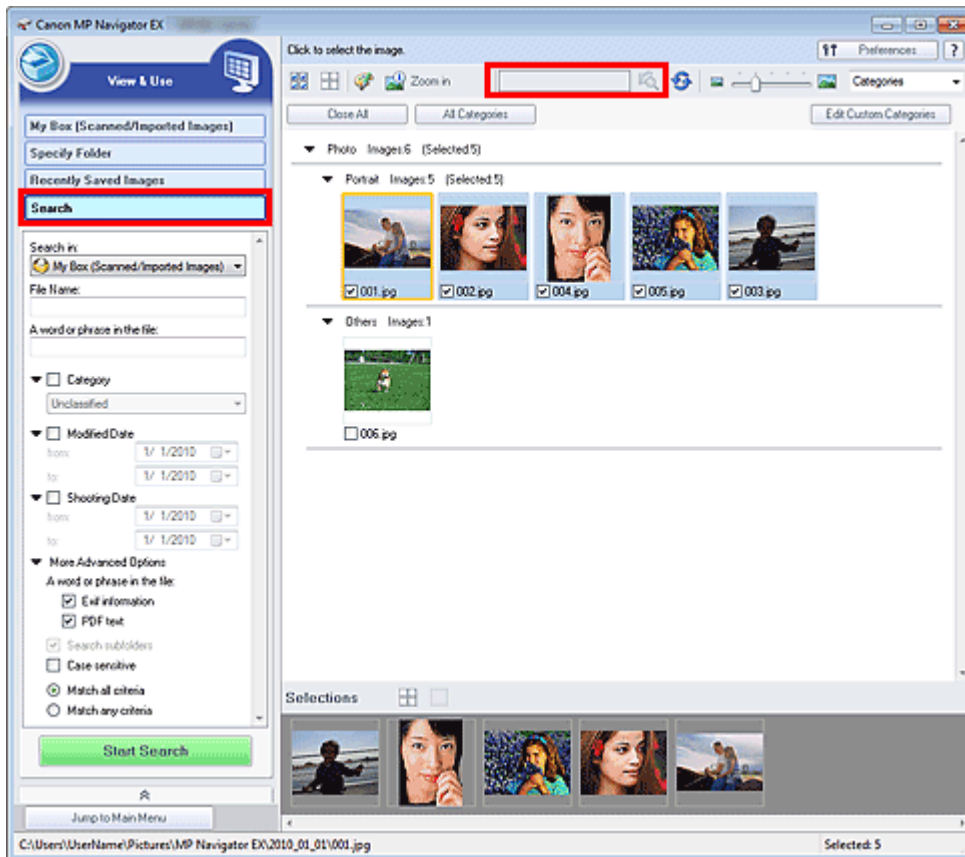
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Useful MP Navigator EX Functions > Searching Images

S407

MP Navigator EX

Searching Images

In the View & Use window of the Navigation Mode screen, you can search images saved on your computer and open them in MP Navigator EX. Opened images can be printed, edited, etc.



Note

- Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders.
- See "Starting MP Navigator EX" to start MP Navigator EX.

Quick Search

In (Text box) on the Toolbar, enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you want to search for, then click  (Search). For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

Advanced Search

Click Search on the left of the screen to open search options. Enter information of the image you want to search for, then click Start Search.

- **Search in**

If you know where to look for, select the drive, folder or network from Specify Folder.

- **File Name**

If you know the file name, enter it.

- **A word or phrase in the file**

Enter a word or phrase included in the items selected in More Advanced Options.



Important

- For PDF files, you can only search for those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot search PDF files created or edited in other applications. Also, searching PDF files is available only when keyword search is set.
For details of creating PDF files that enables keyword search, see " [PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)."
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Category**

You can search for images by category.

- **Modified Date**

To search for images that have been updated in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.

- **Shooting Date**

To search for images captured in a specific time period, enter the first and last dates of the period.



Note

- "Shooting date" is the date and time of data creation, which are included in the image's Exif information.

- **More Advanced Options**

- **A word or phrase in the file**

In A word or phrase in the file, select the items to search. If you select the Exif information

checkbox, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched. If you select the PDF text checkbox, text in PDF files is searched.

**Important**

- Text in password-protected PDF files cannot be searched.

- **Search subfolders**

Select this checkbox to search subfolders.

- **Case sensitive**

Select this checkbox to match case.

- **Match all criteria**

Searches for files that meet all the specified criteria.

- **Match any criteria**

Searches for files that meet any of the specified criteria.

- **Start Search**

Starts search.

Related Topic

► [View & Use Window](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Useful MP Navigator EX Functions > Classifying Images into Categories

S403

MP Navigator EX

Classifying Images into Categories

Display images scanned with MP Navigator EX by category. You can classify images displayed in Unclassified automatically, and also create custom categories. You can drag and drop an image to move it from one category to another.

Note

- If you have classified the images in MP Navigator EX 2.0 or later and then upgrade MP Navigator EX to the latest version, the classification information on the second latest version is transferred upon initial startup. After the initial startup, the classification information cannot be transferred.

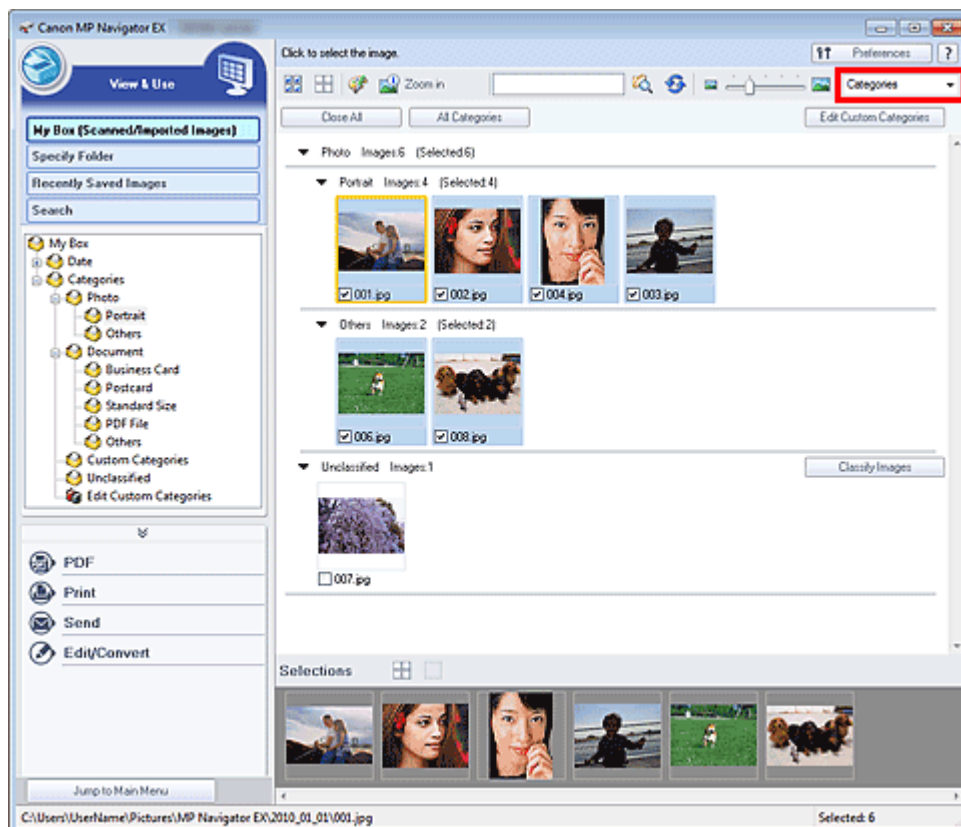
1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
➡ [Opening Images Saved on a Computer](#)

2. In Categories (Sort by), select Categories.

Images are automatically sorted by category and appear in the Thumbnail window.



Images are sorted into the following categories.

Photos: Portrait, Others

Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others

Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.

To create custom categories, see "[Creating Custom Categories](#)."

Unclassified: Displays images that are not classified.



Note

- Click Classify Images to classify images displayed in Unclassified automatically. Click Cancel to stop.
- Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.



Important

- Even if you classify images saved in removable media such as USB flash drive and external hard disk, the classification information will be deleted once you remove the media. From the next time, the images are classified to Unclassified.
- Images cannot be classified when Recently Saved Images is selected in the View & Use window.



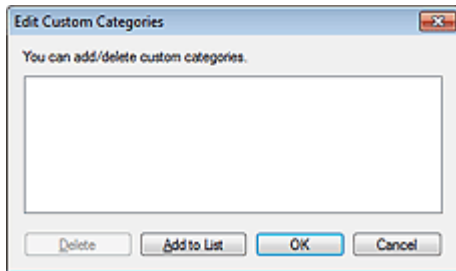
Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories. In that case, drag and drop the image to the correct category.
- Images saved in network folders may not be classified.
- You can search for images by category. See "[Searching Images](#)" for details.

Creating Custom Categories

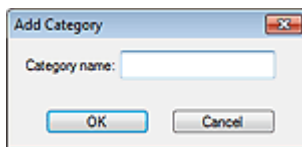
1. In the View & Use window, sort images by category and click Edit Custom Categories.

The Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.



2. Click Add to List.

The Add Category dialog box opens.



3. Enter Category name and click OK.



Note

- You can create up to 20 custom categories.
- Up to 50 single-byte characters can be used for a category name.
- Double-click a created category to open the Change Category Name dialog box in which you can change the category name.
- Select a custom category and click Delete to delete it.

Related Topic

► [View & Use Window](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX](#)

S500

MP Navigator EX

Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX

You can scan images using MP Navigator EX and edit or print the saved images.

See the corresponding sections below for details on saving scanned images.

- **Saving scanned images to computer**

➡ [Saving](#)

- **Saving scanned image as PDF Files**

➡ [Saving as PDF Files](#)

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images/files.

- **Creating/editing PDF files from scanned images**

➡ [Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)

- **Printing multiple scanned images at one time or printing at specific size, quality, etc.**

➡ [Printing Documents](#)

- **Printing scanned photos**

➡ [Printing Photos](#)

- **Sending scanned images via e-mail**

➡ [Sending via E-mail](#)

- **Correcting/enhancing scanned images or converting them to text**

➡ [Editing Files](#)

- **Setting passwords for created PDF files**

➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

➡ [Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Saving

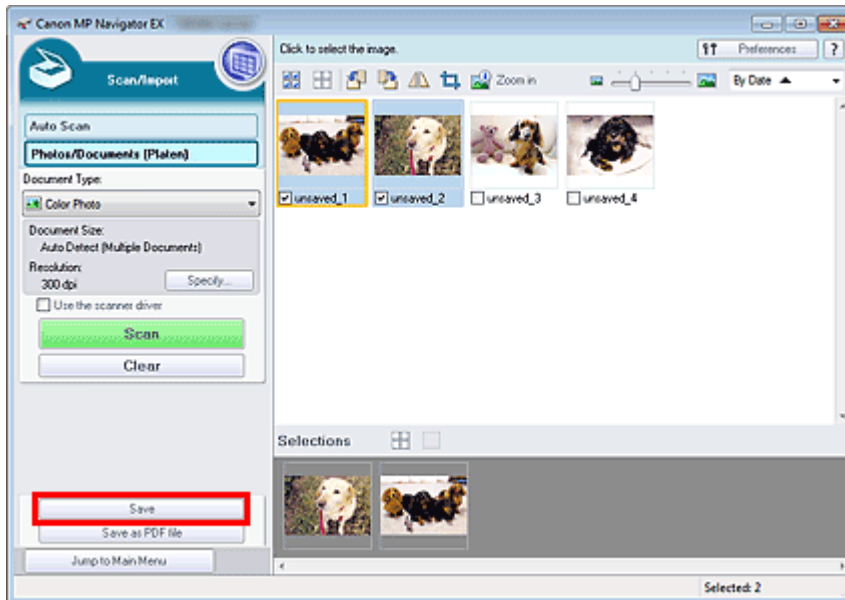
S112

MP Navigator EX

Saving

Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX to a computer.

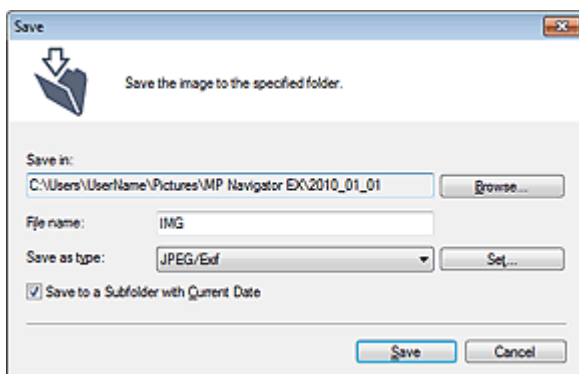
1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save.



2. In the Save dialog box, specify the save settings.

Specify the destination folder, file name and file type.

➔ Save Dialog Box



Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Black and White is selected for Color Mode on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

Note

- By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

➡ Creating/Editing PDF Files

➡ Printing Documents

➡ Printing Photos

➡ Sending via E-mail

➡ Editing Files

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Saving as PDF Files

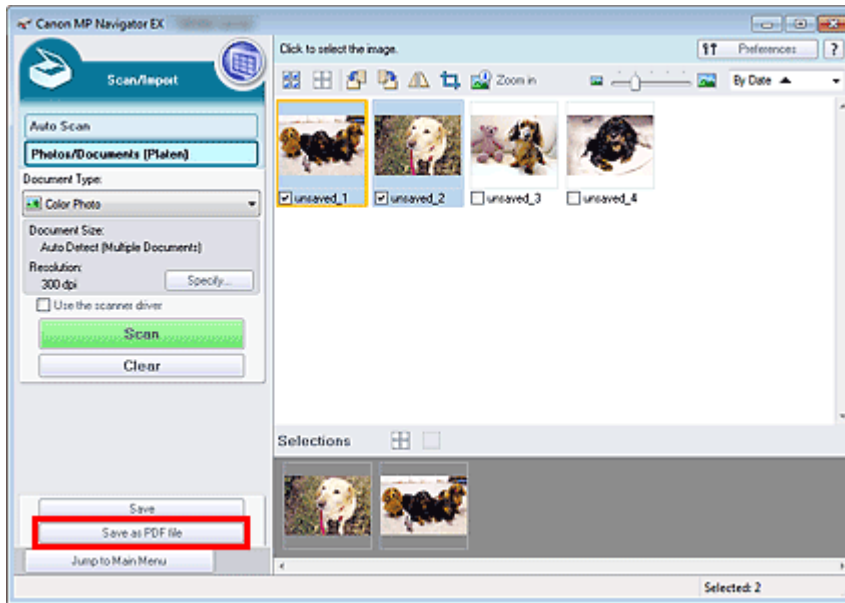
S113

MP Navigator EX

Saving as PDF Files

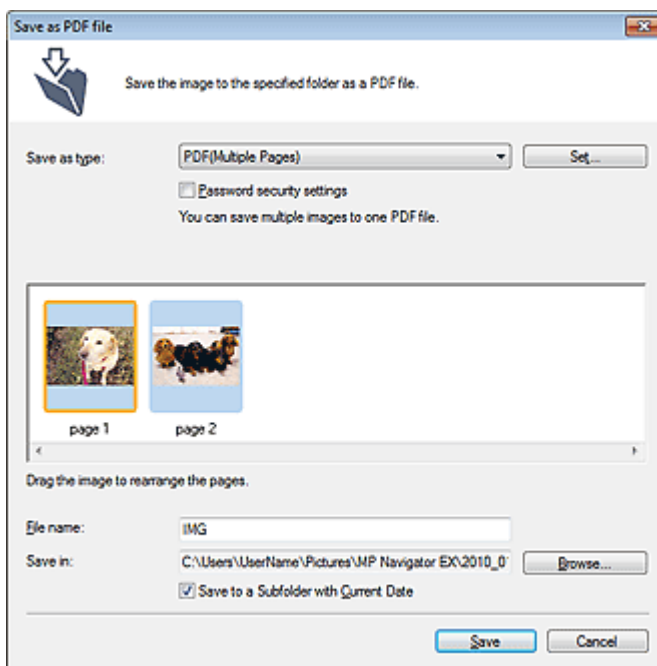
Save images scanned with MP Navigator EX as PDF files.

1. Select the checkboxes of the images you want to save, then click Save as PDF file.



2. In the Save as PDF file dialog box, specify the save settings.
Specify the file type, file name and destination folder.

➡ Save as PDF file Dialog Box



**Note**

- By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
 - Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
 - Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
 - Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
- You can set passwords for PDF files.
 - ➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

3. Click Save.

Scanned images are saved according to the settings.

To further use/edit the scanned images on MP Navigator EX, click Open saved location in the Save Complete dialog box.

➡ [Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)

➡ [Printing Documents](#)

➡ [Printing Photos](#)

➡ [Sending via E-mail](#)

➡ [Editing Files](#)

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

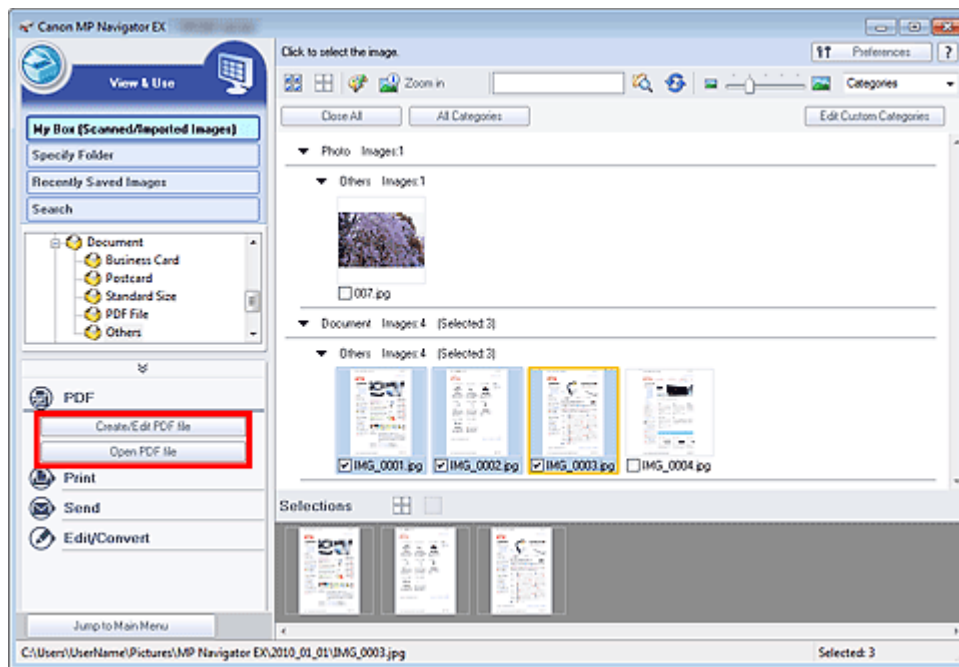
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Creating/Editing PDF Files

S501

MP Navigator EX

Creating/Editing PDF Files

Create/edit PDF files using MP Navigator EX. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to create PDF files and add/delete pages, rearrange the page order, etc.



Important

- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
 - ➔ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Creating/Editing PDF Files with MP Navigator EX

- Select images and click PDF.

Note

- You can select PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.

- Click Create/Edit PDF file on the list.

Important

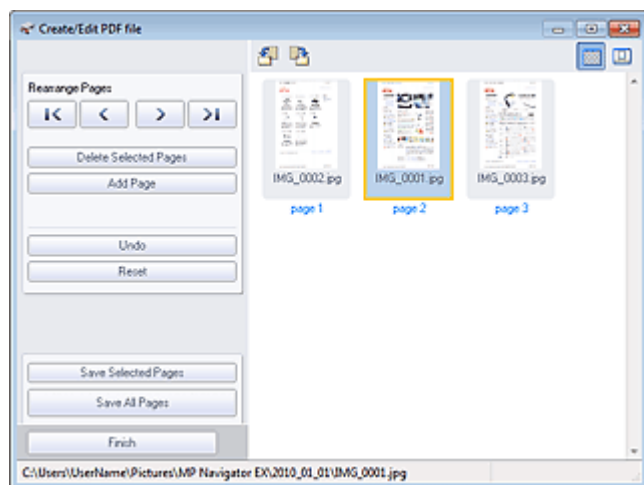
- For PDF files, you can only edit those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be edited as well.

Note

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
➔ [Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files](#)

3. Add/delete pages as required.

To add an existing file, click Add Page and select the file. To delete a page, select it and click Delete Selected Pages.



Note

- You can add PDF, JPEG, TIFF and BMP files.
- When adding a password-protected PDF file, you will be prompted to enter the password.

4. Rearrange the page order as required.

Use the icons to rearrange the order. Alternatively, drag the thumbnail to the target location.

Note

- See "[Create/Edit PDF file Window](#)" for details on the Create/Edit PDF file window.

5. Click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

➔ [Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#)

Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.
➔ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

6. Specify the save settings in the Save as PDF file dialog box, then click Save.

Images are saved according to the settings.

Opening PDF Files in an Application

You can open PDF files created with MP Navigator EX in an associated application and edit or print them.

1. Select PDF files and click PDF.

Important

- For PDF files, you can only select those created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot select PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be selected

as well.

2. Click Open PDF file on the list.

The application associated with the file extension (.pdf) by the operating system starts.



Important

- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- Files may not open if an application that can be associated with PDF files is not installed.

3. Use the application to edit/print the file.

For details, refer to the application's manual.



Important

- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Printing Documents

S502

MP Navigator EX

Printing Documents

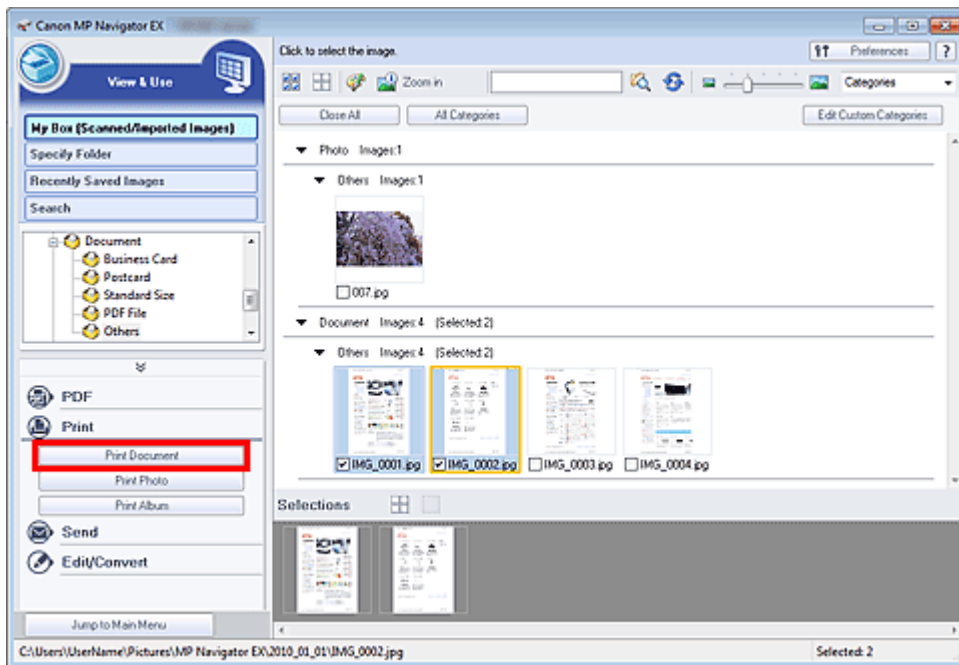
You can print multiple scanned images at one time, print at specific quality, etc. using MP Navigator EX.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
➡ [Opening Images Saved on a Computer](#)

2. Click Print, then click Print Document on the list.



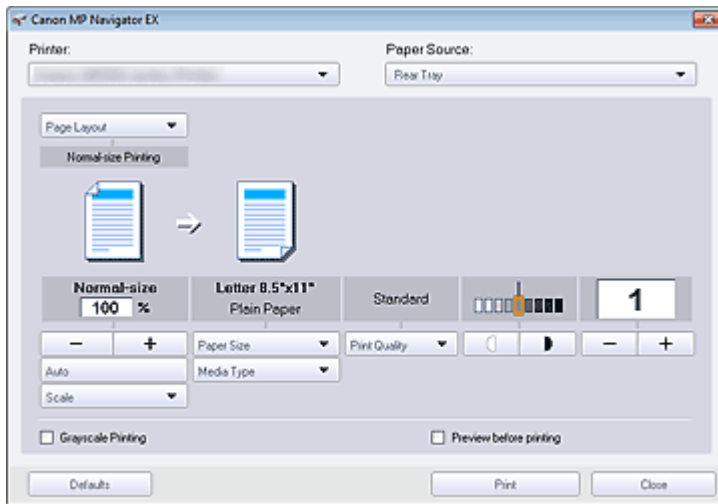
Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is selected, you will be prompted to enter the password.
➡ [Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files](#)

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify print count, quality, scale, etc.

➡ [Print Document Dialog Box](#)



Important

- At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

4. Click Print.

Starts printing.

Note

- When printing a multiple-page PDF file via Print Document, printing may take time depending on your computer. In that case, follow these steps and change settings.
Windows 7:
 1. From the Start menu, select Devices and Printers.
 2. Right-click the icon of your printer and click Printer Properties.
 The printer properties dialog box opens.
 3. Click the Advanced tab.
 4. Select Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster.
 5. Select Start printing after last page is spooled.
 6. After printing, return the setting on the Advanced tab to Start printing immediately.
 Windows Vista/Windows XP:
 1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
 2. Click Printer (Windows XP: Printers and Faxes).
 3. Right-click the icon of your printer and click Properties.
 The printer properties dialog box opens.
 4. Click the Advanced tab.
 5. Select Spool print documents so program finishes printing faster.
 6. Select Start printing after last page is spooled.
 7. After printing, return the setting on the Advanced tab to Start printing immediately.
- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Advanced Guide

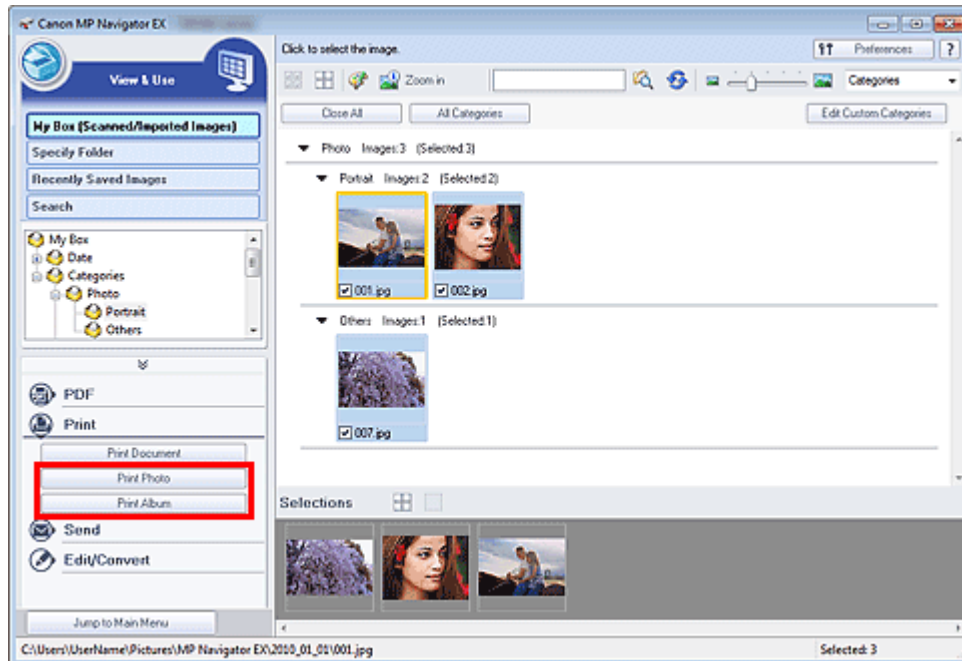
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Printing Photos

S503

MP Navigator EX

Printing Photos

You can print photos using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select how you want to print the photos.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
 - ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

When Printing Photos Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Easy-PhotoPrint EX enables you to print scanned photos at high quality or to layout and print images.

1. Select images and click Print.
2. Click Print Photo or Print Album on the list.

Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts. See "Printing with the Bundled Application Software" for details.

Note

- If Easy-PhotoPrint EX is not installed, print with MP Navigator EX.

When Printing Photos Using MP Navigator EX

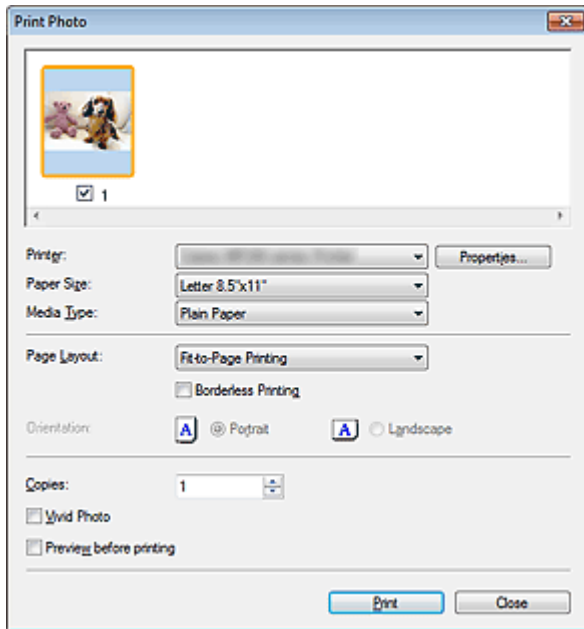
1. Select images and click Print.

2. Click Print Photo on the list.

3. Specify print settings as required.

In the displayed dialog box, specify paper size, print count, etc.

➡ Print Photo Dialog Box



4. Click Print.

Starts printing.

Note

- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Sending via E-mail

S504

MP Navigator EX

Sending via E-mail

Send scanned images via e-mail.

Important

- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
 - Microsoft Outlook
 - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
 - Outlook Express (Windows XP)
 (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)

Note

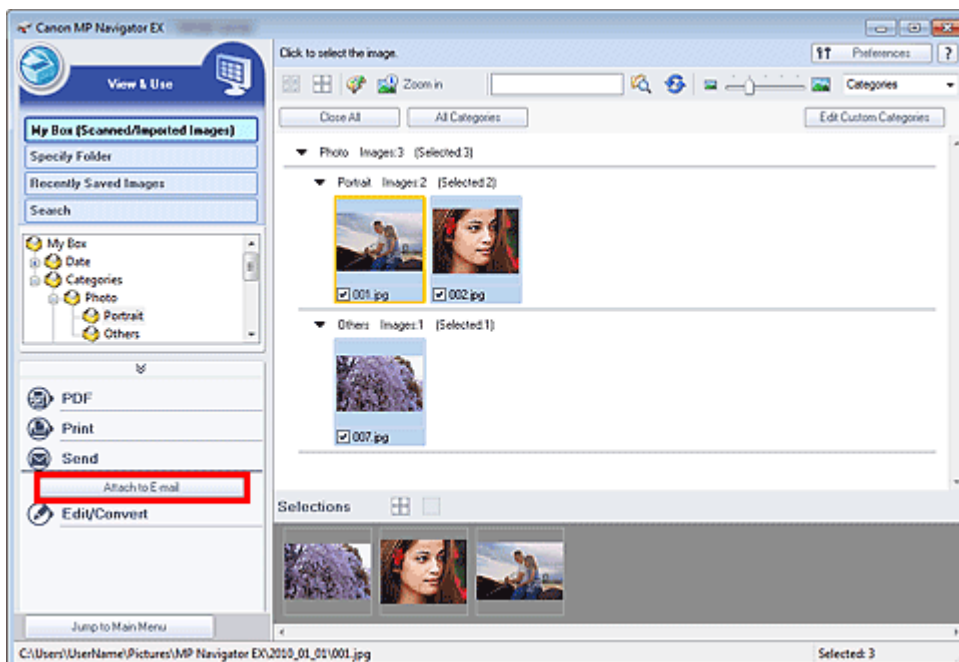
- If an e-mail software program is not selected, manually attach the scanned and saved image to e-mail.

1. Scan documents into MP Navigator EX and save them, then open the View & Use window from the Navigation Mode screen and select images.

Note

- Only PDF and JPEG files can be attached to e-mail.
- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
 - ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

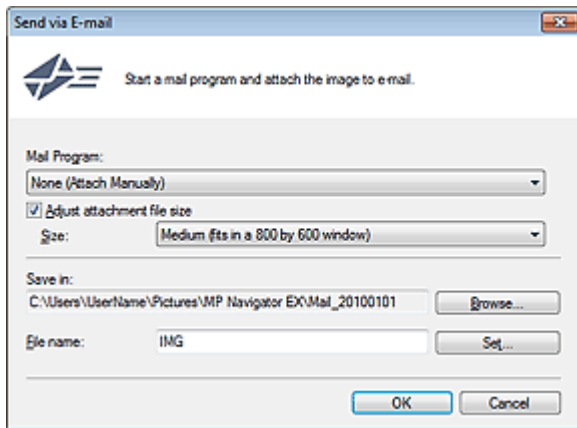
2. Click Send, then click Attach to E-mail on the list.



3. Set the e-mail software program and file save options as required.

Specify the e-mail software program, destination folder and file name.

➡ Send via E-mail Dialog Box



Note

- You can select a compression type when sending JPEG images via e-mail. Click Set... to open a dialog box and select a compression type from High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

4. Click OK.

Files are saved according to the settings, and the e-mail software program starts.

5. Specify the recipient, enter the subject and message, then send e-mail.

For details, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

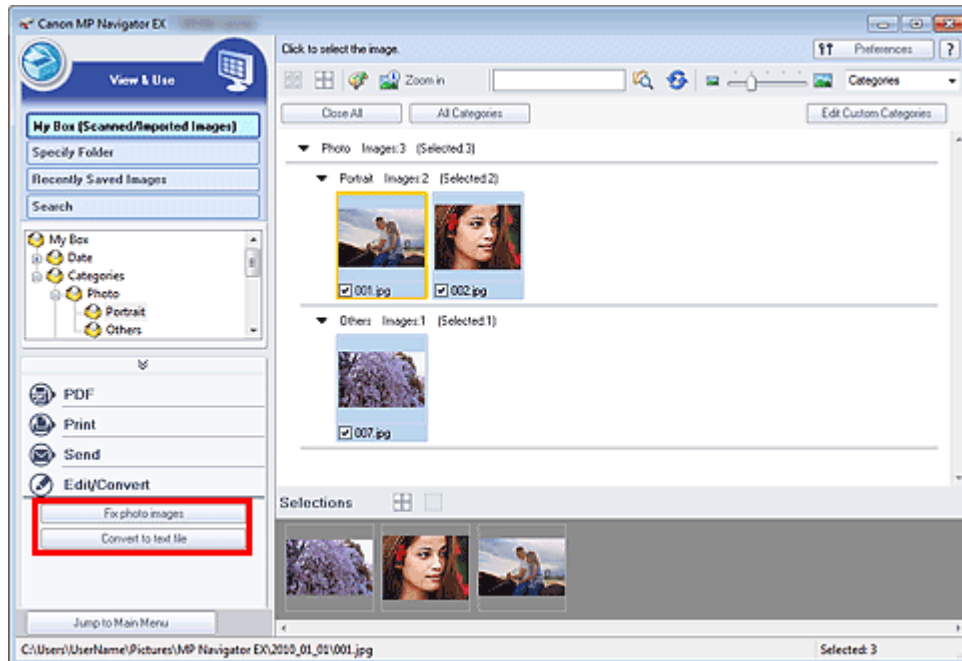
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Editing Files

S505

MP Navigator EX

Editing Files

You can edit images or convert them to text using MP Navigator EX or an application that accompanies the machine. After scanning documents and saving them, open the View & Use window to select what you want to do with the images.



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" to scan images into MP Navigator EX.
- You can also select images saved on a computer.
 - ➡ Opening Images Saved on a Computer

Correcting Photo Images

You can correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.
2. Click Fix photo images on the list.
The Correct/Enhance Images window opens.
3. Correct/enhance images in the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Note

- See "Correct/Enhance Images Window" for details on the Correct/Enhance Images window.
- See the corresponding sections below for correcting/enhancing images.
 - ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically
 - ➡ Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually

Converting Documents to Text

Scan text in scanned magazines and newspapers and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).

Important

- PDF files cannot be converted to text.

1. Select images and click Edit/Convert.

2. Click Convert to text file on the list.

Notepad (included with Windows) starts and editable text appears.

Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
[➔ General Tab](#)
- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.
 - Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
 - Slanted documents
 - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with narrow line spacing
 - Documents with colors in the background of text
 - Documents containing multiple languages

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Setting Passwords for PDF Files

S508

MP Navigator EX

Setting Passwords for PDF Files

Set passwords for opening, editing and printing PDF files.

You can set two passwords: one for opening the file and one for editing/printing it.

This section explains how to set passwords for images scanned into the Scan/Import window of MP Navigator EX and how to set passwords for existing files via the View & Use window.

Important

- You will not be able to open/edit the file if you forget the password. Record your passwords in a safe place for future reference.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be opened in applications not supporting PDF security.
- In some applications, the commands (print, edit, etc.) restricted by Permissions Password may differ from those in MP Navigator EX.
- Password-protected PDF files cannot be searched by text from the "View & Use Window."
- Passwords cannot be set when images are automatically saved after scanning.

1. Open the password setting screen from images scanned into MP Navigator EX or existing files.

Setting Passwords for Scanned Images

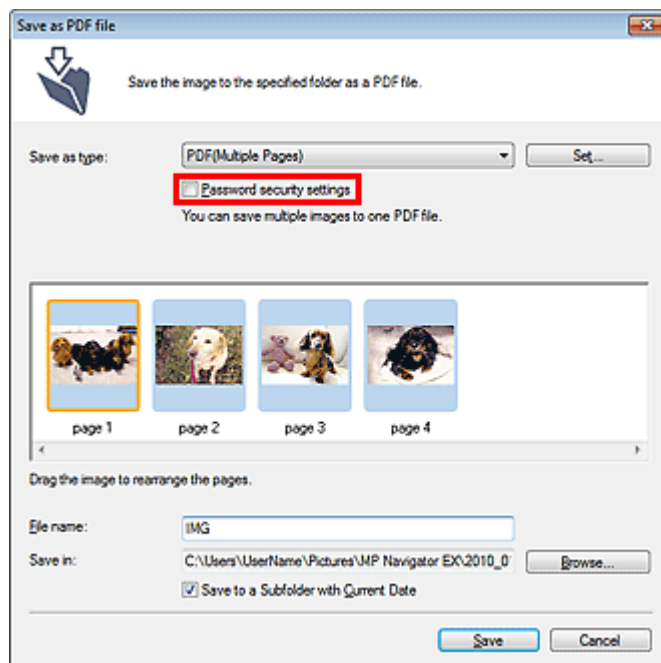
1. Scan documents into the Scan/Import window.

➡ Let's Try Scanning

2. Click Save as PDF file.

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.

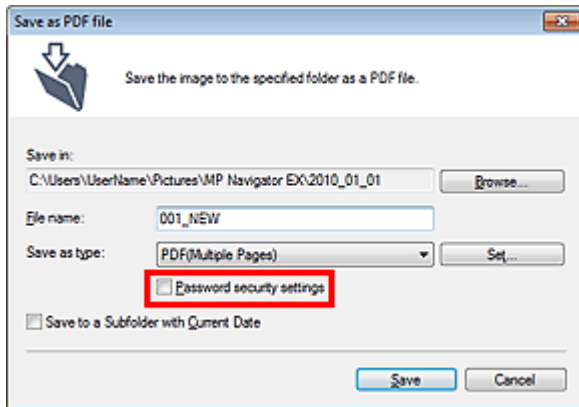
3. Select the Password security settings checkbox.



The Password Security -Settings dialog box opens.

Setting Passwords for Existing Files

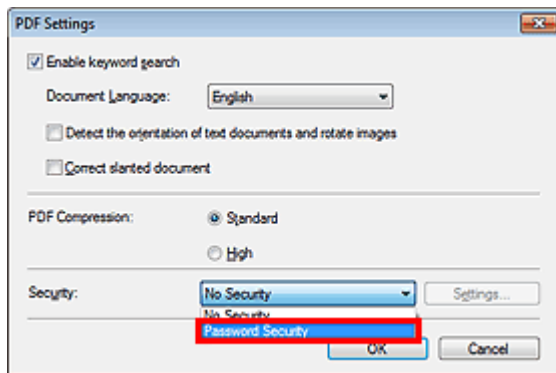
1. In the View & Use window, select image/PDF files and click PDF.
2. Click Create/Edit PDF file on the list.
→ Creating/Editing PDF Files
3. Edit files in the Create/Edit PDF file window, then click Save Selected Pages or Save All Pages.
The Save as PDF file dialog box opens.
4. Select the Password security settings checkbox.



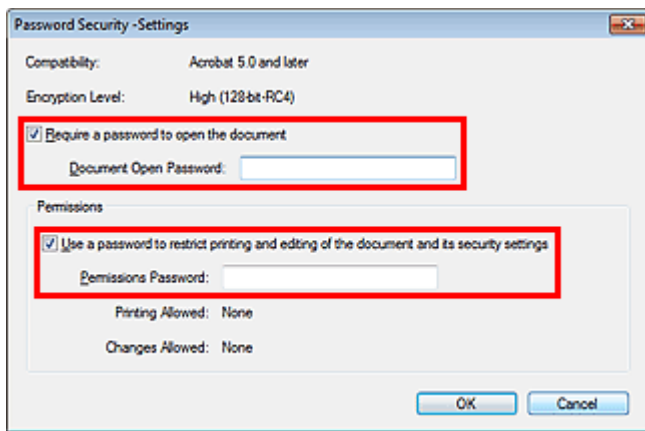
The Password Security -Settings dialog box opens.

Note

- You can also open the Password Security -Settings dialog box by clicking Set..., then selecting Password Security for Security in the PDF Settings dialog box.



2. Select the Require a password to open the document or Use a password to restrict printing and editing of the document and its security settings checkbox, then enter a password.



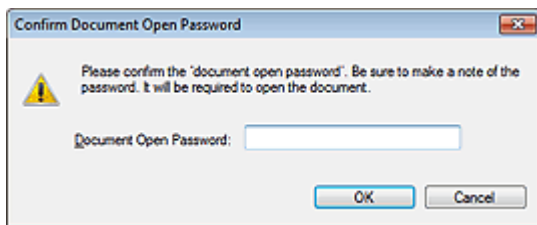
Important

- Up to 32 single-byte alphanumeric characters can be used for the password. Passwords are case sensitive.
- Select both checkboxes to set both Document Open Password and Permissions Password. You cannot use the same password for both.

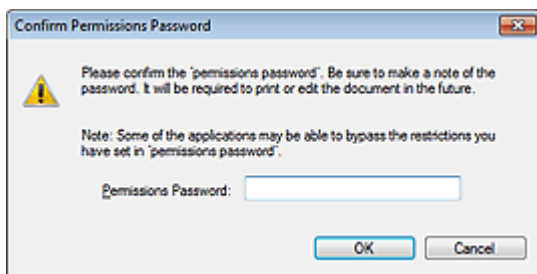
3. Click OK.

The Confirm Document Open Password or Confirm Permissions Password dialog box opens.

Document Open Password



Permissions Password



4. Re-enter the password and click OK.

The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

Important

- If you close the Save as PDF file dialog box without clicking Save, the settings in the Password Security -Settings dialog box will be deleted.
- Passwords are deleted once the file is edited. Reset the passwords when saving edited files.

Note

- If you set the passwords via the PDF Settings dialog box, the PDF Settings dialog box returns. Click OK. The Save as PDF file dialog box returns.

5. Click Save.

Files are saved according to the settings.

Related Topic

► [Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files](#)

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Utilizing Images in MP Navigator EX > Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

S509

MP Navigator EX

Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files

Enter a password to open or edit/print password-protected PDF files.

Password entry method varies by operation. The following procedures are examples only.

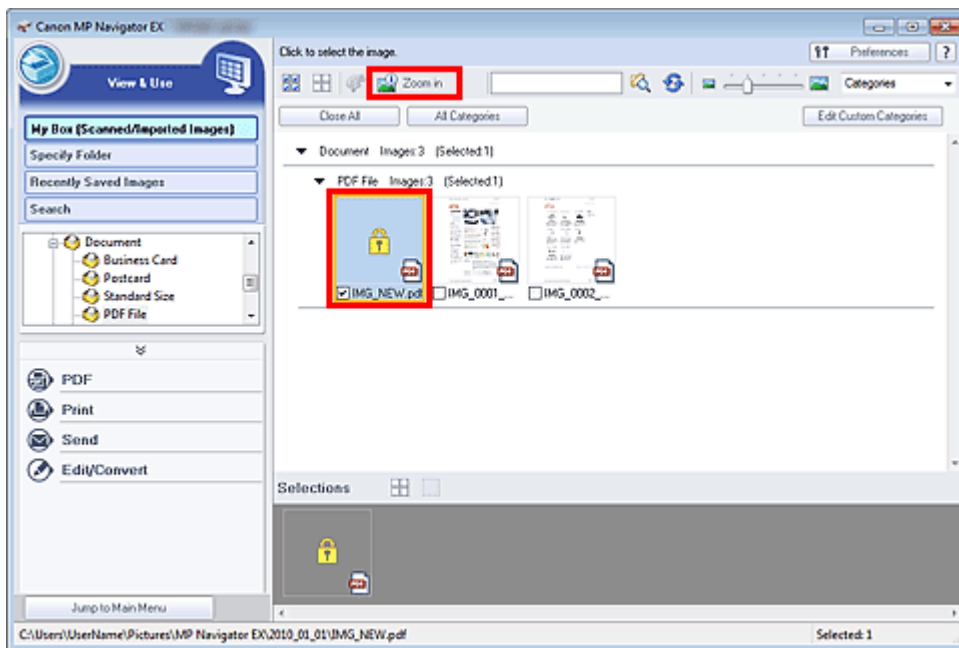
Important

- You can open, edit or print only PDF files whose passwords were set with MP Navigator EX. You cannot edit PDF files edited in other applications or whose passwords were set with other applications. Only MP Navigator EX version 1.1 and 2.0 or later supports opening, editing and printing password-protected PDF files.
- Passwords are case sensitive.
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

Entering a Password to Open a File

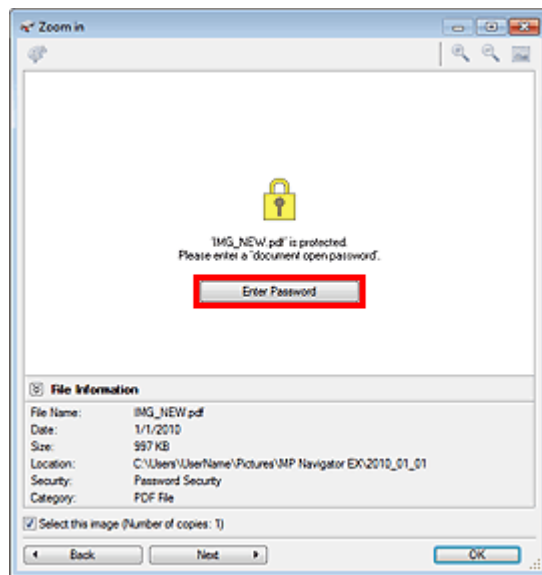
1. In the View & Use window, select the PDF file you want to open and click  Zoom in.

Alternatively, double-click the PDF file.

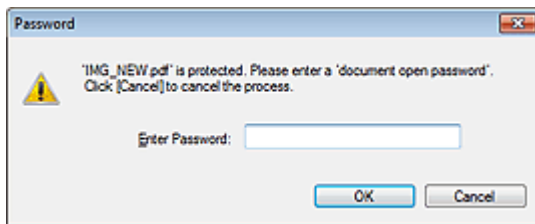


Note

- Only the Document Open Password will be required. The Permissions Password will not be required.
- If the Zoom in dialog box with a lock icon opens, click Enter Password.



2. The Password dialog box opens. Enter the password and click OK.



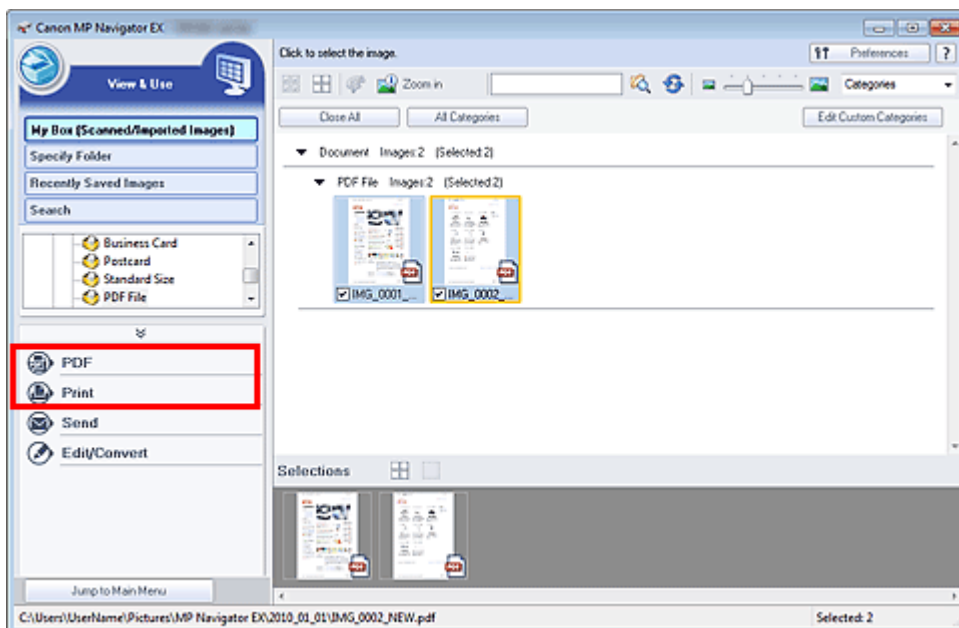
The PDF file opens in the Zoom in dialog box.

Note

- To reopen the file after closing the Zoom in dialog box, re-enter the password.

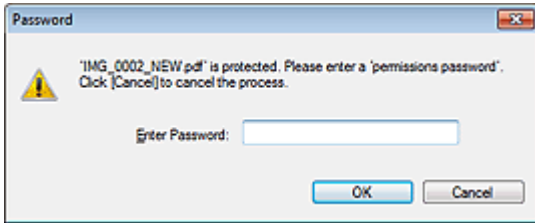
Entering a Password (Permissions Password) to Edit or Print a File

1. In the View & Use window, select PDF files and click PDF or Print.



2. To create a PDF file or edit the file, select Create/Edit PDF file on the list. To print the file, click Print Document.

In the Password dialog box, you will be prompted to enter a password.



Note

- If the Document Open Password is set as well, the Document Open Password will be required, then the Permissions Password will be required.

3. Enter the password and click OK.

The corresponding dialog box opens.

Important

- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.

➔ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

Related Topic

► [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens

S700

MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX Screens

Learn about the screens and functions of MP Navigator EX.

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

- ➡ Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)
 - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)
- ➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)
 - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)
 - Save Dialog Box
 - Save as PDF file Dialog Box

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

- ➡ View & Use Window
 - Create/Edit PDF file Window
 - Print Document Dialog Box
 - Print Photo Dialog Box
 - Send via E-mail Dialog Box
 - Correct/Enhance Images Window

Custom Scan with One-click Tab / One-click Mode Screen

- ➡ Auto Scan Dialog Box
- ➡ Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
 - Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)
- ➡ PDF Dialog Box
- ➡ Mail Dialog Box
- ➡ OCR Dialog Box
- ➡ Custom Dialog Box

Preferences Dialog Box

- ➡ General Tab
- ➡ Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)
 - Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Navigation Mode Screen

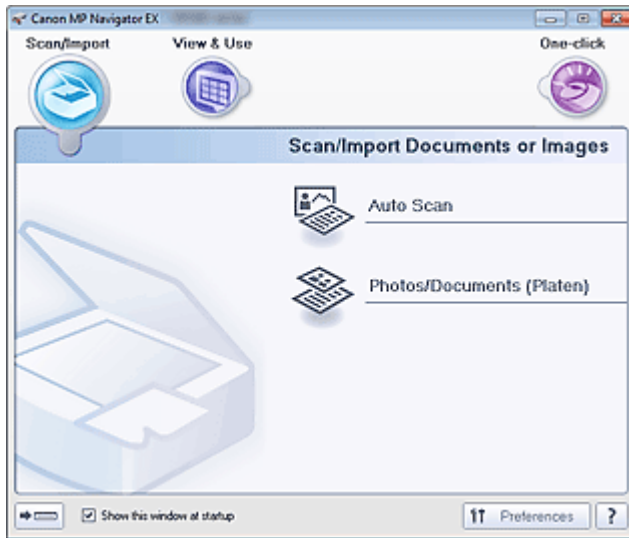
S735

MP Navigator EX

Navigation Mode Screen

This is one of the startup screens of MP Navigator EX.

Select an icon at the top of the screen to display the corresponding tab. Use each tab depending on what you want to do.



- **Scan/Import**

Scan photos and documents.

➡ [Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab](#)

- **View & Use**

You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.

➡ [View & Use Images on your Computer Tab](#)

- **One-click**

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

➡ [Custom Scan with One-click Tab](#)

- **(Switch Mode)**

Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

➡ [One-click Mode Screen](#)

- **Show this window at startup**

Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **(Guide)**

Opens this guide.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

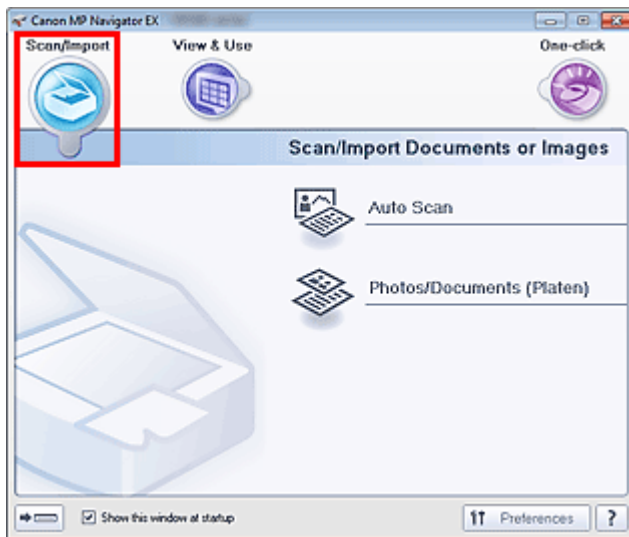
S702

MP Navigator EX

Scan/Import Documents or Images Tab

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Scan/Import Documents or Images tab.

Scan photos and documents.



- **Auto Scan**

Opens the Scan/Import window with Auto Scan selected.
Scan documents easily by automatically detecting the document type.

➡ [Auto Scan Screen \(Scan/Import Window\)](#)

- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**

Opens the Scan/Import window with Photos/Documents (Platen) selected.
Scan photos and documents placed on the Platen.

➡ [Photos/Documents \(Platen\) Screen \(Scan/Import Window\)](#)

- **(Switch Mode)**

Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

➡ [One-click Mode Screen](#)

- **Show this window at startup**

Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **(Guide)**

Opens this guide.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

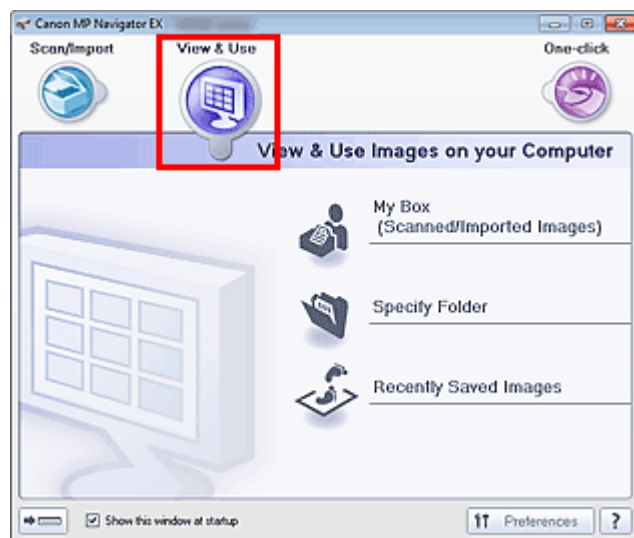
S703

MP Navigator EX

View & Use Images on your Computer Tab

Select View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen to display the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.



- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

Opens the View & Use window with My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) selected.

You can open and use images saved in My Box.

"My Box" is a specific folder for saving images scanned with MP Navigator EX.

Note

- By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.
Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder
Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder
Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Specify Folder**

Opens the View & Use window with Specify Folder selected.

You can open and use images saved in specific folders.

- **Recently Saved Images**

Opens the View & Use window with Recently Saved Images selected.

You can open and use "Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently.

➔ [View & Use Window](#)

- **(Switch Mode)**

Switches to One-click Mode screen. In the One-click Mode screen, you can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.

➔ [One-click Mode Screen](#)

- **Show this window at startup**

Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **(Guide)**

Opens this guide.

Related Topic

▶ [Opening Images Saved on a Computer](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Custom Scan with One-click Tab

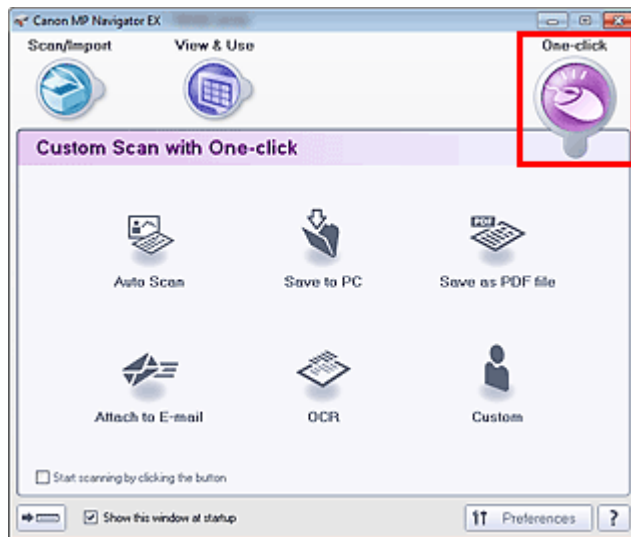
S704

MP Navigator EX

Custom Scan with One-click Tab

Select One-click in the Navigation Mode screen to display the Custom Scan with One-click tab.

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto Scan**

Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer.

When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.

➡ Auto Scan Dialog Box

- **Save to PC**

Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.

When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.

➡ Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

- **Save as PDF file**

Scan documents and save them as PDF files.

When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.

➡ PDF Dialog Box

- **Attach to E-mail**

Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.

When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.

➡ Mail Dialog Box

- **OCR**

Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).

When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.

➡ OCR Dialog Box

- **Custom**

Scan documents/photos and open them in a specified application. The document type can be automatically detected.

When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and

application settings.

➔ [Custom Dialog Box](#)

- **Start scanning by clicking the button**

Select this checkbox and click an icon to start scanning immediately.



(Switch Mode)

Switches to One-click Mode. The One-click Mode screen appears.

➔ [One-click Mode Screen](#)

- **Show this window at startup**

Select this checkbox to open the Main Menu at startup. If this checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears.

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➔ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)



(Guide)

Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box.
When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

► [Easy Scanning with One-click](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

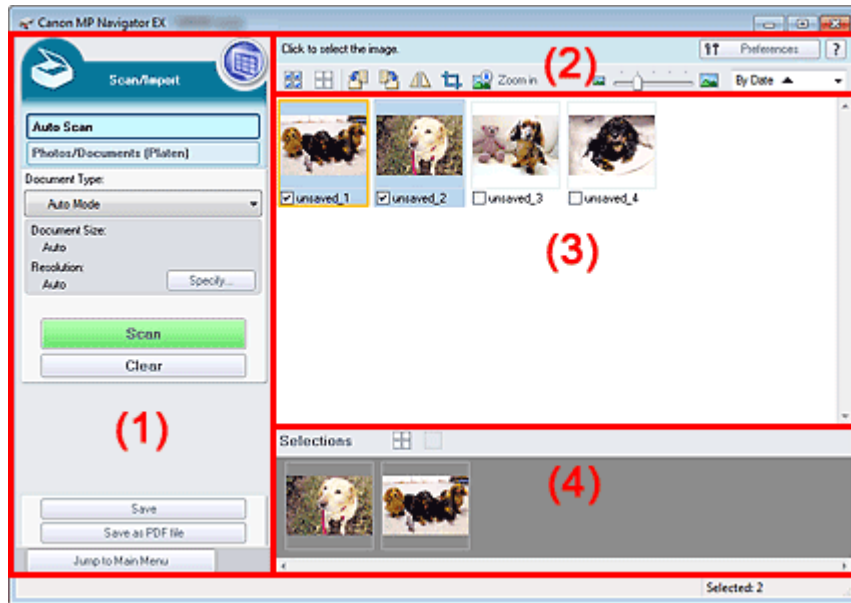
S744

MP Navigator EX

Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Auto Scan or click Auto Scan in the Scan/Import window to open the Auto Scan screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Thumbnail Window

(4) Selected Images Area

• Supported Documents

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD.



Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. To scan other documents, specify the document type.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Documents printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- ➡ Scanning Photos and Documents
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly. See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.



Note

- To reduce moire, open the "Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)" and set Document Type to Magazine(Color).

Settings and Operation Buttons

-  **(View & Use)**
Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.
➡ [View & Use Window](#)
- **Auto Scan**
Displays the screen for scanning documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc.
- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**
Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The screen for scanning photos and documents appears.
➡ [Photos/Documents \(Platen\) Screen \(Scan/Import Window\)](#)
- **Document Type**
Auto Mode is set.
- **Specify...**
Select whether or not to apply suitable corrections based on the document type.
➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Auto Scan\)](#)
- **Scan**
Scanning starts.
- **Clear**
Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.



Note

- Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**
Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.
➡ [Save Dialog Box](#)
- **Save as PDF file**
Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.
➡ [Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#)
- **Jump to Main Menu**
Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**
The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.
➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)
-  **(Guide)**
Opens this guide.
- **Edit Tools**
 -  **(Select All)**
Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.
 -  **(Cancel All)**
Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

-  **(Rotate Left)**
Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
-  **(Rotate Right)**
Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.
-  **(Invert)**
Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.
-  **(Trimming)**
Trims the target image (outlined in orange). "Trimming" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.
-  **Zoom in**
Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.
-  **(Display Size)**
Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.
-  **(Sort by)**
Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

Scanned images are displayed.

When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.



Note

- Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

When Images are Sorted by Categories

- **Close All / Open All**

You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.

- **Close All**
Hides all images.
- **Open All**
Displays all images.



Note

- When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**
Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.
-  **(Cancel Selection)**
Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.
- **Selected Images Area**
Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

► [Easy Scanning with Auto Scan](#)

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

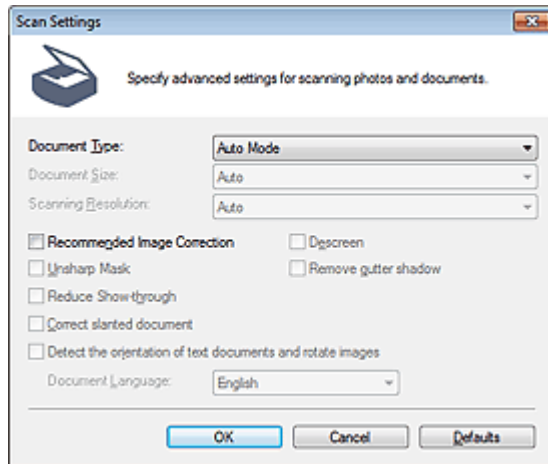
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)

S745

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Auto Scan)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.



- Document Type**

Auto Mode is set.

Important

- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

- Recommended Image Correction**

Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- Defaults**

Restore the default settings.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

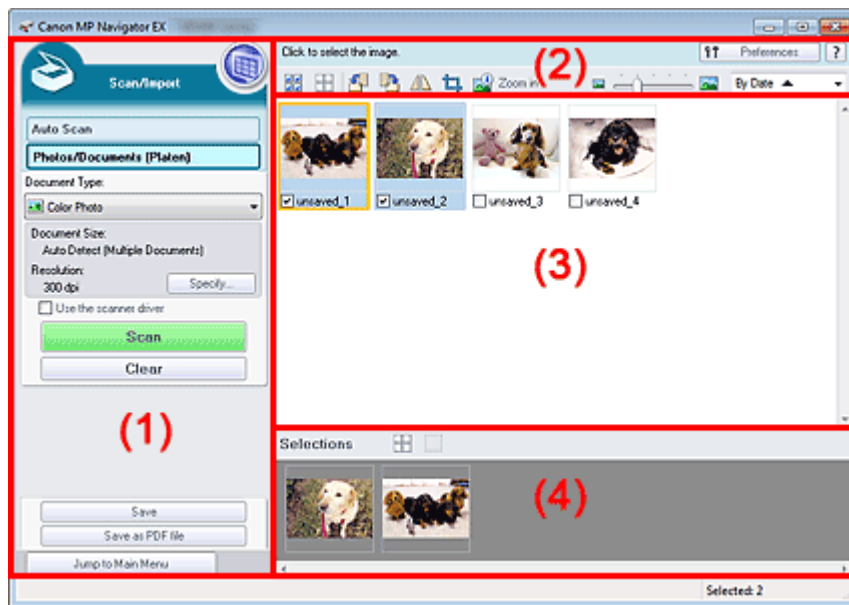
S708

MP Navigator EX

Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

Select Scan/Import in the Navigation Mode screen and click Photos/Documents (Platen) or click Photos/Documents (Platen) in the Scan/Import window to open the Photos/Documents (Platen) screen (Scan/Import window).

Open this window when you want to scan documents from the Platen.



- (1) Settings and Operation Buttons
- (2) Toolbar
- (3) Thumbnail Window
- (4) Selected Images Area

Settings and Operation Buttons

-  **(View & Use)**
Click this when you want to open images and PDF files saved on your computer. The View & Use window opens.
➡ View & Use Window
- **Auto Scan**
Click this when you want to scan documents by automatically detecting the document type, etc. The screen for scanning with Auto Scan appears.
➡ Auto Scan Screen (Scan/Import Window)
- **Photos/Documents (Platen)**
Displays the screen for scanning photos, documents and other printed materials.
- **Document Type**
Select the type of document to be scanned.
Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo
Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)
Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

 Important

- You cannot select Document Type if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Specify...**

Specify the document size, resolution, and other advanced scan settings.

➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Photos/Documents\)](#)

 Important

- Specify... is not available if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.

- **Use the scanner driver**

Select this checkbox when you want to scan with ScanGear (scanner driver). Use ScanGear to correct images and adjust colors when scanning.

- **Scan**

Scanning starts.

 Note

- This button changes to Open Scanner Driver when you select the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Open Scanner Driver**

ScanGear starts.

See "[ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#)" for details on ScanGear screens.

 Note

- This button changes to Scan when you deselect the Use the scanner driver checkbox.

- **Clear**

Delete all images in the Thumbnail window.

 Note

- Images not saved on a computer will be deleted. To keep important images, use Save or other methods to save them to a computer before clicking Clear.

- **Save**

Save the selected images. Click to open the Save dialog box and specify the save settings.

➡ [Save Dialog Box](#)

- **Save as PDF file**

Save the selected images as PDF files. Click to open the Save as PDF file dialog box and specify the save settings.

➡ [Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#)

- **Jump to Main Menu**

Jumps to the Main Menu.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **(Guide)**

Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

-  **(Select All)**
Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.
-  **(Cancel All)**
Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.
-  **(Rotate Left)**
Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
-  **(Rotate Right)**
Rotates the target image (outlined in orange) 90 degrees clockwise.
-  **(Invert)**
Inverts the target image (outlined in orange) horizontally.
-  **(Trimming)**
Trims the target image (outlined in orange). "Trimming" is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. Click this button to open the Crop window and specify the trimming frame.
-  **Zoom in**
Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it.
-  **(Display Size)**
Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.
-  **(Sort by)**
Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category or by date (ascending or descending).

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

Scanned images are displayed.

When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Note

- Thumbnails may appear as "?" when there is not enough memory to display the images.

When Images are Sorted by Categories

- **Close All / Open All**

You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.

- **Close All**
Hides all images.
- **Open All**
Displays all images.

Note

- When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

Selected Images Area

-  **(Cancel All)**
Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.

- **(Cancel Selection)**

Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

► [Scanning Photos and Documents](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

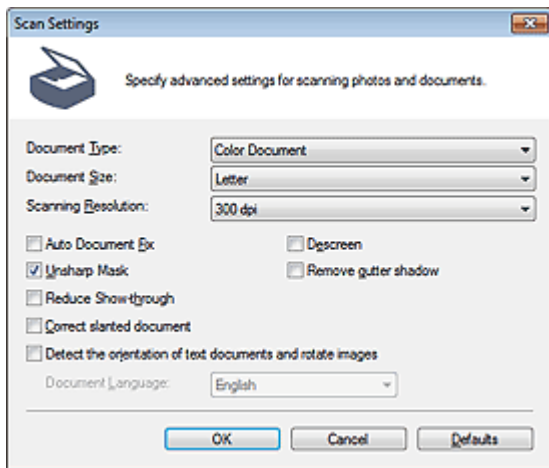
S713

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in the Scan/Import window.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.



- **Document Type**

Select the type of document to be scanned.

Scanning photos: Color Photo or Black and White Photo

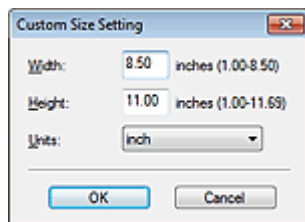
Scanning text documents: Color Document, Black and White Document or Text(OCR)

Scanning magazines: Magazine(Color)

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.
- You cannot select Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Auto Detect when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Scanning Resolution**

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ Resolution



Note

- The following scanning resolutions can be specified when Document Type is Text(OCR).
300 dpi / 400 dpi

- **Auto Photo Fix / Auto Document Fix**

The displayed item varies by Document Type.

- **Auto Photo Fix**

This is displayed when Document Type is Color Photo. Select this checkbox to automatically analyze the captured scene (landscape, night scene, etc.) and apply suitable corrections.

- **Auto Document Fix**

This is displayed when Document Type is Color Document, Black and White Document or Magazine(Color). Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Descreen**

Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.

Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

- **Unsharp Mask**

Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Text(OCR).

- **Remove gutter shadow**

Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist is selected for Document Size.
- When scanning, align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set.
See "[Gutter Shadow Correction](#)" for details.

- **Reduce Show-through**

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo, Black and White Photo or Text(OCR).

 Note

- Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Correct slanted document**

Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written documents
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly. In that case, select the scanned image in the Thumbnail window of the " [Photos/Documents \(Platen\) Screen \(Scan/Import Window\)](#) " and rotate it with Edit Tools.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

Select the language of the document to be scanned.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Type is Color Photo or Black and White Photo.
- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Defaults**

Restore the default settings.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Save Dialog Box

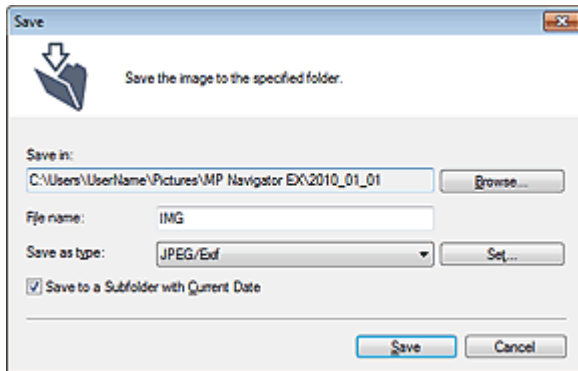
S716

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you click Save in the Scan/Import window.

In the Save dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.



- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.



Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is Text(OCR).
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Black and White is selected for Color Mode on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

- **Set...**

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Save as PDF file Dialog Box

S717

MP Navigator EX

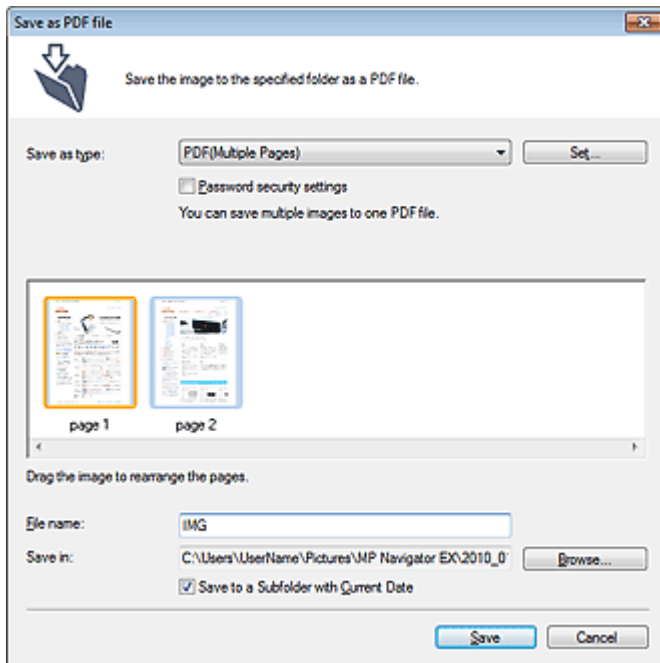
Save as PDF file Dialog Box

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make advanced settings for saving scanned images as PDF files. You can save multiple documents as one PDF file or add pages to a PDF file created with MP Navigator EX.

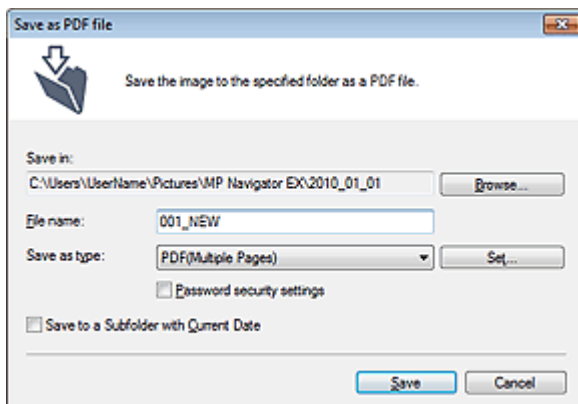
Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.

When Opened from the Scan/Import Window



When Opened from the View & Use Window



- **Save as type**
Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

- **PDF**

Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

Save multiple images in one PDF file.



Note

- PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are selected.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
- When Opened from the View & Use Window, PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

- **Set...**

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Password security settings**

Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.

➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

- **Add to**

This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files as separate PDF files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Advanced Guide

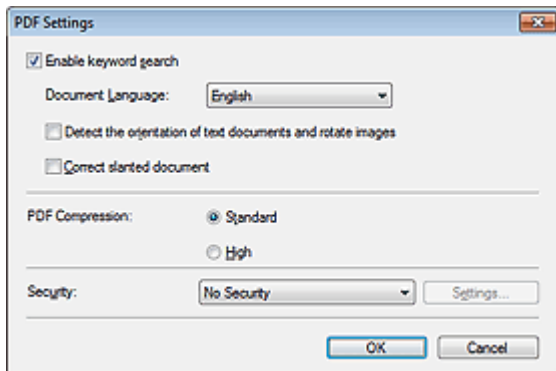
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > PDF Settings Dialog Box

S736

MP Navigator EX

PDF Settings Dialog Box

In the PDF Settings dialog box, you can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.



Important

- Only the Security setting is available for images with resolutions outside the range of 75 dpi to 600 dpi.

• Enable keyword search

Select this checkbox to convert characters in a document to text data. This will enable an easy search by keyword.

• Document Language

Select the language of the document to be scanned.

• Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images

Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation.

Important

- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

• Correct slanted document

Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

Important

- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text

- Documents containing figures/images
- Hand-written documents
- Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

- **PDF Compression**

Select a compression type for saving.

- **Standard**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Compresses the file size when saving, allowing you to reduce the load on your network/server.

**Important**

- Highly compressed PDF images may degrade if you repeatedly save them with high compression.

**Important**

- Compression type cannot be set when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Security**

Set passwords for opening, editing and printing the created PDF files.

**Important**

- This function is not available when images are automatically saved after scanning.

**Note**

- Select Password Security and set passwords in the Password Security -Settings dialog box.
➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > View & Use Window

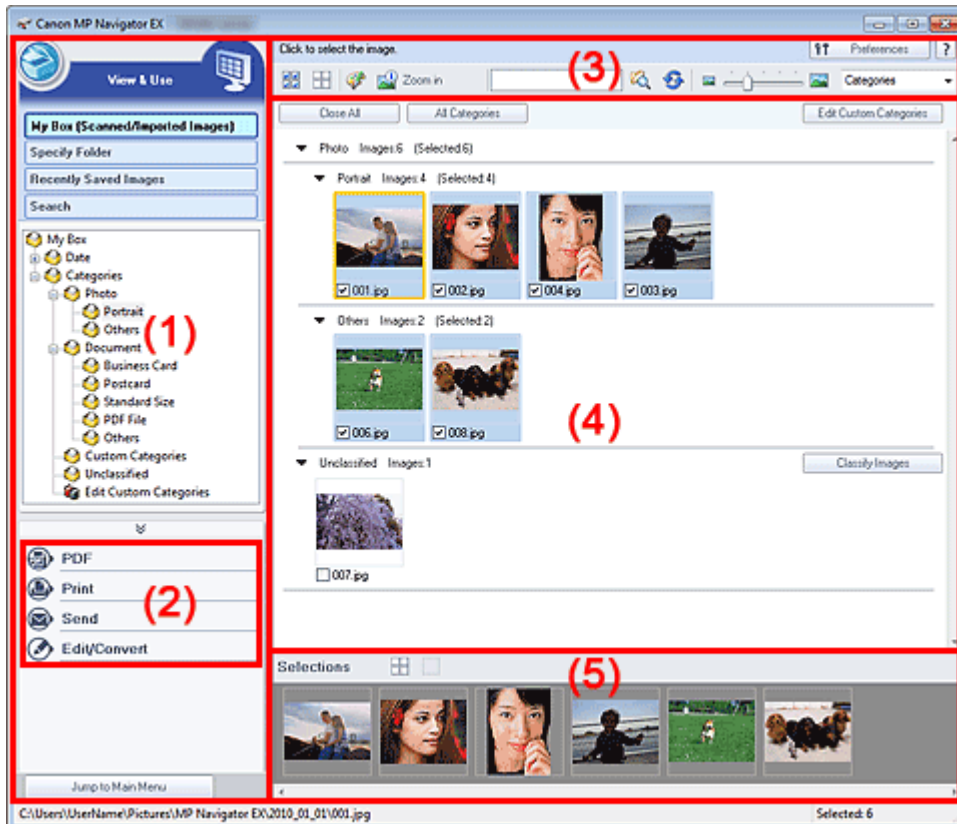
S711

MP Navigator EX

View & Use Window

Select View & Use in the Navigation Mode screen and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images to open the View & Use window.

Open this window to display or use scanned images or images saved on a computer.



- (1) Display Setting Items
- (2) Image Handling Buttons
- (3) Toolbar
- (4) Thumbnail Window
- (5) Selected Images Area

Important

- For PDF files, only those created with MP Navigator EX are displayed. You cannot display PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be displayed as well.

Display Setting Items

-  (Scan/Import)

Click this when you want to scan photos, documents, magazines and other printed materials. The Scan/Import window opens.

➡ Photos/Documents (Platen) Screen (Scan/Import Window)

- **My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)**

Displays folders of images (grouped by year, year/month and year/month/date) in My Box in tree view. Select a folder to display its contents in the Thumbnail window to the right.
Image date is the scanned, captured or updated date.

- **Specify Folder**

Displays all hard disks and folders in tree view. Select a folder to display images in the Thumbnail window to the right.
Selecting a folder and clicking it highlights the folder name, allowing you to rename it.

- **Recently Saved Images**

"Scanned/Imported Images" and images that have been "Attached to E-mail" or "Sent to Application" recently are displayed in tree view by date. Select a Month/Date/Year folder to display images by date in the Thumbnail window to the right.
Image date is the scanned or sent date.
Click Clear History to clear all data (date folders and images) displayed in Recently Saved Images.



Note

- The actual image files are not deleted.

- **Search**

The advanced search options opens.

➡ [Searching Images](#)

- **Jump to Main Menu**

Jumps to the Main Menu.



Important

- Jump to Main Menu is not displayed when the window is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

Image Handling Buttons

- **Image Handling Buttons**

Specify what to do with the selected images. See the corresponding sections below for details on each button.

➡ [Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)

➡ [Printing Documents](#)

➡ [Printing Photos](#)

➡ [Sending via E-mail](#)

➡ [Editing Files](#)



Note

- The buttons in Image Handling Buttons are displayed when the corresponding applications are installed.

Toolbar

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **(Guide)**

Opens this guide.

- **Edit Tools**

-  **(Select All)**

Selects all images in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Cancel All)**

Cancels all image selections in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Image Correction/Enhancement)**

Allows you to correct the target image (outlined in orange). Click this button to open the Correct/Enhance Images window in which you can correct/enhance images and also adjust the brightness, contrast, etc.

➔ [Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)

Important

- Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

- **Zoom in**

Enlarges the target image (outlined in orange). You can also enlarge the image by double-clicking it. You can check all pages when you select a PDF file.

You can also check file information such as file name, date, size and security setting. A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.

➔ [Opening/Editing Password-protected PDF Files](#)

- **(Search)**

Enter a word or phrase included in the file name, Exif information or PDF text of the image you

want to search for, then click  (Search). For Exif information, text in Maker, Model, Description and User Comment is searched.

Note

- Search images in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Recently Saved Images or a selected folder and its subfolders.

- **(Refresh)**

Refreshes the Thumbnail window contents.

- **(Display Size)**

Changes the size of images in the Thumbnail window.

- **(Sort by)**

Sorts the images in the Thumbnail window by category, date (ascending or descending) or name (ascending or descending).

Images can be sorted by category only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

Thumbnail Window

- **Thumbnail Window**

Scanned images are displayed.

When you select the checkbox of an image, the image appears in the Selected Images area.

Selecting an image and clicking the file name highlights the file name, allowing you to rename it.

Drag and drop an image to do the following things.

- Move from one category to another within the Thumbnail window
- Move to a category folder displayed in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images)
- Copy to a folder displayed in Specify Folder

Important

- You cannot change the extension (.jpg, .pdf, etc.) when renaming a file.
- You cannot move or copy images to the date folders displayed in tree view in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Recently Saved Images.

Note

- A lock icon appears for PDF files with Document Open Password set.
- Thumbnails may appear as "?" in the following cases.
 - Opening unsupported images
 - File size is too large and there is not enough memory to display the image
 - The file is corrupted

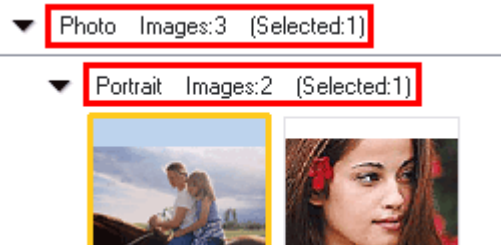
When Images are Sorted by Categories

Scanned images are displayed by category.

Note

- Some images may not be detected correctly and thus may be classified into wrong categories. In that case, drag and drop an image and move it from one category to another.

- **Category name Images: N (Selected: n)**



- **Category name**

The following categories are provided.

Photos: Portrait, Others

Documents: Business Card, Postcard, Standard Size, PDF File, Others

Custom categories: Displays your custom categories.

Unclassified: Displays images that are not classified.

- **Images: N**

The number of images classified into the category is displayed.

- **(Selected: n)**

The number of images with the checkbox selected is displayed.

Note

- This portion is displayed only when one or more images are selected.

- **Close All / Open All**

You can hide or show all images in the displayed categories.

This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

- **Close All**

Hides all images.

- **Open All**

Displays all images.

Note

- Immediately after opening the View & Use window or sorting images, all images appear and Close All is displayed.
- When you click Close All, the button changes to Open All.

- **All Categories / Specific Categories**

You can display all categories or only those containing images.

This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

- **All Categories**

Displays all categories and images.

- **Specific Categories**

Displays categories containing images, along with the contained images. More images will be displayed in the Thumbnail window, allowing you to find or move images easily.

**Note**

- Immediately after opening the View & Use window, categories containing images appear along with the contained images, and All Categories is displayed.
- Click All Categories, to changes to Specific Categories.

- **Edit Custom Categories**

When My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed, the Edit Custom Categories dialog box opens.

In the Edit Custom Categories dialog box, you can add/delete categories displayed in Custom Categories.

See "[Classifying Images into Categories](#) " for details.

- **Classify Images**

Images imported from hard disks appear in Unclassified. Click Classify Images to classify them automatically.

This button is displayed only when My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) or Specify Folder is displayed.

**Note**

- Classification may take time if there are many images to classify.

Selected Images Area



- **(Cancel All)**

Cancels the selection of all images in the Selected Images area.



- **(Cancel Selection)**

Cancels the selection of the target image (outlined in orange) in the Selected Images area.

- **Selected Images Area**

Images selected in the Thumbnail window are displayed.

Related Topic

► [Opening Images Saved on a Computer](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Create/Edit PDF file Window

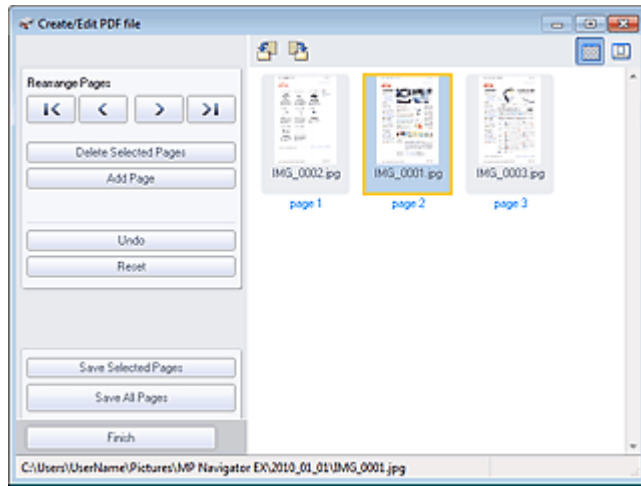
S715

MP Navigator EX

Create/Edit PDF file Window

Click PDF in the View & Use window, then click Create/Edit PDF file on the list to open the Create/Edit PDF file window.

In the Create/Edit PDF file window, you can add/delete pages and rearrange the page order of PDF files created with MP Navigator EX.



Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
➔ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)
- You can create or edit up to 99 pages at one time using MP Navigator EX.

• Rearrange Pages

You can move the selected image (outlined in orange).



- Moves the selected image to the top.



- Moves the selected image up one page.



- Moves the selected image down one page.



- Moves the selected image to the end.

Note

- You can also drag the image to rearrange the order.

• Delete Selected Pages

Deletes the selected image.

- **Add Page**

Allows you to select and add an existing PDF file.

Note

- A password will be required to add a password-protected PDF file.

- **Undo**

Cancels the latest change made.

- **Reset**

Cancels all the changes made.

- **Save Selected Pages**

Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings. Only the selected page is saved.

Note

- When multiple pages are selected, a multiple-page PDF file is created.
- See "[Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#) " for details on the Save as PDF file dialog box.

- **Save All Pages**

Opens the Save as PDF file dialog box. Specify the save settings and save all pages in the list as one PDF file or save all pages as separate PDF files.

Note

- See "[Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#) " for details on the Save as PDF file dialog box.

- **Finish**

Closes the Create/Edit PDF file window.

- **Toolbar**

- **(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the page 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

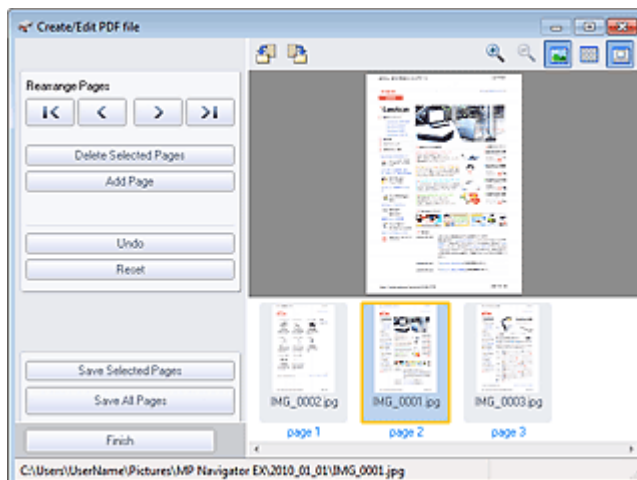
- **(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the page 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Preview Mode)**

Switches to Preview Mode.

The selected page appears in Preview.



- **(Enlarge)**

Enlarges the image displayed in Preview.

-  **(Reduce)**
Reduces the image displayed in Preview.
-  **(Full-screen)**
Displays the entire image.
-  **(Thumbnail Mode)**
Switches to Thumbnail Mode. The pages are displayed in thumbnail view.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Print Document Dialog Box

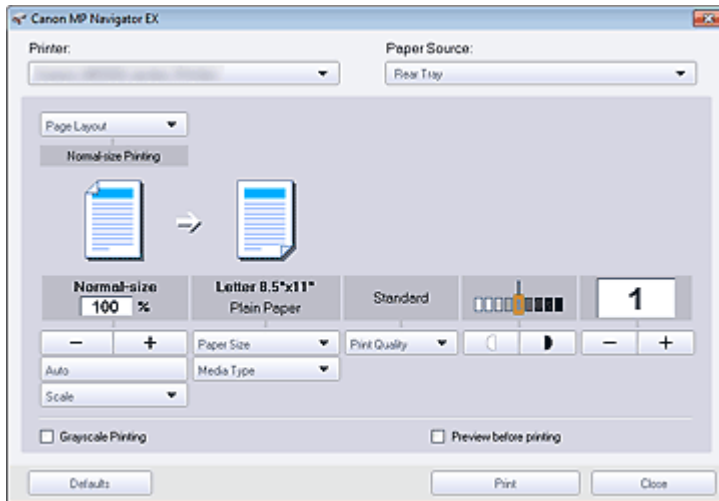
S718

MP Navigator EX

Print Document Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Document on the list to open the Print Document dialog box.

In the Print Document dialog box, you can make advanced settings for printing multiple scanned images at one time.



- **Printer**
Select the printer to use.
- **Paper Source**
Select paper source.
- **Page Layout**
Select a print type.
 - **Normal-size Printing**
Print one image per sheet.
 - **Scaled Printing**
Print images at the selected scale (enlarged or reduced).
 - **Fit-to-Page Printing**
Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).
 - **Borderless Printing**
Print the image on an entire sheet of paper without borders.
 - **Page Layout Printing (2 on 1)**
Layout and print two images on a sheet of paper.
 - **Page Layout Printing (4 on 1)**
Layout and print four images on a sheet of paper.
- **Enlarge/Reduce**
Enlarge or reduce images to print.
 - — + (Enlarge/Reduce)

Print a reduced or enlarged image by specifying a scale in increments of 1%.

- **Auto**

Scale is adjusted automatically according to the detected paper width and the selected paper size. Image may be printed rotated 90 degrees depending on its size.

- **Scale**

Select a scale from the list.



Important

- At normal-size (100%), some images may be printed small or with some portions cropped. In that case, select Auto to resize the print in proportion to the paper size.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.



Note

- Selectable paper sizes depend on the selected printer.

- **Media Type**

Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.



Note

- Selectable paper types depend on the selected printer.

- **Print Quality**

Select the print quality.

- **Density**

Click  (Density adjustment) to select the print density.

- **Copies**

Click  (Copy setting) to select the number of copies to be printed.

- **Grayscale Printing**

Select this checkbox to print the document in black and white.

- **Preview before printing**

Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Defaults**

Restore the default settings.

- **Print**

Start printing with the specified settings.



Note

- To cancel while spooling, click Cancel. To cancel while printing, click Cancel Printing in the confirmation window for the printer status. To open a confirmation window for the printer status, click printer icon on the taskbar.

Advanced Guide

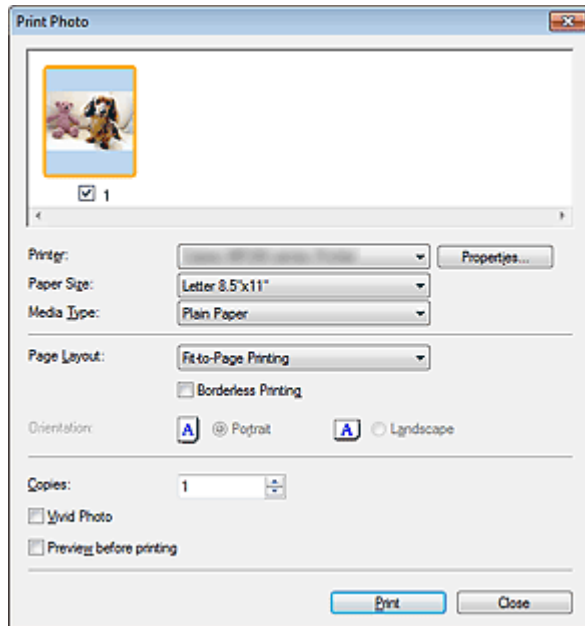
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Print Photo Dialog Box

S729

MP Navigator EX

Print Photo Dialog Box

Click Print in the View & Use window, then click Print Photo on the list to open the Print Photo dialog box.



Important

- The Print Photo dialog box will not open if Easy-PhotoPrint EX is installed. Easy-PhotoPrint EX starts instead.
- PDF files cannot be printed.

Note

- Double-click an image to display it in a different window.

• Printer

Select the printer to use.

• Properties...

Displays the selected printer's advanced setting screen.

• Paper Size

Select the size of paper for printing. Match the size to the size of the paper set in the machine.

• Media Type

Select the type of paper for printing. Print quality may be fixed depending on the paper type.

• Page Layout

Select a print type.

• Normal-size Printing

Print one image per sheet.

• Fit-to-Page Printing

Print an image at the paper size (enlarged or reduced).

• Borderless Printing

Select this checkbox to print the image on an entire sheet of paper without borders.

**Important**

- Page Layout setting will be disabled when you select Borderless Printing.
- This setting is only available with printers that support borderless printing.

- **Orientation**

Specify the print orientation.

**Important**

- This setting is available only when Page Layout is Normal-size Printing. For others, the image is automatically rotated according to the aspect ratio of the paper.

- **Copies**

Specify the number of copies to print.

- **Vivid Photo**

Select this checkbox to print the image in vivid colors.

- **Preview before printing**

Select this checkbox to display the print result before printing.

- **Print**

Starts printing.

**Note**

- Only the images in the Thumbnail window with the checkbox selected are printed.

- **Close**

Closes the dialog box without printing the photo.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Send via E-mail Dialog Box

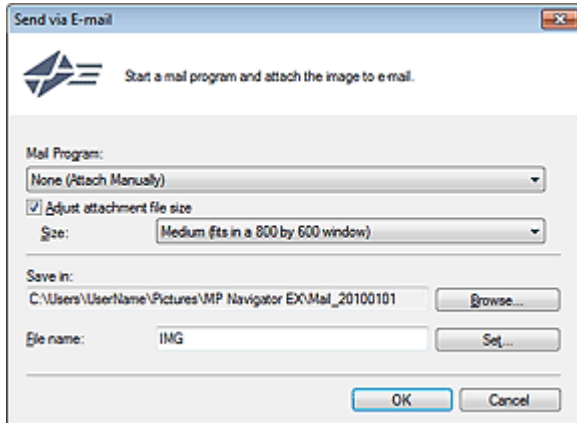
S719

MP Navigator EX

Send via E-mail Dialog Box

Click Send in the View & Use window, then click Attach to E-mail on the list to open the Send via E-mail dialog box.

In the Send via E-mail dialog box, you can make advanced settings for attaching images to e-mail.



Important

- MP Navigator EX is compatible with the following e-mail software programs:
 - Microsoft Outlook
 - Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
 - Outlook Express (Windows XP)
 (If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled. To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.)

Note

- Only PDF and JPEG files can be attached to e-mail.

• Mail Program

The e-mail software program set up on the General tab of the Preferences dialog box is displayed. Select the e-mail software program you want to use.

• Adjust attachment file size

When the file type is JPEG, selecting this checkbox allows you to resize the images. Select a size from Size.

• Save in

Displays the folder in which to save the images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one. If resized, the resized images are saved.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

• File name

Enter the file name of the image to be attached (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

• Set...

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files.

Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Correct/Enhance Images Window

S712

MP Navigator EX

Correct/Enhance Images Window

Click  (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the View & Use window or click Fix photo images in Image Handling Buttons to open the Correct/Enhance Images window.

In the Correct/Enhance Images window, you can make advanced settings including image correction/enhancement and brightness/contrast adjustment.

You can also display the source image and corrected image side by side for comparison.



(1) Task Area

(2) Toolbar

Important

- Image correction/enhancement cannot be applied to PDF files or black and white binary files.

Note

- The Correct/Enhance Images window can also be opened by clicking  (Image Correction/Enhancement) in the Zoom in dialog box.
- It may take a while to correct large images.
- See "View & Use Window" for details on the View & Use window.

Task Area

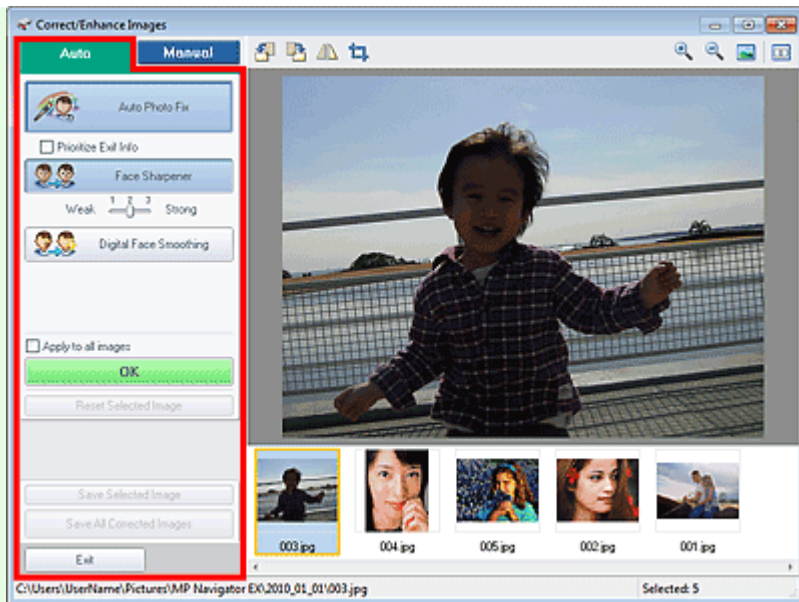
Available tasks and settings vary between the Auto and Manual tabs.

Click the Auto or Manual tab to open the corresponding tab.

Auto Tab

Use the functions in the Auto tab to apply corrections and enhancements to the entire image.

See "Correcting/Enhancing Images Automatically" for details.



- **Auto Photo Fix**

Applies automatic corrections suitable for photos.

- **Prioritize Exif Info**

Select this checkbox to apply corrections primarily based on the settings made at the time of shooting.

Deselect this checkbox to apply corrections based on the image analysis results. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.



Note

- "Exif" is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG).

- **Face Sharpener**

Sharpens out-of-focus faces.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Digital Face Smoothing**

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles.

You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Apply to all images**

Automatically corrects/enhances all images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **OK**

Applies the selected effect to the selected image or all images.

- **Reset Selected Image**

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).

- **Save All Corrected Images**

Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Manual Tab

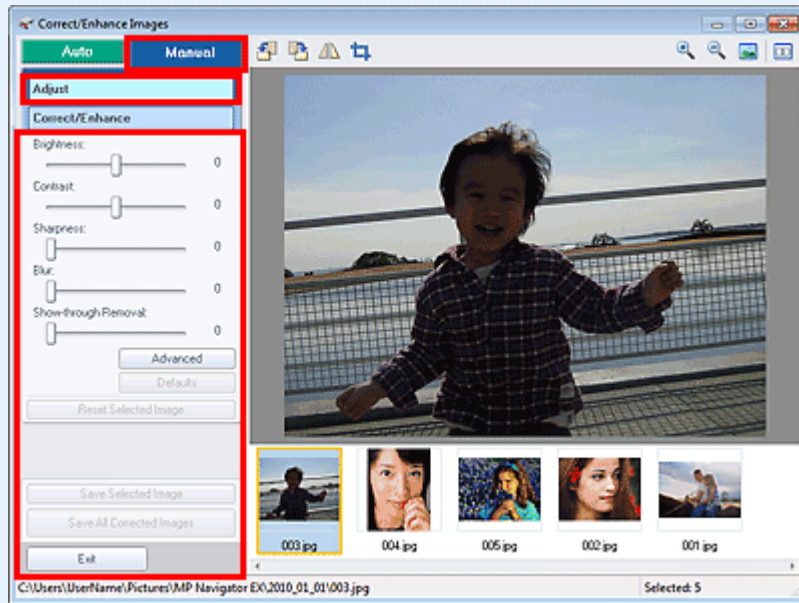
There are two menus on the Manual tab: Adjust and Correct/Enhance.

Use Adjust to adjust brightness and contrast, or to sharpen the entire image.

Use Correct/Enhance to correct/enhance specific areas.

See "[Correcting/Enhancing Images Manually](#)" for details.

Adjustment



- **Brightness**

Adjusts the overall image brightness.

Move the slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

- **Contrast**

Adjusts the contrast of the image. Adjust the contrast when the image is flat due to lack of contrast.

Move the slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

- **Sharpness**

Emphasizes the outline of the subjects to sharpen the image. Adjust the sharpness when the photo is out of focus or text is blurred.

Move the slider to the right to sharpen the image.

- **Blur**

Blurs the outline of the subjects to soften the image.

Move the slider to the right to soften the image.

- **Show-through Removal**

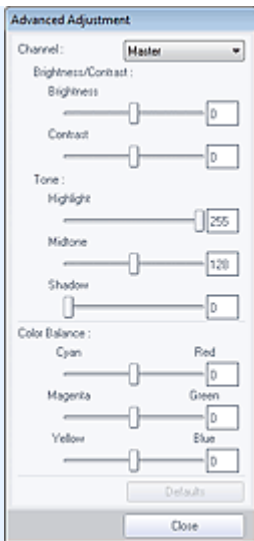
Removes show-through of text from the reverse side or removes the base color. Adjust the show-through level to prevent text on the reverse side of thin document or the base color of the document from appearing on the image.

Move the slider to the right to increase the show-through removal effect.

- **Advanced**

Opens the Advanced Adjustment dialog box in which you can make fine adjustments to the image brightness and color tone.

For Brightness/Contrast and Tone, select a color in Channel to adjust either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to adjust three colors together.



- **Brightness/Contrast**

Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image.

Move the Brightness slider to the left to darken and right to brighten the image.

Move the Contrast slider to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image.

- **Tone**

Adjust the brightness balance by specifying Highlight (the brightest level), Shadow (the darkest level) and Midtone (the color in the middle of Highlight and Shadow).

Move the Highlight slider to the left to brighten the image.

Move the Midtone slider to the left to brighten and right to darken the image.

Move the Shadow slider to the right to darken the image.

- **Color Balance**

Adjust the vividness and color tone of the image.

Move the Color Balance slider to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.



Note

- These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.
- It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

- **Defaults**

Resets all adjustments.

- **Close**

Closes the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.



Note

- The Brightness and Contrast values set in Adjust do not change even if the brightness and color tone are adjusted in the Advanced Adjustment dialog box.

- **Defaults**

Resets all settings (brightness, contrast, sharpness, blur, and show-through removal).

- **Reset Selected Image**

Cancels all corrections, enhancements and adjustments applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

Saves the corrected/enhanced/adjusted image (the selected one).

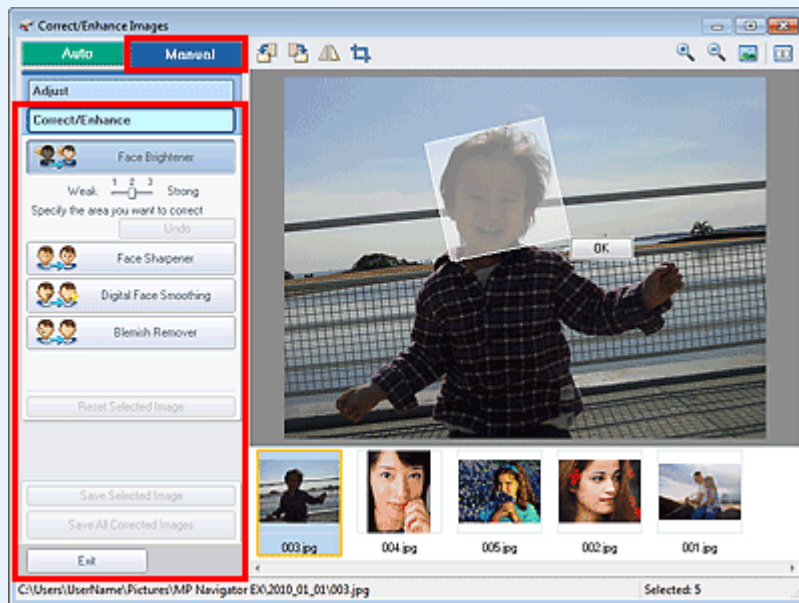
- **Save All Corrected Images**

Saves all the corrected/enhanced/adjusted images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Correction/Enhancement



- **Face Brightener**

Corrects the entire image to brighten the facial area in and around the selected area. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Face Sharpener**

Corrects the entire image to sharpen the facial area in and around the selected area. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Digital Face Smoothing**

Enhances skin beautifully by removing blemishes and wrinkles in the selected area. You can adjust the effect level using the slider.

- **Blemish Remover**

Removes moles in the selected area.

- **OK**

Applies the selected effect to the specified area.

- **Undo**

Cancels the latest correction/enhancement.

- **Reset Selected Image**

Cancels all corrections and enhancements applied to the selected image.

- **Save Selected Image**

Saves the corrected/enhanced image (the selected one).

- **Save All Corrected Images**

Saves all the corrected/enhanced images displayed in the thumbnail list.

- **Exit**

Closes the Correct/Enhance Images window.

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

-  **(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- **(Rotate Right)**

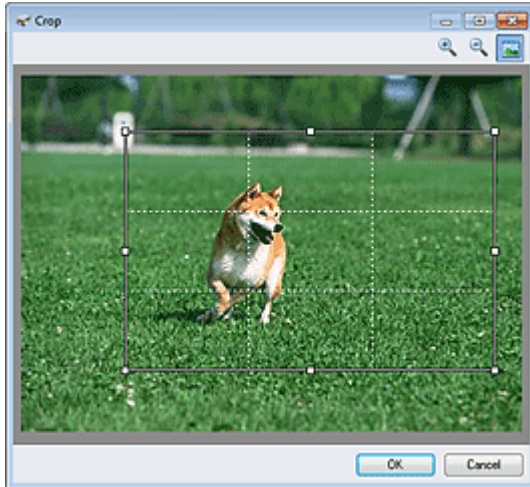
Rotates the image 90 degrees clockwise.

- **(Invert)**

Inverts the image horizontally.

- **(Trimming)**

Trimming is the act of selecting the area you want to keep in a photo and discarding the rest. In the displayed window, drag the white frame to specify the trimming area. Move the cursor inside the white frame and drag to move the trimming area.



Note

- Place the main subjects along the broken white lines or at the intersections to create a balanced image.

- **(Enlarge)**

Enlarges the displayed image.

- **(Reduce)**

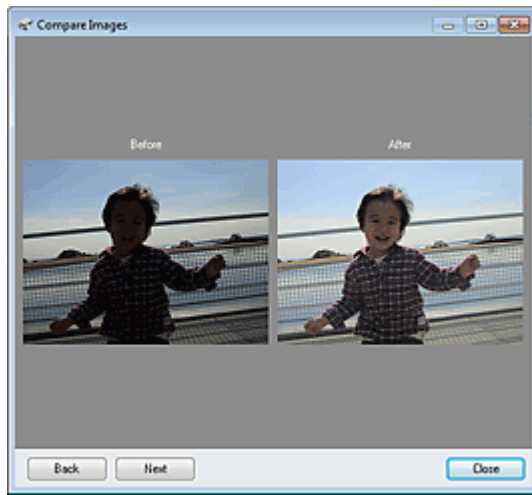
Reduces the displayed image.

- **(Full-screen)**

Displays the entire image in Preview.

- **(Compare)**

Opens a window in which you can compare the images before and after the correction/enhancement side by side.
The source image appears on the left and the corrected image appears on the right.



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > One-click Mode Screen

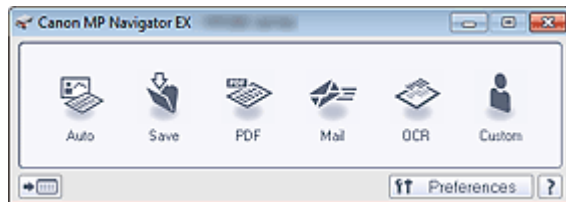
S701

MP Navigator EX

One-click Mode Screen

Click  (Switch Mode) at the bottom left of the Navigation Mode screen to display the One-click Mode screen.

You can complete "from scanning to saving", etc. at one time by simply clicking the corresponding icon.



- **Auto**

Scan documents by automatically detecting the document type. File format is automatically set. Files are saved to a computer.

When you click this icon, the Auto Scan dialog box opens and you can specify the save settings.

➡ [Auto Scan Dialog Box](#)

- **Save**

Scan documents or photos and save them to a computer. The document type can be detected automatically.

When you click this icon, the Save dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.

➡ [Save Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

- **PDF**

Scan documents and save them as PDF files.

When you click this icon, the PDF dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.

➡ [PDF Dialog Box](#)

- **Mail**

Scan documents or photos and attach them to e-mail.

When you click this icon, the Mail dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and e-mail software program settings.

➡ [Mail Dialog Box](#)

- **OCR**

Scan text documents then extract text in the image and display it in Notepad (included with Windows).

When you click this icon, the OCR dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save settings.

➡ [OCR Dialog Box](#)

- **Custom**

Scan documents/photos and open them in a specified application. The document type can be automatically detected.

When you click this icon, the Custom dialog box opens and you can specify the scan/save and application settings.

➡ [Custom Dialog Box](#)

- **(Switch Mode)**

Switches to Navigation Mode. The Navigation Mode screen appears.

➡ [Custom Scan with One-click Tab](#)

- **Preferences**

The Preferences dialog box opens. In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to MP Navigator EX functions.

➡ Preferences Dialog Box

-  (Guide)

Opens this guide.

Important

- The following restrictions apply when you scan with Document Type set to Auto Mode in the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box.
When you want to convert text in the scanned image to text data, specify Document Type (do not select Auto Mode).

Related Topic

► [Easy Scanning with One-click](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

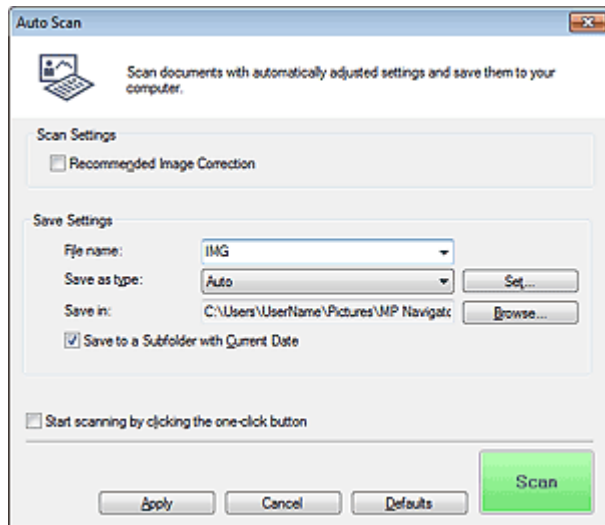
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Auto Scan Dialog Box

S742

MP Navigator EX

Auto Scan Dialog Box

Click Auto Scan on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Auto in the One-click Mode screen to open the Auto Scan dialog box.



• Supported Documents

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD.

► Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, click another icon in the One-click Mode screen or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and specify the document type or size.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Documents printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

📖 Note

- To reduce moire, click another icon in the One-click Mode screen or on the Custom Scan with One-click tab and set Document Type to Magazine.

Scan Settings

• Recommended Image Correction

Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

► Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.

- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

Save Settings

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.
Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP or PDF.



Important

- When Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.
- You cannot set passwords for PDF files.



Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD and business cards: JPEG
Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
You can change the file format from Set....

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

When Save as type is PDF

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.



Important

- Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.

When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

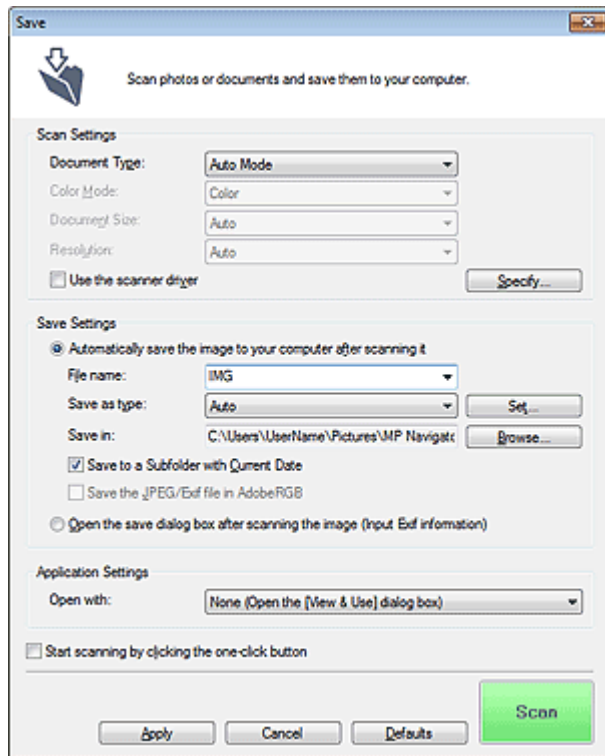
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

S721

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Click Save to PC on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Save in the One-click Mode screen to open the Save dialog box.



Scan Settings

• Document Type

Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well.

Important

- Document types supported by Auto Mode are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD.
- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Documents printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly. See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

Note

- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

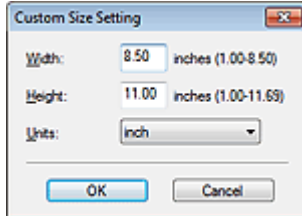
- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.

Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Save dialog box will be disabled. Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.

➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them. The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode. When saving as PDF files, select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document. See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.
- Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

 Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD and business cards: JPEG
Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
You can change the file format from Set....
Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode, the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.

 Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.

 Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.

➡ [Save Dialog Box](#)

 Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information). After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save dialog box.
➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

Application Settings

- **Open with**

You can select whether to open the View & Use window or Explorer after saving the images.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.

When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

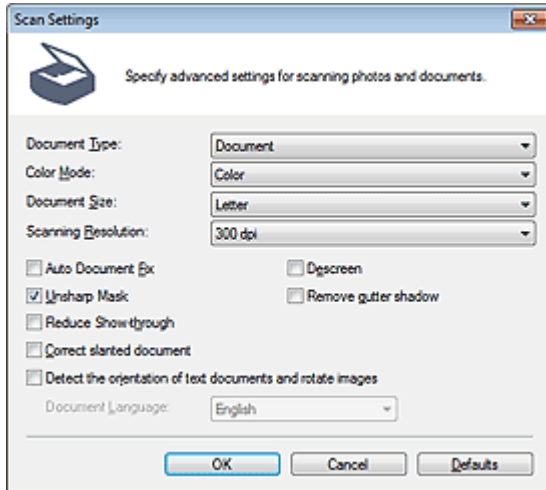
S734

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... in a dialog box of the One-click Mode screen.

In the Scan Settings dialog box, you can make advanced scan settings.



Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

• Document Type

Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected.

In that case, Color Mode, Document Size, etc. are automatically set as well.

Important

- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

• Color Mode

Select how to scan the document.

• Color

This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

• Grayscale

This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

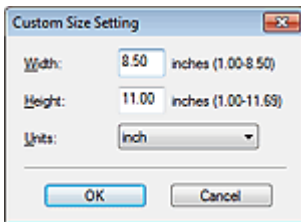
• Black and White

This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level) into black and white and is rendered in two colors.

• Document Size

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



► Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

• Scanning Resolution

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ Resolution

• Recommended Image Correction / Auto Photo Fix / Auto Document Fix

The displayed item varies by Document Type.

• Recommended Image Correction

This is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode. Select this checkbox to apply auto photo fix or auto document fix based on the document type.

• Auto Photo Fix

This is displayed when Document Type is Photo. Select this checkbox to automatically analyze the captured scene (landscape, night scene, etc.) and apply suitable corrections.

• Auto Document Fix

This is displayed when Document Type is Magazine or Document. Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or magazine for better readability.

► Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- These functions are not available when the Scan Settings dialog box is opened from the OCR dialog box.
- Auto Photo Fix is not available when Color Mode is Grayscale or Black and White.
- Auto Document Fix is not available when Color Mode is Black and White.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

• Descreen

Select this checkbox to reduce moire patterns.

Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

📖 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Descreen.

• Unsharp Mask

Select this checkbox to emphasize the outline of the subjects and sharpen the image.

• Remove gutter shadow

Select this checkbox to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

► Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Auto Detect, Auto Detect (Multiple Documents) or Stitch Assist is selected for Document Size.
- When scanning, align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

 Note

- Use ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab to correct gutter shadows when scanning non-standard size documents or when custom cropping frames are set. See "[Gutter Shadow Correction](#)" for details.

- **Reduce Show-through**

Select this checkbox to sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

 Note

- Select this checkbox when Document Type is text document and show-through is apparent in the scanned image.

- **Correct slanted document**

Select this checkbox to detect the scanned text and correct the angle (within -0.1 to -10 degrees or +0.1 to +10 degrees) of the document.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- The inclination of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Documents in which the text lines are inclined more than 10 degrees or the angles vary by line
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal text
 - Documents with extremely large or small fonts
 - Documents with small amount of text
 - Documents containing figures/images
 - Hand-written documents
 - Documents containing both vertical and horizontal lines (tables)

 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Correct slanted document.

- **Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images**

Select this checkbox to detect the orientation of the document from the scanned text and rotate the scanned image to the correct orientation. Select the language of the document to be scanned in Document Language.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.
- This function may not work properly depending on the document language. Only text documents written in languages that can be selected from Document Language are supported.
- The orientation of the following types of documents may not be corrected, as the text cannot be detected correctly.
 - Resolution is outside the range of 300 dpi to 600 dpi
 - Font size is outside the range of 8 points to 48 points
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with patterned backgrounds

 Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images.

- **Document Language**

Select the language of the document to be scanned.

 Important

- You cannot select this checkbox when Document Size is Stitch Assist.

- **Defaults**

Restore the default settings.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Save Dialog Box

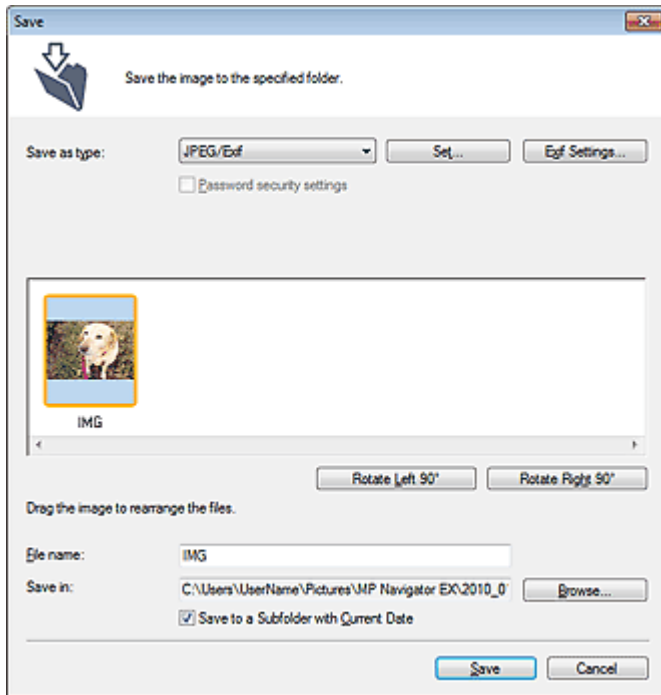
S731

MP Navigator EX

Save Dialog Box

The Save dialog box opens when you scan from the Save dialog box or Custom dialog box of the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information).

You can specify the file type and destination while viewing the thumbnails.



- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF, BMP, PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

- **PDF**

Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

Save multiple images in one PDF file.



Note

- PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.

➔ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)



Important

- PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) and PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned from the Custom dialog box.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

When Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page)

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Exif Settings...**

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif, you can input Exif information into the file to be saved.

➔ [Exif Settings Dialog Box](#)

- **Password security settings**

Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.

➔ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)



Note

- This function is available only when Save as type is PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

- **Add to**

This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Rotate Left 90° / Rotate Right 90°**

Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.

Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Exif Settings Dialog Box

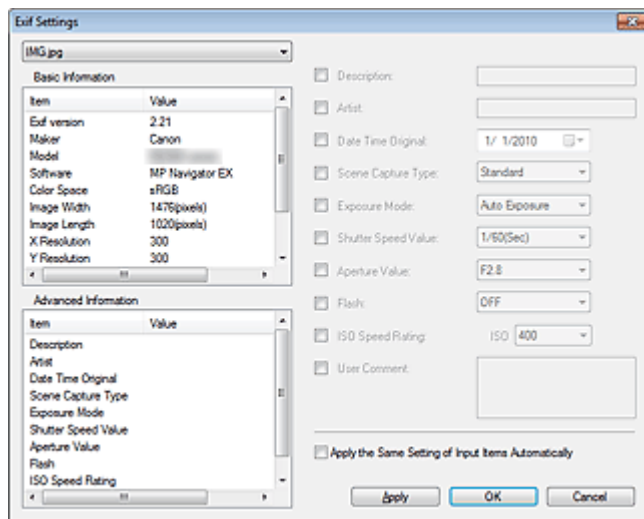
S732

MP Navigator EX

Exif Settings Dialog Box

You can input Exif information into a file to be saved. "Exif" is a standard format for embedding various shooting data in digital camera images (JPEG). Embedding Exif information into scanned images allows you to organize and print them along with digital camera images.

The Exif Settings dialog box can be opened when Save as type is JPEG/Exif.



- **Basic Information**

Displays the information obtained automatically from the machine or software.

- **Advanced Information**

Displays the information specified on the right side of the screen.

- **Advanced Information Settings Area**

You can input Exif information such as the title and shooting data. Select the checkbox of the items you want to specify, and select or enter information.

- **Apply the Same Setting of Input Items Automatically**

Select this checkbox to automatically display the information you specified for the previous image.

- **Apply**

After specifying all the information you need, click Apply to embed it into the image. The information appears in Advanced Information.

- **OK**

Embeds the specified information into the image and closes the screen. The specified information is saved.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the settings and closes the screen.
Information is embedded when Cancel is clicked after clicking Apply.

Advanced Guide

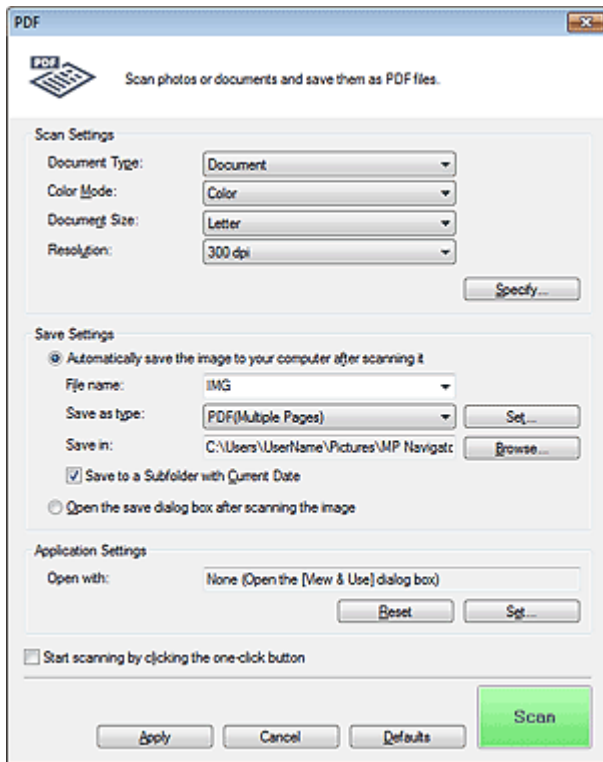
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > PDF Dialog Box

S725

MP Navigator EX

PDF Dialog Box

Click Save as PDF file on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click PDF in the One-click Mode screen to open the PDF dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

Select the type of document to be scanned.

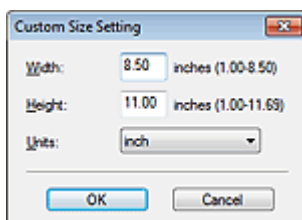
- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In

that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ [Resolution](#)

- **Specify...**

Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.

➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.

The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.



Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select PDF, PDF(Multiple Pages) or PDF(Add Page).

- **PDF**

Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

- **PDF(Multiple Pages)**

Save multiple images in one PDF file.

- **PDF(Add Page)**

Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.
- Images cannot be added to password-protected PDF files.



Note

- See "[Creating/Editing PDF Files](#)" to delete or rearrange the pages of saved PDF files.

- **Set...**

You can specify the PDF compression type and other advanced settings for creating PDF files.

➡ [PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Add to**

This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added.

To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.

Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

Select this to open the Save as PDF file dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder and file name.

➡ [Save as PDF file Dialog Box](#)

Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image. After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.

➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

Application Settings

- **Open with**

Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.

Important

- Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

- **Reset**

Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans and saves documents as PDF files with the specified settings.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Save as PDF file Dialog Box

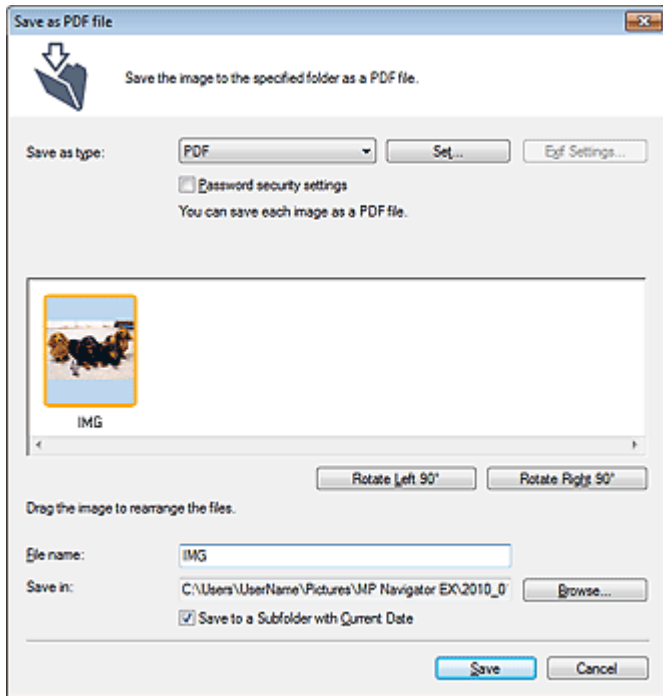
S730

MP Navigator EX

Save as PDF file Dialog Box

The Save as PDF file dialog box opens when you scan from the PDF dialog box of the One-click Mode screen after selecting Open the save dialog box after scanning the image.

In the Save as PDF file dialog box, you can make settings for saving images to a computer.



Important

- You cannot save images scanned at 10501 pixels or more in the vertical and horizontal directions.

• Save as type

Select a PDF file type to save the scanned images.

• PDF

Save each of the selected images as a separate PDF file.

• PDF(Multiple Pages)

Save multiple images in one PDF file.



Note

- PDF(Multiple Pages) is displayed when multiple images are scanned.

• PDF(Add Page)

Add the scanned images to a PDF file. The images are added to the end of the PDF file. You cannot rearrange the pages of the PDF file to which the images are added.

Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- PDF(Add Page) cannot be selected for images scanned using the Operation Panel of the machine.
- If a password-protected PDF file is edited, the passwords will be deleted. Reset the passwords.
➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

- **Set...**

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Password security settings**

Select this checkbox to open the Password Security -Settings dialog box in which you can set passwords for opening, editing and printing created PDF files.

➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

- **Add to**

This is displayed when you select PDF(Add Page) for Save as type and specify the PDF file to which images are added. To change the file, click Browse... to specify another one.



Important

- Images can only be added to PDF files created with MP Navigator EX. You cannot specify PDF files created with other applications. PDF files edited in other applications cannot be specified as well.

- **Rotate Left 90° / Rotate Right 90°**

Rotates scanned images 90 degrees counter-clockwise or clockwise.

Select the image you want to rotate and click Rotate Left 90° or Rotate Right 90°.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the PDF files. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

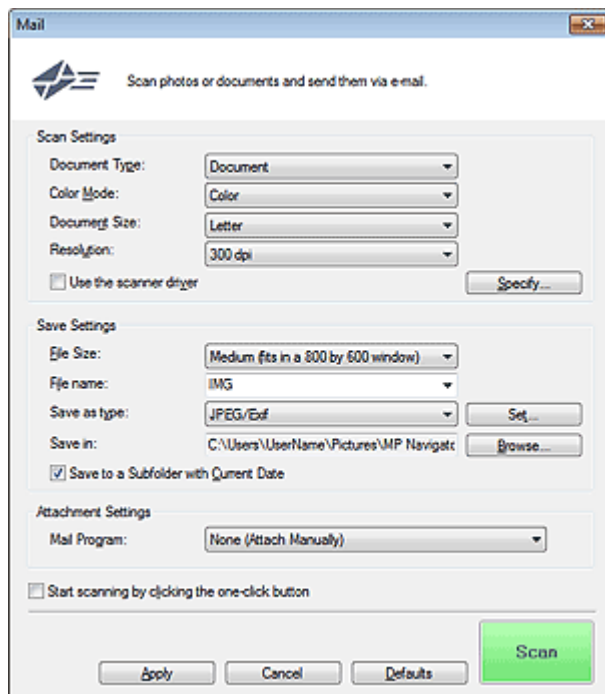
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Mail Dialog Box

S722

MP Navigator EX

Mail Dialog Box

Click Attach to E-mail on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or click Mail in the One-click Mode screen to open the Mail dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

Select the type of document to be scanned.

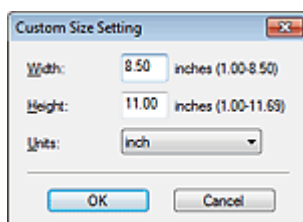
- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

- **Resolution**

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ [Resolution](#)

- **Use the scanner driver**

Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.

Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Mail dialog box will be disabled.

Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.

➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

Save Settings

- **File Size**

Select a size from Small (fits in a 640 by 480 window), Medium (fits in a 800 by 600 window), Large (fits in a 1024 by 768 window) and Original.

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select JPEG/Exif, PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages).



Important

- You cannot set passwords for PDF files.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

When Save as type is PDF or PDF(Multiple Pages)

Make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Attachment Settings

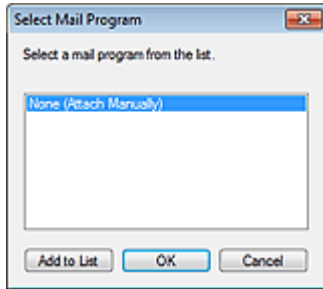
- **Mail Program**

Specify an e-mail software program.



Note

- Select Add... to open the Select Mail Program dialog box in which you can select an e-mail software program. If the e-mail software program you want to use is not listed, click Add to List and select it.



- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

Important

- Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans documents with the specified settings.

When scanning is completed, attachment files are created and saved. If using an MP Navigator EX compatible e-mail software program, it starts automatically and a new message screen appears with the image attached.

Advanced Guide

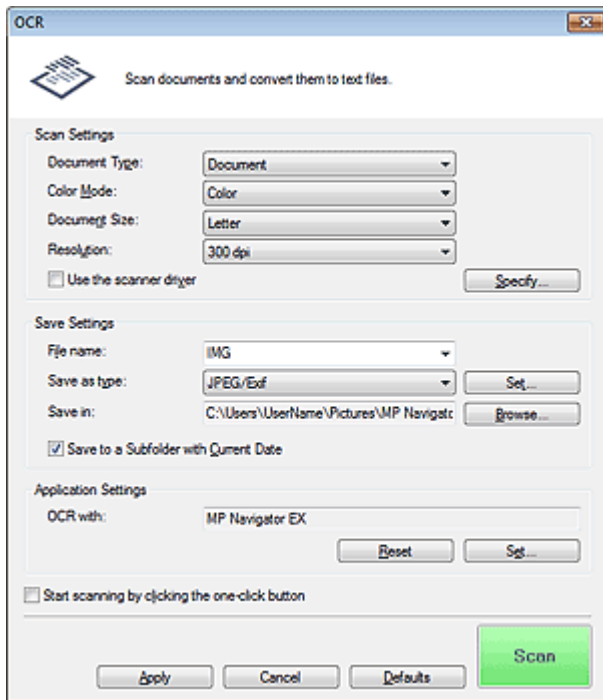
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > OCR Dialog Box

S724

MP Navigator EX

OCR Dialog Box

Click OCR on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the OCR dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

Select the type of document to be scanned.

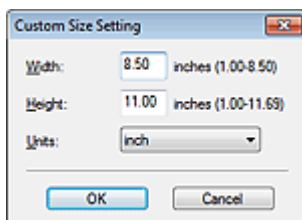
- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Document Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



- **Resolution**

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ Resolution

- **Use the scanner driver**

Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.
Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the OCR dialog box will be disabled.
Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

- **Specify...**

Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.

➔ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)



Note

- When scanning slanted documents, select the Correct slanted document checkbox to improve the text recognition accuracy.

Save Settings

- **File name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP.



Important

- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

Application Settings

- **OCR with**

Specify an OCR application.

When MP Navigator EX is specified, after the image is scanned, the text in the image is extracted and appears in Notepad (included with Windows).



Note

- Only text written in languages that can be selected on the General tab can be extracted to Notepad (included with Windows). Click Set... on the General tab and specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned.
When scanning multiple documents, you can collect the extracted text into one file.
➔ [General Tab](#)
- Text displayed in Notepad (included with Windows) is for guidance only. Text in the image of the following types of documents may not be detected correctly.

- Documents containing text with font size outside the range of 8 points to 40 points (at 300 dpi)
 - Slanted documents
 - Documents placed upside down or documents with text in the wrong orientation (rotated characters)
 - Documents containing special fonts, effects, italics, or hand-written text
 - Documents with narrow line spacing
 - Documents with colors in the background of text
 - Documents containing multiple languages
 - For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.
-

- **Reset**

Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

Allows you to select an application.

**Important**

- Depending on the specified application, the text may not be extracted correctly or the application may not start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

**Important**

- Start scanning by clicking the one-click button is not displayed when the dialog box is opened directly from Solution Menu EX.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans documents with the specified settings.

Advanced Guide

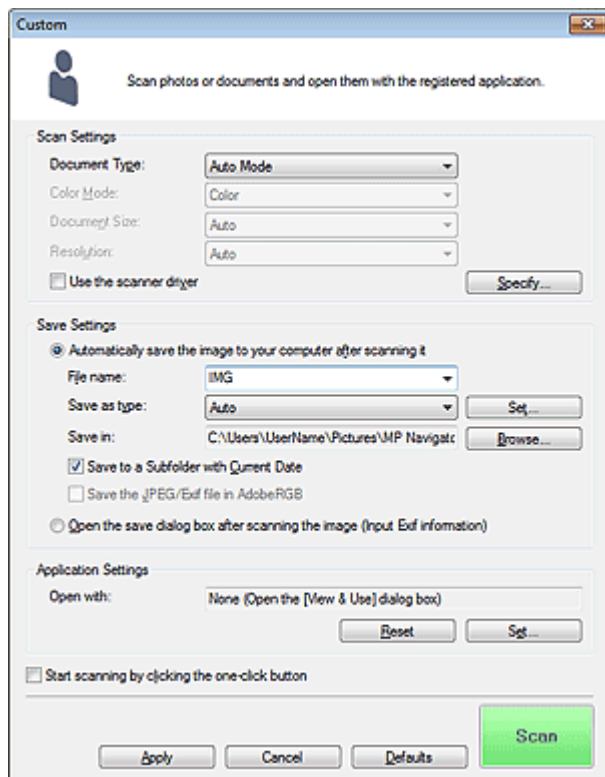
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Custom Dialog Box

S726

MP Navigator EX

Custom Dialog Box

Click Custom on the Custom Scan with One-click tab or in the One-click Mode screen to open the Custom dialog box.



Scan Settings

- **Document Type**

Select the type of document to be scanned. When Auto Mode is selected, the document type is automatically detected. In that case, Color Mode, Document Size and Resolution are automatically set as well.



Important

- Document types supported by Auto Mode are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD.
- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly with Auto Mode. In that case, specify the document type or size.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Documents printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly. See "**Placing Documents**" for details on how to place documents.

Note

- To reduce moire, set Document Type to Magazine.

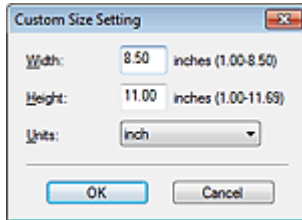
• Color Mode

Select how to scan the document.

• Document Size

Select the size of the document to be scanned.

When you select Custom, a screen in which you can specify the document size appears. Select a Units, then enter the Width and Height and click OK.



Important

- When you select Auto Detect, the image may not be scanned at the correct position and size. In that case, change the size to the actual document size (A4, Letter, etc.) and align a corner of the document with the corner at the arrow (alignment mark) of the Platen.

• Resolution

Select the resolution at which to scan documents.

➡ Resolution

• Use the scanner driver

Select this checkbox to display the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen and make advanced scan settings.

Color Mode, Document Size, Resolution and other settings in the Custom dialog box will be disabled. Specify these settings in the ScanGear screen.

• Specify...

Opens the Scan Settings dialog box in which you can make advanced scan settings.

➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (One-click Mode Screen)

Save Settings

• Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it

Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.

The File name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

• File name

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters). When saving multiple files, 4 digits are appended to each file name.

• Save as type

Select a file type to save the scanned images.

Select Auto, JPEG/Exif, TIFF or BMP. Auto is displayed when Document Type is Auto Mode.

Important

- When Document Type is Auto Mode and Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.
- You cannot select JPEG/Exif when Color Mode is Black and White.

Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD and business cards: JPEG

Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF

You can change the file format from Set....

Images saved as PDF files may not open depending on the application. In that case, select an option other than Auto in Save as type.

- You cannot set passwords for PDF files.
- If you select JPEG/Exif when Document Type is not Auto Mode , the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox will be selectable.

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

You can specify the file format in which to save images. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB**

Select this checkbox to save the images in colors that correspond to Adobe RGB.



Important

- This function is available only when Save as type is JPEG/Exif and Document Type is not Auto Mode.
- This function is not available if the Adobe RGB profile is not installed.



Note

- You cannot select this setting if the Use the scanner driver checkbox is selected.
- When you save an image with the Save the JPEG/Exif file in AdobeRGB checkbox selected, an underscore is added to the beginning of the file name. (Example: _Image0001.jpg)

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image (Input Exif information)**

Select this to open the Save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.

➡ [Save Dialog Box](#)

Application Settings

- **Open with**

Specify an application with which to open scanned images. Drag and drop the icon of an application that supports the file format displayed in Save as type. The specified application starts after images are scanned.



Important

- Depending on the specified application, the images may not appear correctly or the application may not start.

 Note

-
- For further procedures, refer to the application's manual.
-

- **Reset**

Cancels the application setting.

- **Set...**

Allows you to select an application to start.

- **Start scanning by clicking the one-click button**

Select this checkbox to start scanning when you click an icon in One-click Mode.

- **Apply**

Saves and applies the specified settings.

Click Cancel instead of Apply to cancel the specified settings.

- **Cancel**

Cancels the specified settings. The current screen closes.

- **Defaults**

Returns all settings in the screen to their defaults.

- **Scan**

Scans and saves documents with the specified settings.

When Save as type is Auto, a confirmation appears. Click Open Manual to open this guide (if it is installed).

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Preferences Dialog Box

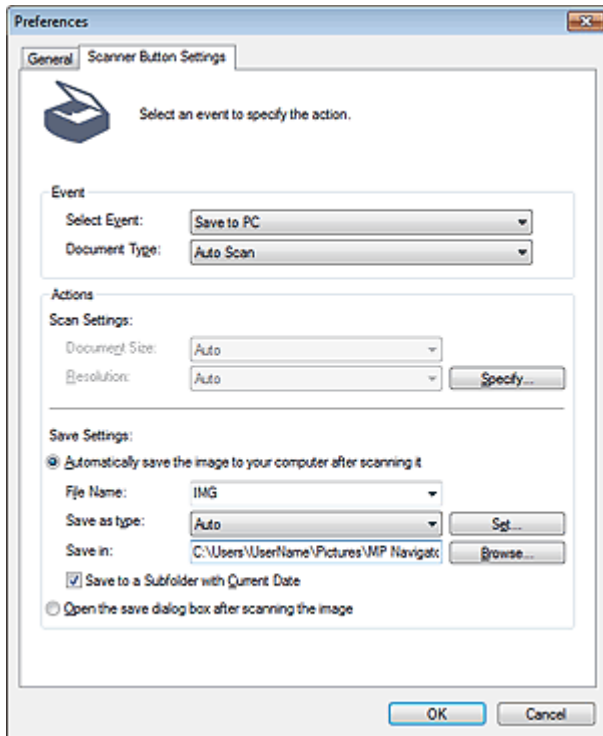
S705

MP Navigator EX

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences to open the Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can specify general MP Navigator EX settings and how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel, via the General and Scanner Button Settings tabs.



Note

- See the corresponding sections below for details on each tab.
 - ➡ General Tab
 - ➡ Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

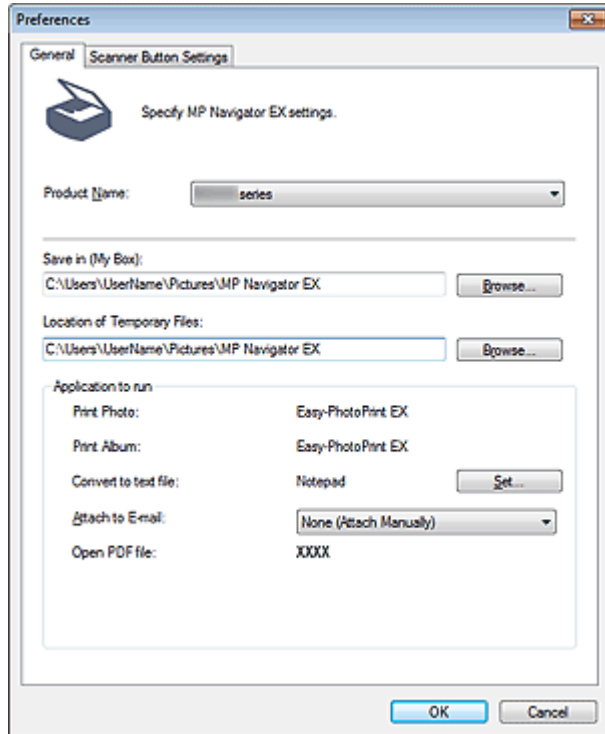
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > General Tab

S740

MP Navigator EX

General Tab

On the General tab, you can specify general MP Navigator EX settings.



- **Product Name**

Displays the product name of the machine that MP Navigator EX is currently configured to use. If the displayed product is not the one you want to use, select the desired product from the list.

- **Save in (My Box)**

Displays the folder in which to save scanned documents. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Location of Temporary Files**

Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.



Important

- An error may occur if you set the destination to the root directory of the drive on which the operating system is installed. Be sure to specify a folder.
- An error may occur if you set the destination to a network folder. Be sure to specify a local folder.

- **Application to run**

Displays the applications that can be started via MP Navigator EX. Install the applications from the *Setup CD-ROM* that accompanies the machine.

For Attach to E-mail, you can select an e-mail software program to start.

For Open PDF file, the application associated with the .pdf file extension by the operating system is

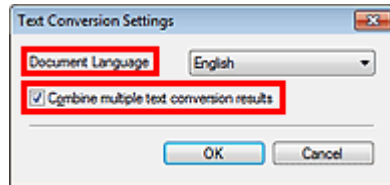
displayed.

Important

- You can change which items are installed during installation from the *Setup CD-ROM* by selecting Custom Install. If you choose not to install some applications with Custom Install, the corresponding MP Navigator EX functions will be unavailable. To use those functions, install the corresponding applications.

Note

- For Convert to text file, Notepad (included with Windows) is displayed. Click Set... to open a dialog box, then specify Document Language and how to scan multiple documents.



- Document Language
Specify the language according to the language of the document to be scanned. Only text written in languages that can be selected in the Document Language can be extracted to Notepad.
- Combine multiple text conversion results
When scanning multiple documents, select the checkbox to collect the conversion results (text) into one file.
When the checkbox is selected, you can scan up to 99 pages at one time.
Deselect the checkbox to display each conversion result (text) in a separate file.
When the checkbox is not selected, you can scan up to 10 pages at one time.

Advanced Guide

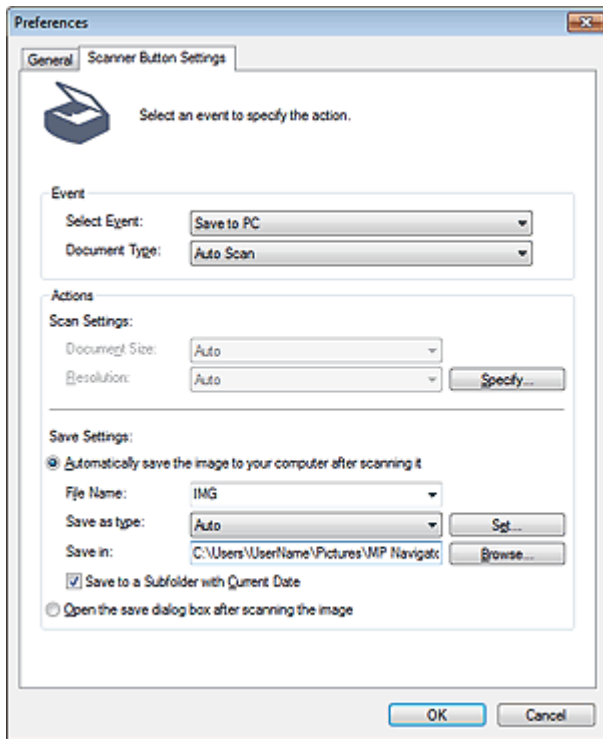
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)

S707

MP Navigator EX

Scanner Button Settings Tab (Save to PC)

On the Scanner Button Settings tab, you can specify how to respond when scanning using the Operation Panel of the machine.



Event

- **Select Event**
Save to PC is set.
- **Document Type**
Auto Scan is set.

Actions

Scan Settings

- **Document Size**
This setting is automatically set.
- **Resolution**
This setting is automatically set.
- **Specify...**
Select whether or not to apply suitable corrections based on the document type.
➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Scanner Button Settings\)](#)

Save Settings

- **Automatically save the image to your computer after scanning it**

Select this to save the images to your computer as specified after scanning them.
The File Name, Save as type and Save in settings will be displayed.

Important

- If you select this function, you will not be able to set passwords for PDF files.

- **File Name**

Enter the file name of the image to be saved (up to 64 characters).

- **Save as type**

Select a file type to save the scanned images.
Select Auto, JPEG/Exif or TIFF.

Important

- When Save as type is Auto, the file format may differ depending on how you place the document.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

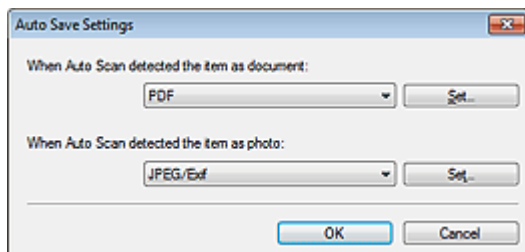
Note

- When Auto is selected, files are saved in the following formats according to the document type.
Photos, postcards, BD/DVD/CD and business cards: JPEG
Magazines, newspapers and text documents: PDF
You can change the file format from Set....

- **Set...**

When Save as type is Auto

Opens the Auto Save Settings dialog box in which you can specify the file format and other advanced save settings. Select a file format for items detected as documents, and for items detected as photos.



- **When JPEG/Exif is Selected**

Click Set... to specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **When PDF is Selected**

Click Set... to make advanced settings for creating PDF files. See "[PDF Settings Dialog Box](#)" for details.

When Save as type is JPEG/Exif

You can specify a compression type for JPEG files. Select High(Low Compression), Standard or Low(High Compression).

- **Save in**

Displays the folder in which to save the scanned images. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

By default, the scanned images are saved in the following folders.

Windows 7: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

Windows Vista: MP Navigator EX folder in Pictures folder

Windows XP: MP Navigator EX folder in My Pictures folder

- **Save to a Subfolder with Current Date**

Select this checkbox to create a subfolder in the folder specified in Save in with the current date and save scanned files in it. A subfolder with a name such as "2010_01_01" (Year_Month_Date) will be created.

If this checkbox is not selected, files are saved directly in the folder specified in Save in.

- **Open the save dialog box after scanning the image**

Select this to open the save dialog box after scanning the images and specify the save settings such as destination folder, file name and Exif information.

➡ [Save Dialog Box](#)



Note

- To set passwords for PDF files, select Open the save dialog box after scanning the image. After scanning, you can set the passwords in the Save as PDF file dialog box.

➡ [Setting Passwords for PDF Files](#)

[Page top](#)⬆

Advanced Guide

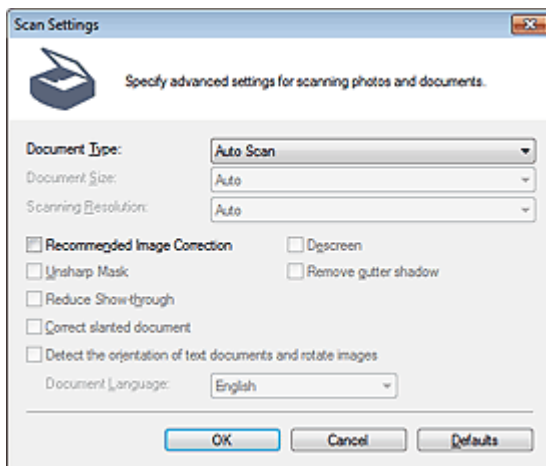
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > MP Navigator EX Screens > Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

S743

MP Navigator EX

Scan Settings Dialog Box (Scanner Button Settings)

The Scan Settings dialog box opens when you click Specify... on the Scanner Button Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.



- **Document Type**

Auto Scan is set.

► Important

- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "[Placing Documents](#)" for details on how to place documents.

- **Recommended Image Correction**

Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

► Important

- When this checkbox is selected, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

- **Defaults**

Restore the default settings.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) > [Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images](#)

S011

MP Navigator EX

Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images

You can save or print data other than scanned images using MP Navigator EX.

- **Using images saved on a computer**

- ➡ [Opening Images Saved on a Computer](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with the Bundled Application Software > Appendix: Opening Files Other than Scanned Images > Opening Images Saved on a Computer

S507

MP Navigator EX

Opening Images Saved on a Computer

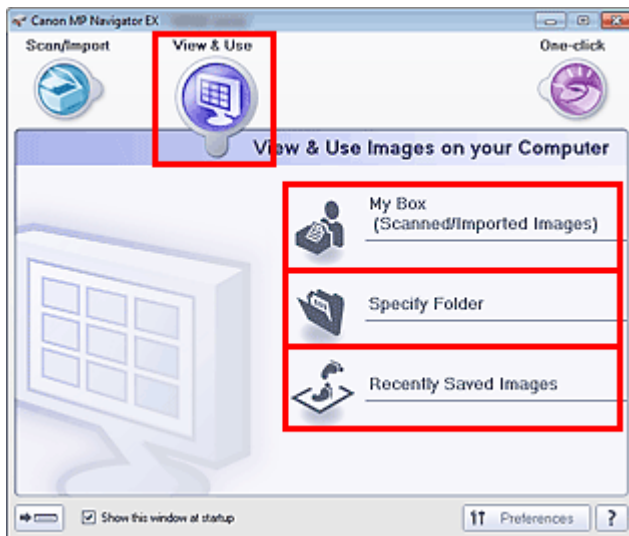
You can open images saved on a computer and print them or attach them to e-mail using MP Navigator EX. You can also edit them using an application that accompanies the machine.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.

➡ Starting MP Navigator EX

2. In the Navigation Mode screen, select View & Use and click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), Specify Folder or Recently Saved Images.

Click My Box (Scanned/Imported Images) to open images saved in My Box (Scanned/Imported Images), click Specify Folder to open images saved in a specific folder, or click Recently Saved Images to open recently saved images.

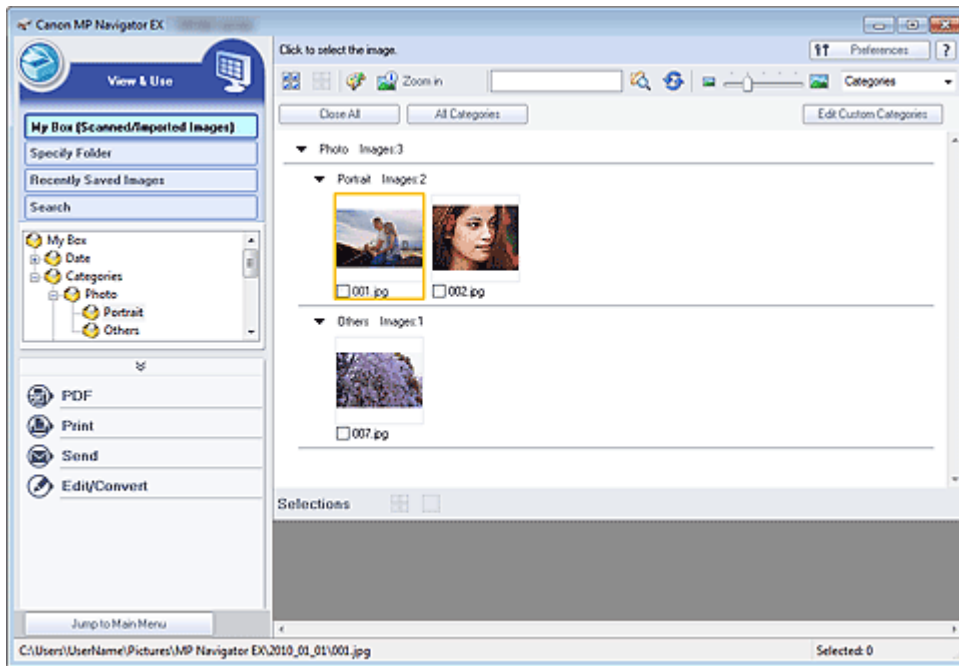


Note

- If the Show this window at startup checkbox is not selected, the last used screen appears. If the Scan/Import window is displayed, click  (View & Use) on the upper left of the screen. The View & Use window opens.
- See "[View & Use Images on your Computer Tab](#)" for details on the View & Use Images on your Computer tab.

3. Click the folder containing the images you want to open.

Images saved in the folder appear in the Thumbnail window.



4. Select the images you want to use, then select what you want to do with them.

See the corresponding sections below for details on using images.

➡ Creating/Editing PDF Files

➡ Printing Documents

➡ Printing Photos

➡ Sending via E-mail

➡ Editing Files

[Page top](#)

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Muu rakendustarkvaraga skannimine](#)

Muu rakendustarkvaraga skannimine

- ➡ Mis on ScanGear (skanneridraiver)?
- ➡ Skannimine täpsemate sätetega, kasutades ScanGeari (skanneridraiver)
- ➡ Piltide korrigeerimine ja värvide reguleerimine ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) abil
- ➡ ScanGeari (skanneridraiver) kuvad
- ➡ Lisa: skannimiseks kasulik teave

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

S201

ScanGear

What Is ScanGear (Scanner Driver)?

ScanGear (scanner driver) is software required for scanning documents. It enables you to specify the output size and make image corrections when scanning.

ScanGear can be started from MP Navigator EX or from other applications that are compatible with a standard interface called TWAIN. (ScanGear is a TWAIN-compatible driver.)

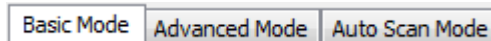
What You Can Do with This Software

This software enables you to preview scan results or set document type and output size, etc. when scanning documents. It is useful when you want to scan in a specific color tone, as it allows you to make various corrections and adjust brightness, contrast, etc.

Screens

There are three modes: Basic Mode, Advanced Mode and Auto Scan Mode.

Switch modes by clicking a tab on the upper right of the screen.

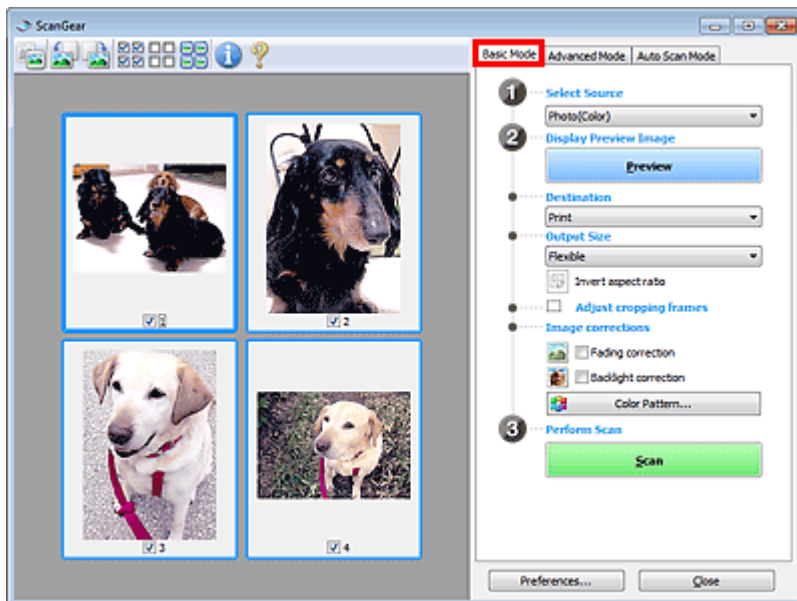


Note

- ScanGear starts in the last used mode.
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

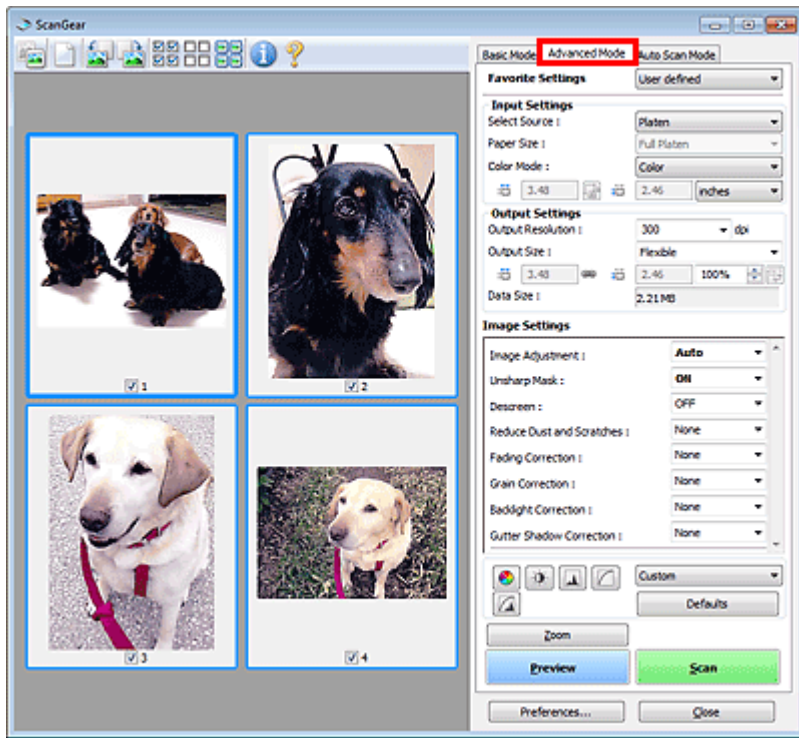
Basic Mode

Use the Basic Mode tab to scan easily by following three simple on-screen steps (1 , 2 and 3).



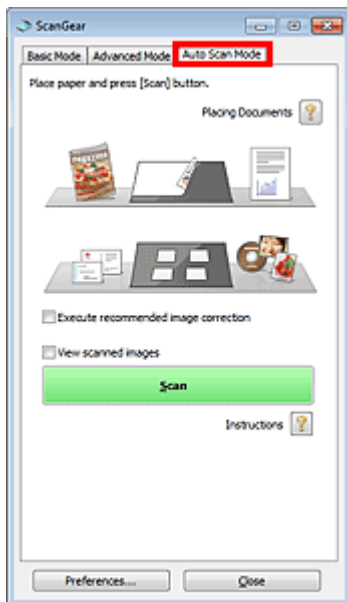
Advanced Mode

Use the Advanced Mode tab to specify color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.



Auto Scan Mode

Use the Auto Scan Mode tab to scan easily by simply placing the document on the Platen and clicking Scan.



Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

S200

ScanGear

Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

- **Starting ScanGear (scanner driver)**
 - ➔ [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)
- **Scanning documents after making simple image corrections**
 - ➔ [Scanning in Basic Mode](#)
- **Scanning documents after making advanced image corrections and brightness/color adjustments**
 - ➔ [Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)
- **Scanning with a simple operation**
 - ➔ [Scanning in Auto Scan Mode](#)
- **Scanning multiple documents at one time after making image corrections and color adjustments**
 - ➔ [Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

S202

ScanGear

Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

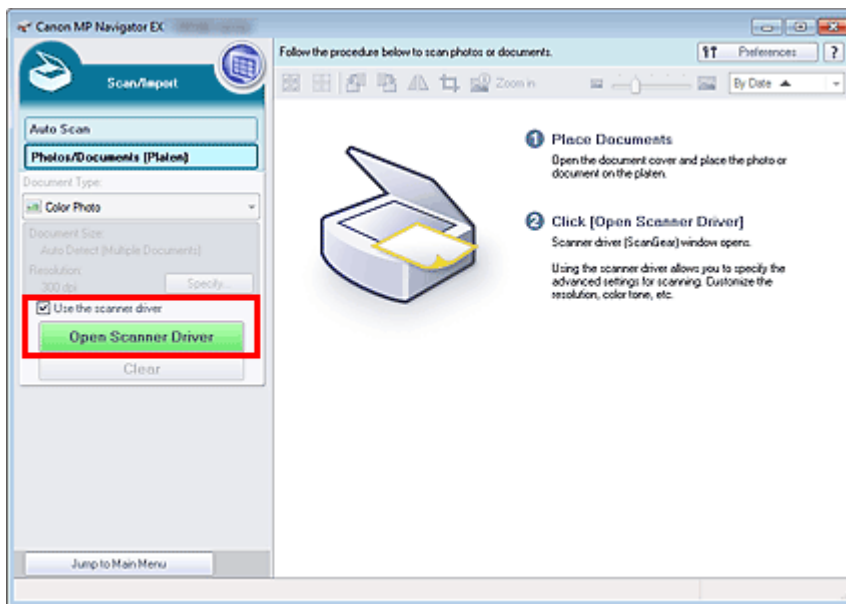
Use ScanGear (scanner driver) to make image corrections and color adjustments when scanning. ScanGear can be started from MP Navigator EX or an application.

Starting from MP Navigator EX

Navigation Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear from the Navigation Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the Navigation Mode screen.
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX
2. In Scan/Import, click Photos/Documents (Platen).
The Scan/Import window opens.
3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox, then click Open Scanner Driver.



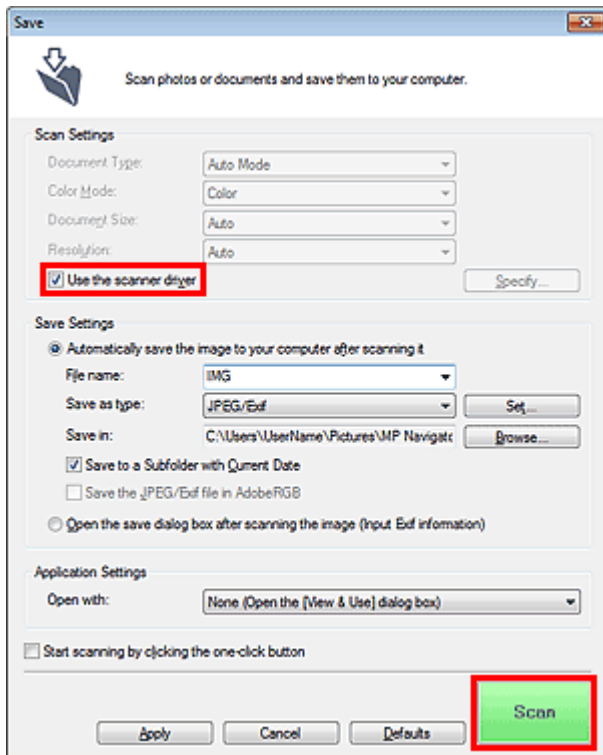
The ScanGear screen appears.

One-click Mode Screen

Follow these steps to start ScanGear from the One-click Mode screen of MP Navigator EX.

1. Start MP Navigator EX and open the One-click Mode screen.
➡ Starting MP Navigator EX
2. Click the corresponding icon.
The corresponding dialog box opens.

3. Select the Use the scanner driver checkbox in Scan Settings, then click Scan.



The ScanGear screen appears.

Important

- Use the scanner driver is not displayed in the Auto Scan dialog box or PDF dialog box.

Starting from an Application

Follow these steps (example) to start ScanGear from an application.

The procedure varies depending on the application. For details, refer to the application's manual.

1. Start the application.
2. On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.
3. Select the command to scan a document (Scan/Import, Acquire image, etc.).

The ScanGear screen appears.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Scanning in Basic Mode

S203



Scanning in Basic Mode

Use the Basic Mode tab to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section explains how to scan a single document.

See "[Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

Important

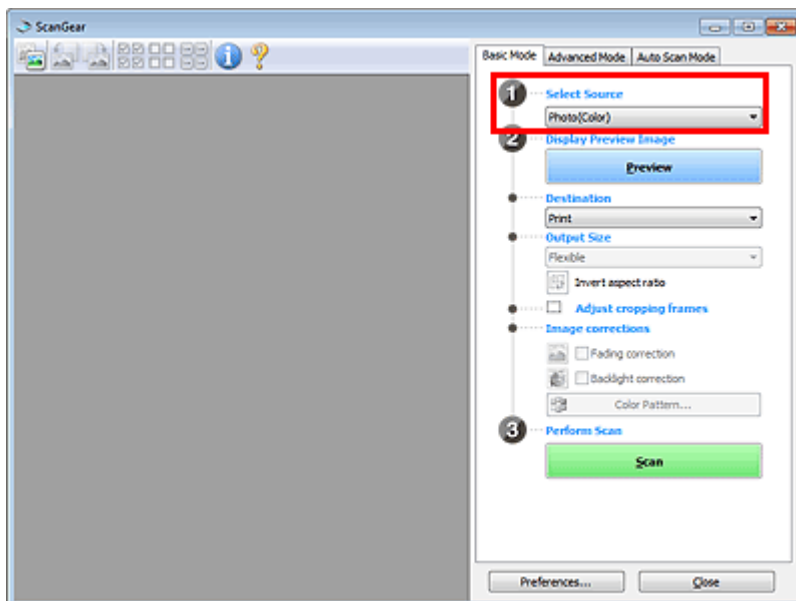
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish border
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

➡ [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

2. Set Select Source according to the document placed on the Platen.

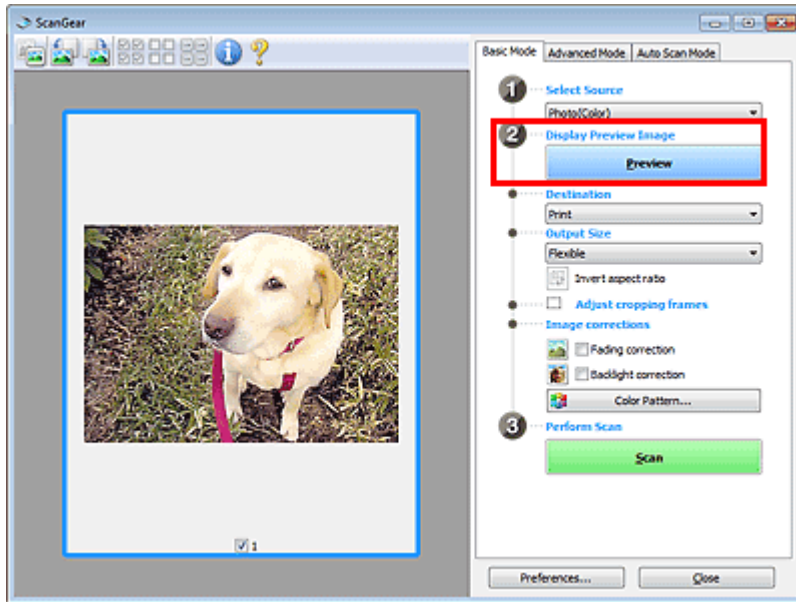


Note

- To scan magazines containing many color photos, select Magazine(Color).

3. Click Preview.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- Colors are adjusted based on the document type selected in Select Source.

4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

Output size options vary by the item selected in Destination.

6. Adjust the scan area (cropping frame) as required.

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

7. Set Image corrections as required.

8. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- Click  (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

Related Topic

► [Basic Mode Tab](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Scanning in Advanced Mode

S205



Scanning in Advanced Mode

Use the Advanced Mode tab to specify the color mode, output resolution, image brightness, color tone, etc. when scanning.

This section explains how to scan a single document.

See "[Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#) " to scan multiple documents at one time.

Important

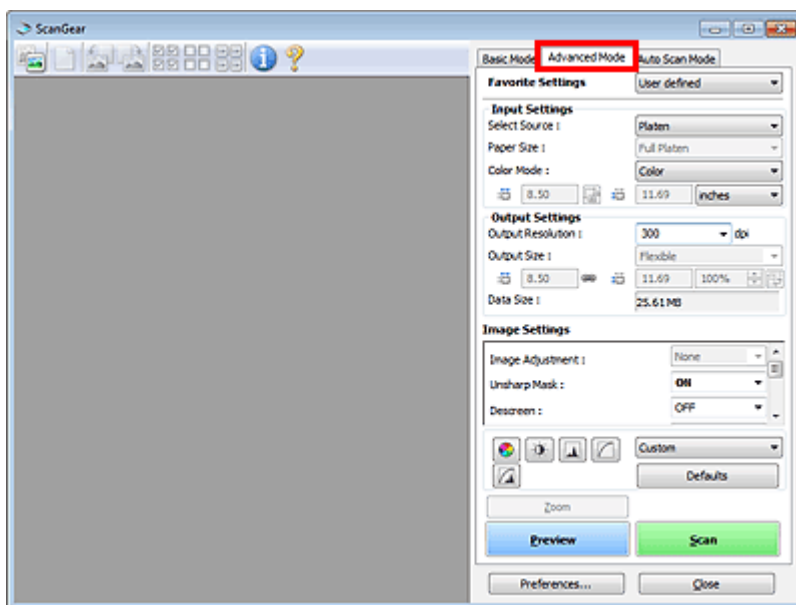
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar to switch to whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish border
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

- ➔ [Placing Documents](#)
- ➔ [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

2. Click the Advanced Mode tab.

The Advanced Mode tab appears.



Note

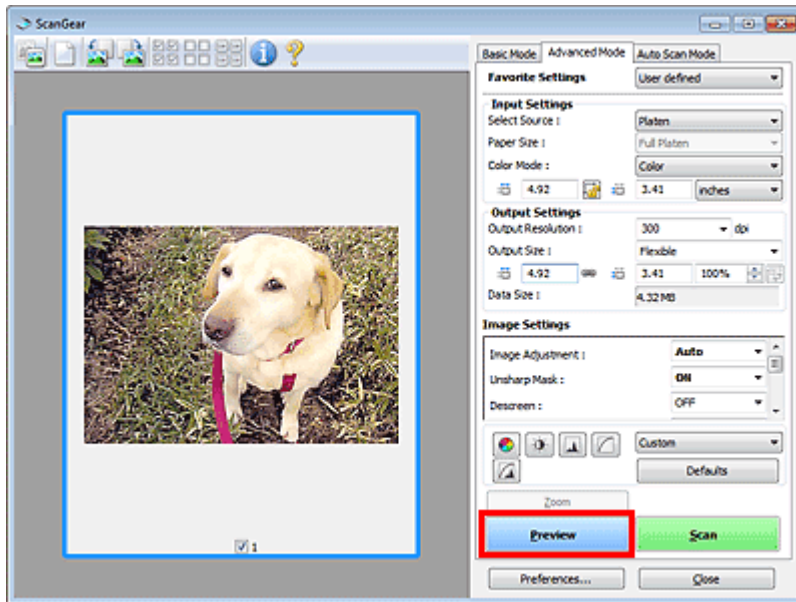
- Settings are not retained when you switch modes.

3. Set Input Settings.

➡ [Input Settings](#)

4. Click Preview.

Preview image appears in the Preview area.



Note

- If you scan without preview, the show-through reduction function will be active. This function is useful when scanning magazines. However, when scanning photos, the color tone of the scanned image may differ from the source due to the show-through reduction function. In that case, use preview first.

5. Set Output Settings.

➡ [Output Settings](#)

6. Adjust the cropping frame (scan area), correct image and adjust colors as required.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)
 ➡ [Image Settings](#)
 ➡ [Color Adjustment Buttons](#)

7. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- Click  (Information) to open a dialog box in which you can check the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
 - ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- ➡ [Scan Tab](#)

Related Topic

► [Advanced Mode Tab](#)

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

S207



Scanning in Auto Scan Mode

Use the Auto Scan Mode tab to scan easily by automatically detecting the type of document placed on the Platen.

Important

- Supported document types are photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD. To scan other documents, specify the document type on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab.
 - ➡ Scanning in Basic Mode
 - ➡ Scanning in Advanced Mode

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear (scanner driver).

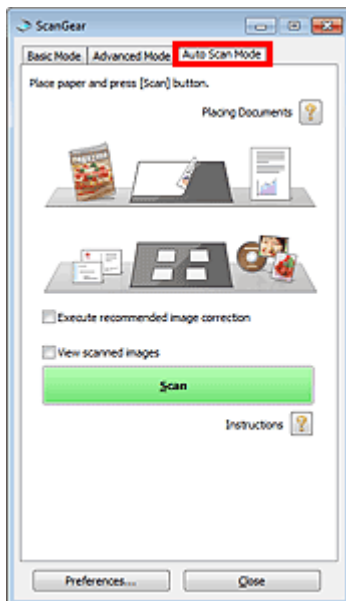
- ➡ Placing Documents
- ➡ Starting ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

2. Click the Auto Scan Mode tab.

The Auto Scan Mode tab appears.

Note

- Select the Execute recommended image correction checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically according to the type of document to be scanned.



3. Click Scan.

Starts scanning.

Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.
 - ➡ Scan Tab

Related Topic

► [Auto Scan Mode Tab](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Scanning with Advanced Settings Using ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

S208

ScanGear

Scanning Multiple Documents at One Time with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

You can scan two or more photos (small documents) on the Platen at one time on the Basic Mode tab and Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver).

This section explains how to scan multiple documents from the Basic Mode tab.

Important

- To scan multiple documents as a single image, scan in whole image view.
- The following types of documents may not be cropped correctly. In that case, adjust the cropping frames (scan areas) in whole image view and scan.
 - Photos that have a whitish border
 - Documents printed on white paper, hand-written text, business cards, etc.
 - Thin documents
 - Thick documents
- ➡ [Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View](#)
- The following types of documents cannot be cropped correctly.
 - Documents smaller than 1.18 inches (3 cm) square
 - Photos that have been cut to various shapes

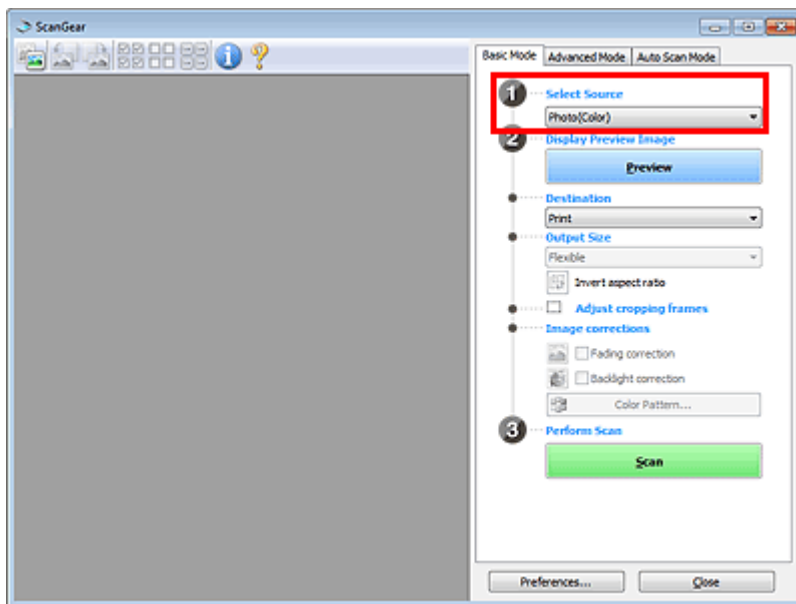
Note

- See "[Scanning in Auto Scan Mode](#)" to scan easily by automatically detecting the document type.
- You can also scan multiple documents at one time from the Advanced Mode tab. Use the Advanced Mode tab to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.
- See the corresponding sections below for details on the Basic Mode tab and Advanced Mode tab.
 - ➡ [Basic Mode Tab](#)
 - ➡ [Advanced Mode Tab](#)

1. Place the document on the Platen, then start ScanGear.

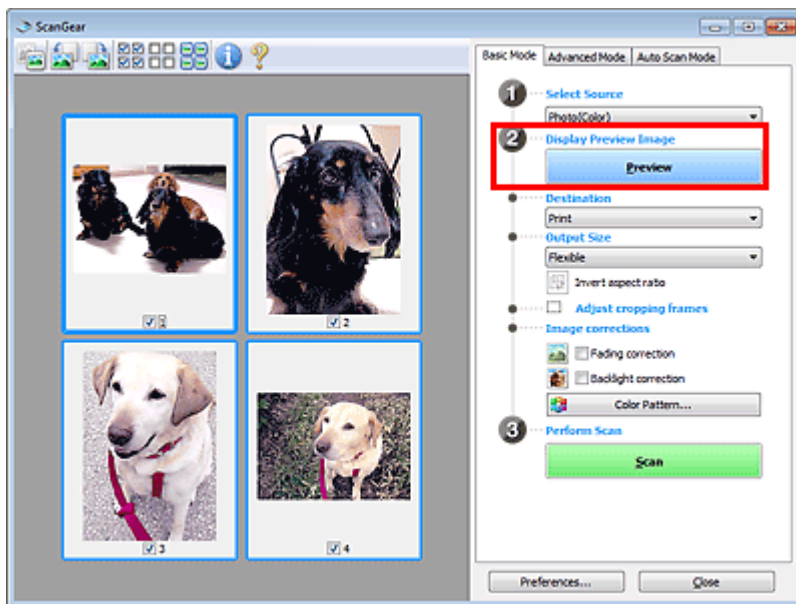
- ➡ [Placing Documents](#)
- ➡ [Starting ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

2. Set Select Source according to the document placed on the Platen.



3. Click Preview.

Thumbnails of the preview images appear in the Preview area. Images are cropped (scan areas are specified) automatically according to the document size.



4. Set Destination.

5. Set Output Size.

6. Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames) and set Image corrections as required.

Note

- You can correct each image separately. Select the frame you want to correct.
 - In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame (scan area) per image. To create multiple cropping frames in an image, scan in whole image view.
- ➔ [Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View](#)

7. Select the images you want to scan.

Select the checkboxes of the images you want to scan.

8. Click Scan.

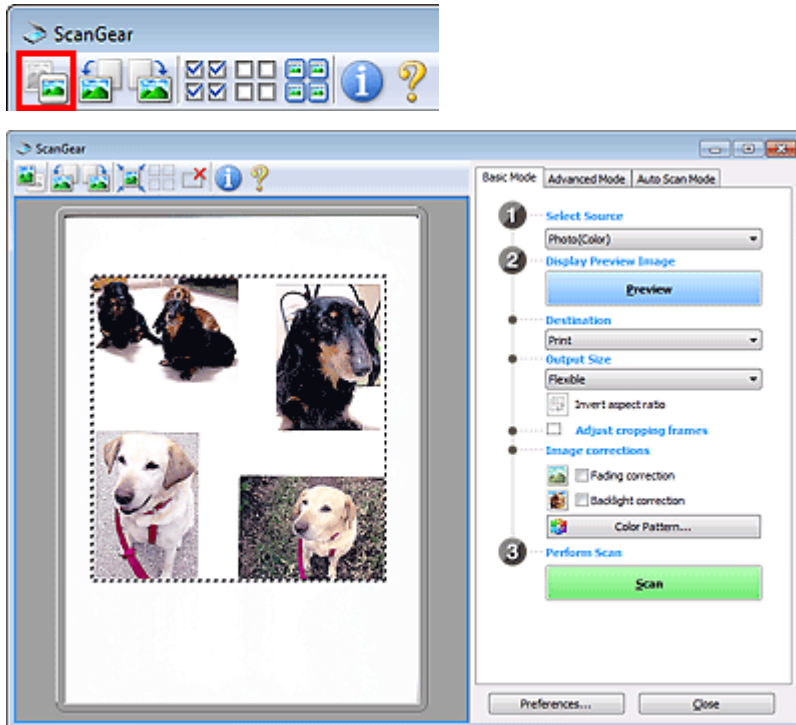
Scanning Multiple Documents in Whole Image View

Follow these steps if thumbnails are not displayed correctly when previewed or if you want to scan multiple documents as a single image.

Note

- Positions of slanted documents are not corrected in whole image view.

- After previewing images, click  (Thumbnail) on the Toolbar.
Switch to whole image view.



Note

- When the whole image is displayed, the icon changes to  (Whole Image).

- Adjust the scan areas (cropping frames).

Adjust the size and position of the cropping frame (scan area) on the preview image. You can also create two or more cropping frames.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the specified area will be scanned.

➡ Adjusting Cropping Frames

- Set Destination.
- Set Output Size.
- Set Image corrections as required.
- Click Scan.

Areas framed by broken lines are scanned.

 Note

- ScanGear's response after scanning can be specified in Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning on the Scan tab of the Preferences dialog box.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\)](#)

S300

ScanGear

Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

The following sections provide you with tips and know-how on advanced scanning techniques involving color/brightness adjustment, etc.

- **Sharpening out-of-focus photos, reducing dust and scratches, and correcting faded colors**
 - ➡ [Correcting Images \(Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.\)](#)
- **Previewing and changing the color tone of the entire image to scan**
 - ➡ [Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern](#)
- **Brightening colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast**
 - ➡ [Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance](#)
- **Adjusting images that are too dark or bright, or too flat due to lack of contrast**
 - ➡ [Adjusting Brightness and Contrast](#)
- **Adjusting the color tone using histogram (a graph showing brightness distribution)**
 - ➡ [Adjusting Histogram](#)
- **Adjusting the image brightness using tone curve (a graph of brightness balance)**
 - ➡ [Adjusting Tone Curve](#)
- **Sharpening characters in text documents or reducing show-through effects**
 - ➡ [Setting Threshold](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

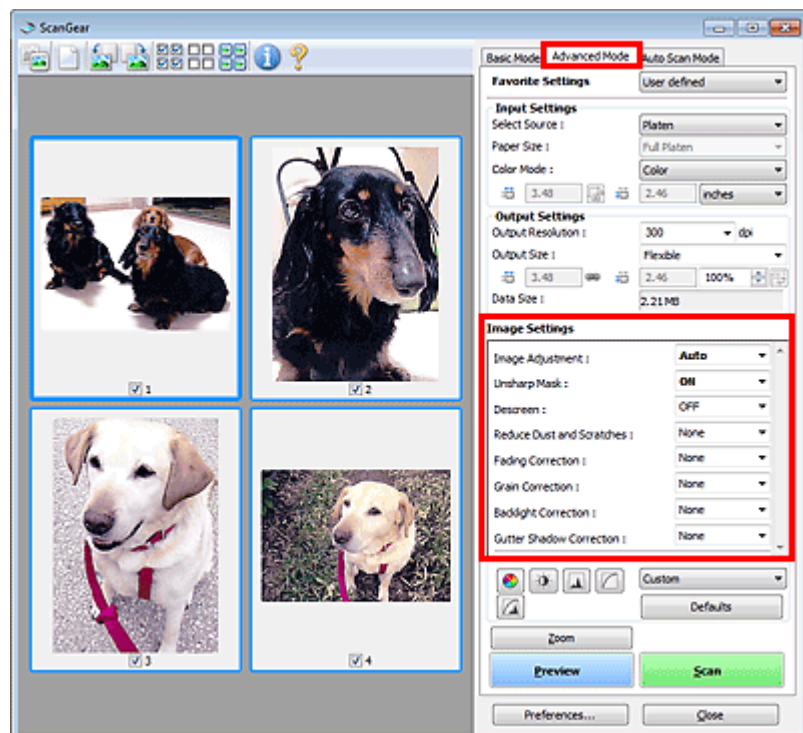
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

S308

ScanGear

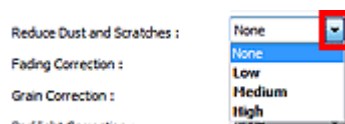
Correcting Images (Unsharp Mask, Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, etc.)

The Image Settings functions on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver) allow you to enhance the outline of the subjects, reduce dust/scratches and correct faded colors when scanning images.



Setting Items

Click  (Arrow) of a function and select an item from the pull-down menu.



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- See "Image Settings" for details and precautions on each function.

Note

- See "Scanning in Advanced Mode" to start the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear and scan.

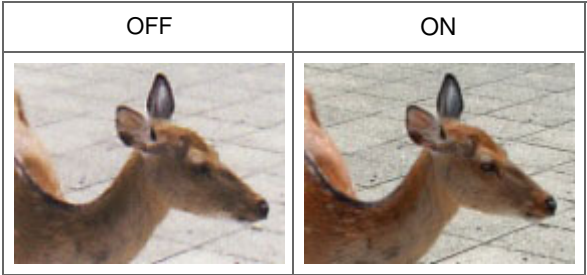
Adjusting the image brightness and color tone

Set Image Adjustment to Auto, Photo, Magazine, Newspaper or Document according to the document type.



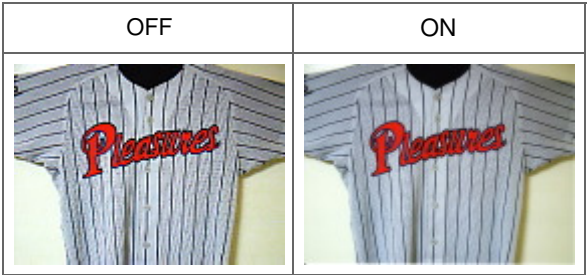
Sharpening slightly out-of-focus images

Set Unsharp Mask to ON.



Reducing gradations and stripe patterns

Set Descreen to ON.

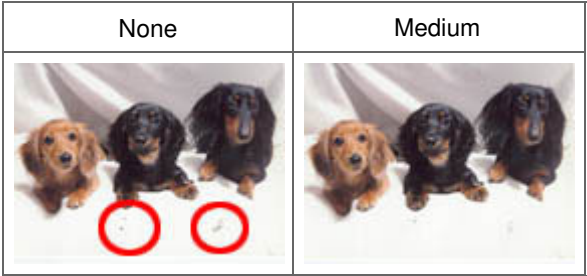


Note

- Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Reducing dust and scratches

Set Reduce Dust and Scratches to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of dust and scratches.



Correcting photos that have faded with time or due to colorcast

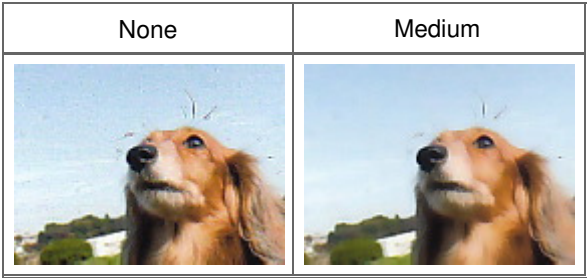
Set Fading Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of fading or colorcast.





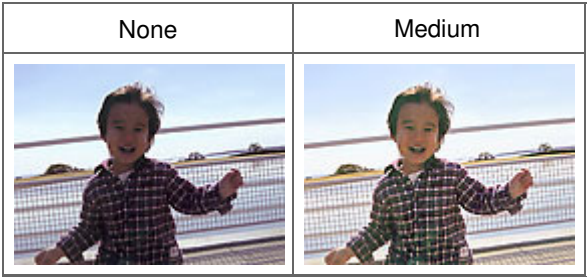
Reducing graininess

Set Grain Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of graininess.



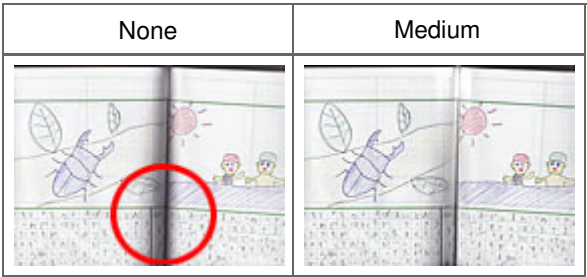
Correcting backlit images

Set Backlight Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of backlight.



Correcting shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets

Set Gutter Shadow Correction to Low, Medium or High according to the degree of shadows.



Advanced Guide

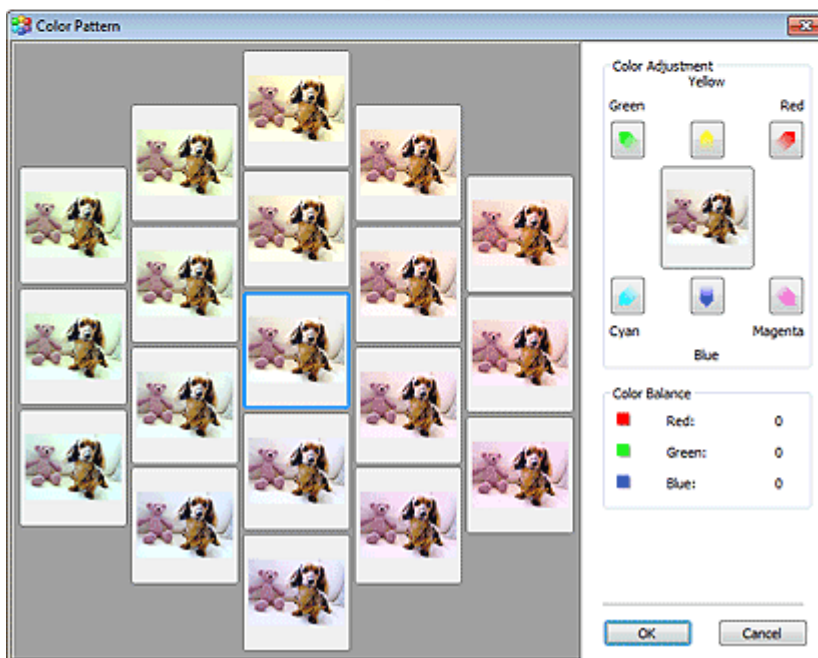
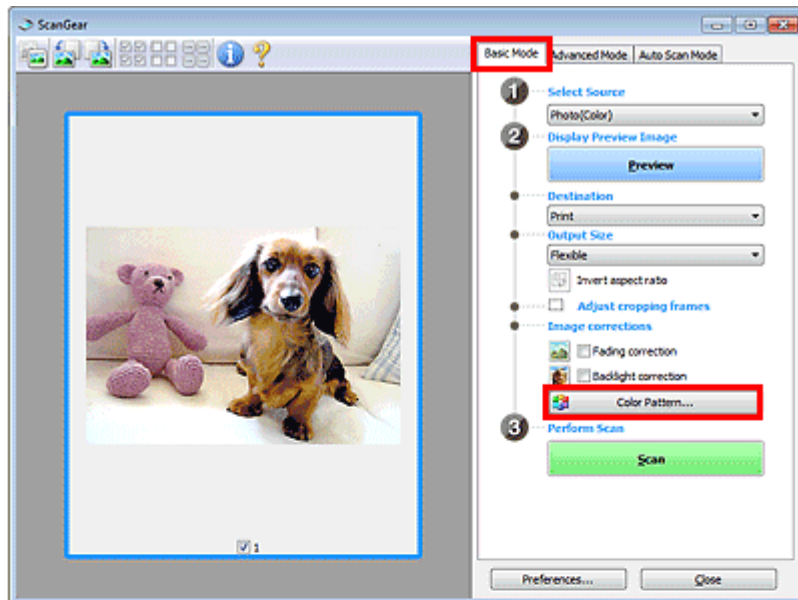
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

S301

ScanGear

Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern

You can preview color changes and reproduce natural colors by using the color pattern function in ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Basic Mode tab.



Color Adjustment

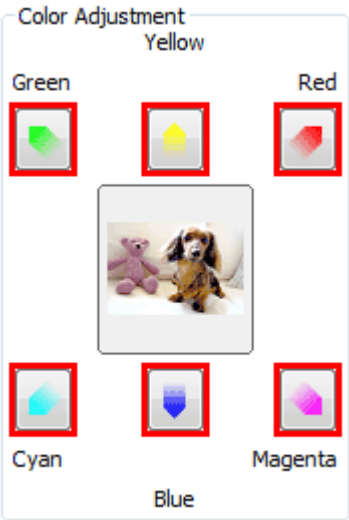
Correct colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Click an arrow in Color Adjustment to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & red, magenta & green and yellow & blue are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust the colors so that the portion turns white.

Preview image appears in the center. Preview image colors change as you adjust them.



Below is an example of correcting a bluish image.

Since Blue and Green are too strong, click the Yellow and Magenta arrows to correct.

Before	After
	

 Note

- Color adjustments are applied only to the scan area (cropping frame) or the frame selected in thumbnail view.
You can select multiple frames or cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
- You can also select a color tone from the color pattern displayed on the left of the Color Pattern screen.
- You can also use this function to add a specific tint to an image. Increase the magenta to add a warm tint, and increase the blue to add a cool tint.

Advanced Guide

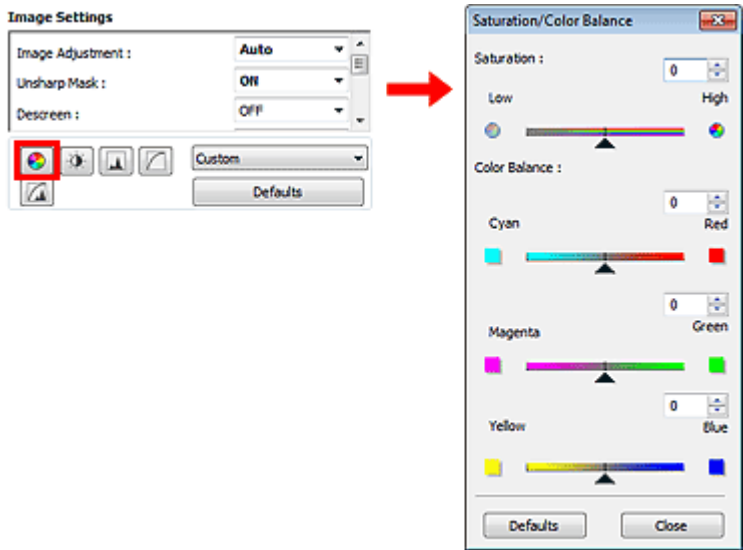
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

S303



Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Saturation/Color Balance).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Saturation

Adjust the image's saturation (vividness). You can brighten colors that have faded with time, etc.
Move  (Slider) under Saturation to the left to decrease the saturation (darken the image), and to the right to increase the saturation (brighten the image). You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Saturation decreased	Original image	Saturation increased
		

Note

- The natural color tone of the original image may be lost if you increase saturation too much.

Color Balance

Adjust images that have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the

entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

Move ▲ (Slider) under Color Balance to the left or right to emphasize the corresponding color.

Cyan & Red

Magenta & Green

Yellow & Blue

These are complementary color pairs (each pair produces a shade of gray when mixed). You can reproduce the natural colors of the scene by reducing the cast color and increasing the complementary color.

It is usually difficult to correct the image completely by adjusting only one color pair. It is recommended that you find a portion in the image where it should be white, and adjust all three color pairs so that the portion turns white.

You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

Below is an example of an image in which the "Cyan & Red" pair has been adjusted.



Cyan is increased	Red is increased

Advanced Guide

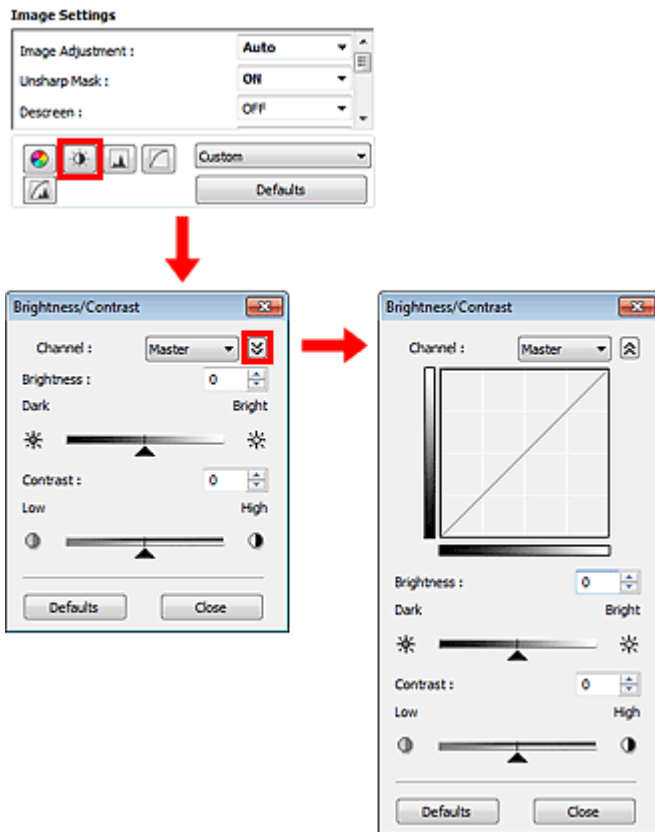
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

S304

ScanGear

Adjusting Brightness and Contrast

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Brightness/Contrast).



Note

- Click  (Down arrow) to switch to detailed view. Click  (Up arrow) to return to the previous view.
- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- **Master**
Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.
- **Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- **Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- **Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.

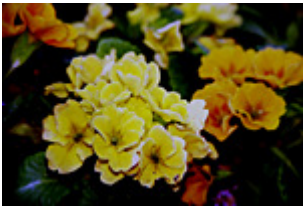
 Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

Brightness

Adjust the image brightness. Move  (Slider) under Brightness to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Darkened	Original image	Brightened
		

 Note

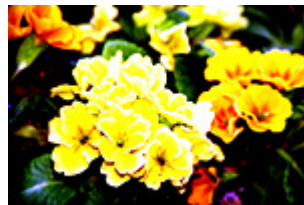
- Highlights may be lost if you brighten the image too much, and shadows may be lost if you darken the image too much.

Contrast

"Contrast" is the degree of difference between the brighter and darker parts of an image. Increasing contrast will increase the difference, thus sharpening the image. Decreasing contrast will decrease the difference, thus softening the image.

Move  (Slider) under Contrast to the left to decrease and right to increase the contrast of the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).



Decreased contrast	Original image	Increased contrast
		

 Note

- Increasing the contrast is effective in adding a three-dimensional feel to soft images. However, shadows and highlights may be lost if you increase the contrast too much.

Advanced Guide

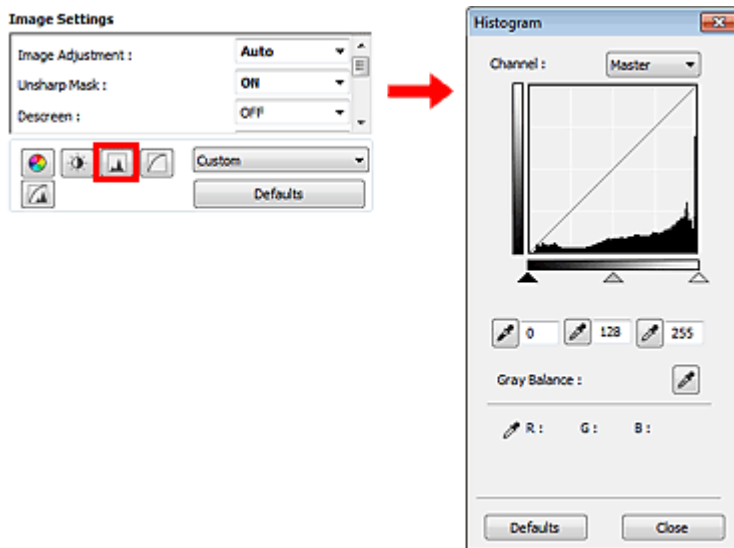
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Adjusting Histogram

S305

ScanGear

Adjusting Histogram

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Histogram).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

- Master**
Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.
- Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

Reading Histograms

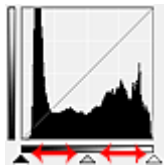
You can see the histogram of a specified area for each Channel. The higher the histogram peak, the more data is distributed to that level.



(1) Bright area	(2) Dark area	(3) Whole image
More data is distributed to the highlight side.	More data is distributed to the shadow side.	Data is widely distributed between the highlight and shadow.

Adjusting Histograms (Using the Slider)

Select a Channel, then move  (Black-point Slider) or  (White-point Slider) to specify the level to be set as the shadow or highlight.



- All parts to the left of  (Black-point Slider) will be black (level 0).
- The parts at  (Mid-point Slider) will turn to the color exactly between the black-point and white-point.
- All parts to the right of  (White-point Slider) will turn white (level 255).

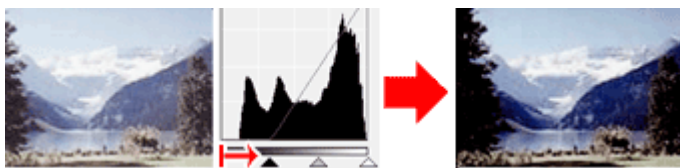
When Image Adjustment is set to anything but None, the adjustments shown below are performed automatically.

Moving the Black-point and White-point Sliders

Move the Black-point Slider or White-point Slider to adjust brightness.

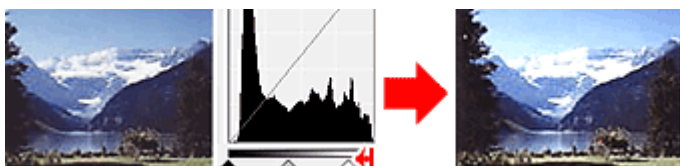
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side.



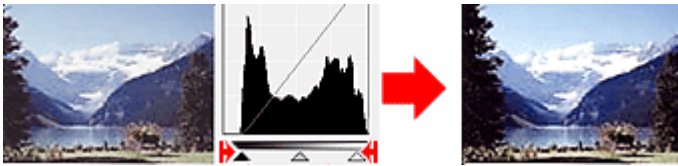
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the White-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Images with widely distributed data

Move the Black-point Slider toward the highlight side, and White-point Slider toward the shadow side.

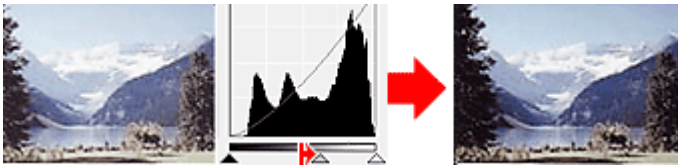


Moving the Mid-point Slider

Move the Mid-point Slider to specify the level to be set as the middle of the tonal range.

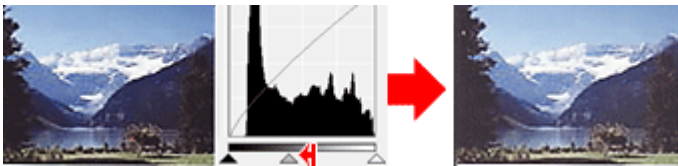
Images with more data distributed to the highlight side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the highlight side.



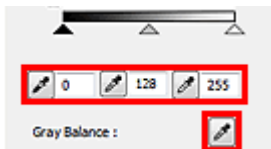
Images with more data distributed to the shadow side

Move the Mid-point Slider toward the shadow side.



Adjusting Histograms (Using the Droppers)

When you select a Channel and click the Black-point, Mid-point or White-point Dropper, the mouse pointer on the preview image changes to a dropper. Click a Dropper displayed below the histogram to change the setting.



- The point clicked with  (Black-point Dropper) will be the darkest point. You can also enter a value (0 to 245).

- The point clicked with  (Mid-point Dropper) will be the middle of the tonal range. You can also enter a value (5 to 250).

- The point clicked with  (White-point Dropper) will be the brightest point. You can also enter a value (10 to 255).

- Click  (Dropper) for Gray Balance and click the area you want to adjust the color in the preview image.

The clicked point will be set as the achromatic color reference, and the rest of the image is adjusted accordingly. For instance, if snow in a photo appears bluish, click the bluish part to adjust the whole image and reproduce natural colors.

Advanced Guide

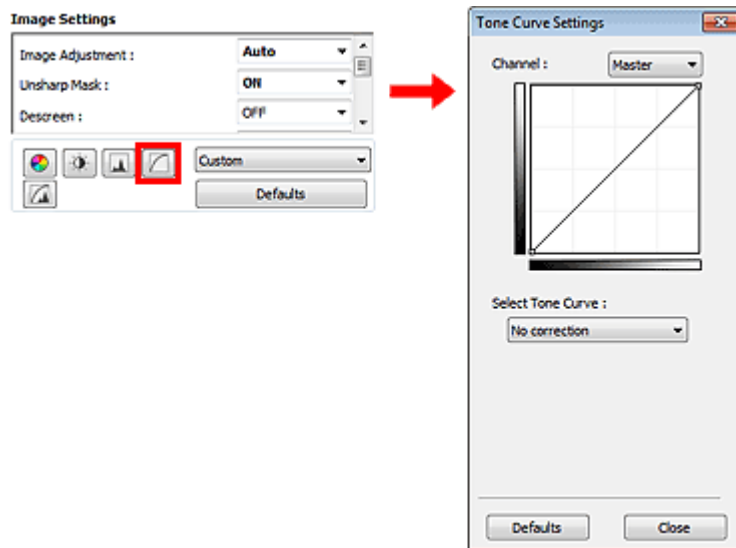
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Adjusting Tone Curve

S306

ScanGear

Adjusting Tone Curve

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Tone Curve Settings).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Channel

Each dot of an image is a mixture of Red, Green and Blue in various proportions (gradation). These colors can be adjusted individually as a "channel."

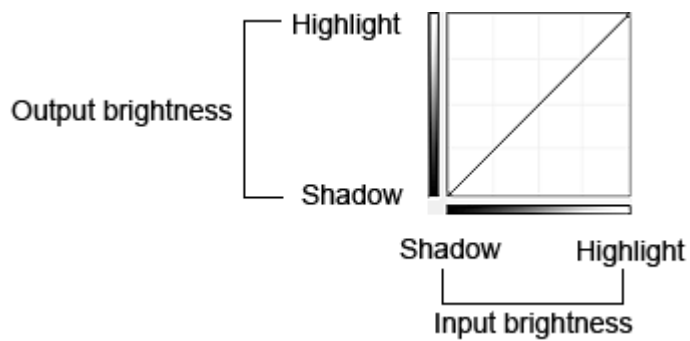
- Master**
Adjust the Red, Green and Blue combined.
- Red**
Adjust the Red channel.
- Green**
Adjust the Green channel.
- Blue**
Adjust the Blue channel.

Note

- Only Grayscale will be displayed in Channel when Color Mode is Grayscale.

Reading Tone Curves

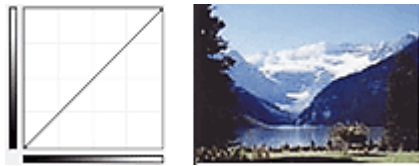
With ScanGear, scanning images via a scanner is the input, and displaying to a monitor is the output. "Tone Curve" shows the balance of tone input and output for each Channel.



Adjusting Tone Curve

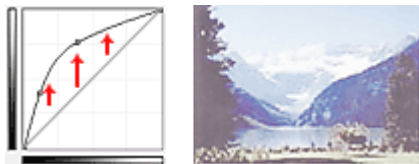
In Select Tone Curve, select a tone curve from No correction, Overexposure, Underexposure, High contrast, Reverse the negative/positive image and Edit custom curve.

No correction (No adjustment)



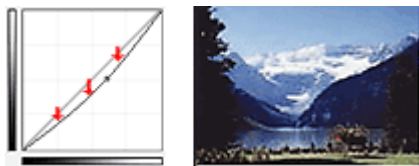
Overexposure (Convex curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the highlight of the output side, resulting in a bright-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



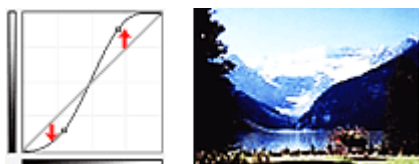
Underexposure (Concave curve)

The midtone data of the input side is stretched toward the shadow of the output side, resulting in a dark-toned image when viewed on a monitor.



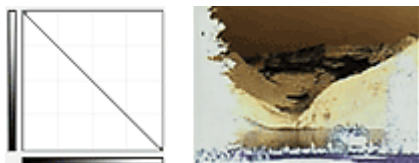
High contrast (S curve)

The highlight and shadow of the input side are enhanced, resulting in a high-contrast image.



Reverse the negative/positive image (Downward-sloping line)

The input and output sides are reversed, resulting in a negative-positive inverted image.



Edit custom curve

You can drag specific points on the Tone Curve to freely adjust the brightness of the corresponding areas.

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Correcting Images and Adjusting Colors with ScanGear (Scanner Driver) > Setting Threshold

S307

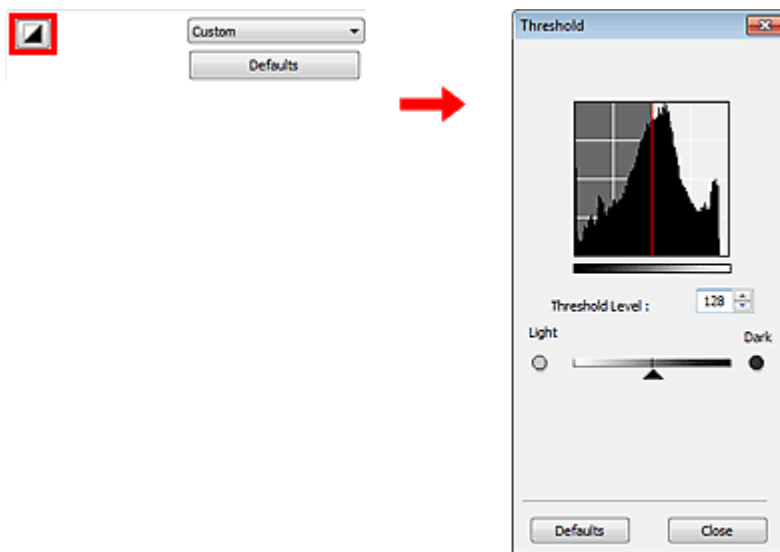
ScanGear

Setting Threshold

The brightness of color and grayscale images is expressed in a value between 0 and 255. However, in creating black and white images, all colors are mapped to either black (0) or white (255). "Threshold" is the borderline value that determines a color as black or white. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

This function is available when Color Mode is Black and White.

In ScanGear (scanner driver)'s Advanced Mode tab, click  (Threshold).



Note

- Click Defaults to reset all adjustments in the current window.

Adjusting Threshold

Move  (Slider) to the right to increase the threshold value and thus increase the black areas. Move the slider to the left to decrease the value and thus increase the white areas. You can also enter a value (0 to 255).



[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#)

S800

ScanGear

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens

The following sections describe ScanGear (scanner driver)'s screens and functions, and how to use ScanGear.

- ➡ Basic Mode Tab
- ➡ Advanced Mode Tab
 - Input Settings
 - Output Settings
 - Image Settings
 - Color Adjustment Buttons
- ➡ Auto Scan Mode Tab
- ➡ Preferences Dialog Box
 - Scanner Tab
 - Preview Tab
 - Scan Tab
 - Color Settings Tab

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Basic Mode Tab

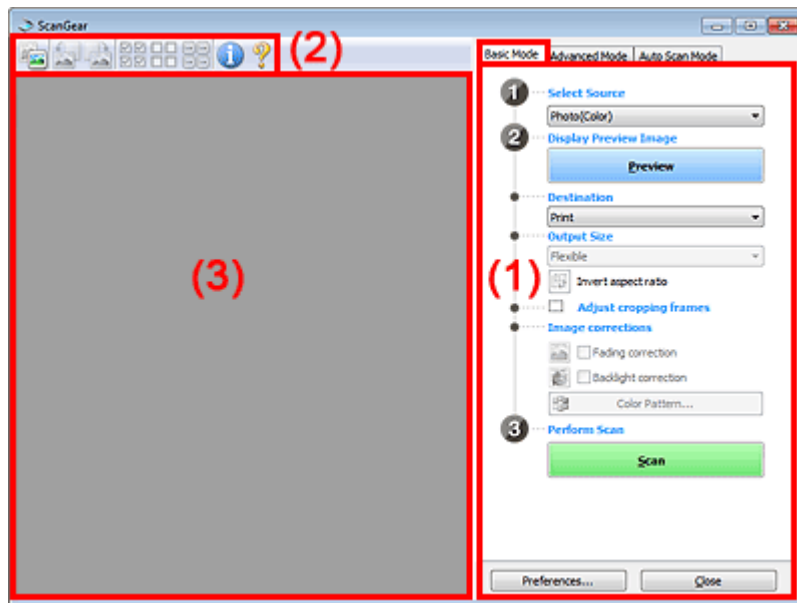
S801

ScanGear

Basic Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by following the on-screen steps.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the Basic Mode tab.



(1) Settings and Operation Buttons

(2) Toolbar

(3) Preview Area

Note

- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

- **Select Source**
 - **Photo(Color)**
Scan color photos.
 - **Magazine(Color)**
Scan color magazines.
 - **Newspaper(Grayscale)**
Scan text and line drawings in black and white.
 - **Document(Grayscale)**
Scan documents and photos in black and white.
Select this mode to create high-resolution black and white images.

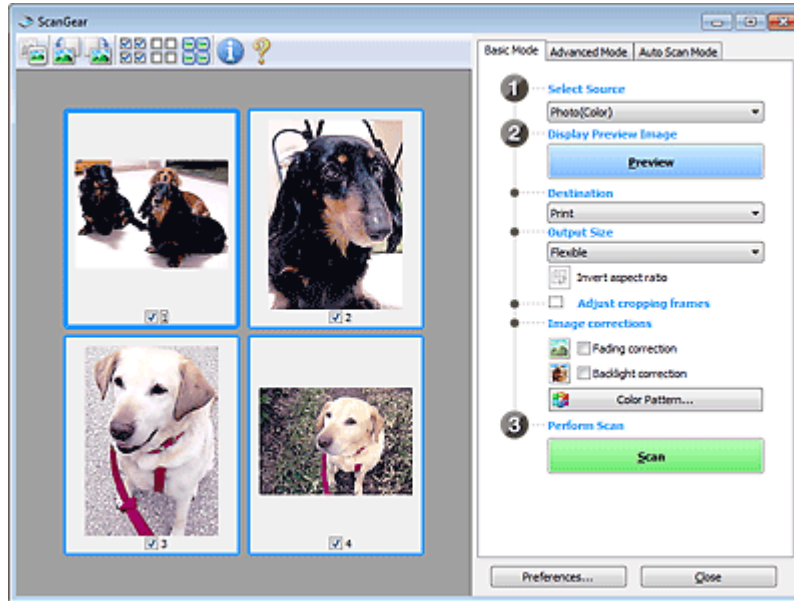
Note

- When you select a document type, the unsharp mask function will be active. The image adjustment function which adjusts images based on the document type will also be active.
- If you select Magazine(Color), the descreen function will be active.

- **Display Preview Image**

- **Preview**

Performs a trial scan.



Note

- When using the machine for the first time, scanner calibration starts automatically. Wait a while until the preview image appears.

- **Destination**

Select what you want to do with the scanned image.

- **Print**

Select this to print the scanned image on a printer.

- **Image display**

Select this to view the scanned image on a monitor.

- **OCR**

Select this to use the scanned image with OCR software.

"OCR software" is software that converts text scanned as an image into text data that can be edited in word processors and other programs.

- **Output Size**

Select an output size.

Output size options vary by the item selected in Destination.

- **Flexible**

Allows you to freely adjust the cropping frames.

In thumbnail view

Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

In whole image view

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

- **Paper Size (L, A4, etc.)**

Select an output paper size. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

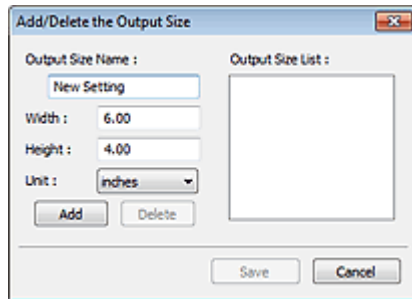
- **Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

Select an output size in pixels.

A cropping frame of the selected monitor size will be displayed and the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge/reduce it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes. You can select this option when Destination is Print or Image display.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, enter Output Size Name, Width and Height, then click Add. For Unit, you can select inches or mm when Destination is Print but you can only select pixels when Destination is Image display. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.



Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.



Note

- Save up to 10 items.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the setting range.



Note

- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " [Preview Tab](#) " (Preferences dialog box).

- **Invert aspect ratio**

This button is available when Output Size is set to anything but Flexible.

Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Adjust cropping frames**

You can adjust the scan area within the Preview area.

If an area is not specified, the document will be scanned at the document size (Auto Crop). If an area is specified, only the portion in the cropping frame will be scanned.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

- **Image corrections**

Allows you to apply corrections to images.



Important

- Available functions vary by the document type selected in Select Source.
- Auto Document Fix, Fading correction and Backlight correction are available when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Auto Document Fix**

Sharpens text in a document or magazine for better readability.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected in ScanGear (scanner driver) started from MP Navigator EX, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.
- Auto Document Fix may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Fading correction**

Corrects and scans photos that have faded with time or have a colorcast.

- **Backlight correction**

Corrects photos that have been shot against light.

- **Gutter shadow correction**

Corrects shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets.

Important

- For precautions on using this function, see " [Gutter Shadow Correction](#)."

- **Color Pattern...**

Allows you to adjust the image's overall color. You can correct colors that have faded due to colorcast, etc. and reproduce natural colors while previewing color changes.

➡ [Adjusting Colors Using a Color Pattern](#)

Important

- This setting is not available when you select Color Matching on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

- **Perform Scan**

- **Scan**

Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.

- **Preferences...**

The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **Close**

Closes ScanGear.

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

In thumbnail view



In whole image view



-  **(Thumbnail)/**  **(Whole Image)**
Switches the view in the Preview area.
➡ [Preview Area](#)
-  **(Rotate Left)**
Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.
- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.
-  **(Rotate Right)**
Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.
- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.
-  **(Auto Crop)**
Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.
-  **(Check All Frames)**
This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.
-  **(Uncheck All Frames)**
This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.
-  **(Select All Frames)**
This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.
Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.
-  **(Select All Cropping Frames)**
This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.
All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.
-  **(Remove Cropping Frame)**
Removes the selected cropping frame.
-  **(Information)**
Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).
-  **(Open Guide)**
This page appears.

Preview Area

- **Preview Area**
This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " [Settings and Operation Buttons](#) ."

When  **(Thumbnail)** is displayed on the Toolbar

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.

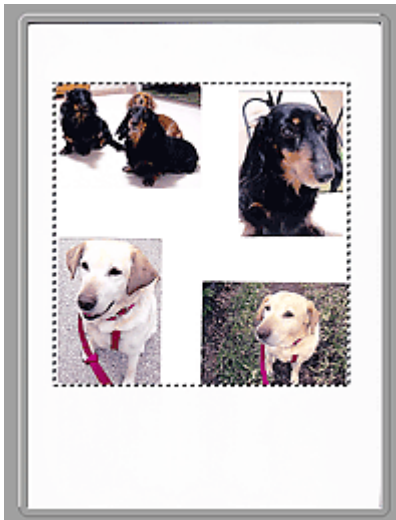


Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
 - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
 - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
 - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.
- Double-click a frame to zoom in on the image. Click   (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

When (Whole Image) is displayed on the Toolbar

Items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

Related Topic

► [Scanning in Basic Mode](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Advanced Mode Tab

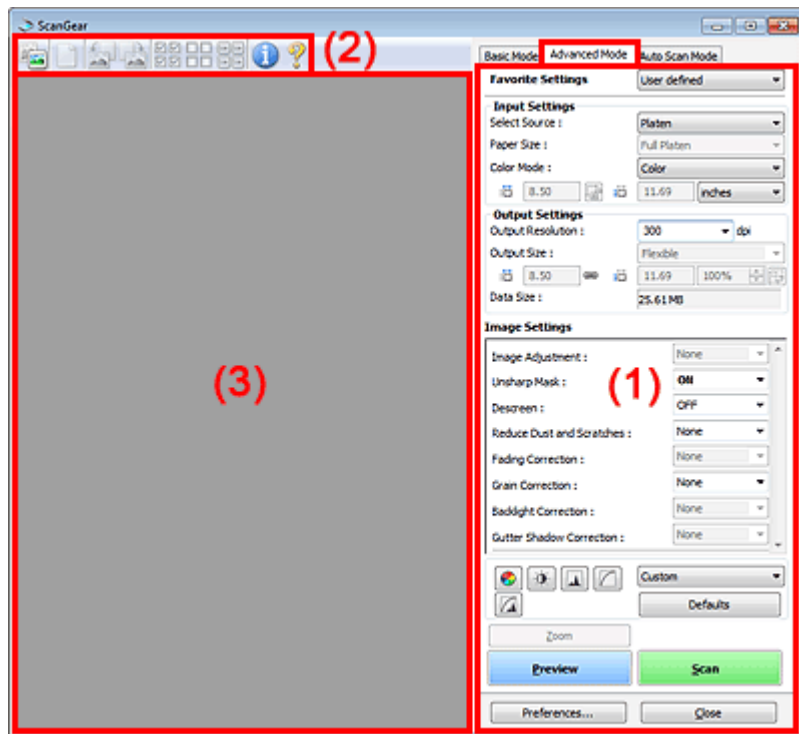
S803

ScanGear

Advanced Mode Tab

This mode allows you to make advanced scan settings such as the color mode, output resolution, image brightness and color tone.

This section describes the settings and functions available on the Advanced Mode tab.



- (1) Settings and Operation Buttons
- (2) Toolbar
- (3) Preview Area

Note

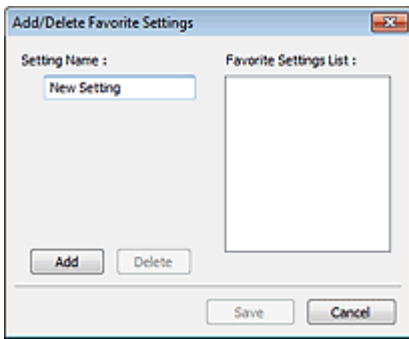
- The displayed items vary by document type and how the screen was opened.

Settings and Operation Buttons

• Favorite Settings

You can name and save a group of settings (Input Settings, Output Settings, Image Settings and Color Adjustment Buttons) on Advanced Mode tab, and load it as required. It is convenient to save a group of settings if you will be using it repeatedly. You can also use this to reload the default settings.

Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu and the Add/Delete Favorite Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Favorite Settings List.

When you click Save, the item appears in the Favorite Settings list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

To delete an item, select it in Favorite Settings List and click Delete. Click Save to save settings displayed in Favorite Settings List.

Note

- You can set Add/Delete... in Favorite Settings after preview.
- Save up to 10 items.

● Input Settings

Specify the input settings such as the document type and size.

➡ [Input Settings](#)

● Output Settings

Specify the output settings such as the output resolution and size.

➡ [Output Settings](#)

● Image Settings

Enable/disable various image correction functions.

➡ [Image Settings](#)

● Color Adjustment Buttons

These buttons can be used to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

➡ [Color Adjustment Buttons](#)

● Zoom

Zooms in on an image or the portion within the cropping frame. When the image is zoomed in, Zoom changes to Undo. Click Undo to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In thumbnail view

When multiple images are displayed in thumbnail view, clicking this button zooms in on the selected

frame. Click  (Frame Advance) at the bottom of the screen to display the previous or next frame.

Note

- You can also zoom in on an image by double-clicking the frame. Double-click the frame again to return the display to its non-magnified state.

In whole image view

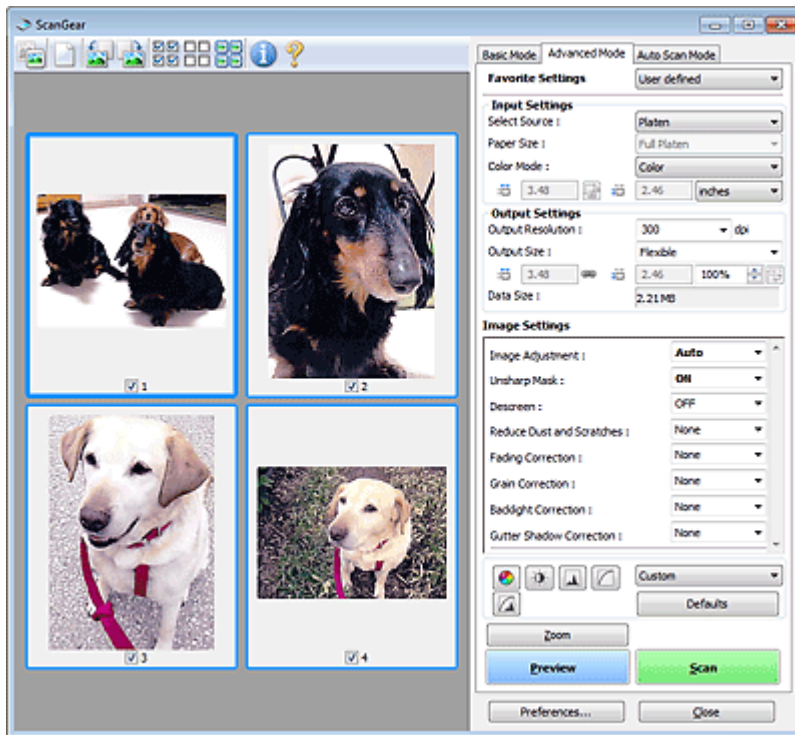
Rescans the portion within the cropping frame at higher magnification.

Note

- Zoom rescans the image and displays high-resolution image in Preview.
-  (Enlarge/Reduce) on the Toolbar zooms in on the preview image quickly. However, the resolution of the displayed image will be low.

- **Preview**

Performs a trial scan.



- **Scan**

Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in "Scan Tab" (Preferences dialog box).
- It will take time to process the images if the total size of the scanned images exceeds a certain size. In that case, a warning message appears. It is recommended that you reduce the total size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

- **Preferences...**

The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

- **Close**

Closes ScanGear (scanner driver).

Toolbar

- **Toolbar**

You can adjust or rotate preview images. The buttons displayed on the Toolbar vary by view.

In thumbnail view



In whole image view



-  **(Thumbnail)/**  **(Whole Image)**

Switches the view in the Preview area.

➡ **Preview Area**

-  **(Clear)**

Click this button to delete the preview image.

It also resets the Toolbar and color adjustment settings.

-  **(Crop)**

Allows you to specify the scan area by dragging the mouse.

-  **(Move Image)**

If an enlarged image is too large to fit in the Preview area, you can click this button and drag the image across the screen until the part you want to see is displayed. You can also move the image using the scroll bars.

-  **(Enlarge/Reduce)**

Click this button then click on the image to enlarge it (zoom in). Right-click on the image to reduce it (zoom out).

-  **(Rotate Left)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees counter-clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

-  **(Rotate Right)**

Rotates the preview image 90 degrees clockwise.

- The result will be reflected in the scanned image.
- The image returns to its original state when you preview again.

-  **(Auto Crop)**

Displays and adjusts the cropping frame automatically to the size of the document displayed in the Preview area. The scan area is reduced every time you click this button if there are croppable areas within the cropping frame.

-  **(Check All Frames)**

This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

-  **(Uncheck All Frames)**

This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.

Deselects the checkbox of the image in thumbnail view.

-  **(Select All Frames)**

This button is available when two or more frames are displayed.

Selects the image in thumbnail view and the image will be outlined in blue.

-  **(Select All Cropping Frames)**

This button is available when there are two or more cropping frames.

All cropping frames will be displayed in thick broken lines. The settings will be applied to all the cropping frames.

-  **(Remove Cropping Frame)**

Removes the selected cropping frame.

-  **(Information)**

Displays the version of ScanGear and the current scan settings (document type, etc.).

-  **(Open Guide)**

This page appears.

Preview Area

• Preview Area

This is where a trial image is displayed after you click Preview. You can also check the results of the settings (image corrections, color adjustments, etc.) made in " [Settings and Operation Buttons](#) ."

When **(Thumbnail) is displayed on the Toolbar**

Thumbnails of images cropped to the document size are displayed. Only the images with the checkbox selected will be scanned.



Note

- When multiple images are previewed, different outlines indicate different selection status.
 - Focus Frame (thick blue outline): The displayed settings will be applied.
 - Selected Frame (thin blue outline): The settings will be applied to the Focus Frame and Selected Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple images by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.
 - Unselected (no outline): The settings will not be applied.

When **(Whole Image) is displayed on the Toolbar**

Items on the Platen are scanned and displayed as a single image. All portions in the cropping frames will be scanned.



Note

- You can specify the scan area (cropping frame) on the displayed image. In thumbnail view, you can only create one cropping frame per image. In whole image view, you can create multiple cropping frames.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

Related Topic

▶ [Scanning in Advanced Mode](#)

[Page top](#)↑

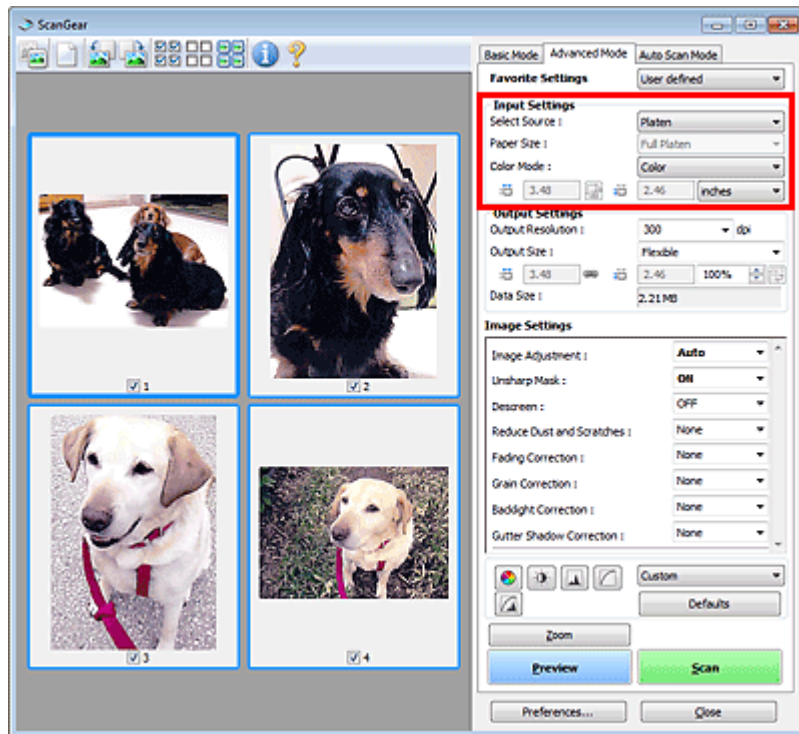
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Input Settings

S804

ScanGear

Input Settings



Input Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Select Source**

The type of document to be scanned is displayed.

- **Paper Size**

Select the size of the document to be scanned. This setting is available in whole image view only. When you select a size, the Preview area size changes accordingly.

Important

- Some applications have a limit to the amount of scan data they can receive. ScanGear (scanner driver) can scan data that is of:
 - 21000 pixels x 30000 pixels or less
- If you change Paper Size after previewing, the preview image will be deleted.

Note

- If you are not sure which size you should select for Paper Size, set Paper Size to Full Platen, then measure the size of the document and enter the values into  (Width) and  (Height).

- **Color Mode**

Select how to scan the document.

- **Color**

Select this mode to scan color documents or to create color images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of R(ed), G(reen), and B(lue).

- **Grayscale**

Select this mode to scan black and white photos, or to create black and white images. This mode renders the image in 256 levels (8 bit) of black and white.

- **Black and White**

Select this mode to scan photos and documents in black and white. This mode renders the image in black and white. The contrast in the image is divided at certain levels (threshold level)

into black and white and is rendered in two colors. The threshold level can be set with (Threshold).



- **Input Size**

In thumbnail view, the cropped document size is displayed after preview.

In whole image view, the Paper Size is displayed before preview, and the cropping frame (scan area) size is displayed after preview.

You can adjust the cropping frame size by entering the values into (Width) and (Height).

Click (Change Aspect Ratio) and change it to (Keep Aspect Ratio) to maintain the aspect ratio when you specify the cropping frame size.



Important

- Input size settings are available only when Output Size in Output Settings is Flexible. If you select a size other than Flexible, a cropping frame calculated from Output Size and Output Resolution is displayed, and its aspect ratio is fixed.



Note

- The values you can enter will be within the range of the selected document size. The minimum size is 96 pixels x 96 pixels when Output Resolution is 600 dpi, scaled at 100%.
- When Auto Crop is performed in whole image view, the aspect ratio will not be maintained since the size will be prioritized.
- See "[Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)" for details on cropping frames.

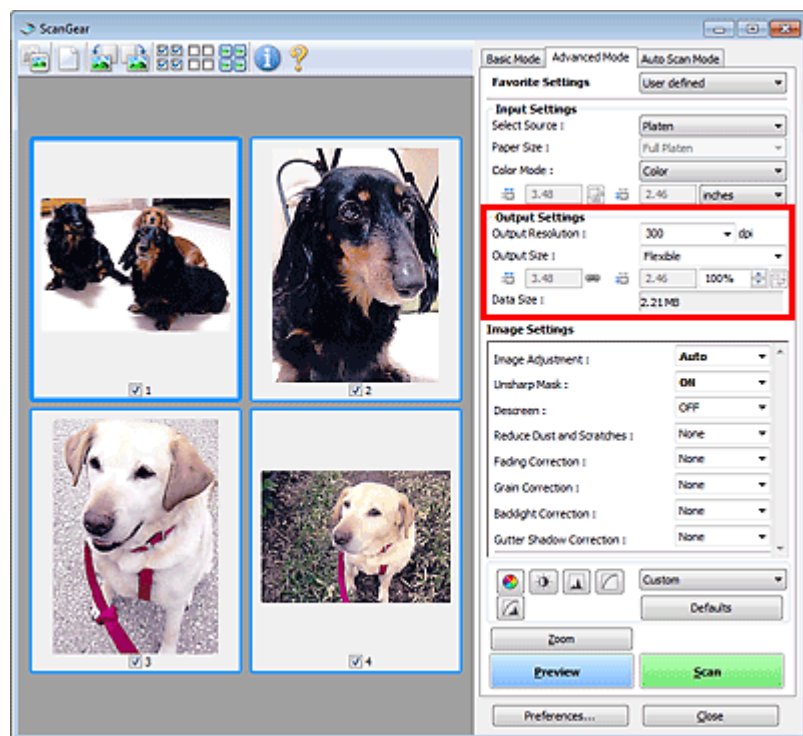
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Output Settings

S805

ScanGear

Output Settings



Output Settings allows you to set the following items:

- **Output Resolution**

Select the resolution to scan at.

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image.

Select a resolution from the options displayed by clicking the button, or enter a value within the range of 25 dpi to 19200 dpi (in 1 dpi increments).

➔ Resolution

- **Output Size**

Select an output size.

Select Flexible to set custom sizes or select a size for printing or displaying. Select Add/Delete... to set custom size and save it as a new output size option.

- **Flexible**

You can specify the output resolution and scale, and adjust the cropping frame.

In thumbnail view

Drag the mouse over a thumbnail to display a cropping frame. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned. When no cropping frame is displayed, each frame is scanned individually.

In whole image view

When no cropping frame is displayed, the entire Preview area will be scanned. When a cropping frame is displayed, the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned.

Note

- To enlarge/reduce the scanned image, enter values into  (Width) and  (Height) in

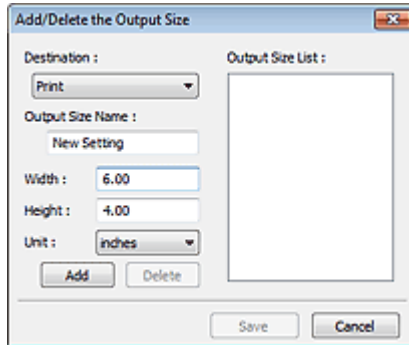
Output Settings or specify a value (by 1%) for %. The maximum value available for % depends on the Output Resolution. % can be specified for up to 19200 dpi (the maximum available output resolution).

- **Paper Size (L, etc.) & Monitor Size (1024 x 768 pixels, etc.)**

 (Width),  (Height) and scale cannot be specified. The preview image will be cropped according to the selected output size and resolution. The portion within the cropping frame will be scanned at the size of the selected paper/monitor size. You can drag the cropping frame to enlarge, reduce or move it while maintaining the aspect ratio.

- **Add/Delete...**

Opens the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, in which you can specify custom output sizes.



In the Add/Delete the Output Size dialog box, you can specify multiple output sizes and save them at one time. Saved items will be registered to the Output Size list and can be selected, along with the predefined items.

Add

To add a size, select Print or Image display for Destination, then enter Output Size Name, Width, and Height then click Add. For Unit, you can select inches or mm when Destination is Print but you can only select pixels when Destination is Image display. The name of the added size appears in Output Size List.

Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Delete

To delete an item, select it in Output Size List and click Delete. Click Save to save the items listed in Output Size List.

Important

- You cannot delete predefined output sizes such as A4 and 1024 x 768 pixels.

Note

- Save up to 10 items for each destination.
- An error message appears when you enter a value outside the setting range. Enter a value within the range displayed in the message.

Note

- See "[Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)" for details on cropping frames.
- For details on whether or how the cropping frame is initially displayed on a preview image, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in "[Preview Tab](#)" (Preferences dialog box).

- **(Switch Aspect Ratio)**

This button is available when Output Size is set to anything but Flexible. Click this button to rotate the cropping frame. Click again to return it to the original orientation.

- **Data Size**

The file size of the preview image when saved in BMP format is displayed.

Note

- When the file size exceeds a certain size, the value appears in red. In that case, a warning

message appears when you click Scan. It is recommended that you adjust the settings to reduce Data Size. To continue, scan in whole image view.

[Page top](#)↑

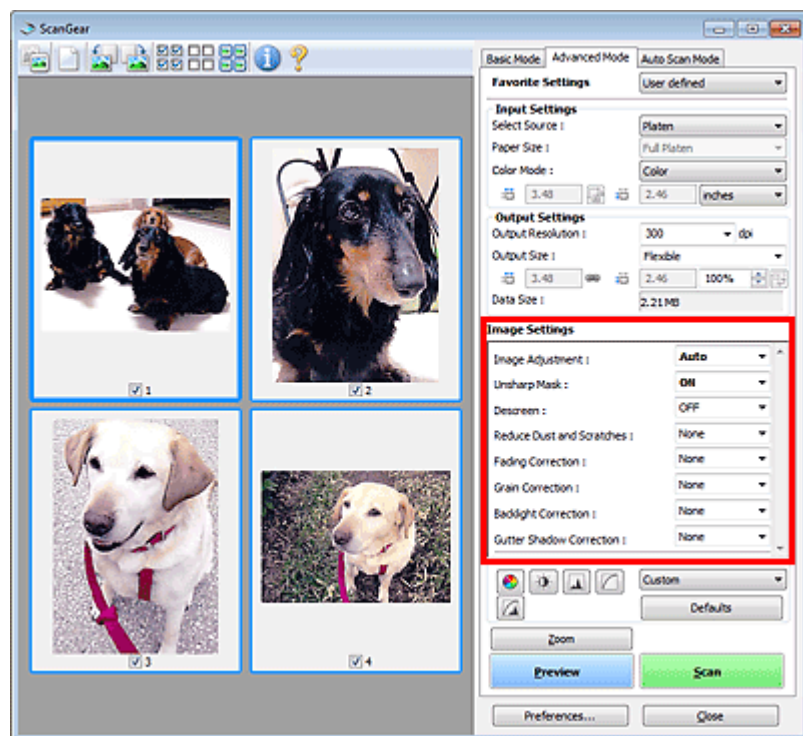
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Image Settings

S806

ScanGear

Image Settings



Important

- Do not apply these functions to images without moire, dust/scratches or faded colors. The color tone may be adversely affected.
- Image correction results may not be reflected in the preview image.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- Scanning may take longer when you use Image Settings.

Image Settings allows you to set the following items:

• Image Adjustment

When Image Adjustment is set, the brightness of the specified portion of the image is optimized. Images can be adjusted according to the automatically detected document type or the specified document type. The result of the adjustment will be reflected in the entire image.

• None

Image Adjustment will not be applied.

• Auto

Applies Image Adjustment by automatically detecting the document type. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

• Photo

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for photos.

• Magazine

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for magazines.

- **Newspaper**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for newspapers.

- **Document**

Applies Image Adjustment suitable for text documents.

Important

- You can set Image Adjustment after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- If the image is not adjusted properly with Auto, specify the document type.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to the Image Adjustment. In that case, set Image Adjustment to None.

- **Unsharp Mask**

When this is set to ON, the outline of the subjects is emphasized to sharpen the image.

- **Descreen**

Printed photos and pictures are displayed as a collection of fine dots. "Moire" is a phenomenon where uneven gradation or a stripe pattern appears when such photos or pictures printed with fine dots are scanned. Descreen is the function for reducing this moire effect.

Note

- Even if Descreen is set to ON, some moire effects may remain if Unsharp Mask is set to ON. In that case, set Unsharp Mask to OFF.
- Selecting Magazine(Color) in Select Source on the Basic Mode tab has the same effect as setting Descreen to ON on the Advanced Mode tab.

- **Reduce Dust and Scratches**

Scanned photos may contain white dots caused by dust or scratches. Use this function to reduce such noise.

- **None**

Dust and scratches will not be reduced.

- **Low**

Select this to reduce small dust particles and scratches. Large ones may remain.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this to reduce small/large dust particles and scratches. Evidence of the reduction process may remain and may also remove delicate parts of the image.

Important

- This function may not be effective for some types of photos.

Note

- It is recommended that you select None when scanning printed materials.

- **Fading Correction**

Use this function to correct photos that have faded with time or have a colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

- **None**

Fading correction will not be applied.

- **Low**

Select this to correct a small amount of fading and colorcast.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this to correct a large amount of fading and colorcast. This can affect the tone of the image.

Important

- You can set Fading Correction after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- Fading Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Grain Correction**

Use this function to reduce graininess (roughness) in photos taken with high-speed or sensitized film.

- **None**

Graininess will not be reduced.

- **Low**

Select this when the photo is slightly grainy.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this when the photo is very grainy. This can affect the gradation and sharpness of the image.

Important

- Grain Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

- **Backlight Correction**

Use this function to correct photos that have been shot against light.

When you change the Backlight Correction setting, the result will be reflected in the preview image.

- **None**

Backlight correction will not be applied.

- **Low**

Select this to correct slightly backlit photos. This will not affect the image contrast.

- **Medium**

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **High**

Select this to correct strongly backlit photos. This can affect the image contrast.

Important

- You can set Backlight Correction after preview.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- Backlight Correction may not be effective if the scan area is too small.

Note

- Noise patterns may appear when Backlight Correction is applied. Applying Grain Correction and setting Unsharp Mask to OFF may reduce the noise patterns.

• Gutter Shadow Correction

Use this function to correct shadows that appear between pages when scanning open booklets. When you set the Gutter Shadow Correction setting in the preview image, the result will be reflected. Preview the effects before scanning, as results vary depending on the type of document and how it is pressed.

Unclear or blurred text/lines caused by curved pages are not corrected.

• None

Gutter shadow will not be corrected.

• Low

Select this when the effect level is too strong with the medium setting.

• Medium

It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

• High

Select this when the effect level is too weak with the medium setting.

▶ Important

- Do not place items that weigh 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg) or more on the Platen. Also, do not press on the document with a force exceeding 4.4 lbs (2.0 kg). If you press heavily, the scanner may not work correctly or you might break the glass.
- Align the document with the edge of the Platen. If not, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- Shadows may not be corrected properly depending on the document. If the page background is not white, shadows may not be detected correctly or may not be detected at all.
- While scanning, press down on the spine with the same amount of pressure you used to preview the scan. If the binding part is not even, the shadow will not be corrected properly.



- How to place the document depends on your model and the document to be scanned.

📖 Note

- Cover the document with black cloth if white spots, streaks, or colored patterns appear in scan results due to ambient light entering between the document and the Platen.
- If the shadow is not corrected properly, adjust the cropping frame on the preview image.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

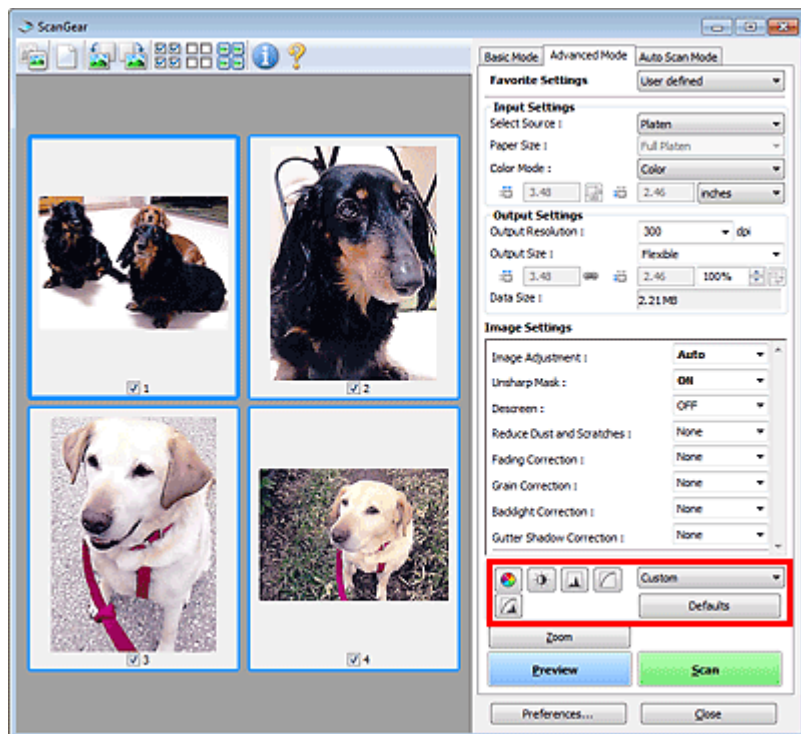
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Color Adjustment Buttons

S807



Color Adjustment Buttons



The Color Adjustment Buttons allow you to make fine corrections to the image brightness and color tones. You can adjust the image's overall brightness or contrast, and adjust its highlight and shadow values (histogram) or balance (tone curve).

Important

- The Color Adjustment Buttons are not available when you select Color Matching on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.

Note

- Selectable settings depend on color mode settings.
- When you adjust the image via the Color Adjustment Buttons, the results will be reflected in the preview image.

Click a Color Adjustment Button to set the following items:

-  **(Saturation/Color Balance)**

Adjust the saturation (vividness) and color tone of the image. Use this function to brighten colors that have faded with time or due to colorcast. "Colorcast" is a phenomenon where a specific color affects the entire picture due to the weather or ambient strong colors.

➡ [Adjusting Saturation and Color Balance](#)

-  **(Brightness/Contrast)**

Adjust the brightness and contrast of the image. If the image is too dark or too bright, or if the image quality is flat due to lack of contrast, you can adjust the levels of brightness and contrast.

➡ [Adjusting Brightness and Contrast](#)

- **(Histogram)**

A histogram allows you to see the data concentration at each brightness level of an image. You can specify the darkest level (shadow) and brightest level (highlight) within an image, cut the levels and expand the middle of the tonal range of the image.

➡ [Adjusting Histogram](#)

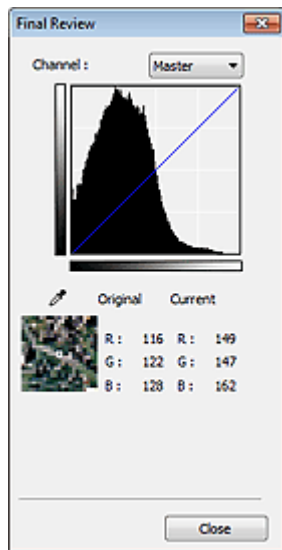
- **(Tone Curve Settings)**

Adjust the brightness of an image by selecting the type of graph (tone curve) showing the balance of tone input and output. You can make fine adjustments to the brightness of a specific area.

➡ [Adjusting Tone Curve](#)

- **(Final Review)**

Make a final check of color adjustments. The final synthesized tone curve and the histogram derived from the subsequent image processing will be displayed. There are no settings to make in this screen.



- For a color image, select a color in Channel to check either Red, Green or Blue, or select Master to check three colors together.
- If you place the cursor on the preview image, the portion will be enlarged and its RGB values (only L when Color Mode is Grayscale) before and after the adjustments will be displayed.

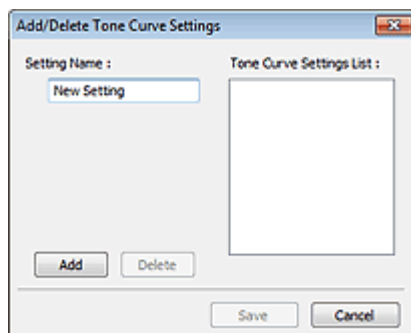
- **(Threshold)**

Set the boundary (threshold) at which black and white are divided. By adjusting the threshold level, you can sharpen text in a document or reduce show-through in newspapers.

➡ [Setting Threshold](#)

- **Custom**

You can name and save a set of tone curve and threshold settings of the Color Adjustment Buttons. Select Add/Delete... from the pull-down menu. When Color Mode is set to anything but Black and White, the Add/Delete Tone Curve Settings dialog box opens. When Color Mode is Black and White, the Add/Delete Threshold Settings dialog box opens.



Enter Setting Name and click Add. The name appears in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.

Click Save to save.

You can load and apply the saved tone curve/threshold settings to a preview image. To load the settings, select the saved item from the pull-down menu.

To delete an item, select it in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List and click Delete. Click Save to save settings displayed in Tone Curve Settings List or Threshold Settings List.



Note

- Save up to 20 items.
-

- **Defaults**

Reset all adjustments (saturation/color balance, brightness/contrast, histogram and tone curve).

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Auto Scan Mode Tab

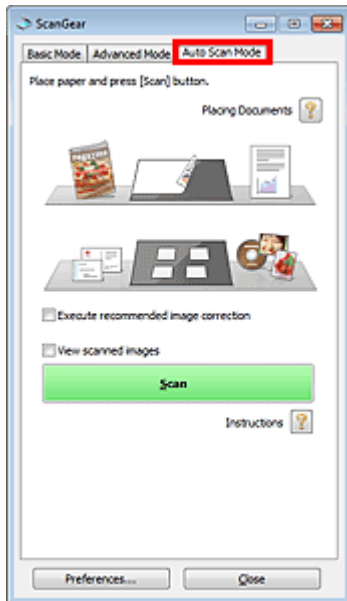
S813



Auto Scan Mode Tab

This mode allows you to scan easily by simply placing documents on the Platen and clicking a button.

On the Auto Scan Mode tab, documents are automatically detected. You do not need to specify cropping frames or make image corrections.



• Supported Documents

Photos, postcards, business cards, magazines, newspapers, text documents and BD/DVD/CD.



Important

- The following types of documents cannot be scanned correctly. In that case, specify the document type or size on the Basic Mode tab or the Advanced Mode tab and scan.
 - A4 size photos
 - Text documents smaller than 2L (5 inches x 7 inches) (127 mm x 178 mm), such as paperback pages with the spine cut off
 - Documents printed on thin white paper
 - Long narrow documents such as panoramic photos
- ➡ Scanning in Basic Mode
- ➡ Scanning in Advanced Mode
- Reflective disc labels may not be scanned properly.
- Place documents correctly according to the type of document to be scanned. Otherwise, documents may not be scanned correctly.
See "Placing Documents" for details on how to place documents.



Note

- Scan from the "Basic Mode Tab" or "Advanced Mode Tab" to reduce moire.

• Placing Documents



"Placing Documents" appears.

• Execute recommended image correction

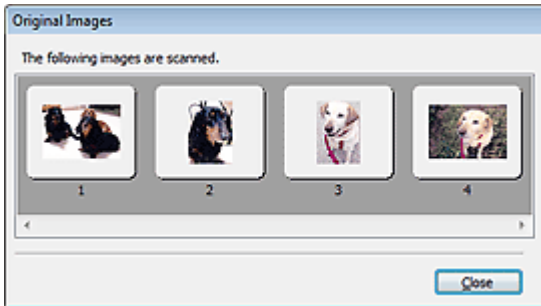
Select this checkbox to apply suitable corrections automatically based on the document type.

Important

- When this checkbox is selected in ScanGear (scanner driver) started from MP Navigator EX, the files can be saved in JPEG/Exif or PDF format only.
- Scanning may take longer than usual when this checkbox is selected.
- You can set this setting when Recommended is selected on the Color Settings tab of the Preferences dialog box.
- The color tone may change from the source image due to corrections. In that case, deselect the checkbox and scan.

• View scanned images

Select this checkbox to display the thumbnails of scanned images in a different window.



• Scan

Scanning starts.

Note

- When scanning starts, the progress will be displayed. Click Cancel to cancel the scan.
- When scanning is completed, a dialog box prompting you to select the next action may open. Follow the prompt to complete. For details, see Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning in "[Scan Tab](#)" (Preferences dialog box).

• Instructions

This page appears.

• Preferences...

The Preferences dialog box opens and you can make scan/preview settings.

➡ [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

• Close

Closes ScanGear.

Related Topic

► [Scanning in Auto Scan Mode](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [ScanGear \(Scanner Driver\) Screens](#) > [Preferences Dialog Box](#)

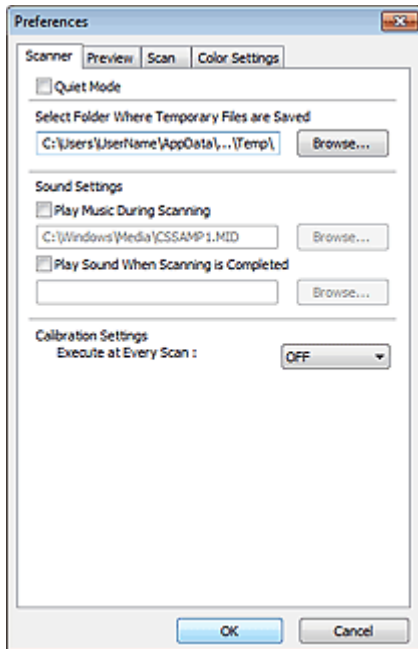
S808

ScanGear

Preferences Dialog Box

Click Preferences... in the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen to open Preferences dialog box.

In the Preferences dialog box, you can make advanced settings to ScanGear functions via the Scanner, Preview, Scan and Color Settings tabs.



Scanner Tab

Allows you to specify a folder to save images temporarily and a music file to play during or at the end of a scan.

➡ [Scanner Tab](#)

Preview Tab

Allows you to select what to do with Preview when ScanGear is started and how to display cropping frames after previewing images. You can also select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents.

➡ [Preview Tab](#)

Scan Tab

Allows you to select what to do with ScanGear after scanning images.

➡ [Scan Tab](#)

Color Settings Tab

Allows you to select how to adjust color, and specify the monitor gamma value.

➡ [Color Settings Tab](#)

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

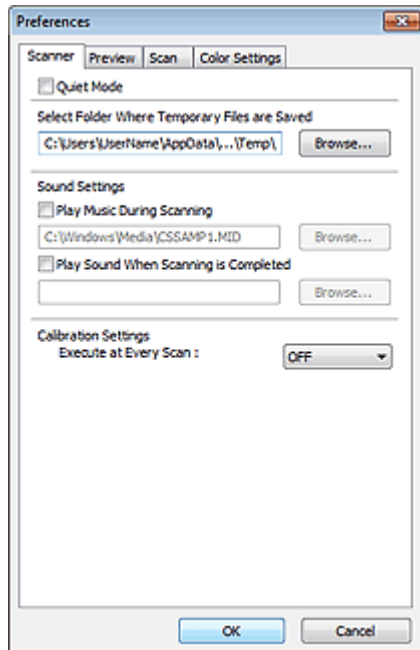
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Scanner Tab

S812



Scanner Tab

On the Scanner tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Quiet Mode**

Select this checkbox to reduce scanner sound by slowing down the scanner head when previewing or scanning documents.

Note

- Scanning takes longer than usual when you enable this function.

- **Select Folder Where Temporary Files are Saved**

Displays the folder in which to save images temporarily. To change the folder, click Browse... to specify another one.

- **Sound Settings**

You can set the machine to play music during/at the end of a scan.

Select the Play Music During Scanning or Play Sound When Scanning is Completed checkbox, then click Browse... and specify a sound file.

You can specify the following files.

- MIDI file (*.mid, *.rmi, *.midi)
- Audio file (*.wav, *.aif, *.aiff)
- MP3 file (*.mp3)

- **Calibration Settings**

When you set Execute at Every Scan to ON, the scanner will be calibrated every time before previewing and scanning, to reproduce correct color tones in scanned images.

Note

- Even when Execute at Every Scan is set to OFF, the scanner may be calibrated automatically in some cases (such as immediately after you turn the machine on).
- Calibration may take time depending on your computer.

Advanced Guide

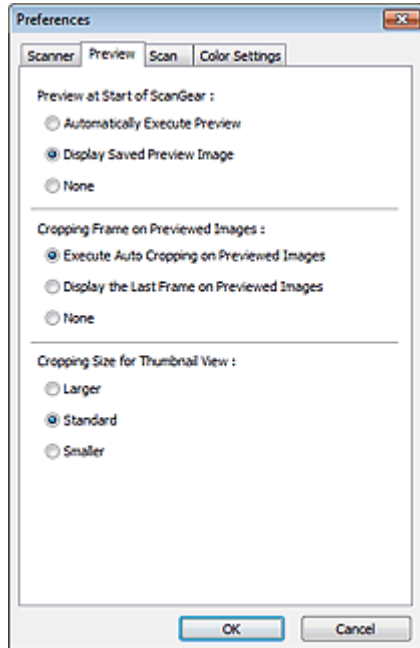
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Preview Tab

S809

ScanGear

Preview Tab

On the Preview tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Preview at Start of ScanGear**

Select what to do with Preview when ScanGear (scanner driver) is started.

- **Automatically Execute Preview**

ScanGear will automatically start previewing at startup.

- **Display Saved Preview Image**

The previously previewed image will be displayed.

The Color Adjustment Button settings, the Toolbar settings, and the Advanced Mode tab settings are also saved.

- **None**

No preview image will be displayed at startup.

Note

- Select None if you do not want to save the preview image.

- **Cropping Frame on Previewed Images**

Select how to display cropping frames after previewing images.

- **Execute Auto Cropping on Previewed Images**

The cropping frame will automatically be displayed in the document size after previewing.

- **Display the Last Frame on Previewed Images**

A cropping frame of the same size as the last used cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **None**

No cropping frame will be displayed after previewing.

- **Cropping Size for Thumbnail View**

Select the cropping size for thumbnails of scanned documents.

- **Larger**

Displays 105% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.

- **Standard**

The standard size.

- **Smaller**

Displays 95% (in width and height) of the area displayed for the standard size.



Note

- When you change the Cropping Size for Thumbnail View setting, the preview images will be refreshed and cropped to the new size. As the preview images are refreshed, the color adjustments and other settings applied to them are reset.
-

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

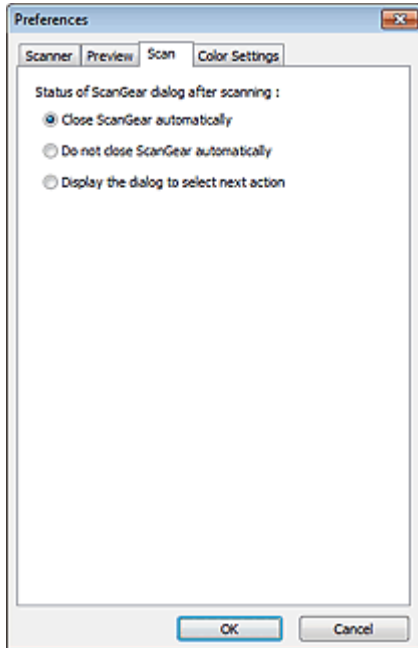
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Scan Tab

S810

ScanGear

Scan Tab

On the Scan tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Status of ScanGear dialog after scanning**

Select what to do with ScanGear (scanner driver) after scanning images.

- **Close ScanGear automatically**

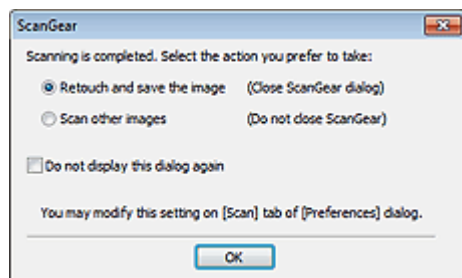
Select this to return to the original application when scanning is completed.

- **Do not close ScanGear automatically**

Select this to return to the ScanGear screen for another scan when scanning is completed.

- **Display the dialog to select next action**

Select this to open a screen and select what to do when scanning is completed.



Note

- Even if Do not close ScanGear automatically or Display the dialog to select next action is set, some applications may not support it.

Advanced Guide

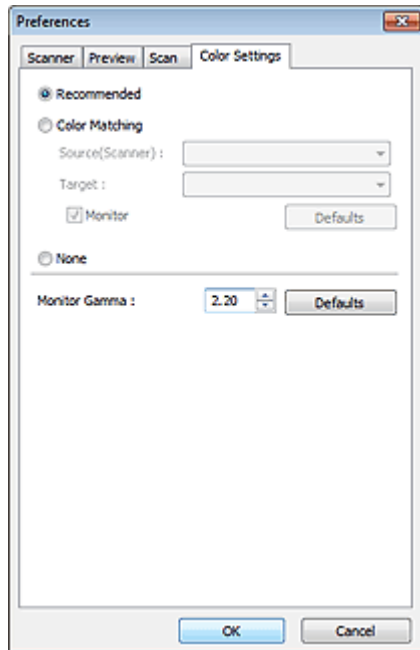
Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screens > Color Settings Tab

S811

ScanGear

Color Settings Tab

On the Color Settings tab, you can specify the following settings.



- **Color Adjustment**

Select either of the following.

You can select one when Color Mode is Color or Grayscale.

- **Recommended**

Select this to vividly reproduce the tone of a document on the screen. It is recommended that you normally select this setting.

- **Color Matching**

Select this to automatically match the scanner, monitor and color printer colors, thus reducing time and trouble to manually match the monitor and printer colors.

Color Adjustment Buttons will be disabled.

This function is available when Color Mode is Color.

- Source(Scanner): Select scanner profile.

- Target: Select target profile.

- Monitor: Select this to display preview image with optimum correction for monitor.

- Defaults: Returns to the default Color Matching settings.

- **None**

Select this to disable color correction provided by ScanGear (scanner driver).

Note

- Color Matching is available when ScanGear, monitor, color management-compliant application (such as Adobe Photoshop) and printer are set up correctly.
Refer to the corresponding manual for the monitor, printer and application settings.

- **Monitor Gamma**

By setting the gamma value of a monitor, you can adjust the input data to the brightness

characteristics of the monitor. Adjust the value if your monitor's gamma value does not match the default value set in ScanGear, and the colors of the original image are not accurately reflected in the monitor.

Click Defaults to return to the default Monitor Gamma value (2.20).



Note

- Refer to the manual of your monitor to check its gamma value. If it is not written in the manual, contact the manufacturer.
-

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning](#)

S012

Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning

- **Adjusting the cropping frame (scan area)**
 - ➔ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)
- **Selecting the best resolution**
 - ➔ [Resolution](#)
- **Learning about file formats**
 - ➔ [File Formats](#)
- **Learning about Color Matching**
 - ➔ [Color Matching](#)
- **Matching the colors between the document and monitor**

See Monitor Gamma in the following section.

 - ➔ [Color Settings Tab](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Scanning with Other Application Software > Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning > Adjusting Cropping Frames

S802

Adjusting Cropping Frames

You can specify the scan area by creating a cropping frame on the image displayed in the Preview area of the ScanGear (scanner driver) screen. When you click Scan, only the portion within the cropping frame will be scanned and passed to the application.

Cropping Frame Types



(1) Active Cropping Frame (rotating thick broken lines)

The settings on the Basic Mode tab or Advanced Mode tab will be applied.

(2) Selected Cropping Frame (stationary thick broken lines)

The settings will be applied to the Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames simultaneously. You can select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

(3) Unselected Cropping Frame (stationary thin broken lines)

The settings will not be applied.

Note

- Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames are displayed in whole image view.

Initial Cropping Frame

In thumbnail view

Cropping frame is not displayed initially. Drag the mouse over a frame to create a cropping frame.

In whole image view

A cropping frame (Active Cropping Frame) is displayed automatically around the preview image according to the document size. You can also create a cropping frame by dragging the mouse in the Preview area.

Note

- Cropping frames are set according to the document size (Auto Crop) by default. For details, see Cropping Frame on Previewed Images in " [Preview Tab](#)" (Preferences dialog box).

Adjusting a Cropping Frame

The cursor will change into  (Arrow) when it is positioned over a cropping frame. If you click and drag the mouse in the direction of the arrow, the cropping frame will expand or contract accordingly.



The cursor will change into  (Crosshair arrow) when it is positioned within a cropping frame. Click and drag the mouse to move the entire cropping frame.



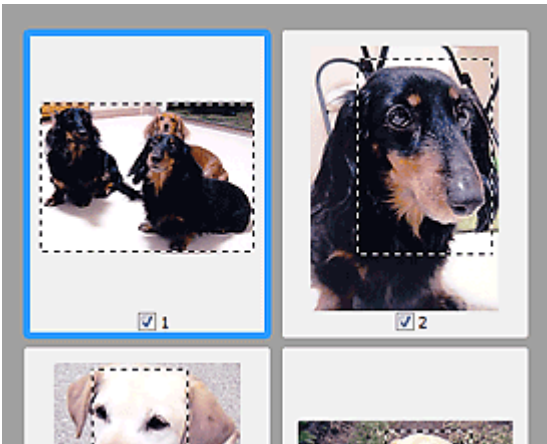
Note

- In Advanced Mode tab, you can specify the cropping frame size by entering the values into  (Width) and  (Height) in Input Settings.
→ [Input Settings](#)
- You can rotate a cropping frame 90 degrees by clicking  (Switch Aspect Ratio). However,  (Switch Aspect Ratio) is not available when Output Size is Flexible.

Creating Multiple Cropping Frames

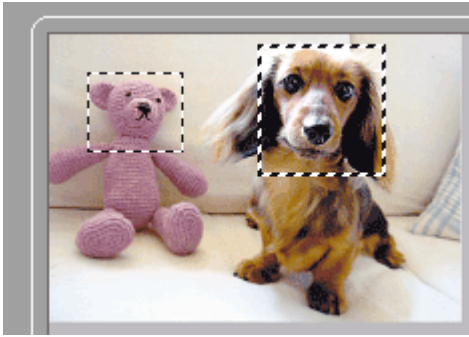
In thumbnail view

You can only create one cropping frame per image.



In whole image view

Click and drag the mouse in a space outside the existing cropping frame to create a new cropping frame in the Preview area. The new cropping frame will be the Active Cropping Frame, and the old cropping frame will be the Unselected Cropping Frame.



You can create multiple cropping frames and apply different scan settings to each cropping frame.

You can also select multiple cropping frames by clicking them while pressing the Ctrl key.

If you select multiple cropping frames and change the settings on a tab at the right of ScanGear, the settings will be applied to all the selected cropping frames.

When you create a new cropping frame, it retains the settings of the latest cropping frame.



Note

- Create up to 12 cropping frames.
- Scanning takes longer than usual when multiple cropping frames are selected.

Deleting Cropping Frames

In thumbnail view

To delete a cropping frame, click an area outside the cropping frame on an image.

In whole image view



To delete a cropping frame, select it and click  (Remove Cropping Frame) on the Toolbar. Alternatively, press the Delete key.

When there are multiple cropping frames, all the selected cropping frames (Active Cropping Frame and Selected Cropping Frames) are deleted simultaneously.

[Page top](#)

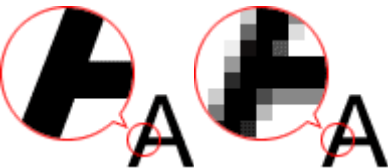
S309

Resolution

What is Resolution?

The data in the image you have scanned is a collection of dots carrying information about brightness and color. The density of these dots is called "resolution", and resolution will determine the amount of detail your image contains. The unit of resolution is dots per inch (dpi). Dpi is the number of dots per inch (2.54 cm).

The higher the resolution (value), the more detail in your image; the lower the resolution (value), the less detail.



Setting the Resolution in MP Navigator EX

In MP Navigator EX, you can specify the resolution with Scanning Resolution in the Scan Settings dialog box.

Images for Display on a Monitor

Paper/photographs to be viewed on a display should be scanned at 150 dpi, which is close to ordinary monitor resolution.

Images for Printing

Images to be printed should be scanned at a resolution that corresponds to the resolution of the printer. For example, if you want to print using a 600 dpi black and white printer, you should set the resolution to 600 dpi.

With a color printer, specifying the resolution at half the resolution of the printer should be fine. For example, if you want to print scanned paper/photos using a 600 dpi color printer, you should set the resolution to 300 dpi. However, with a high-resolution printer, printing takes longer than usual if you set the resolution to half the resolution of the printer.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

If you print a document at twice the size both vertically and horizontally, the resolution of the document will be reduced by half. If the resolution of the original document is 300 dpi, the resolution of the enlarged document will be 150 dpi. If you print the document with a 600 dpi color printer, the lack of detail in the image may be obvious. In that case, if you scan at the Scanning Resolution of 600 dpi, the resolution will be 300 dpi even if you double the size of document and you can print the document with sufficient quality. Conversely, if you print a document at half scale, it should be sufficient to scan at half the resolution.

When Printing Color Photos at Twice the Size

		
Document resolution: 300 dpi Scanning resolution: 600	Print at twice the size Scanning resolution/actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Printing resolution: 300 dpi

dpi Scale: 200%		

Setting the Resolution in ScanGear (Scanner Driver)

In ScanGear, you can specify the resolution with Output Resolution in Output Settings on the Advanced Mode tab.

Example of Appropriate Resolution when Printing to Scale

The scanning resolution is automatically set so that the value set in Output Resolution will be the resolution of the scanned image. If you set Output Resolution to 300 dpi and scan at twice the size, the document will be automatically scanned at 600 dpi, and the resolution of the scanned image will be 300 dpi. You can print the document with sufficient quality using a 600 dpi color printer.

When Printing L Size (3.5 inches x 5 inches) (89 mm x 127 mm) Photos at Twice the Size

		
Document resolution: 300 dpi Output resolution: 300 dpi Scale: 200%	Scan at twice the size Actual scanning resolution: 600 dpi	Image resolution/printing resolution: 300 dpi

Appropriate Resolution Settings

Set the resolution according to the use of the scanned image.

Note

- Although you can change Output Resolution in ScanGear, it is recommended that you scan at the default value.

For displaying on a monitor: 150 dpi

For printing: 300 dpi

When Output Size is set to Flexible in ScanGear's Advanced Mode tab (Select Source is Platen and the scale is 100%)

Document	Use	Color Mode	Output Resolution
Color photo	Copying (Printing)	Color	300 dpi
	Creating a postcard	Color	300 dpi
	Saving to a computer	Color	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Color	75 dpi - 150 dpi
Black and white photo	Saving to a computer	Grayscale	75 dpi - 300 dpi
	Using on a website or attaching to e-mail	Grayscale	75 dpi - 150 dpi
Text document	Copying	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	300 dpi
	Attaching to e-mail	Color, Grayscale or Black and White	150 dpi
	Scanning text using OCR	Color or Grayscale	300 dpi - 400

			dpi

Important

- If you double the resolution, the file size quadruples. If the file is too large, the processing speed will slow down significantly, and you will experience inconvenience such as lack of memory. Set the minimum required resolution according to the use of the image.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning](#) > [File Formats](#)

S310

File Formats

You can select a file format when saving scanned images. You should specify the most suitable format according to how you want to use the image on which application.

Available file formats vary by application and computer (Windows or Macintosh).

See below for the characteristics of each image file format.

BMP (Standard File Extension: .bmp)

A standard file format for Windows.

BMP is often selected for images that are used only on Windows.

JPEG (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format often used on websites and for digital camera images.

JPEG features high compression rates. JPEG images slightly degrade every time they are saved, and cannot be returned to their original state.

JPEG is not available for black and white images.

Exif (Standard File Extension: .jpg)

A file format supported by many digital cameras.

It adds information such as the date of image capture, camera model, shutter speed, shooting mode and comments to JPEG files.

The file format version must be Exif 2.2 or later in order to print on a Direct Print compatible printer.

TIFF (Standard File Extension: .tif)

A file format featuring a relatively high compatibility between various computers and applications. (Some TIFF files are incompatible.) TIFF is suitable for editing saved images.



Note

- MP Navigator EX supports the following TIFF file formats.
 - Uncompressed, black and white binary
 - Uncompressed, RGB (8 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, YCC (8 bits per component)
 - Uncompressed, RGB (16 bits per channel)
 - Uncompressed, YCC (16 bits per component)
 - Uncompressed, Grayscale

PDF (Standard File Extension: .pdf)

A file format developed by Adobe Systems. It can be used on various computers and operating systems. Therefore, PDF files can be exchanged between people who use different operating systems, fonts, etc. regardless of the differences.



Important

- Only PDF files created with MP Navigator EX are supported. PDF files created or edited in other applications are not supported.

Advanced Guide

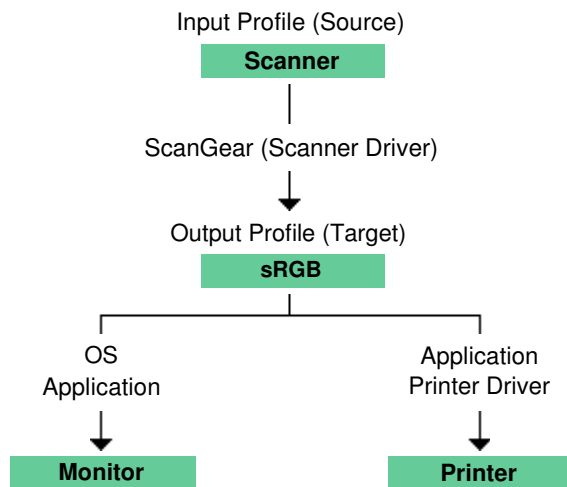
[Advanced Guide](#) > [Scanning](#) > [Scanning with Other Application Software](#) > [Appendix: Useful Information on Scanning](#) > [Color Matching](#)

S815

Color Matching

Color Matching adjusts devices as shown below to match the colors of an image displayed on a monitor or a printed image with the colors of the original document.

Example: When sRGB is selected as the output profile (target)



ScanGear converts the image's color space from the scanner's color space to sRGB.

When displaying on a monitor, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the monitor's color space based on the operating system's monitor settings and the application's working space settings.

When printing, the image's color space is converted from sRGB to the printer's color space based on the application's print settings and the printer driver's settings.

[Page top](#)

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Skannimine](#) > [Muud skannismismeetodid](#)

Muud skannismismeetodid

- ➡ Skannimine WIA-draiveriga
- ➡ Skannimine juhtpaneeli kasutades (ainult Windows XP)

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Other Scanning Methods > Scanning with WIA Driver

S604

Scanning with WIA Driver

You can scan an image from a WIA-compliant application and use the image in that application.

Windows Image Acquisition (WIA) is a driver model implemented in Windows XP or later. It allows you to scan documents without using an application. Scan documents from a TWAIN-compliant application to specify advanced settings for scanning.

The procedure varies depending on the application. The following procedures are examples only.

For details, refer to the application's manual.

Scanning with WIA Driver 2.0

The following is an example of scanning using "Windows Fax and Scan."

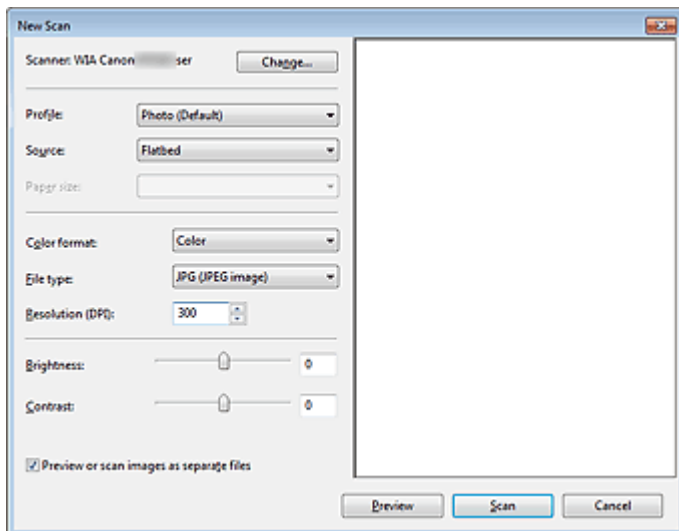
1. Place the document on the Platen.

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

2. Click Scan... from New on the File menu.

The scan setting screen appears.

3. Specify the settings.



- **Scanner**

The currently set product name is displayed. To change the scanner, click Change... and select the product you want to use.

- **Profile**

Select Photo (Default) or Documents according to the document to be scanned. To save a new Profile, select Add profile.... You can specify the details in the Add New Profile dialog box.

- **Source**

Select a scanner type.

- **Paper size**

This setting is not available for this machine.

- **Color format**

Select how to scan the document.

- **File type**

Select a file format from JPEG, BMP, PNG and TIFF.

- **Resolution (DPI)**

Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi. 300 dpi is set by default.

➡ Resolution

- **Brightness**

Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).

- **Contrast**

Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-100 to 100).

- **Preview or scan images as separate files**

Select this checkbox to preview or scan multiple images as separate files.

4. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right.

5. Click Scan.

When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Scanning with WIA Driver 1.0

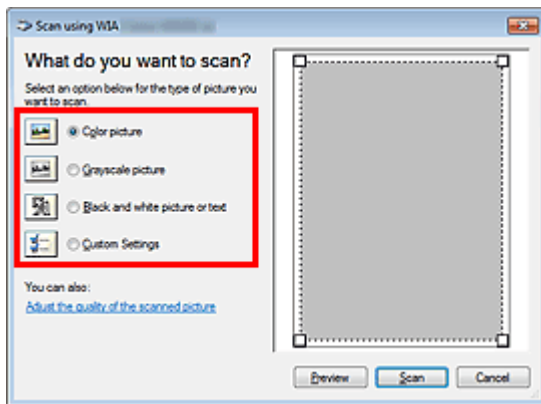
The following is an example of scanning using "Paint."

1. Place the document on the Platen.

➡ Placing Documents

2. Click From scanner or camera from . (Select the command to scan a document in the application.)

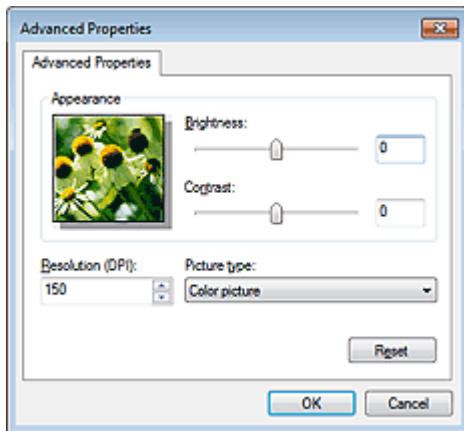
3. Select an image type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- To scan with the values previously set in Adjust the quality of the scanned picture, select Custom Settings.

4. Click Adjust the quality of the scanned picture and set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.

➡ Resolution

- **Picture type**

Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

Click to restore the original settings.

5. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag ☐ to specify the scan area.

6. Click Scan.

When scanning is completed, the scanned image appears in the application.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Scanning > Other Scanning Methods > Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

S605

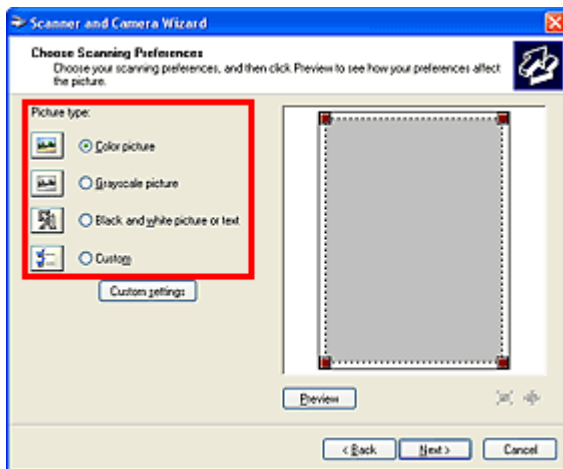
Scanning Using the Control Panel (Windows XP Only)

You can scan images via the Control Panel of Windows XP using the WIA driver.

1. From the Start menu, select Control Panel.
2. Click Printers and Other Hardware > Scanners and Cameras, then double-click WIA Canon (model name).

The Scanner and Camera Wizard dialog box opens.

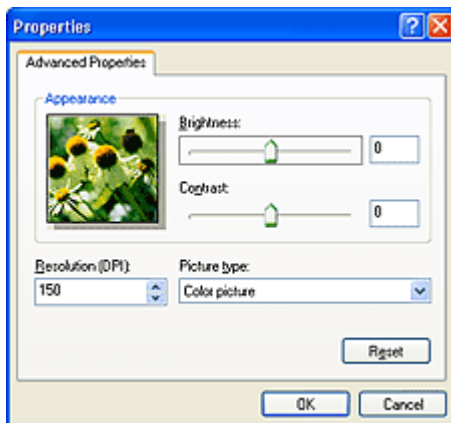
3. Click Next.
4. Select Picture type according to the document to be scanned.



Note

- To scan with the values previously set in Custom settings, select Custom.

5. Click Custom settings to set the preferences as required.



- **Brightness**

Move the slider to adjust the brightness. Move it to the left to darken and right to brighten the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Contrast**

Move the slider to adjust the contrast. Moving it to the left will decrease the contrast of the image, thus softening the image. Moving it to the right will increase the contrast of the image, thus sharpening the image. You can also enter a value (-127 to 127).

- **Resolution (DPI)**

Enter the resolution. Specify a value between 50 dpi and 600 dpi.

➡ Resolution

- **Picture type**

Select the type of scan you want for your document.

- **Reset**

Click to restore the original settings.

6. Click Preview to preview the image.

The preview image appears on the right. Drag  to specify the scan area.

7. Click Next and follow the instructions.

[Page top](#) 

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Hooldus

Hooldus

- ➡ Seadme puhastamine
- ➡ Prindipea joondamine
- ➡ Arvutist hooldamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Hooldus](#) > [Seadme puhastamine](#)

Seadme puhastamine

- ➡ Puhastamine
- ➡ Seadme välispinna puhastamine
- ➡ Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Hooldus > Seadme puhastamine > Puhastamine

U059

Puhastamine

Selles jaotises kirjeldatakse seadme hooldamiseks mõeldud puhastamisprotseduure.

Tähtis!

- Ärge kasutage seadme välispinna puhastamisel pabersalvrätte, paberkäterätte, jämedakoelisi lappe või sarnaseid materjale, kuna need võivad seda kriimustada. Kasutage pehmest riidest lappi.
- Ärge kunagi kasutage seadme puhastamiseks lenduvaid vedelikke (nt vedeldid, benseen, atsetoon) ega muid keemilisi puhastusaineid, kuna nende kasutamine võib põhjustada rikkeid seadme töös ning kahjustada selle pinda.

➡ Seadme välispinna puhastamine

➡ Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Hooldus](#) > [Seadme puhastamine](#) > Seadme välispinna puhastamine

U060

Seadme välispinna puhastamine

Veenduge, et tegemist oleks pehme riidega, nt prilliklaaside puhastamiseks mõeldud lapp, ning pühkige pinnalt ettevaatlikult mustus ära. Vajadusel siluge riide kortsud enne puhastamist.



Tähtis!

- Enne seadme puhastamist lülitage toide kindlasti välja ning võtke toitejuhe vooluvõrgust välja.
- Ärge kasutage seadme välisel puhastamisel pabersalvrätte, -käterätte, jämedakoelisi lappe või sarnaseid materjale, need võivad printeri pinda kriimustada.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Hooldus > Seadme puhastamine > Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine

U061

Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine

▶ Tähtis!

- Enne seadme puhastamist lülitage toide kindlasti välja ning võtke toitejuhe vooluvõrgust välja.

Pühkige õrnalt puhta pehme ebemevaba lapiga kopeerimisalust (A) ja dokumendikaane sisemist osa (valge leht) (B). Vältige mustuse jäämist, eriti kopeerimisalusele.



▶ Tähtis!

- Dokumendikaane (valge leht) (B) sisemine külg on väga õrn, seega puhastage seda ettevaatlikult.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Hooldus](#) > [Prindipea joondamine](#)

Prindipea joondamine

➡ [Prindipea joondamine](#)

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Hooldus > Prindipea joondamine > Prindipea joondamine

U096

Prindipea joondamine

Kui prinditud sirgjooned on valesti joondatud või printimistulemus teid mingil muul põhjusel ei rahulda, muutke prindipea asendit.



Märkus

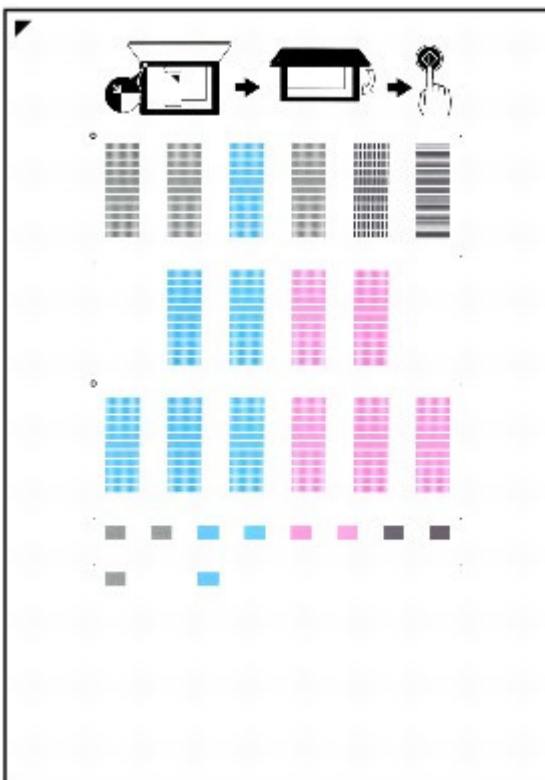
- Kui alles on jäänud liiga vähe tinti, ei prindita prindipea joondusmustrit õigesti. Vahetage vähese tindiga FINE-kassett välja.

➔ [Regulaarne hooldus](#)

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.
2. Asetage A4- või Letter-formaadis tavapaberi leht tagasalve.
3. Avage ettevaatlikult paberi väljastusalus ja seejärel selle pikendus.
4. Printige prindipea joondusmuster.
 1. Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Hooldus (Maintenance)**, kuni LED-ile ilmub järgmine kuva.



2. Vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või **Värvirežiim (Color)**.
Prinditakse prindipea joondusmuster.



Tähtis!

- Ärge puutuge prindipea joondusmusteri lehele prinditud osa.
- Vaadake hoolikalt, et prindipea joondusleht ei määrduks. Lehe määrdumisel või

kortsumisel ei pruugita seda õigesti skannida.

5. Skannige prindipea asendi kohandamiseks prindipea joonduslehte.

1. Asetage prindipea joondusleht klaasplaadile.

Asetage prindipea joondusleht nii, et PRINDITUD KÜLG JÄÄB ALLAPOOLE, ning joondage lehe ülemises vasakus nurgas asuv märk  joondamismärgiga ().



2. Sulgege õrnalt dokumendikaas, veenduge, et LED-il kuvataks järgmine pilt ja vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.



Seade hakkab prindipea joonduslehte skannima ning prindipea asendit kohandatakse automaatselt.

Kui prindipea asendi korrigeerimine on lõpetatud, siis naaseb LED kopeerimise ooterežiimile. Eemaldage kopeerimisalusel olev leht.



Tähtis!

- Ärge avage dokumendikaant ega eemaldage prindipea joondusmustrit enne skannimise lõppemist.
- Kui prindipea asendi automaatne kohandamine ei õnnestunud, siis ilmub LED-il veakood.
→ LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood



Märkus

- Kui prinditulemused ei ole pärast prindipea eespool kirjeldatud viisil reguleerimist ikka veel rahuldavad, siis reguleerige prindipea asendit arvutist käsitsi.
→ [Prindipea joondamine](#)
- Prindipea asendi praeguste reguleerimisväärtuste printimiseks kuvage LED-näidikul järgmine kuva ja siis vajutage nuppu **Must režiim (Black)** või **Värvirežiim (Color)**.



Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Hooldus](#) > [Arvutist hooldamine](#)

Arvutist hooldamine

- ➡ Prindipeade puhastamine
- ➡ Paberi sööterullide puhastamine
- ➡ Prindipea joondamine
- ➡ Prindipea pihustite kontrollimine
- ➡ Printeri sisemuse puhastamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Maintenance > Performing Maintenance from a Computer > Cleaning the Print Heads

P026

Cleaning the Print Heads

The print head cleaning function allows you to unclog clogged nozzles in the print head. Perform print head cleaning if printing is faint or a specific color fails to print, even though there is enough ink.

The procedure for cleaning the print heads is as follows:



Cleaning

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**

2. Click Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Print Head Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box. Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Cleaning.

3. Execute cleaning

Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.

Print head cleaning starts.

4. Complete cleaning

The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

If cleaning the head once does not resolve the print head problem, clean it once more.



Deep Cleaning

Deep Cleaning is more thorough than cleaning. Perform deep cleaning when two Cleaning attempts do not resolve the print head problem.

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**

2. Click Deep Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Deep Cleaning dialog box opens. Follow the instruction shown in the dialog box.

Click Initial Check Items to display the items you need to check before performing Deep Cleaning.

3. Execute deep cleaning

Make sure that the machine is on and then click Execute.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

Print head deep cleaning starts.

4. Complete deep cleaning

The Nozzle Check dialog box opens after the confirmation message.

5. Check the results

To check whether the print quality has improved, click Print Check Pattern. To cancel the check process, click Cancel.

Important

- Cleaning consumes a small amount of ink. Deep Cleaning consumes a larger amount of ink than Cleaning.
Cleaning the print heads frequently will rapidly deplete your printer's ink supply. Consequently, perform cleaning only when necessary.

Note

- If there is no sign of improvement after Deep Cleaning, switch off the machine, wait 24 hours, and then perform Deep Cleaning again. If there is still no sign of improvement, see " [Machine Moves But Ink Is Not Ejected](#)."

Related Topic

[➡ Checking the Print Head Nozzles](#)

Page top 

Advanced Guide

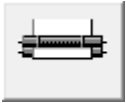
[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers](#)

P027

Cleaning the Paper Feed Rollers

Cleans the paper feed roller. Perform feed roller cleaning when there are paper particles sticking to the paper feed roller and paper is not fed properly.

The procedure for performing the feed roller cleaning is as follows:



Roller Cleaning

1. Prepare the machine

Remove all sheets of paper from the rear tray.

2. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

3. Click Roller Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The confirmation message appears.

4. Execute paper feed roller cleaning

Make sure that the machine is on and click OK.
Paper feed roller cleaning starts.

5. Complete paper feed roller cleaning

After the rollers have stopped, follow the instruction in the message, load three sheets of plain paper into the rear tray, and click OK.

Paper will be ejected and feed roller cleaning will be completed.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Aligning the Print Head Position](#)

P028

Aligning the Print Head Position

Print head alignment corrects the installation positions of the print head and improves deviated colors and lines.

This machine supports two head alignment methods: automatic head alignment and manual head alignment.

To perform automatic head alignment, refer to "Aligning the Print Head" in the manual: Basic Guide and then execute the function from the operation panel of the machine.

The procedure for performing manual print head alignment is as follows:



Print Head Alignment

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab
The Custom Settings dialog box opens.
3. Switch head alignment to manual
Check the Align heads manually check box.
4. Transmit the settings
Click Send and when the confirmation message appears, click OK.
5. Click Print Head Alignment on the Maintenance tab
The Start Print Head Alignment dialog box opens.
6. Load paper in the machine
Load three sheets of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the rear tray.
7. Execute head alignment
Make sure that the machine is on and click Align Print Head.
Follow the instruction in the message.
8. Check the printed pattern
Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the associated boxes.
Clicking the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.



When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



- (A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
- (B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white streaks.



- (A) Less noticeable horizontal white streaks
- (B) More noticeable horizontal white streaks

9. Confirm the displayed message and click OK

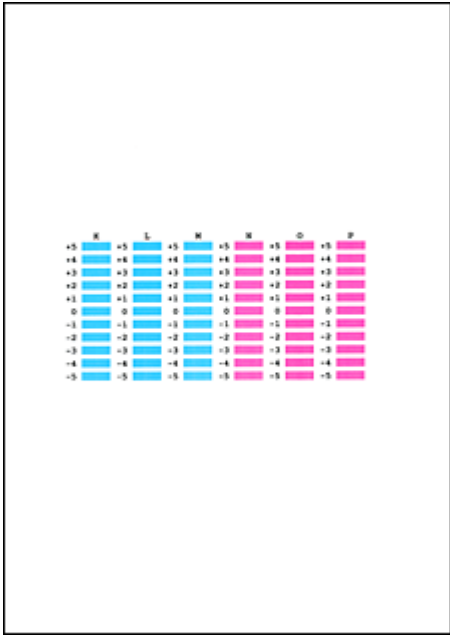
The second pattern is printed.

Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

10. Check the printed pattern

Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the associated boxes. Clicking the patterns with the least amount of streaks in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.



When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

 Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable vertical white streaks.



- (A) Less noticeable vertical white streaks
- (B) More noticeable vertical white streaks

11. Confirm the displayed message and click OK

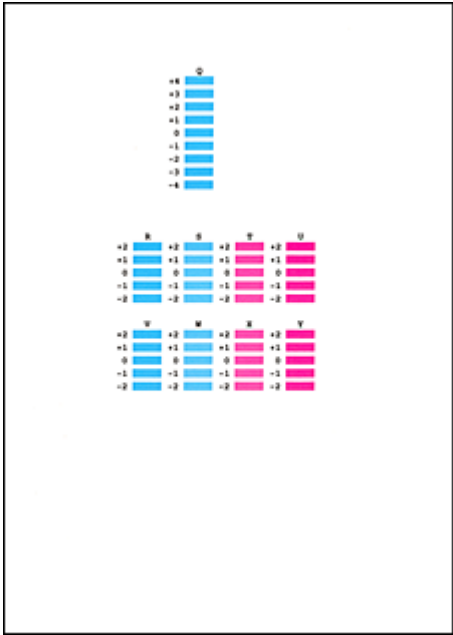
The third pattern is printed.

 Important

- Do not open the Scanning Unit (Cover) while printing is in progress.

12. Check the printed pattern

Enter the numbers of the patterns with the least noticeable horizontal stripes in the associated boxes.
Clicking the patterns with the least noticeable horizontal stripes in the preview window, will automatically set their numbers in the associated boxes.



When you have entered all the necessary values, click OK.

 Note

- If it is difficult to pick the best pattern, pick the setting that produces the least noticeable horizontal white stripes.



- (A) Less noticeable horizontal white stripes
- (B) More noticeable horizontal white stripes

 Note

- To print and check the current setting, open the Start Print Head Alignment dialog box, and click Print Alignment Value.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Checking the Print Head Nozzles](#)

P029

Checking the Print Head Nozzles

The nozzle check function allows you to check whether the print heads are working properly by printing a nozzle check pattern. Print the pattern if printing becomes faint, or if a specific color fails to print.

The procedure for printing a nozzle check pattern is as follows:



Nozzle Check

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Nozzle Check on the Maintenance tab

The Nozzle Check dialog box opens.

Click Initial Check Items to display the items that you need to check before printing the nozzle check pattern.

3. Load paper in the machine

Load a sheet of A4 size or Letter size plain paper into the rear tray.

4. Print a nozzle check pattern

Make sure that the machine is on and click Print Check Pattern.

Printing of the nozzle check pattern begins.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

The Pattern Check dialog box opens.

5. Check the print result

Check the print result. When the print result is normal, click Exit.

If the print result is smudged or if there are any unprinted sections, click Cleaning to clean the print head.

Related Topic

➡ [Cleaning the Print Heads](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Maintenance](#) > [Performing Maintenance from a Computer](#) > [Cleaning Inside the Machine](#)

P030

Cleaning Inside the Machine

Perform bottom plate cleaning before you execute duplex printing to prevent smudges on the back side of the paper.

Also perform bottom plate cleaning if ink smudges caused by something other than print data appear on the printed page.

The procedure for performing bottom plate cleaning is as follows:



Bottom Plate Cleaning

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Bottom Plate Cleaning on the Maintenance tab

The Bottom Plate Cleaning dialog box opens.

3. Load paper in the machine

As instructed in the dialog box, fold the A4 size or Letter size plain paper in half horizontally, and then unfold the sheet.

Load the paper into the rear tray in the portrait orientation with the crest of the crease facing down.

4. Perform the bottom plate cleaning

Make sure that the machine is on and click Execute.

Bottom plate cleaning starts.

[Page top](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Seadme sätete muutmine

Seadme sätete muutmine

➡ Seadme sätete muutmine arvutist

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Seadme sätete muutmine](#) > [Seadme sätete muutmine arvutist](#)

Seadme sätete muutmine arvutist

- ➡ Prindisuvandite muutmine
- ➡ Tihtikasutatava trükiprofiili salvestamine
- ➡ Kasutatava tindikasseti seadistamine
- ➡ Seadme toite haldamine
- ➡ Seadme müra vähendamine
- ➡ Seadme töörežiimi muutmine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Machine Settings > Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer > Changing the Print Options

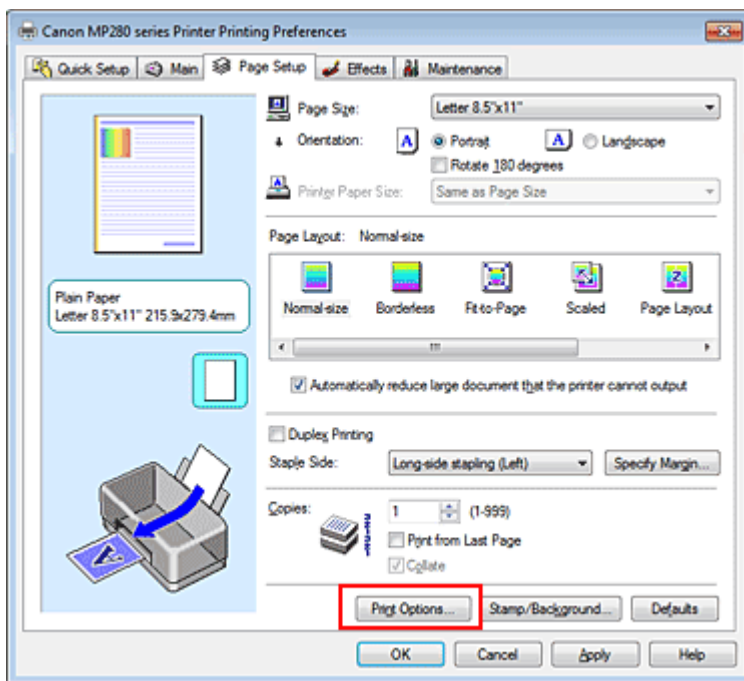
P413

Changing the Print Options

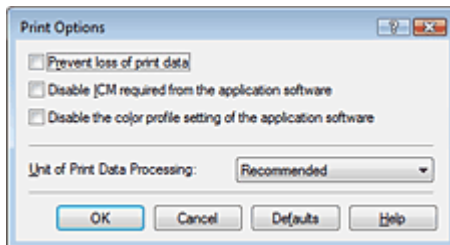
You change the detailed print driver settings for print data that is sent from an application software. Specify this option if you encounter print failures such as part of an image data being cut off.

The procedure for changing the print options is as follows:

1. Open the **printer driver setup window**
2. Click **Print Options...** on the **Page Setup** tab



The Print Options dialog box opens.



Note

- When the XPS printer driver is used, certain functions are not available.

3. Change the individual settings

If necessary, change the setting of each item, and then click OK.

The Page Setup tab is displayed again.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Machine Settings > Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer > Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

P417

Registering a Frequently Used Printing Profile

You can register the frequently used printing profile to Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab. Unnecessary printing profiles can be deleted at any time.

The procedure for registering a printing profile is as follows:

Registering a Printing Profile

1. Open the printer driver setup window

2. Set the necessary items

From Commonly Used Settings on the Quick Setup tab, select the printing profile to be used and if necessary, change the settings after Additional Features.

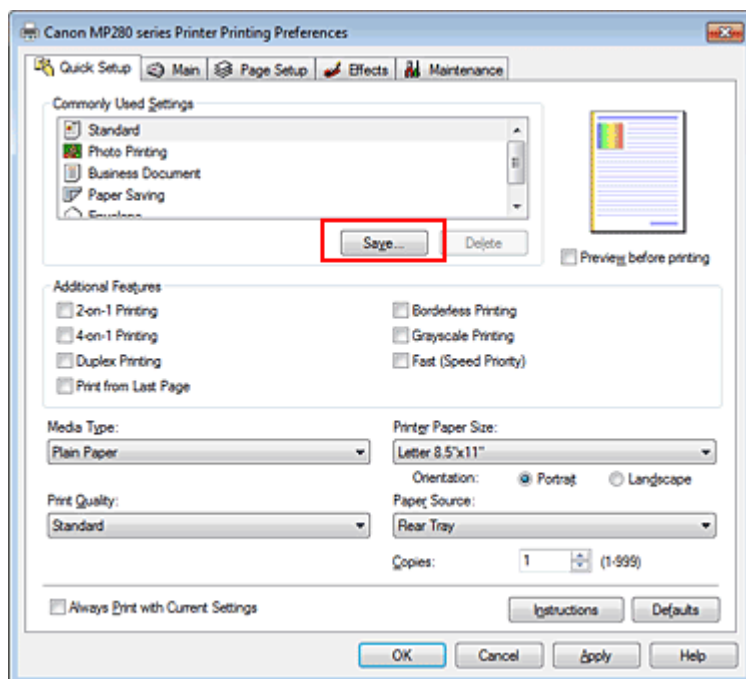
You can also register necessary items on the Main, Page Setup, and Effects tabs.



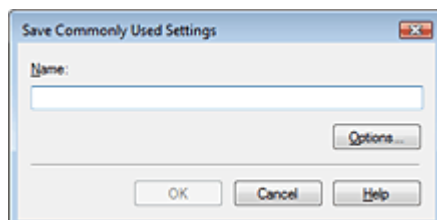
Note

- Effects tab cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.

3. Click Save...



The Save Commonly Used Settings dialog box opens.



4. Save the settings

Enter a name in the Name field, and if necessary, set the items in Options.... Then click OK.
The printing profile is saved, and the Quick Setup tab is displayed again.
The name and icon are added to the Commonly Used Settings list.

Important

- To save the page size, orientation, and number of copies that was set in each sheet, click Options..., and check each item.

Note

- When you install the printer driver again or upgrade the version of the printer driver, the print settings you registered will be deleted from Commonly Used Settings.
Registered print settings cannot be saved and preserved. If a profile is deleted, register the print settings again.

Deleting Unnecessary Printing Profile

1. Select the printing profile to be deleted

Select the printing profile you want to delete from the Commonly Used Settings list on the Quick Setup tab.

2. Delete the printing profile

Click Delete. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.
The selected printing profile is deleted from the Commonly Used Settings list.

Note

- Printing profiles that are registered in the initial settings cannot be deleted.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Changing the Machine Settings](#) > [Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer](#) > [Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used](#)

P033

Setting the Ink Cartridge to be Used

This feature enables you to specify the most appropriate ink cartridge among installed cartridges according to an intended use.

When one of the ink cartridges becomes empty and cannot be replaced immediately by a new one, you can specify the other ink cartridge that still has ink and continue printing.

The procedure for specifying the ink cartridge is as follows:



Ink Cartridge Settings

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Ink Cartridge Settings on the Maintenance tab
The Ink Cartridge Settings dialog box appears.
3. Select the ink cartridge to be used
Select the ink cartridge to be used for printing and click OK.
The specified ink cartridge will be used from the next printing.

Important

- When the following settings are specified, Black Only does not function because the machine uses the color ink cartridge to print documents.
 - Other than Plain Paper, Hagaki A, Hagaki, or Envelope is selected for Media Type on the Main tab
 - Borderless is selected from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab
- Do not detach an ink cartridge that is not in use. Printing cannot be performed while either ink cartridge is detached.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Changing the Machine Settings](#) > [Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer](#) > [Managing the Machine Power](#)

P414

Managing the Machine Power

This function allows you to manage the machine power from the printer driver.

The procedure for managing the printer power is as follows:



Power Off

The Power Off function turns off the machine. When you use this function, you will not be able to turn the machine on from the printer driver.

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)

2. Execute power off

Click Power Off on the Maintenance tab. When the confirmation message appears, click OK.

The machine power switches off, and the Maintenance tab is displayed again.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Changing the Machine Settings](#) > [Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer](#) > [Reducing the Machine Noise](#)

P034

Reducing the Machine Noise

This function allows you to reduce the operating noise. Select when you wish to reduce the operating noise of the printer at night, etc.

Using this function may lower the print speed.

The procedure for using the quiet mode is as follows:



Quiet Mode

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Click Quiet Mode on the Maintenance tab

The Quiet Mode dialog box opens.

3. Set the quiet mode

If necessary, specify one of the following items:

Do not use quiet mode

The operating noise is at normal volume.

Always use quiet mode

Select this option when you wish to reduce the operating noise.

Use quiet mode within specified time

The operating noise can be reduced during a specified period of time.

Set the Start time and End time when you wish the quiet mode to be activated.



Important

- The time specified in Start time and in End time must be different.

4. Transmit the settings

Make sure that the machine is on and click Send.

Click OK when the confirmation message appears.

The settings are enabled hereafter.



Note

- Depending on print quality settings, effects of the quiet mode may be less.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Changing the Machine Settings > Changing Machine Settings from Your Computer > Changing the Machine Operation Mode

P035

Changing the Machine Operation Mode

If necessary, switch between various modes of machine operation.

The procedure for configuring Custom Settings is as follows:



Custom Settings

1. Open the [printer driver setup window](#)
2. Make sure that the machine is on, and then click Custom Settings on the Maintenance tab

The Custom Settings dialog box opens.



Note

- If the machine is off or bi-directional communication is disabled, a message may appear because the computer cannot collect the machine status.
If this happens, click OK to display the most recent settings specified on your computer.

3. If necessary, complete the following settings:

Prevent paper abrasion

The machine can increase the gap between the print head and the paper during high-density printing to prevent paper abrasion.
Check this check box to use this function.

Align heads manually

Usually, the Print Head Alignment function on the Maintenance tab is set to automatic head alignment, but you can change it to manual head alignment.
If the printing results are unsatisfactory even after you execute automatic head alignment, see "[Aligning the Print Head Position](#)," and execute manual head alignment.
Check this check box to perform the manual head alignment. Uncheck this check box to perform the automatic head alignment.

Ink Drying Wait Time

You can set the length of the machine rest time until printing of the next page begins. Moving the slider to the right increases the pause time and moving the slider to the left decreases the time.
If the paper gets stained because the next page is ejected before the ink on the printed page dries, increase the ink drying wait time.
Reducing the ink drying wait time speeds up printing.

4. Transmit the settings

Click Send, and click OK when the confirmation message appears.

The machine operates with the modified settings hereafter.

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing

Tõrkeotsing

- ➡ Kui ilmneb tõrge
- ➡ Seadme toidet ei saa sisse lülitada
- ➡ LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood
- ➡ LED-näidikut ei ole üldse näha
- ➡ MP Driversit ei saa installida
- ➡ Rakendusprogrammi ei saa installida
- ➡ Ei saa USB-kaabli abil arvutiga korralikult ühendust luua
- ➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav
- ➡ Printimine ei alga
- ➡ Kopeerimine/printimine peatub enne töö lõpetamist
- ➡ Seade töötab, kuid tinti ei väljastata
- ➡ Printimiskiirus on oodatust aeglasem
- ➡ FINE-kasseti hoidik ei liigu vahetamisasendisse
- ➡ Paberi söötmine ei toimu õigesti
- ➡ Paberiummistused
- ➡ Arvuti ekraanil kuvatakse teade
- ➡ Windowsi kasutajatele
- ➡ Skannimisprobleemid
- ➡ Tarkvaraprobleemid
- ➡ MP Navigator EX-iga seotud probleemid
- ➡ Kui probleemi ei õnnestu lahendada
- ➡ KKK
- ➡ Kasutusjuhised (printeridraiver)
- ➡ Üldised märkused (skanneridraiver)

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

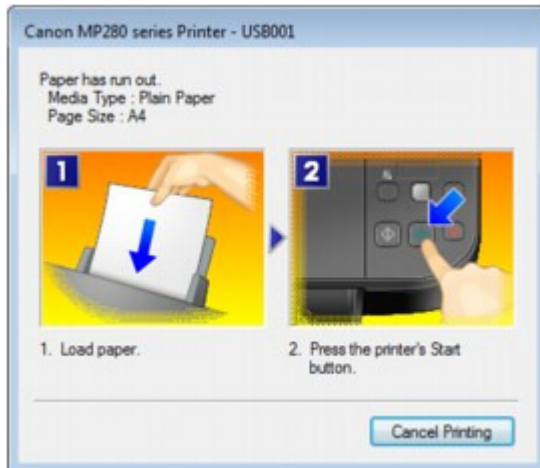
Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Kui ilmneb tõrge

U302

Kui ilmneb tõrge

Kui printimisel tekib tõrge (nt on paber seadmest otsas või tekkinud on paberiummistus), kuvatakse automaatselt vastav tõrketeade. Järgige tõrketeates kirjeldatud juhiseid. Sõltuvalt teie operatsioonisüsteemist võib see teade olla erinev.



[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Tõrkeotsing](#) > Seadme toidet ei saa sisse lülitada

U303

Seadme toidet ei saa sisse lülitada

- **Kontroll 1:** vajutage nuppu **Sisse (ON)**.
- **Kontroll 2:** kontrollige, kas toitepistik on kindlalt masina toitejuhtme pessa lükatud, seejärel lülitage toide uuesti sisse.
- **Kontroll 3:** tõmmake seadme toitejuhe toitepesast välja, seejärel sisestage toitepistik uuesti toitepessa ja lülitage seade 2 min pärast uuesti sisse.

Kui probleem ei lahene, pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood

U305

LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood

Häire märgutuli põleb oranžilt

Seadme tõrke ilmnemisel põleb märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)** oranžilt ning LED-näidikul kuvatakse järgmine tõrkekood. Vaadake, milline tõrkekood on LED-näidikul kuvatud, ja võtke tõrke parandamiseks vastavad meetmed.



* Olenevalt ilmnenu tõrkest ei põle märgutuli **Häire (Alarm)**.

Tõrkekood	Põhjus	Toiming
E, 0, 2  (LED-näidik)	Seadmest on paber otsa saanud./Paberit ei söödeta ette.	Asetage paber uuesti õigesti tagasalve ja vajutage nuppu Must režiim (Black) või Värvirežiim (Color) .
E, 0, 3  (LED-näidik)	Paberiväljastusalus on suletud./Paberiummistus.	Kui paberiväljastusalus on suletud, avage see. Seade jätkab printimist. Kui paberiväljastusaluse avamine probleemi ei lahenda või kui alus oli juba varem avatud, võib paber printeri ummistada. Eemaldage ummistuse tekitanud paber, asetage paber uuesti õigesti printerisse, vajutage nuppu Must režiim (Black) või Värvirežiim (Color) . ➔ Paberiummistused
E, 0, 4 E, 0, 5  (LED-näidik)	FINE-kassetti ei õnnestu tuvastada.	FINE-kassett pole võib-olla õigesti paigaldatud või pole kassett selle seadmega ühilduv. Avage skannimisseade (printeri kaas) ja paigaldage sobiv FINE-kassett. Pärast seda lükake tindikassetti lukustuskaant seni, kuni see klõpsatusega oma kohale kinnitub, siis sulgege skannimisseade (kaas). Kui probleemi ei õnnestu lahendada, pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.
E, 0, 7	FINE-kassett pole õigesti	Veenduge, et FINE-kassett on õigesti

 (LED-näidik)	paigaldatud.	paigaldatud. ➔ Regulaarne hooldus
E, 0, 8  (LED-näidik)	Tindijäägikogur on peaaegu täis.	Vajutage printimise jätkamiseks seadme nuppu Must režiim (Black) või Värvirežiim (Color) . Pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.
E, 1, 3  (LED-näidik)	Allesjäänud tindikogust ei saa tuvastada.	Tint võib olla otsas. Keelatakse järelejäänud tinditaseme tuvastamise funktsioon, kuna tinditaset ei saa õigesti tuvastada. Kui soovite printimist jätkata selle funktsioonita, vajutage printeri nuppu Peata/Lähtesta (Stop/Reset) vähemalt 5 sekundit. Canon soovib kasutada uusi ehtsaid Canoni kassette, et saavutada optimaalne kvaliteet. Palun võtke teatavaks, et Canon ei vastuta mis tahes rikke või tõrke eest, mille on põhjustanud printimise jätkamine olukorras, kui tint on otsas.
E, 1, 4  (LED-näidik)	FINE-kassetti ei õnnestu tuvastada.	Võimalik, et see FINE-kassett ei ühildu selle printeriga. Paigaldage sobiv FINE-kassett. ➔ Regulaarne hooldus
E, 1, 5  (LED-näidik)	FINE-kassetti ei õnnestu tuvastada.	Võimalik, et FINE-kassett pole õigesti paigaldatud. Avage skannimisseade (kaas) ja paigaldage FINE-kassett õigesti. ➔ Regulaarne hooldus
E, 1, 6	Tint on otsas.	Tint on otsas.

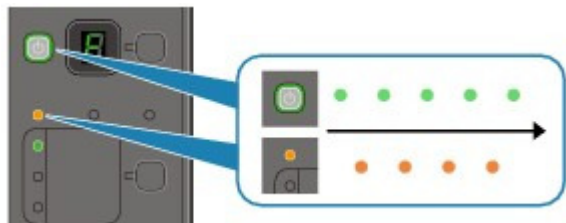
 (LED-näidik)	Vahetage tindikassett välja ja sulgege skanner (kaas). Kui masin prindib ja te ei soovi seda katkestada, vajutage tindikasseti paigaldamiseks printeri nuppu Peata/Lähtesta (Stop/Reset) vähemalt 5 sekundit. Sellisel juhul saab printimine jätkuda olukorras, kui tint on otsas. Keelatakse järelejäänud tinditaseme tuvastamise funktsioon. Vahetage tühi tindikassett välja koheselt peale printimist. Prindikvaliteet on ebarahuldav, kui printimist jätkatakse olukorras, kui tint on otsas.	
E, 3, 0  (LED-näidik)	Kui valite koopiate tegemise vastavalt lehe formaadile, ei saa originaali formaati õigesti tuvastada või on dokument liiga väike.	• Veenduge, et originaal vastab nõuetele ja on kopeerimisalusele õigesti asetatud. • Kontrollige kopeerimisalusele asetatud originaali asendit ja suunda.
E, 3, 1  (LED-näidik)	Seade pole arvutiga ühendatud.	Ühendage seade ja arvuti USB-kaabli abil.
E, 5, 0  (LED-näidik)	Prindipea joondusmusteri skannimine ebaõnnestus.	Törke nullimiseks vajutage nuppu Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset) ja võtke allpool kirjeldatud meetmed. • Veenduge, et prindipea joondusmuster on kopeerimisalusel õiges asendis ja suunas. • Veenduge, et kopeerimisalus või prindipea joondusmuster ei ole määrdunud. • Veenduge, et alusele asetatud paber on automaatseks prindipea joondamiseks sobivas formaadis ja sobivat tüüpi. Asetage alati automaatseks prindipea joonduseks üks leht A4 - või Letter-formaadis tavapaberit. • Veenduge, et prindipea pihustid ei ole ummistunud. Printige pihustite kontrollmuster, et kontrollida prindipea olekut. ➡ Regulaarne hooldus Kui probleem ei lahene, ühendage

seade arvutiga ja joondage prindipea printeridraiveri abil.

➔ [Prindipea joondamine](#)

Roheline toitetuli ja oranž häire märgutuli vilguvad vaheldumisi

Kui **Toite (POWER)** ja **Häire (Alarm)** märgutuli vilguvad vaheldumisi, nagu alljärgnevalt näidatud, ning LED-näidikul kuvatakse järgmine tõrkekood, siis on tekkinud ilmselt tõrge, mille puhul peate pöörduma hoolduskeskusesse.



Tõrkekood	Toiming
P, 0, 2  (LED-näidik)	Katkestage printimine ja lülitage seade välja. Seejärel eemaldage paberiummistus või muu FINE-kasseti hoidiku liikumist takistav vöörkeha ning lülitage seade uuesti sisse. Tähtis! - Olge ettevaatlik, et te ei puutuks aparadi sees olevaid komponente. Nende puudutamise korral ei pruugi seade õigesti printida. - Kui probleem ei lahene, pöörduge teeninduskeskusesse.
P, 1, 0  (LED-näidik)	Lülitage seade välja ja tõmmake seadme toitejuhe toiteallika pistikust välja. Pöörduge teeninduskeskusesse.
Muudel kui ülalkirjeldatud juhtudel:	Lülitage seade välja ja tõmmake seadme toitejuhe toiteallika pistikust välja. Ühendage juhe uuesti voluvõrku ja lülitage printer taas sisse. Kui probleem ei lahene, pöörduge teeninduskeskusesse.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Tõrkeotsing](#) > LED-näidikut ei ole üldse näha

U343

LED-näidikut ei ole üldse näha

- **Kui Toite (POWER) märgutuli on väljas:**

Seade pole sisse lülitatud. Ühendage toitejuhe ja vajutage nuppu **Sisse (ON)**.

- **Kui Toite (POWER) märgutuli on sees:**

Võib-olla on LED-näidik energiasäästurežiimi lülitatud. Vajutage mõnda teist juhtpaneeli nuppu kui **Sisse (ON)**.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > MP Driversit ei saa installida

U308

MP Driversit ei saa installida

- Kui installimine ei alga ka pärast seda, kui **Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)** on arvuti kettaseadmesse sisestatud:

Alustage installimist alltoodud protseduuri järgides.

1. Klõpsake Start, seejärel Arvuti (Computer).

Windows XP-s klõpsake Start, seejärel Minu arvuti (My Computer).

2. Topeltklõpsake kuvatavas aknas  CD-ROM-i ikoonil.

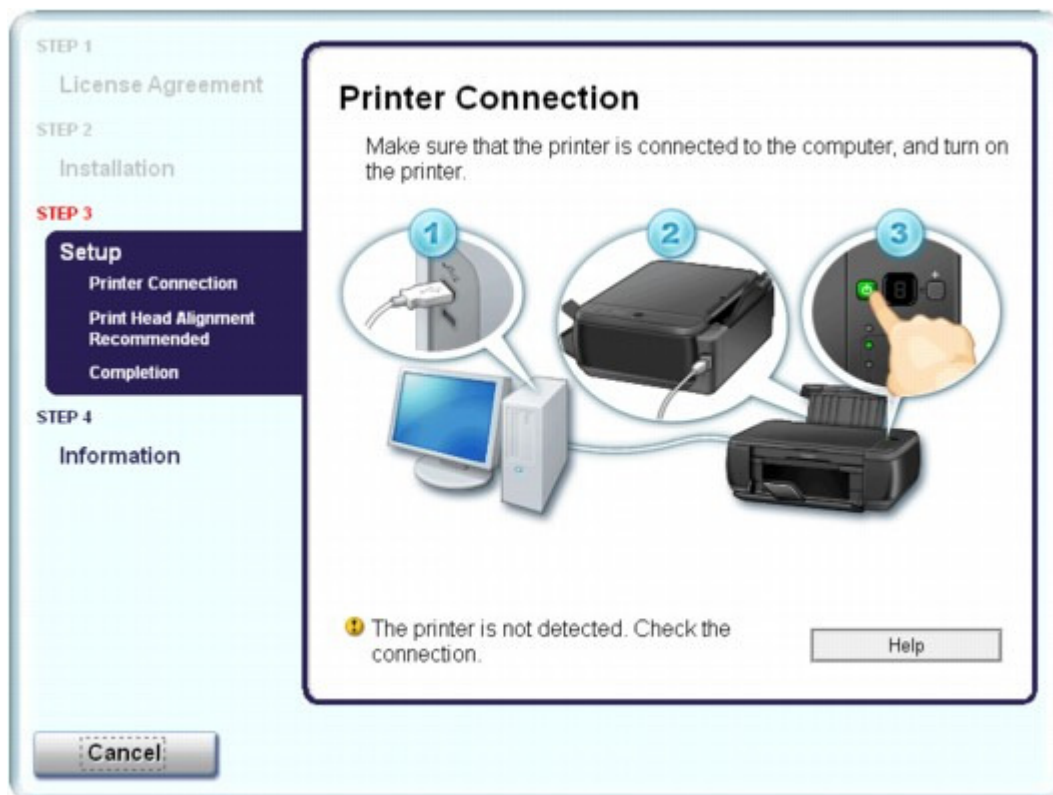
Kui kuvatakse CD-ROM-i sisu, tehke topeltklõps ikoonil MSETUP4.EXE.



Märkus

- Kui CD-ROM-i ikooni ei kuvata, proovige järgmist toimingut:
 - Eemaldage CD-ROM oma arvutist, seejärel sisestage uuesti.
 - Taaskäivitage arvuti.
- Kui ikooni ikka ei kuvata, proovige teisi kettaid ja vaadake, kas need kuvatakse. Kui teised kettad kuvatakse, siis on mingi probleem plaadil **Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)**. Sellisel juhul pöörduge teeninduskeskusesse.

- Kui ei saa toimingut jätkata **Printer Connection** kuvast edasi:



Kui te ei pääse kaugemale Printer Connection kuvast, kontrollige, kas USB-kaabel on kindlalt ühendatud nii seadme USB-pordiga kui ka arvutiga ning seejärel järgige allkirjeldatud protseduuri MP Driversi uueks installimiseks.

**Märkus**

- The printer is not detected. Check the connection. Teate sisu sõltub kasutatavast arvutist. MP Driversi taasinstallimiseks järgige sel puhul allkirjeldatud toimingut.

1. Klõpsake Cancel.
2. Klõpsake Start Over kuval Installation Failure.
3. Klõpsake Back ekraanil, mis järgmisena avaneb.
4. Klõpsake Exit PIXMA XXX kuval, seejärel eemaldage CD-ROM.
5. Lülitage seade välja.
6. Taaskäivitage arvuti.
7. Veenduge, et arvutis ei töötaks ükski rakendustarkvara.
8. Sisestage CD-ROM uuesti ja viige MP Driversi installimiseks läbi Easy Install.

• Muudel juhtudel:

MP Driversi taasinstalliks järgige installijuhendis kirjeldatud toimingut.

Kui MP Drivers installiti valesti, tuleb see desinstallida, arvuti taaskäivitada ning seejärel MP Drivers uuesti installida.

➡ **Mittevajaliku MP Driversi kustutamine**

MP Driversi taasinstallimisel viige läbi Custom Install plaadil *Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)* ja valige MP Drivers.

**Märkus**

- Kui installimine sunniti enneaegselt lõpetama Windowsi tõrke tõttu, võib süsteem olla ebastabiilne ning võimalik, et teil ei õnnestu MP-draivereid installida. Enne uuesti installimist taaskäivitage arvuti.

[Lehekülje algusesse ↑](#)

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Rakendusprogrammi ei saa installida

U347

Rakendusprogrammi ei saa installida

Easy-WebPrint EX ei käivitu või Easy-WebPrint EX menüü ei ilmu

Kui Easy-WebPrint EX ei käivitu või selle menüü ei ilmu Internet Explorerisse, kontrollige järgnevaid aspekte.

Märkus

- Easy-WebPrint EX-i saate kasutada Internet Explorer 7 või uuemaga.

• Kontroll 1: kas Canon Easy-WebPrint EX on kuvatud Internet Exploreri menüü View menüüs Tööriistad (Toolbars)?

Kui Canon Easy-WebPrint EX ei ole kuvatud, ei ole Easy-WebPrint EX arvutisse installitud. Viige läbi Custom Install plaadil *Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)* ja siis valige selle oma arvutisse installimiseks Easy-WebPrint EX.

Märkus

- Kui Easy-WebPrint EX ei ole arvutisse installitud, võidakse tegumiriba teavitusalal kuvada sõnum, mis palub teil see installida. Klõpsake sõnumil, siis järgige Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimiseks arvuti ekraanil kuvatavaid juhiseid.
- Easy-WebPrint EX-i installimise või allalaadimise ajal on vajalik Interneti-ühendus. Ühenduse tasu on teie kanda.

• Kontroll 2: kas Canon Easy-WebPrint EX on valitud Internet Exploreri menüü View menüüs Tööriistad (Toolbars)?

Kui Canon Easy-WebPrint EX ei ole valitud, ei ole Easy-WebPrint EX lubatud. Canon Easy-WebPrint EX lubamiseks valige see.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Ei saa USB-kaabli abil arvutiga korralikult ühendust luua

U309

Ei saa USB-kaabli abil arvutiga korralikult ühendust luua

Printimise või skannimise kiirus on aeglane/kiire USB-ühendus ei toimi/Kuvatakse sõnum „Seade võib kiiremini toimida”

Kui süsteemi keskkond pole kiire USB-standardiga täielikult ühilduv, töötab seade aeglasema kiirusega USB 1.1. standardi järgi. Sellisel juhul töötab seade õigesti, kuid printimis- või skannimiskiirus on tänu andmeedastuskiirusele aeglasem.

- **Kontrollige: et veenduda, kas teie süsteemi keskkond toetab kiiret USB-ühendust, kontrollige järgmist.**

- Kas teie arvuti USB-port toetab kiiret USB-ühendust?
- Kas teie arvuti USB-kaabel või USB-jaotur toetab kiiret USB-ühendust?
Kasutage kindlasti serditud kiire USB-ühenduse kaablit. Meie soovitusel kohaselt ei tohiks kaabel olla pikem kui 3 meetrit/10 jalga.
- Kas teie arvuti operatsioonisüsteem toetab kiiret USB-ühendust?
Muretsege ja installige arvutisse kõige uuem värskendus.
- Kas kiire USB-ühenduse draiver töötab õigesti?
Hankige endale kiire USB-ühenduse draiveri viimane versioon ja installige see oma arvutisse.



Tähtis!

- Lisateabe saamiseks kiire USB-ühenduse kasutamiseks oma süsteemi keskkonnas võtke ühendust arvuti, USB-kaabli või USB-jaoturi tootjaga.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

U310

Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

Kui prinditulemus pole rahuldav, st kui on valgeid triipe, joondamata ridasid ja ebaühtlaseid värve, kontrollige kõigepealt üle paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätted.

• Kontroll 1: kas lehekülje suuruse ja prindikandja sätted vastavad

seadmesse asetatud paberi suurusele ja tüübile?

Kui need sätted on valed, pole õige prinditulemus tagatud.

Foto või joonistuse printimisel võib valesti seadistatud paberitüübi säte vähendada prindi värvikvaliteeti.

Vale paberitüübi sättega printides võib prinditud pind kriimustuda.

Ääristeta printimisel võib sõltuvalt paberitüübi sättest ja asetatud paberist ilmned ebaühtlane värvumine.

Seadme juhtimisel kopeerimine	Kinnitage režiim seadme juhtpaneeli kasutades. ➔ Kopeerimine
Arvutist printimine	Kinnitage printeridraiveri abil. ➔ Printimine Lihtsa seadistusega (Easy Setup)

• Kontroll 2: veenduge, kas printeridraiveris on valitud vastav

prindikvaliteet.

Seadke printimiseks paberile ja pildile sobiv prindikvaliteedi suvand. Kui märkate hägustumisi või ebaühtlasi värve, suurendage prindikvaliteedi sätet ning proovige uuesti printida.

Prindikvaliteedi seadistust saate kinnitada printeridraiveri abil.

➔ [Prindikvaliteedi muutmine ja pildiandmete korrigeerimine](#)

• Kontroll 3: kui probleemi ei lahene, võib olla muid põhjusi.

Vaadake ka allpool olevaid lõike:

- ➔ Tööd ei saa lõpuni printida
- ➔ Prinditulemused puuduvad/väljaprint on hägune/värvid on valed/valged triibud
- ➔ Värvid on hägused
- ➔ Read on joondamata
- ➔ Prinditud leht kooldub või on tindiplekkidega
- ➔ Paber on määrdunud/prinditud pind on kriimustatud
- ➔ Paberi tagakülg on määrdunud
- ➔ Väljatrüki äärtel on püstjooned
- ➔ Värvid on ebaühtlased või triibulised

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Tõrkeotsing](#) > [Prinditulemus pole rahuldav](#) > Tööd ei saa lõpuni printida

U311

Tööd ei saa lõpuni printida

- **Kontroll 1: kas prindiandmete maht on väga suur?**

Klõpsake Print Options lehel Page Setup. Seejärel märkige avanenud dialoogiaknas märkeruut Prevent loss of print data.

- **Kontroll 2: kas teie arvuti kõvakettal on piisavalt ruumi?**

Kustutage mittevajalikud failid, et saada kettale ruumi.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Prinditulemused puuduvad/väljaprint on hägune/värvid on valed/valged triibud

U313

Prinditulemused puuduvad/väljaprint on hägune/värvid on valed/valged triibud

❖ Prinditulemused puuduvad



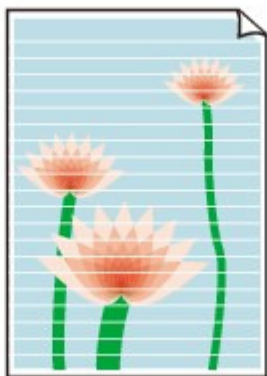
❖ Väljaprint on hägune



❖ Värvid on valed



❖ Valged triibud



- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

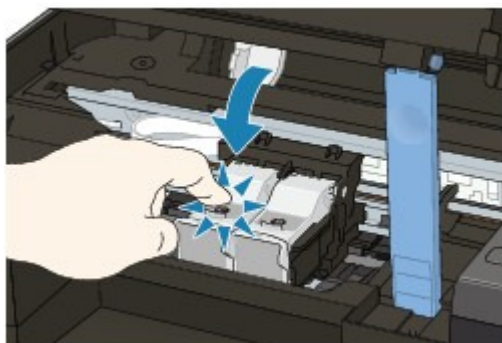
➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: kas FINE-kassett on korralikult paigaldatud?**

Kui tindikasseti lukustuskaas pole kindlalt suletud, siis ei pritsita tinti õigesti.

Avage skannimisseade (kaas) ja tindikasseti lukustuskaas ning sulgege seejärel tindikasseti lukustuskaas.

Tindikasseti lukustuskaane sulgemisel lükake tindikasseti lukustuskaant seni, kuni see klõpsatusega oma kohale kinnitub.



- **Kontroll 3: printige pihusti kontrollmuster ja seejärel viige läbi vajalik**

hooldustoiming, nt puhastage prindipea.

Et kontrollida tindi väljutamist prindipeast, printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Järgige jaotist **Regulaarne hooldus** pihustite kontrollmusteri printimisel, prindipea puhastamisel ja prindipea sügavpuhastamisel.

- Kui pihustite kontrollmusterit ei prindita õigesti:
Pärast prindipea puhastamist printige pihustite kontrollmuster ja uurige seda.
- Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea kahekordset puhastamist:
Käivitage prindipea sügavpuhastamine.
Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea sügavpuhastust, lülitage seade välja ja sooritage veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastamine 24 tunni pärast.
- Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea kahekordset süvapuhamist:
Tint võib olla otsas. Asendage FINE-kassett.

- **Kontroll 4: kui FINE-kassetist on tint otsa saanud, asendage see uuega.**

- **Kontroll 5: kui kasutate paberit, millel on üks prinditav pind, veenduge, et paber oleks laetud prinditav külg ülespoole.**

Sellise paberi valele poolele printimisel võib prinditulemus olla hägune või prindikvaliteet langeda.

Üksikasjalikke juhiseid prinditava poole kohta leiate paberiga kaasasolevast kasutusjuhendist.

- **Kontroll 6: kas kopeerimisalus on määrdunud?**

Puhastage kopeerimisalust.

➡ Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine

- **Kopeerimisel lugege ka järgnevat lõiku:**

- **Kontroll 7: kontrollige, et dokument oleks kopeerimisalusele õigesti asetatud.**

➡ Paberi/originaalide lisamine

- **Kontroll 8: kas originaali kopeerimisalusele asetamisel on kopeeritav pool jäänud allapoole?**

- **Kontroll 9: kas hakkasite selle seadme tehtud väljaprinte kopeerima?**

Arvutist uuesti printimine.

Seadme väljatrüki kopeerimisel võib prindikvaliteet langeda.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Värvid on hägused

U314

Värvid on hägused

• Kontroll 1: võimaldage värviparandusfunktsioon.

Värviparandusfunktsiooni võimaldamine printeri draiverites võib parandada fotode või jooniste värvitulemusi.

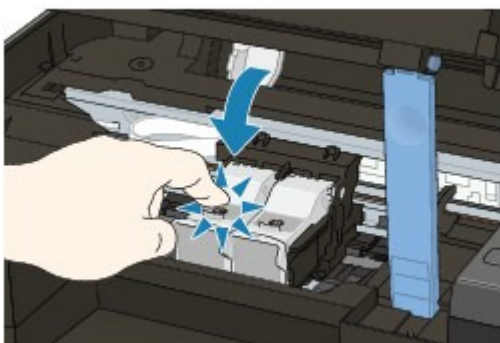
Valige Vivid Photo lehel Effects printerisätete dialoogiaknas.

• Kontroll 2: kas FINE-kassett on korralikult paigaldatud?

Kui tindikasseti lukustuskaas pole kindlalt suletud, siis ei pritsita tinti õigesti.

Avage skannimisseade (kaas) ja tindikasseti lukustuskaas ning sulgege seejärel tindikasseti lukustuskaas.

Tindikasseti lukustuskaane sulgemisel lükake tindikasseti lukustuskaant seni, kuni see klõpsatusega oma kohale kinnitub.



• Kontroll 3: kui FINE-kassetist on tint otsa saanud, asendage see uuega.

• Kontroll 4: kas pihustite kontrollmuster on korralikult prinditud?

Et kontrollida tindi väljutamist prindipeast, printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Järgige jaotist **Regulaarne hooldus** pihustite kontrollmusteri printimisel, prindipea puhastamisel ja prindipea sügavpuhastamisel.

- Kui pihustite kontrollmustrit ei prindita õigesti:
Pärast prindipea puhastamist printige pihustite kontrollmuster ja uurige seda.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset puhastamist:
Käivitage prindipea sügavpuhastamine.
Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea sügavpuhastust, lülitage seade välja ja sooritage veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastamine 24 tunni pärast.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset süvapuhamist:
Tint võib olla otsas. Asendage FINE-kassett.

Märkus

- Värvid väljaprintidil võivad erineda värvidest arvutiekraanil, põhjuseks on erinevused värvitoonide loomise meetodites. Arvutiekraanil kuvatavaid värvitoone mõjutavad ka ümbritseva keskkonna erinevused ja värvisuvandite sätted. Seega võib prinditud tulemus erineda ekraanil kuvatavast.

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Read on joondamata

U315

Read on joondamata



- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ [Prinditulemus pole rahuldav](#)

- **Kontroll 2: viige läbi prindipea joondus.**

Kui prinditud sirgjooned on valesti joondatud või printimistulemus teid mingil muul põhjusel ei rahulda, muutke prindipea asendit.

➡ [Prindipea joondamine](#)



Märkus

- Kui probleem ei lahene pärast prindipea joondamist, joondage prindipea käsitsi vastavalt jaotisele [Prindipea joondamine](#).

- **Kontroll 3: kas prindiandmete maht on väga suur?**

Klõpsake Print Options lehel Page Setup. Seejärel märkige avanenud dialoogiaknas märkeruut Prevent loss of print data.

- **Kontroll 4: kas kasutuses on lehe küljenduse printimine või kõiteveerise funktsioon?**

Kui printimisel kasutatakse küljendusprindi või kõiteveerise funktsiooni, võivad peenikesed jooned jääda printimata. Proovige jooni dokumendil laiemaks muuta.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Prinditud leht kooldub või on tindiplekkidega

U316

Prinditud leht kooldub või on tindiplekkidega

✦ Prinditud lehel on tindiplekid



✦ Prinditud paber kooldub



- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: kui intensiivsus on määratud kõrgeks, vähendage Intensity sätteid printeridraiveris ja proovige uuesti printida.**

Kui prindite pilte suure intensiivsusega tavalisele paberile, võib paber liiga palju tinti imada ning laineliseks muutuda, mis omakorda põhjustab hõõrdumist.

Intensiivsust saab kinnitada printeridraiveri abil.

➡ Intensiivsuse reguleerimine

- **Kontroll 3: kas fotode printimisel kasutatakse fotopaberit?**

Suure värviküllastusega piltide, näiteks fotode ja sügavate värvitoonidega piltide printimisel soovitame kasutada paberit Photo Paper Plus Glossy II või muud Canoni eripaberit.

➡ Paberi/originaalide lisamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

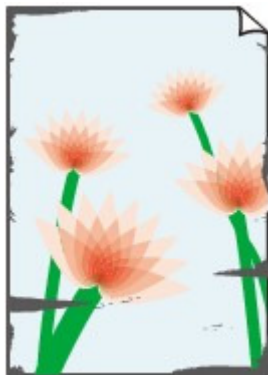
Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Paber on määrdunud/prinditud pind on kriimustatud

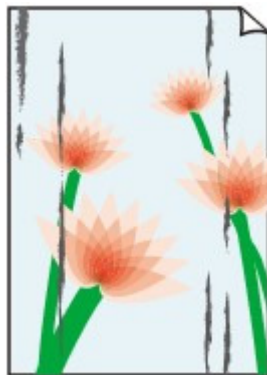
U317

Paber on määrdunud/Prinditud pind on kriimustatud

✦ Paber on määrdunud



Paberi servad on määrdunud



Prinditud pind on määrdunud

✦ Prinditud pind on kriimustatud

- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: kas kasutuses on õiget tüüpi paber? Kontrollige järgnevat:**

- Kontrollige, kas printimiseks kasutatav paber vastab prindisoovidele.
➡ Paberi/originaalide lisamine
- Ääristeta printimise korral veenduge, et kasutuses on ääristeta printimiseks sobiv paber. Ääristeta printimisel võib prindikvaliteet langeda paberi üla- ja alaservas, kui kasutatakse valet paberit.
➡ Prindiala

- **Kontroll 3: rullunud paberi korral siluge see ja asetage seadmesse.**

- **Tavapaberi kasutamisel**

Keerake paber ümber ja asetage uuesti teisele poolele printimiseks.

Paberi pikaks ajaks paberilusele jätmise tulemusel võib paber koolduda. Sellisel juhul pöörake paberi teine pool üles. See võib probleemi lahendada.

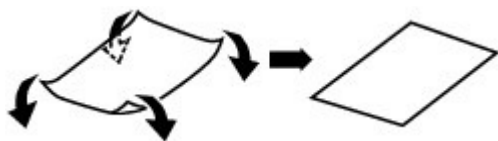
Soovitame panna kasutamata paberi tagasi pakendisse ning hoida seda tasasel pinnal.

- **Teistsuguse paberi kasutamisel**

Kui paberi nelja nurga kõveruse kõrgus on üle 3 mm / 0,1 tolli (A), võib paber olla määrdunud või selle söötmine ei pruugi õnnestuda. Sellisel juhul järgige alljärgnevalt kirjeldatud paberkõveruse kõrvaldamise tegevusi.



1. Rullige paberit kooldumisele vastupidises suunas, nagu allpool näidatud.

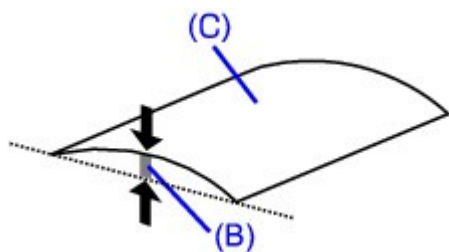


2. Kontrollige, kas paber on nüüd sile.

Kooldus olnud paberilehed on soovitatav printerisse sõõta ükshaaval.

Märkus

- Sõltuvalt prindikandjast võib paber olla määrdunud või seda ei saa korralikult seadmesse sõõta isegi siis, kui see pole sissepoole kooldunud. Sellisel juhul järgige allpool kirjeldatud tegevusi paberi väljapoole koolutamiseks enne printimist kõrguse 3 mm / 0,1 tolli (B) piires. See võib parandada prinditulemust.



(C) Printimiskülg

Väljapoole koolutatud paberilehed on soovitatav printida ükshaaval.

• Kontroll 4: kui prindite paksule paberile, valige säte Prevent paper

abrasion.

Valik Prevent paper abrasion suurendab prindipea ja paberi vahele jäävat ruumi. Kui märkate tindi laialiminekut isegi juhul, kui prindikandja on seadistatud vastavalt laaditud paberile, seadistage masin paberi hõõrdumist vältima, kasutades juhtpaneeli või arvutit.

Printimiskiirus võib säte Prevent paper abrasion valimisel langeda.

* Printimise lõppedes tühistage säte Prevent paper abrasion. Vastasel juhul rakendub säte kõigile järgnevatele printimistöödele.

• Seadistamine juhtpaneeli kaudu

Vajutage korduvalt nuppu **Hooldus (Maintenance)** seni, kuni LED-näidiku kuva on järgmine, seejärel vajutage paberi hõõrdumise vältimise funktsiooni lubamiseks nuppu **Must režiim (Black)**.



Vajutage paberi hõõrdumise vältimise funktsiooni keelamiseks korduvalt nuppu **Hooldus (Maintenance)** seni, kuni ilmub ülal olev LED-näidiku kuva, seejärel vajutage nuppu **Värvirežiim (Color)**.

• Seadistamine arvuti abil

Avage printeri seadistuste dialoogikast ning valige Custom Settings lehel Maintenance märkeruut Prevent paper abrasion ja klõpsake seejärel valikut Send.

Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamise kohta vaadake osa [Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine](#).

- **Kontroll 5: kui intensiivsus on määratud kõrge, vähendage Intensity**

sätet printeridraiveris ja proovige uuesti printida.

Kui prindite pilte suure intensiivsusega tavalisele paberile, võib paber liiga palju tinti imada ning laineliseks muutuda, mis omakorda põhjustab hõõrdumist.

- Arvutist printides
Vähendage Intensity sätet printeridraiveris ja proovige uuesti printida.

1. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

➡ [Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine](#)



Klõpsake siia: [printeridraiver](#)

* Enne printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamist lõpetage rakenduse tarkvara käitamine.

2. Valige lehel Main sätte Manual all määrang Color/Intensity ja klõpsake valikut Set.

3. Lohistage Intensity lehele Color Adjustment, et reguleerida intensiivsust.

- **Kontroll 6: kas väljaprint on tehtud soovitatavast prindialast väljapoole?**

Kui prindite paberi soovitatavast prindialast väljapoole, võib paberi alaserv tindiga määrduda.

Muutke rakendustarkvaras dokumendi suurust.

➡ [Prindiala](#)

- **Kontroll 7: kas kopeerimisalus on määrdunud?**

Puhastage kopeerimisalust.

➡ [Kopeerimisaluse ja dokumendikaane puhastamine](#)

- **Kontroll 8: kas paberisööterullik on määrdunud?**

Puhastage paberisööterullikut.

➡ [Regulaarne hooldus](#)

**Märkus**

- Paberisööterulliku puhastamine kulutab rullikut, seetõttu tehke seda ainult vajaduse korral.

- **Kontroll 9: kas seadme sisemus on määrdunud?**

Kahepoolne printimine võib jätta seadme sisse tinti, mis põhjustab plekke väljaprintidel.

Sellisel juhul puhastage masina sisemuse puhastamiseks põhjaplaati.

➡ [Regulaarne hooldus](#)

**Märkus**

- Vältimaks seadme sisemuse määrdumist määrake õige paberisuurus.

- **Kontroll 10: määrake Ink Drying Wait Time pikemaks.**

See annab piisavalt aega prinditud pinna kuivamiseks, mis aitab vältida paberi määrdumist ja prindipinna kriimustamist.

1. Veenduge, et seade on sisse lülitatud.

2. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

➡ [Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine](#)

3. Klõpsake vahekaarti Maintenance ning seejärel valikut Custom Settings.
4. Lohistage ooteaja määramiseks liugriba Ink Drying Wait Time ning klõpsake seejärel valikut Send.
5. Kinnitage teadet ja klõpsake valikut OK.

- **Kontroll 11: kas paberit on kraapinud teine printerisse söödetud paber?**

Sõltuvalt prindikandjast võib paberit kraapida muu sisestatud paber, kui paberit söödetakse tagasalvest. Sellisel juhul asetage seadmesse üks paber korraga.

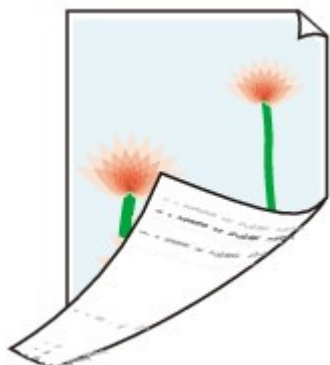
[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Paberi tagakülg on määrdunud

U318

Paberi tagakülg on määrdunud



- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: sellisel juhul puhastage masina sisemuse puhastamiseks põhjaplaati.**

➡ Regulaarne hooldus



Märkus

- Ääristeta, kahepoolne või ülemäärane printimine võib printeri sisemusse jätta tindiplekke.

[Lehekülje algusesse ↑](#)

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Väljatrüki äärtel on püstjooned

U319

Väljatrüki äärtel on püstjooned



- **Kontroll 1: kas seadsite sobivad paberitüübi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: kas printerisse asetatud paber on õige suurusega?**

Kui printerisse asetatud paber on teie määratust suurem, võivad servale ilmuda vertikaaljooned.

Määrake õige paberisuurus vastavalt printeris olevale paberile.

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav



Märkus

- Püstjoonte mustri suund võib sõltuvalt pildandmetest või prindisättest erineda.
- Väljatrükkide puhtana hoidmiseks viib seade vajadusel läbi automaatse puhastuse. Puhastamiseks lastakse printerist välja väike kogus tinti. Kuigi tint jääb tavaliselt tindijäägikogurile, võib see paberile sattuda, kui panete printerisse oma määratust suurema paberi.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Prinditulemus pole rahuldav > Värvid on ebaühtlased või triibulised

U320

Värvid on ebaühtlased või triibulised

✦ Värvid on ebaühtlased



✦ Värvid on triibulised



- **Kontroll 1: kas kinnitasite paberi ja prindikvaliteedi sätteid?**

➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav

- **Kontroll 2: printige pihusti kontrollmuster ja seejärel viige läbi vajalikud**

hooldustoimingud, nt puhastage prindipea.

Et kontrollida tindi väljutamist prindipeast, printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Järgige jaotist **Regulaarne hooldus** pihustite kontrollmusteri printimisel, prindipea puhastamisel ja prindipea sügavpuhastamisel.

- Kui pihustite kontrollmusterit ei prindita õigesti:
Pärast prindipea puhastamist printige pihustite kontrollmuster ja uurige seda.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset puhastamist:
Käivitage prindipea sügavpuhastamine.
Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea sügavpuhastust, lülitage seade välja ja sooritage veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastamine 24 tunni pärast.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset süvapuhamist:
Tint võib olla otsas. Asendage FINE-kassett.

- **Kontroll 3: viige läbi prindipea joondus.**

➡ Prindipea joondamine



Märkus

- Kui probleem ei lahene pärast prindipea joondamist, joondage prindipea käsitsi vastavalt jaotisele [Prindipea joondamine](#).
-

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Printimine ei alga

U321

Printimine ei alga

- **Kontroll 1: kontrollige, kas toitejuhe on kindlalt ühendatud, ning lülitage**

seejärel seade sisse.

Kui **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli vilgub roheliselt, siis masin käivitub. Oodake, kuni **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli lõpetab vilkumise ja jääb roheliselt põlema.



Märkus

- Kui prindite suuri andmemahte (nt fotod või joonistused), võib printimise alustamine kauem aega võtta. Kuni **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli vilgub roheliselt, töötleb arvuti andmeid ning saadab need seadmesse. Oodake, kuni printimine algab.

- **Kontroll 2: veenduge, et USB-kaabel on kindlalt seadme USB-pordi ja arvutiga ühendatud.**

Kui seade on arvutiga ühendatud USB-kaabli kaudu, kontrollige järgnevat:

- Kui kasutate releeseadet, nagu USB-jaotur, ühendage see lahti, ühendage seade otse arvutiga ja proovige uuesti printida. Kui printimine algab normaalselt, on viga releeseadmes. Releeseadme kohta täpse konsultatsiooni saamiseks pöörduge edasimüüja poole.
- Probleem võib olla ka USB-kaablis. Vahetage USB-kaabel välja ja proovige uuesti printida.

- **Kontroll 3: arvutist printides käivitage see uuesti.**

Kui järjekorras on mittevajalikke prinditöid, kustutage need.

➔ [Soovimatute prinditööde kustutamine](#)

- **Kontroll 4: veenduge, et printimise dialoogikastis on valitud teie seadme nimi.**

Kui kasutate teise printeri printeridraiverit, ei prindi seade korralikult.

Veenduge, et printimise dialoogiaknas on valitud teie seadme nimi.



Märkus

- Et muuta seade vaikeseadmeks, valige Määra vaikeprinteriks (Set as Default Printer).

- **Kontroll 5: printeri pordi õige konfigureerimine.**

Kontrollige, kas printeriport on õigesti konfigureeritud.

1. Logige administraatoriõigustega kasutajakontoga sisse.

2. Valige menüü Start valik Seadmed ja printerid (Devices and Printers).

Windows Vistas valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Riistvara ja heli (Hardware and Sound) > Printerid (Printers).

Windows XP-s valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Printerid ja muu riistvara (Printers and Other Hardware) > Printerid ja faksid (Printers and Faxes).

3. Klõpsake parema hiireklahviga ikoonil Canon XXX Printer (kus „XXX” on teie seadme nimi) ja valige seejärel Prindi atribuudid (Printer properties).

Windows Vistas või Windows XP-s paremklõpsake ikoonil Canon XXX Printer (kus „XXX” on teie seadme nimi), siis valige Atribuudid (Properties).

4. Klõpsake vahelehel Pordid (Ports), et kinnitada pordi sätteid.

Veenduge, et port nimega USBnnn (kus „n“ on arv) on valitud sätte Canon XXX Printer kuvamisel tulbas Printer valiku Prindi järgmis(t)esse porti/portidesse (Print to the following port(s)) jaoks.

- Kui säte on vale.
Taasinstallige MP Drivers.
- Printimine ei alga ka siis, kui valitud on port nimega USBnnn.
Käivitage toimingutesalvest Canon My Printer, siis valige Diagnose and Repair Printer.
Järgige ekraanile ilmutavaid juhiseid õige printeripordi seadistamiseks, seejärel valige Canon XXX Printer.
Kui probleem ei lahene, taasinstallige MP Drivers.

• Kontroll 6: kas prindandmete maht on väga suur?

Klõpsake Print Options lehel Page Setup. Seejärel märkige avanenud dialoogiaknas märkeruut Prevent loss of print data.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Kopeerimine/printimine peatub enne töö lõpetamist

U322

Kopeerimine/printimine peatub enne töö lõpetamist

• Kontroll 1: kas seade on pika aja vältel pidevalt printinud?

Kui seade on pika aja vältel pidevalt printinud, võib prindipea üle kuumeneda. Prindipea kaitsmiseks võib seade printimise mõneks ajaks peatada ja seejärel sellega jätkata.

Sellisel juhul peatage printimine sobival hetkel ja lülitage seade vähemalt 15 minutiks välja.

Kui seade on pika aja vältel pidevalt teravate värvidega joonistusi või fotosid printinud, võib see prindipea kaitsmiseks printimise peatada. Sellisel juhul ei jätkata printimist automaatselt. Lülitage seade vähemalt 15 minutiks välja.

Ettevaatust

- Prindipea ja selle ümbrus võivad seadme sees äärmiselt tuliseks minna. Ärge puudutage prindipead või selle lähedal asuvaid osi.

• Kontroll 2: kas paber on asetatud?

Veenduge, et paberialusel on paberit.

Kui seadmes saab paber otsa, lisage seda juurde.

• Kontroll 3: kas prindimaterjalil on palju fotomaterjali või jooniseid?

Suurte andmemahtude, nagu fotod või joonistused, printimine on aeganõudev protsess ja selle vältel võib tunduda, et seade on printimise lõpetanud.

Kui prindite tavapaberile pidevalt palju tinti nõudvaid andmeid, võib seade ajutiselt printimise peatada. Mõlemal juhul oodake, kuni protsess on lõpule viidud.

Märkus

- Kui prindite suure prindialaga dokumenti või mitut dokumendi koopiat, võib printimine tindi kuivamiseks peatuda.

• Kontroll 4: kui koopiate tegemine peatub enne lõppu, proovige uuesti kopeerida.

Teatava aja möödumisel pärast koopiate tegemisel ilmnenud tõrkeid lõpetab seade töö.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Seade töötab, kuid tinti ei väljastata

U323

Seade töötab, kuid tinti ei väljastata

• Kontroll 1: kas prindipea pihustid on ummistunud?

Et kontrollida tindi väljutamist prindipeast, printige pihustite kontrollmuster.

Järgige jaotist **Regulaarne hooldus** pihustite kontrollmusteri printimisel, prindipea puhastamisel ja prindipea sügavpuhastamisel.

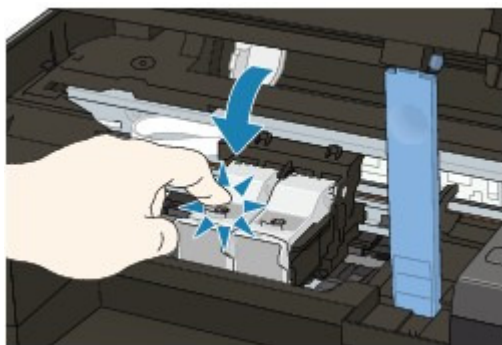
- Kui pihustite kontrollmusterit ei prindita õigesti:
Pärast prindipea puhastamist printige pihustite kontrollmuster ja uurige seda.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset puhastamist:
Käivitage prindipea sügavpuhastamine.
Kui probleem ei lahene ka pärast prindipea sügavpuhastust, lülitage seade välja ja sooritage veel üks prindipea sügavpuhastamine 24 tunni pärast.
- Kui probleem ei lahenenud ka pärast prindipea kahekordset süvapuhamist:
Tint võib olla otsas. Asendage FINE-kassett.

• Kontroll 2: kas FINE-kassett on korralikult paigaldatud?

Kui tindikasseti lukustuskaas pole kindlalt suletud, siis ei pritsita tinti õigesti.

Avage skannimisseade (kaas) ja tindikasseti lukustuskaas ning sulgege seejärel tindikasseti lukustuskaas.

Tindikasseti lukustuskaane sulgemisel lükake tindikasseti lukustuskaant seni, kuni see klõpsatusega oma kohale kinnitub.



• Kontroll 3: kui FINE-kassetist on tint otsa saanud, asendage see uuega.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Printimiskiirus on oodatust aeglasem

U324

Printimiskiirus on oodatust aeglasem

• Kontroll 1: kas prinditakse režiimis Quiet Mode?

Printimiskiirus väheneb, kui valisite arvutis printimiseks suvandi Quiet Mode. Kiiremaks printimiseks ärge valige sätet Quiet Mode.

➡ Seadme müra vähendamine

• Kontroll 2: kas prindikvaliteet on seatud liiga kõrgeks?

Suurendage printeridraiveris prindikiiruse sätet. Kui määrate prioriteediks kiiruse, toimub printimine kiiremini.

1. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

➡ Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine



Klõpsake siia: [printeridraiver](#)

* Enne printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamist lõpetage rakenduse tarkvara käitamine.

2. Avage leht Main, valige Fast suvandi Print Quality sätetest.

Kandja tüübist sõltuvalt ei pruugi suvand Fast olla kasutatav.



Märkus

- Kui määrate prioriteediks kiiruse, võib printimiskvaliteet kannatada.
- Sõltuvalt süsteemi keskkonnast ei tarvitse printimise kiirus ülaltoodud juhiseid järgides märgatavalt paraneda.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > FINE-kasseti hoidik ei liigu vahetamisasendisse

U325

FINE-kasseti hoidik ei liigu vahetamisasendisse

• Kontroll 1: kas Toite (POWER) märgutuli on kustunud?

Kontrollige, kas **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli põleb roheliselt.

Prindipea hoidik ei liigu, kui toide pole sisse lülitatud. Kui **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli on kustunud, sulgege skannimisseade (kaas) ning lülitage printer sisse.

Kui **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli vilgub roheliselt, siis masin käivitub. Oodake, kuni **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli lõpetab vilkumise ning jääb roheliselt põlema, ning avage seejärel uuesti skannimisseade (kaas).

• Kontroll 2: kas tõrkekood kuvatakse LED-näidikul?

Sulgege skannimisseade (kaas), veenduge, et kuvatakse tõrkekood, võtke sobivad meetmed tõrke kõrvaldamiseks ning avage kaas uuesti. Tõrke kõrvaldamise üksikasjad leiate jaotisest **LED-näidikul kuvatakse tõrkekood**.

• Kontroll 3: kas skannimisseade (kaas) on olnud üle 10 minuti avatud?

Kui skannimisseade (kaas) on olnud avatud kauem kui 10 minutit, liigub FINE-kasseti hoidik paremale vältimaks prindipea kuivamist. FINE-kasseti hoidiku uuesti asendamise asendisse viimiseks sulgege ning avage taas skannimisseade (kaas).

• Kontroll 4: kas seade on pika aja vältel pidevalt printinud?

Sulgege skannimisseade (kaas), oodake veidi ja avage see uuesti.

Kui masin on pikema aja jooksul pidevalt printinud, võib prindipea üle kuumeneda ja FINE-kasseti hoidik ei pruugi asendamise asendisse liikuda.



Märkus

- Skannimisseadme (kaane) avamine printimise ajal liigutab FINE-kasseti hoidiku paremale. Sulgege skannimisseade (kaas) ning avage see uuesti pärast printimise lõppemist.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Paberi söötmine ei toimu õigesti

U326

Paberi söötmine ei toimu õigesti

- **Kontroll 1: paberi asetamisel seadmesse pidage silmas järgmist.**

- Kahe või enama paberilehe asetamisel lapake neid enne asetamist.



- Kahe või enama paberilehe laadimisel joondage paberiservad enne laadimist.
- Kahe või enama paberilehe laadimisel veenduge, et paberipakk ei ületaks paberi laadimise piiri.
Sõltuvalt paberi tüübist ja keskkonna tingimustest (liiga kõrge või madal temperatuur ja niiskus) ei pruugi maksimaalmahus paberi söötmine olla võimalik. Sellistel puhkudel vähendage korraga seadmesse asetatavate paberilehtede hulka kuni poole võrra laaditava paberi limiidist.
- Asetage paber alati vertikaalasendis, vaatamata sellele, mispidi soovite väljaprinti.
- Paberi tagasalve asetamisel asetage paber printitava poolega ÜLES ja libistage paberisuunajad vastu paberi mõlemat külge.

➡ [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#)

- **Kontroll 2: kontrollige, kas printimiseks kasutatav paber pole ehk liiga paks ega kooldunud.**

➡ [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#)

- **Kontroll 3: ümbrikute asetamisel seadmesse pidage silmas järgmist.**

Ümbriku printimiseks vaadake osa [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#) ning valmistage ümbrikud printimiseks ette.

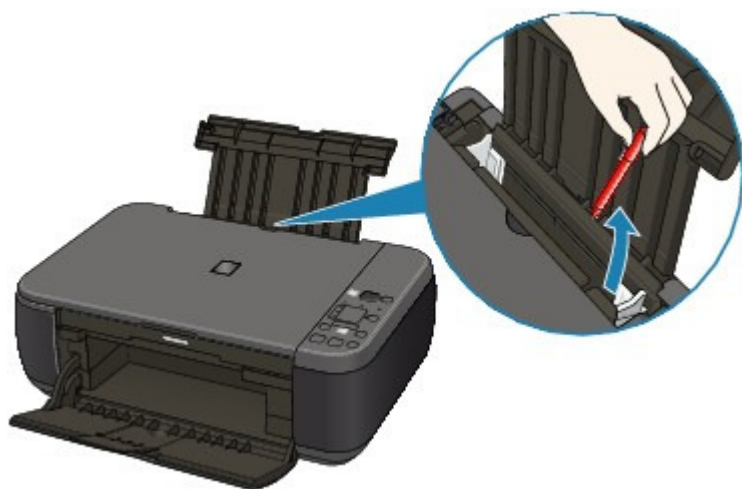
Ümbriku printimiseks asetage need seadmesse vertikaalasendis. Kui ümbrikud asetada horisontaalasendis, ei söödeta neid printerisse õigesti.

- **Kontroll 4: veenduge, et söötmisavas või tagasalves ei ole võõrkehi.**



Kui paber rebeneb tagumises aluses, vaadake selle eemaldamiseks jaotist [Paberiummistused](#).

Kui midagi kukub tagasalve, lülitage masin välja, eemaldage see vooluvõrgust, seejärel eemaldage võõrkeha.



- **Kontroll 5: puhastage paberisööterullikut.**

➡ Regulaarne hooldus



Märkus

- Paberisööterulliku puhastamine kulutab rullikut, seetõttu tehke seda ainult vajaduse korral.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

[Põhjalik juhend](#) > [Tõrkeotsing](#) > Paberiummistused

U328

Paberiummistused



Märkus

- Kui seadet on vaja printimise ajal ummistuse tekitanud paberi eemaldamiseks välja lülitada, vajutage nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)**, et enne seadme väljalülitamist printimistööd tühistada.

➡ Paber on tekitanud ummistuse paberiväljastusavasasse või tagasalve

➡ Muudel juhtudel

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Paberiummistused > Paber on tekitanud ummistuse paberiväljastusavasasse või tagasalve

U349

Paber on tekitanud ummistuse paberiväljastusavasasse või tagasalve

Eemaldage paber alltoodud protseduuri järgides.

1. Tõmmake paber aeglaselt välja kas söötmisavast või paberiväljastussalvest, kasutades lihtsamat varianti.



Märkus

- Kui paber rebeneb ja mõni tükk jääb seadmesse, lülitage seade välja, avage skannimisseade (kaas) ja eemaldage paber. Olge ettevaatlik, et te ei puutuks aparaadi sees olevaid komponente. Pärast paberi eemaldamist sulgege skannimisseade (kaas) ning lülitage printer uuesti sisse.
- Kui te ei saa paberit välja tõmmata, siis lülitage seade välja ja uuesti sisse. Paberit võib automaatselt väljutada.

2. Asetage paber uuesti ja vajutage seadme nuppu **Stopp/Tühistus (Stop/Reset)**.

Kui lülitasite seadme 1. etapis välja, tühistatakse kõik järjekorras olevad prinditööd. Vajadusel printige uuesti.



Märkus

- Kui asetate paberit seadmesse, kontrollige, kas kasutate printimiseks sobivat paberit ja asetate seda seadmesse õigesti.
➔ [Paberi/originaalide lisamine](#)
- Soovitame kasutada selliste fotode või graafika printimiseks muud paberiformaati kui A5, kuna vastasel korral võib väljaprint koolduda ja põhjustada paberiummistust.

Kui te ei saa paberit eemaldada, see rebeneb masinas või paberiummistuse tõrge ei kao ka pärast paberi eemaldamist, pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

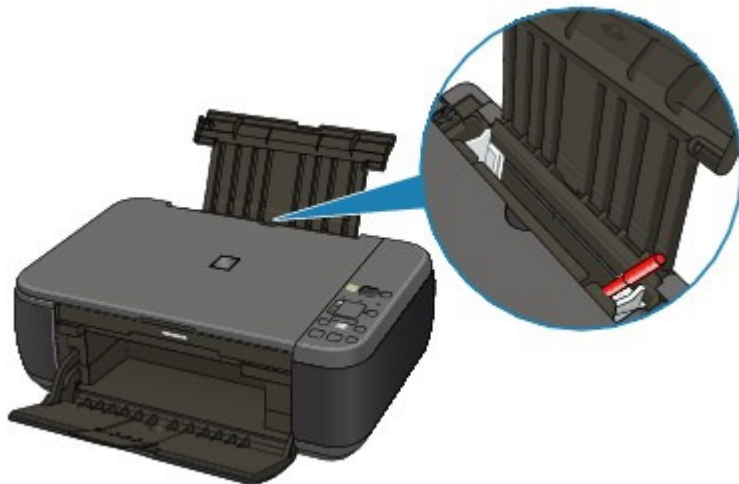
Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Paberiummistused > Muudel juhtudel

U353

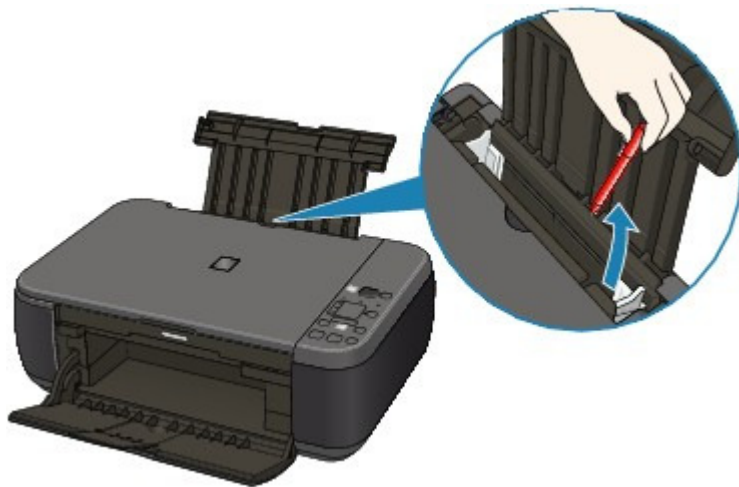
Muudel juhtudel

Veenduge järgnevas:

- **Kontroll 1:** kas paberiväljastusava ümber on võõrkehi?
- **Kontroll 2:** kas tagasalves on võõrkehi?



Kui midagi kukub tagasalve, lülitage masin välja, eemaldage see vooluvõrgust, seejärel eemaldage võõrkeha.



- **Kontroll 3:** kas paber on kooldunud?

➡ Kontroll 3: rullunud paberi korral siluge see ja asetage seadmesse.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Arvuti ekraanil kuvatakse teade

U331

Arvuti ekraanil kuvatakse teade

- ➡ Kuvatakse teade: Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center.
- ➡ Kuvatakse teade: Error Number: **** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail.
- ➡ Kuvatakse lahti tulnud toitejuhtme tõrge
- ➡ Kirjutustõrge/Väljastustõrge/Sidetõrge
- ➡ Muud tõrketeated
- ➡ Kuvatakse aken Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Kuvatakse teade: Error Number: B200 A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and unplug the power cord of the printer from the power supply. Then contact the service center.

Lülitage seade välja ja tõmmake seadme toitejuhe toiteallika pistikust välja.

Pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

Kuvatakse teade: Error Number: ** A printer error has occurred. Turn the printer off and then on again. If this doesn't clear the error, see the user's guide for more detail.**

Tärgid „****“ kuvatakse ekraanil sõltuvalt tekkinud tõrkest.

- **Kuvatakse nr 5100**

Kontrollige, kas FINE-kasseti hoidiku liikumine on takistatud.

Katkestage printimine arvutist ja lülitage seade välja. Seejärel eemaldage paberiummistus või muu FINE-kasseti hoidiku liikumist takistav võõrkeha ning lülitage seade uuesti sisse.



Tähtis!

- Olge ettevaatlik, et te ei puutuks aparaadi sees olevaid komponente. Nende puudutamise korral ei pruugi seade õigesti printida.
- Kui probleem ei lahene, pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

- **Kuvatakse neljakohaline tärgkood ja teade „Printer error has occurred” (Tekkinud on printeri tõrge)**

Lülitage seade välja ja tõmmake seadme toitejuhe toiteallika pistikust välja.

Ühendage juhe uuesti vooluvõrku ja lülitage printer taas sisse.

Kui probleem ei lahene, pöörduge teeninduskeskusse.

Kuvatakse lahti tulnud toitejuhtme tõrge

Toitejuhe võis olla eemaldatud, kui masin veel töötas.

Kontrollige arvutisse ilmuvat veateadet ja klõpsake OK.

Seade alustab printimist.

Teavet toitejuhtme eemaldamise kohta vaadake osast [Märkus toitejuhtme lahtiühendamise kohta](#).

Kirjutustõrge/Väljastustõrge/Sidetõrge

- **Kontroll 1: kui Toite (POWER) märgutuli on kustunud, veenduge, et toitejuhtme pistik on vooluvõrku ühendatud. Seejärel lülitage seade sisse.**

Kui **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli vilgub roheliselt, siis masin käivitub. Oodake, kuni **Toite**

(POWER) märgutuli lõpetab vilkumise ja jääb roheliselt põlema.

- **Kontroll 2: veenduge, et printeri port oleks printeridraiveris õigesti konfigureeritud.**

* Järgnevatel juhistes tähistab „XXX” teie seadme nimetust.

1. **Logige administraatoriõigustega kasutajakontoga sisse.**

2. **Valige menüü Start valik Seadmed ja printerid (Devices and Printers).**

Windows Vistas valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Riistvara ja heli (Hardware and Sound) > Printerid (Printers).

Windows XP-s valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Printerid ja muu riistvara (Printers and Other Hardware) > Printerid ja faksid (Printers and Faxes).

3. **Klõpsake hiire parempoolse klahviga ikoonil Canon XXX Printer ja valige seejärel Printeri atribuudid (Printer properties).**

Windows Vistas või Windows XP-s paremklõpsake ikoonil Canon XXX Printer (kus „XXX“ on teie seadme nimi), siis valige Atribuudid (Properties).

4. **Klõpsake vahelehel Pordid (Ports), et kinnitada pordi sätteid.**

Veenduge, et port nimega USBnnn (kus „n“ on arv) on valitud sätte Canon XXX Printer kuvamisel tulbas Printer valiku Prindi järgmis(t)esse porti/portidesse (Print to the following port(s)) jaoks.

- Kui säte on vale.
Taasinstallige MP Drivers.
- Printimine ei alga ka siis, kui valitud on port nimega USBnnn.
Käivitage toimingutesalvest Canon My Printer, siis valige Diagnose and Repair Printer. Järgige ekraanile ilmuvaid juhiseid õige printeripordi seadistamiseks, seejärel valige Canon XXX Printer.
Kui probleem ei lahene, taasinstallige MP Drivers.

- **Kontroll 3: veenduge, et USB-kaabel on kindlalt seadme USB-pordi ja arvutiga ühendatud.**

Kui seade on arvutiga ühendatud USB-kaabli kaudu, kontrollige järgnevat:

- Kui kasutate releeseadet, nagu USB-jaotur, ühendage see lahti, ühendage seade otse arvutiga ja proovige uuesti printida. Kui printimine algab normaalselt, on viga releeseadmes. Releeseadme kohta täpse konsultatsiooni saamiseks pöörduge edasimüüja poole.
- Probleem võib olla ka USB-kaablis. Vahetage USB-kaabel välja ja proovige uuesti printida.

- **Kontroll 4: veenduge, et MP Drivers on õigesti installitud.**

Desinstallige MP Drivers lähtuvalt jaotises [Mittevajaliku MP Driversi kustutamine](#) kirjeldatud korrast, sisestage *Seadistamise CD-ROM (Setup CD-ROM)* arvuti kettaseadmesse, viige läbi Custom Install ning valige uuesti installimiseks MP Drivers.

- **Kontroll 5: kontrollige arvutis printeri olekut.**

Printeri oleku kontrollimiseks järgige alltoodud protseduure.

1. **Klõpsake valikul Control Panel, seejärel klõpsake Hardware and Sound, seejärel sätel Device Manager.**

Kui kuvatakse aken User Account Control, järgige ekraanile ilmuvaid juhiseid. Windows XP-s klõpsake käsku Juhtpaneel (Control Panel), Kasutamine ja Hooldus (Performance and Maintenance), Süsteem (System), seejärel klõpsake valikul Seadmehaldur (Device Manager) lehel Riistvara (Hardware).

2. **Tehke topeltklõps valikul Universal Serial Bus controllers, seejärel USB Printing Support.**

Kui ei kuvata sätet USB Printing Support, siis veenduge, et seade on õigesti arvuti külge ühendatud.

➡ **Kontroll 3:** veenduge, et USB-kaabel on kindlalt seadme USB-pordi ja arvutiga ühendatud.

3. Klõpsake vahekaarti General ja veenduge, et seal ei leidu märkust seadme probleemi kohta.

Kui kuvatakse seadme tõrge, vt selle kõrvaldamiseks Windowsi spikrit.

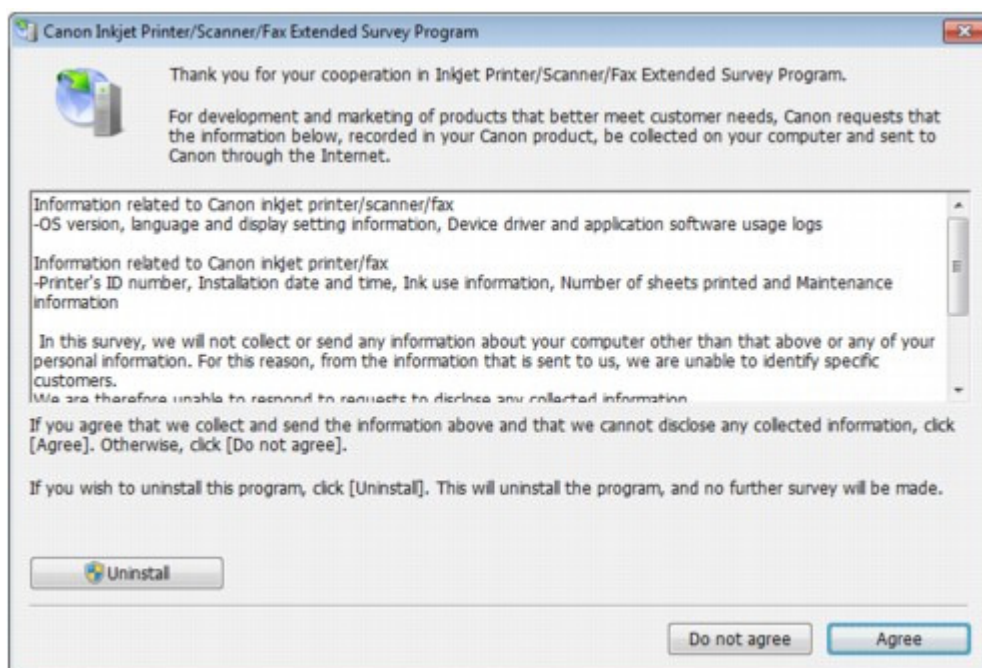
Muud tõrketeated

- **Kontrollige: kui väljaspool printerioleku monitori kuvatakse tõrketeade, kontrollige järgmist:**
 - „Ebapiisava kettaruumi tõttu ei olnud võimalik edukalt töötada“ ("Could not spool successfully due to insufficient disk space")
Kettaruumi vabastamiseks kustutage kõik ebavajalikud failid.
 - „Ebapiisava mälumahu tõttu ei olnud võimalik edukalt töötada" ("Could not spool successfully due to insufficient memory")
Vaba mälumahu suurendamiseks sulgege muud töötavad rakendustarkvarad. Kui printimine ei ole ikka võimalik, taaskäivitage arvuti ja proovige uuesti printida.
 - „Printeridraiverit ei leitud“ ("Printer driver could not be found")
Desinstallige printeridraiver, lähtudes jaotises [Mittevajaliku MP Driversi kustutamine](#) kirjeldatud tegevustest ning installige see uuesti.
 - „Rakenduse nime ei olnud võimalik printida – faili nimi“ ("Could not print Application name - File name")
Proovige uuesti printida, kui hetkel prinditav töö on lõpetatud.

Kuvatakse aken Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program

Kui tindiprinteri/skanneri/faksi Extended Survey Program on installitud, kuvatakse kuu pärast installimist ja seejärel pärast kolme kuu ja kuue kuu möödumist kinnitusküla, millel palutakse luba saata teavet printeri ja rakendustarkvara kasutamise kohta. Seejärel kuvatakse see iga kuue kuu tagant umbes nelja aasta jooksul.

Lugege kuvatavaid juhiseid ja järgige allpool kirjeldatud protseduuri.



- **Kui te nõustute uuringuprogrammis osalema:**

Klõpsake Agree ja järgige ekraanijuhiseid. Printeri kasutusteave saadetakse Interneti kaudu.

Kui järgisite ekraanil olevaid juhiseid, saadetakse teave teisest korrast alates automaatselt ja

seda kinnituskuva enam ei kuvata.



Märkus

- Teabe saatmise ajal võib ilmuda hoiatusaken, näiteks Interneti turvalisuse aken. Sellisel juhul kontrollige, et programmi nimi on „IJPLMUI.exe“ ning võimaldage see.
- Kui eemaldate märke valikust Send automatically from the next time, siis teavet teisest korrast alates automaatselt ei saadeta ning järgmise uuringu ajal kuvatakse kinnituskuva. Teabe automaatse saatmise kohta vt osa [Kinnituskuva määramine](#).

- **Kui te ei nõustu uuringuprogrammis osalema:**

Klõpsake Do not agree. Kinnituskuva sulgub ja uuring jääb seekord vahele. Kinnituskuva ilmub uuesti kaks kuud hiljem.

- **Tindiprinteri/skanneri/faksi laiendatud jälgimise programmi desinstallimine:**

Tindiprinteri/skanneri/faksi laiendatud jälgimise programmi desinstallimiseks klõpsake Uninstall ning järgige ekraanil olevaid juhiseid.

- **Kinnituskuva määramine:**

1. Valige elemendid menüüst Start järgneval viisil.

- Windows 7 või Windows Vista puhul valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Desinstalli programm (Uninstall a program).
- Windows XP puhul valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Lisa või eemalda programme (Add or Remove Programs).



Märkus

- Windows 7-s või Windows Vistas võib tarkvara installimise, desinstallimise või käivitamise ajal ilmuda kinnituskuva või hoiatuse dialoogiaken. See dialoogiaken ilmub juhul, kui toimingute tegemiseks on vajalikud administraatori õigused. Kui olete administraatoriõigustega kontole sisse loginud, järgige ekraanijuhiseid.

2. Valige Canon Inkjet Printer/Scanner/Fax Extended Survey Program.

3. Valige Change.

Kui valite pärast ekraanijuhiste järgmist Yes, siis kuvatakse järgmise uuringu ajal kinnituskuva.

Kui valite No, siis saadetakse teave automaatselt.



Märkus

- Kui valite Uninstall (või Remove), siis tindiprinteri/skanneri/faksi laiendatud jälgimise programm desinstallitakse. Järgige juhiseid ekraanil.

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Windowsi kasutajatele

U333

Windowsi kasutajatele

Printeri olekumonitori ei kuvata

- **Kontrollige: kas printeri olekumonitor on blokeeritud?**

Veenduge, et printeri olekumonitori menüüs on valitud Enable Status Monitor menüü Option all.

1. Avage printeridraiveri seadistusaken.

➡ Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine

2. Klõpsake lehel Maintenance valikut View Printer Status.

3. Valige Enable Status Monitor menüüst Option, kui see pole juba valitud.

- **Kui kasutate Windows 7-t või Windows Vistat.**

MP Navigator EX-i käivitamine iga kord seadme nupu Skanni (SCAN) vajutamisel

- **Kontroll: määratlege nupu Skanni (SCAN) vajutamisest tulenev reaktsioon.**

Järgige alljärgnevaid tegevusi reaktsiooni määratlemiseks oma arvutis.

- **Kui kasutate Windows 7-t.**

1. Logige administraatoriõigustega kasutajakontoga sisse.

2. Valige menüü Start valik Seadmed ja printerid (Devices and Printers).

3. Klõpsake parema hiireklahviga ikoonil Canon XXX Printer (kus „XXX” on teie seadme nimi) ja valige seejärel Skannimise atribuudid (Scan properties).

Kuva Kasutajakonto kontroll (User Account Control) ilmumisel klõpsake Yes.

4. Klõpsake vahekaardil Sündmused (Events) ekraanil WIA Canon XXX ser Properties (kus „XXX“ on teie seadme nimi).

5. Valige Käivita see programm (Start this program) valikus Tegumid (Actions) ja seejärel valige rippmenüüst MP Navigator EX Ver4.0.

Valige sündmus rippmenüüst Vali sündmus (Select an event) ja seejärel valige iga sündmuse käivitamiseks käsk MP Navigator EX Ver4.0. Kui MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 on iga sündmuse jaoks valitud, klõpsake Cancel.

6. Klõpsake OK.

- **Kui kasutate Windows Vistat:**

1. Logige administraatoriõigustega kasutajakontoga sisse.

- 2. Valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel), seejärel klõpsake Riistvara ja heli (Hardware and Sound), seejärel sättel Skannerid ja kaamerad (Scanners and Cameras).**
- 3. Valige WIA Canon XXX ser (kus „XXX” on teie seadme nimi), siis klõpsake nupul Atribuudid (Properties).**

Kuva Kasutajakonto kontroll (User Account Control) kuvamisel klõpsake Jätka (Continue).
- 4. Klõpsake vahekaardil Sündmused (Events) ekraanil WIA Canon XXX ser Properties (kus „XXX“ on teie seadme nimi).**
- 5. Valige Käivita see programm (Start this program) valikus Tegumid (Actions) ja seejärel valige rippmenüüst MP Navigator EX Ver4.0.**

Valige sündmus rippmenüüst Vali sündmus (Select an event) ja seejärel valige iga sündmuse käivitamiseks käsk MP Navigator EX Ver4.0. Kui MP Navigator EX Ver4.0 on iga sündmuse jaoks valitud, klõpsake Cancel.
- 6. Klõpsake OK.**

[Lehekülje algusesse ↑](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#)

S901

Problems with Scanning

- ➡ Scanner Does Not Work
- ➡ ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start
- ➡ Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear
- ➡ Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor
- ➡ Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas
- ➡ Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time
- ➡ Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode
- ➡ Slow Scanning Speed
- ➡ "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed
- ➡ Computer Stops Operating during Scanning
- ➡ Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > [Scanner Does Not Work](#)

S902

Scanner Does Not Work

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 3: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 4: Restart the computer.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

S903

ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Does Not Start

Check 1: Make sure that the MP Drivers is installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 2: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.

Important

- Do not select the model name that includes WIA in it.

Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 3: Start from a TWAIN-compliant application.

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear

S904

Error Message Appears and the ScanGear (Scanner Driver) Screen Does Not Appear

Check 1: Make sure that the machine is turned on.

Check 2: Turn off the machine, then reconnect the USB cable and replug the power cord.

Check 3: Connect the USB cable to a different USB port on the computer.

Check 4: If the USB cable is connected to a USB hub, remove it from the USB hub and connect it to a USB port on the computer.

Check 5: Make sure that the MP Drivers is installed.

If it is not installed, insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and install MP Drivers.

Check 6: On the File menu of the application, select Select Source and select the machine.



Note

- The operation may differ depending on the application.

Check 7: Make sure that the application is TWAIN-compliant.

You cannot open ScanGear (scanner driver) from applications not supporting TWAIN.

Check 8: Exit ScanGear if it is running on another application.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Problems with Scanning > Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor

S905

Scan Quality (Image Displayed on the Monitor) Is Poor

Check 1: Increase the scanning resolution.

➡ Resolution

Check 2: Set the scale to 100%.

Some applications do not display images clearly if the image is too small.

Check 3: If moire (stripe pattern) appears, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Basic Mode tab of ScanGear (scanner driver), select Magazine(Color) in Select Source.

➡ Basic Mode Tab

- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear, set Descreen in Image Settings to ON.

➡ Image Settings



Note

- If moire appears when you scan a digital print photo, take the above measures and scan again.

- If you use MP Navigator EX, set Document Type to Magazine(Color) or enable Descreen in the Scan Settings dialog box and scan again.

➡ Scan Settings Dialog Box (Photos/Documents)

Check 4: Check the monitor's color depth.

- Windows 7:**

From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Appearance and Personalization > Adjust screen resolution > Advanced settings.

On the Monitor tab of the displayed dialog box, set Colors to High Color (16 bit) or True Color (32 bit).

- Windows Vista:**

From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Appearance and Personalization > Adjust screen resolution to open the Display Settings dialog box. Set the color depth to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

- Windows XP:**

From the Start menu, select Control Panel > Display to open the Display Properties dialog box. On the Settings tab, set Color quality to Medium (16 bit) or Highest (32 bit).

Check 5: Clean the Platen and Document Cover.

➡ Cleaning the Platen Glass and Document Cover

Check 6: If the document is in poor condition (dirty, faded, etc.), use Reduce Dust and Scratches, Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. in Image Settings on the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear.

➡ Image Settings

Check 7: If the color tone of images is different from the original document, take the following measures and scan again.

- On the Advanced Mode tab of ScanGear, set Image Adjustment in Image Settings to None.

➡ Image Settings

- On the Color Settings tab in the Preferences dialog box of ScanGear, set Color Matching.

➡ Color Settings Tab

Page top↕

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > [Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas](#)

S906

Scanned Image Is Surrounded by Extra White Areas

Check: Specify the scan area.



Click  (Auto Crop) in whole image view of ScanGear (scanner driver) to automatically display the cropping frame (scan area) according to the document size.

You can also manually specify the scan area in thumbnail view or when there are white margins along the document (for example, in photos), or when you want to create custom cropping frames.

➡ [Adjusting Cropping Frames](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time

S907

Cannot Scan Multiple Documents at One Time

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

Check 2: Scan each item individually.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode

S916

Cannot Scan Properly in Auto Scan Mode

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

Check 2: Multiple image scanning may not be supported.

Some applications do not support multiple image scanning. In that case, scan each item individually.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > [Slow Scanning Speed](#)

S908

Slow Scanning Speed

Check 1: To view the image on a monitor, set the output resolution to around 150 dpi. To print, set it to around 300 dpi.

➡ [Resolution](#)

Check 2: Set Fading Correction, Grain Correction, etc. to None.

➡ [Image Settings](#)

Check 3: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document / Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Photos/Documents\)](#)

➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > "There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

S909

"There is not enough memory." Message Is Displayed

Check 1: Exit other applications and try again.

Check 2: Reduce the resolution or output size and scan again.

➡ [Resolution](#)

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > [Computer Stops Operating during Scanning](#)

S910

Computer Stops Operating during Scanning

Check 1: Restart the computer, reduce the output resolution in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

Check 2: Delete unnecessary files to obtain sufficient free hard disk space, then scan again.

Error message may appear if there is not enough hard disk space to scan and save, when the image size is too large (such as when scanning a large document at high resolution.)

Check 3: For Location of Temporary Files in MP Navigator EX, specify a folder on a drive with sufficient free space.

➡ [General Tab](#)

Check 4: Multiple devices may be connected to USB ports.

Disconnect other devices.

[Page top](#)⤴

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Problems with Scanning](#) > [Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows](#)

S911

Scanner Does Not Work After Upgrading Windows

Check: Disconnect the USB cable, then uninstall and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

- **Step 1: Uninstall the MP Drivers.**

See "[Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#) " for details.

- **Step 2: Uninstall MP Navigator EX.**

1. From the Start menu, select All Programs > Canon Utilities > MP Navigator EX 4.0 > MP Navigator EX Uninstall.



Note

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when installing, uninstalling or starting up software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
If you are logged on to an administrator account, follow the on-screen instructions.

2. When a confirmation appears, click Yes.

3. When uninstallation is complete, click OK.

MP Navigator EX is uninstalled.

- **Step 3: Reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.**

Insert the *Setup CD-ROM* into the computer's disc drive, then select Custom Install and reinstall the MP Drivers and MP Navigator EX.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Software Problems](#)

S930

Software Problems

- ➡ E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program
- ➡ Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)
- ➡ Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor
- ➡ Scanned Image Does Not Open

[Page top](#)⬆

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Software Problems](#) > E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

S931

E-mail Software Program You Want to Use Does Not Appear in the Screen for Selecting an E-mail Software Program

Check 1: MP Navigator EX may not support the e-mail software program.

The following e-mail software programs are supported. (Images are attached to the mail message automatically.)

- Microsoft Outlook
- Windows Mail (Windows Vista)
- Outlook Express (Windows XP)

Check 2: If an e-mail software program does not operate properly, check that the program's MAPI is enabled.

To enable MAPI, refer to the manual of the e-mail software program.

Check 3: If using an e-mail software program other than the ones listed above, select None (Attach Manually) when prompted to select a program and attach the scanned image manually.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Software Problems](#) > [Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged \(Reduced\)](#)

S932

Scanned Image Is Printed Enlarged (Reduced)

Check: Set the printing size in the application.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Software Problems](#) > Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

S933

Scanned Image Is Enlarged (Reduced) on the Computer Monitor

Check 1: Change the display setting in the application.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.



Note

- You cannot reduce the image size in Paint. To reduce the display size, open the images in an application.
-

Check 2: Change the resolution setting in ScanGear (scanner driver) and scan again.

The higher the resolution, the larger the resulting image will be.

➡ [Resolution](#)

[Page top](#)

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [Software Problems](#) > [Scanned Image Does Not Open](#)

S934

Scanned Image Does Not Open

Check: If the file format is not supported by the application, scan the image again and save it in a popular file format such as JPEG.

For details, refer to the application's manual. If you have any questions, contact the manufacturer of the application.

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > MP Navigator EX Problems

S940

MP Navigator EX Problems

- ➡ Cannot Scan at the Correct Size
- ➡ Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel
- ➡ Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted
- ➡ Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

[Page top](#) ↗

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [MP Navigator EX Problems](#) > Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

S941

Cannot Scan at the Correct Size

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

Check 2: Set Document Size to the actual document size and scan again.

If the matching size is not found, scan at a larger size and trim the image.

See the Toolbar ( (Trimming)) in "[Correct/Enhance Images Window](#)" for details.

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [MP Navigator EX Problems](#) > Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel

S942

Position or Size of the Image Cannot be Detected Correctly When Scanning Using the Operation Panel

Check 1: Make sure that the documents are placed correctly on the Platen.

➡ [Placing Documents](#)

Check 2: Check that the settings are correctly set according to the document.

If you cannot scan properly with Auto Scan, specify the document type and size.

➡ [Scanning Photos and Documents](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [MP Navigator EX Problems](#) > Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

S943

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Scanned Image Is Slanted

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Correct slanted document checkbox and scan again.

- ➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Photos/Documents\)](#)
- ➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > [MP Navigator EX Problems](#) > Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

S944

Document Is Placed Correctly, but the Orientation Changes in the Scanned Image

Check: In MP Navigator EX, deselect the Detect the orientation of text documents and rotate images checkbox and scan again.

- ➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(Photos/Documents\)](#)
- ➡ [Scan Settings Dialog Box \(One-click Mode Screen\)](#)

[Page top](#)↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > Kui probleemi ei õnnestu lahendada

U151

Kui probleemi ei õnnestu lahendada

Kui teil ei õnnestu probleemi käesolevas peatükis toodud juhiste abil lahendada, pöörduge seadme müüja poole või teeninduskeskusesse.

Canoni tugipersonal on saanud väljaõppe, mis võimaldab neil anda kliente rahuldavat tehnilist tuge.

Ettevaatust

- Kui aparaadist kostub ebaharilikke helisid või eritub suitsu või tavatut lõhna, lülitage see kohe välja. Lahutage toitejuhe pistikust ja pöörduge müüja poole või teeninduskeskusesse. Ärge kunagi proovige seadet ise remontida ega lahti võtta.
- Garantii ei kehti (sõltumata sellest, kas see on aegunud või mitte), kui klient proovib aparaati ise remontida või lammutada.

Enne teeninduskeskusesse pöördumist märkige üles järgmised andmed:

- Toote nimi:
 - * Teie seadme nimi on kirjas seadistusjuhendi esikaanel.
- Seerianumber: vt seadistusjuhendist
- Probleemi üksikasjad
- Mida proovisite probleemi lahendamiseks ise ette võtta ja mis tulemusi see andis

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Tõrkeotsing > KKK

U340

KKK

- ➡ Prinditulemused puuduvad/väljaprint on hägune/värvid on valed/valged triibud
- ➡ Seade töötab, kuid tinti ei väljastata
- ➡ MP Driversit ei saa installida
- ➡ Printimine ei alga
- ➡ Kopeerimine/printimine peatub enne töö lõpetamist
- ➡ Kirjutustõrge/Väljastustõrge/Sidetõrge
- ➡ Prinditulemus pole rahuldav
- ➡ Paberiummistused
- ➡ Paberi söötmine ei toimu õigesti

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Troubleshooting > Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

P036

Instructions for Use (Printer Driver)

This printer driver is subject to the following restrictions. Keep the following points in mind when using the printer driver.

Restrictions on the Printer Driver

- With some applications, the Copies setting in the Page Setup tab of the printer driver may not be enabled.
In this case, use the copies setting in the Print dialog box of the application software.
- If the selected Language in the About dialog box does not match the operating system interface language, the driver screen may not be displayed properly.
- Do not change the Advanced tab items of the printer properties. If you change any of the items, you will not be able to use the following functions correctly.
Also, if Print to file is selected in the Print dialog box of the application software and with applications that prohibit EMF spooling, such as Adobe Photoshop LE and MS Photo Editor, the following functions will not operate.
 - Preview before printing on the Main tab
 - Prevent loss of print data in the Print Options dialog box
 - Page Layout, Poster, Booklet, Duplex Printing, Specify Margin..., Print from Last Page, Collate, and Stamp/Background... (Stamp...) on the Page Setup tab
- Since the resolution in the preview display differs from the printing resolution, text and lines in the preview display may appear different from the actual print result.
- With some applications, the printing is divided into multiple print jobs.
To cancel printing, delete all divided print jobs.
- If image data is not printed correctly, display the Print Options dialog box from the Page Setup tab and change the setting of Disable ICM required from the application software. This may solve the problem.



Note

- Disable ICM required from the application software cannot be used when the XPS printer driver is used.

Points to Note with Applications

- There are following restrictions in Microsoft Word (Microsoft Corporation).
 - When Microsoft Word has the same printing functions as the printer driver, use Word to specify them.
 - When selecting Fit-to-Page, Scaled, or Page Layout from the Page Layout list on the Page Setup tab, the selected printing function may not be effective, depending on the version of Word.
If this happens, follow the procedure below.
 1. Open Word's Print dialog box.
 2. Open the printer driver setup window, specify Page Layout on the Page Setup tab, and click OK.
 3. Without starting printing, close the Print dialog box.

4. Open Word's Print dialog box again.
 5. Open the printer driver setup window again and click OK.
 6. Start printing.
- If bitmap printing is enabled in Adobe Illustrator (Adobe Systems Inc), printing may take time or some data may not be printed, printing may take time or some data may not be printed. Print after unchecking the Bitmap Printing check box in the Print dialog box.

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Troubleshooting](#) > General Notes (Scanner Driver)

S004

General Notes (Scanner Driver)

ScanGear (scanner driver) is subject to the following restrictions. Keep these points in mind when using it.

Scanner Driver Restrictions

- When using the NTFS file system, the TWAIN data source may not be invoked. This is because the TWAIN module cannot be written to the winnt folder for security reasons. Contact the computer's administrator for help.
- Some computers (including laptops) connected to the machine may not resume correctly from standby mode. In that case, restart the computer.
- Do not connect two or more machines or multifunction printers with scanner function to the same computer simultaneously. If multiple scanning devices are connected, you cannot scan from the Operation Panel of the machine and also may experience errors while accessing the devices.
- Use the default display font size of the OS. Otherwise, software screens may not appear correctly.
- Scanning may fail if the computer has resumed from sleep or standby mode. In that case, follow these steps and scan again.
 1. Turn off the machine.
 2. Exit ScanGear, then disconnect the USB cable from the computer and reconnect it.
 3. Turn on the machine.
- ScanGear cannot be opened in multiple applications at the same time. Within an application, ScanGear cannot be opened for the second time when it is already open.
- Be sure to close the ScanGear window before closing the application.
- Make sure that you have adequate disk space available when scanning large images at high resolutions. For example, at least 300 MB of free space is required to scan an A4 document at 600 dpi in full-color.
- ScanGear and WIA driver cannot be used at the same time.
- Do not enter the computer into sleep or hibernate state during scanning.
- Calibration may take time if the machine is connected via USB 1.1.

Applications with Restrictions on Use

- If you start Media Center included in Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005, you may not be able to scan using the Operation Panel of the machine. In that case, restart the computer.
- You cannot scan images with Media Center included in Windows 7, Windows Vista and Windows XP Media Center Edition 2005. Scan with other applications such as MP Navigator EX.
- In some applications, if you select the View scanned images checkbox on the Auto Scan Mode tab of ScanGear, the window displaying the thumbnails of the scanned images may close automatically.
- Some applications may not display the TWAIN user interface. In that case, refer to the application's manual and change the settings accordingly.
- Some applications do not support continuous scanning of multiple documents. In some cases, only the first scanned image is accepted, or multiple images are scanned as one image.
- To import scanned images into Microsoft Office 2000, first save them using MP Navigator EX, then import the saved files from the Insert menu.
- When scanning platen size images into Microsoft Office 2003 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), click

Custom Insert in the Insert Picture from Scanner or Camera screen. Otherwise, images may not be scanned correctly.

- When scanning images into Microsoft Office 2007 (Word, Excel, PowerPoint, etc.), use Microsoft Clip Organizer.
- Images may not be scanned correctly in some applications. In that case, increase the operating system's virtual memory and retry.
- When image size is too large (such as when scanning large images at high resolution), your computer may not respond or the progress bar may remain at 0% depending on the application. In that case, cancel the action (for example by clicking Cancel on the progress bar), then increase the operating system's virtual memory or reduce the image size/resolution and retry. Alternatively, scan the image via MP Navigator EX first, then save and import it into the application.

[Page top](#) ↗

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Lisa

Lisa

- ➡ Prindiala
- ➡ Kuidas dokumendikaant ära võtta/kinnitada?
- ➡ Prinditava dokumendi redigeerimine või prindiajaloo uuesti printimine
- ➡ Soovimatute prinditööde kustutamine
- ➡ MP Driversi uuendamine
- ➡ On-Screen Manuali desinstallimine
- ➡ Seadme transportimine
- ➡ Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine
- ➡ Märkus toitejuhtme lahtiühendamise kohta
- ➡ Printeri võrgus jagamine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ⬆

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Prindiala

U504

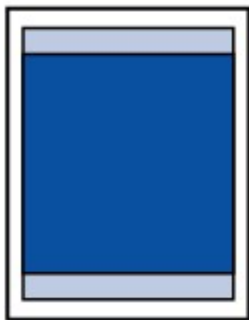
Prindiala

Parima prindikvaliteedi saamiseks võimaldab seade prindikandja serva veerist muuta. Tegelik prindiala on ala, mis jääb veeriste vahele.

Soovitatav prindiala : Canon soovib kasutada printimiseks seda ala.

Prinditav ala : ala, millele on võimalik printida.

Võtke siiski arvesse, et printimine sellele alale võib mõjutada prindikvaliteeti ning paberi söötmistäpsust.



Märkus

■ Ääristeta printimine

- Kui valite ääristeta printimise suvandi, saate printida ilma veeristeta.
- Ääristeta printimisel võib servadel toimuda vähene kärpimine, kuna prinditud pilti suurendatakse kogu lehekülje täitmiseks.
- Ääristeta printimise ajal ei ole võimalik kasutada kahepoolset printimist.
- Ääristeta printimiseks kasutage allnimetatud pabereid:
 - Glossy Photo Paper „Everyday Use“ GP-501*
 - Photo Paper Glossy GP-502*
 - Photo Paper Plus Semi-gloss SG-201*
 - Photo Paper Pro Platinum PT-101*
 - Photo Paper Plus Glossy II PP-201
 - Matte Photo Paper MP-101*

* Seda paberit saab kasutada ainult arvutist printimisel.

Kui kasutada ääristeta printimisel teisi pabereid, võib prindikvaliteet järk-järgult halveneda ja/või värvitoonides võib esineda muutusi.

Ääristeta printimisel tavapaberile võivad väljatrükid olla halvema kvaliteediga. Kasutage neid ainult prooviprintimiseks. Ääristeta printimist saab kasutada ainult arvutist tavalisele paberile printimisel.

- Ääristeta printimine ei ole saadaval paberiformaatide Legal, A5 ja B5 ning ümbrikute puhul.
- Sõltuvalt paberitüübist võib ääristeta printimine kahandada prindikvaliteeti paberi üla- ja alaservas või põhjustada nende osade määrdumist.

➡ Letter, Legal

➡ Ümbrikud

➡ Muu formaat kui Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Lehekülje algusesse 

Põhjalik juhend

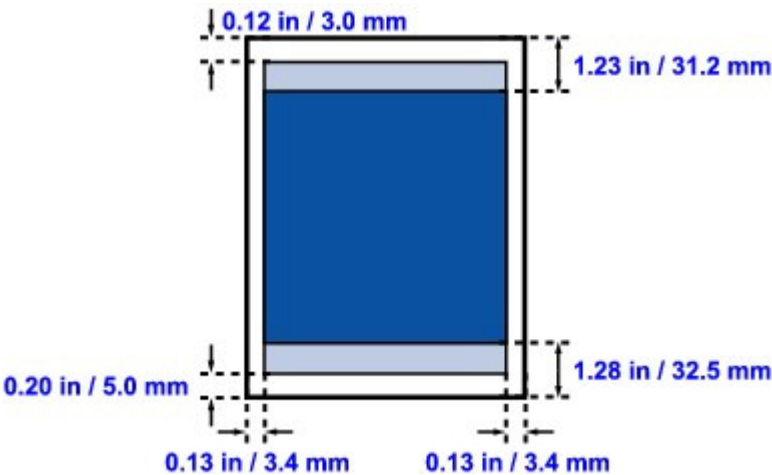
Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Prindiala > Muu formaat kui Letter, Legal, Envelopes

U502

Muu formaat kui Letter, Legal, Envelopes

Formaat	Prinditav ala (laius x kõrgus)
A5*	141,2 x 202,0 mm / 5,56 x 7,95 tolli
A4	203,2 x 289,0 mm / 8,00 x 11,38 tolli
B5*	175,2 x 249,0 mm / 6,90 x 9,80 tolli
10 x 15 cm / 4" x 6"	94,8 x 144,4 mm / 3,73 x 5,69 tolli
10 x 20 cm / 4" x 8"*	94,8 x 195,2 mm / 3,73 x 7,69 tolli
13 x 18 cm / 5" x 7"*	120,2 x 169,8 mm / 4,73 x 6,69 tolli
20 x 25 cm / 8" x 10"*	196,4 x 246,0 mm / 7,73 x 9,69 tolli
Wide*	94,8 x 172,6 mm / 3,73 x 6,80 tolli

*Seda leheküljeformaati saab kasutada ainult arvutist printimisel.



- Soovitatav prindiala
- Prinditav ala

[Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhjalik juhend

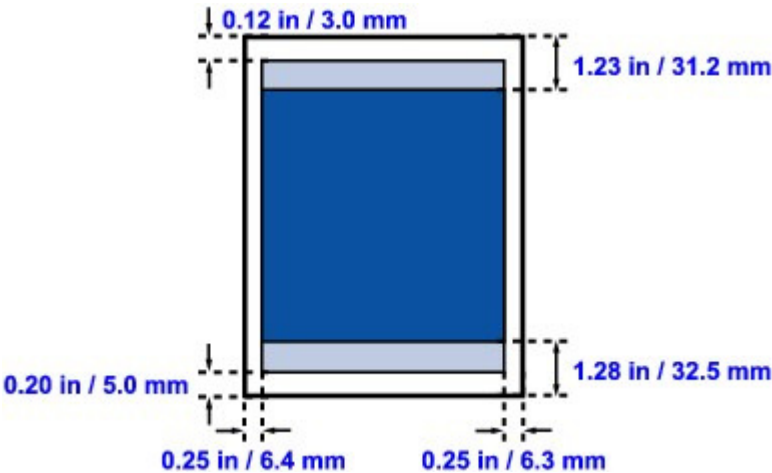
Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Prindiala > Letter, Legal

U503

Letter, Legal

Formaat	Prinditav ala (laius x kõrgus)
Letter	203,2 x 271,4 mm / 8,00 x 10,69 tolli
Legal*	203,2 x 347,6 mm / 8,00 x 13,69 tolli

*Seda leheküljeformaati saab kasutada ainult arvutist printimisel.



- Soovitav prindiala
- Prinditav ala

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

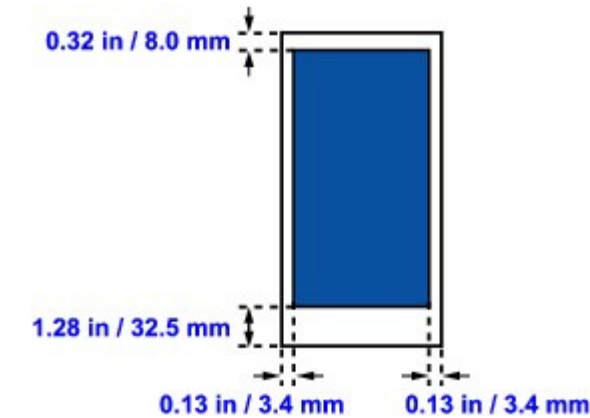
Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Prindiala > Ümbrikud

U505

Ümbrikud

Formaat	Soovitatav prindiala (laius x kõrgus)
European DL*	103,2 x 179,5 mm / 4,06 x 7,07 tolli
US Comm. Env. #10*	98,0 x 200,8 mm / 3,86 x 7,91 tolli

*Seda leheküljeformaati saab kasutada ainult arvutist printimisel.



Soovitatav prindiala

[Lehekülje algusesse](#)

Põhjalik juhend

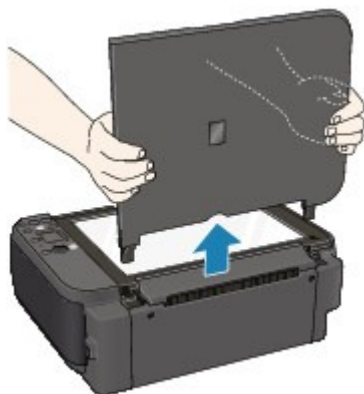
Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Kuidas dokumendikaant ära võtta/kinnitada?

U514

Kuidas dokumendikaant ära võtta/kinnitada?

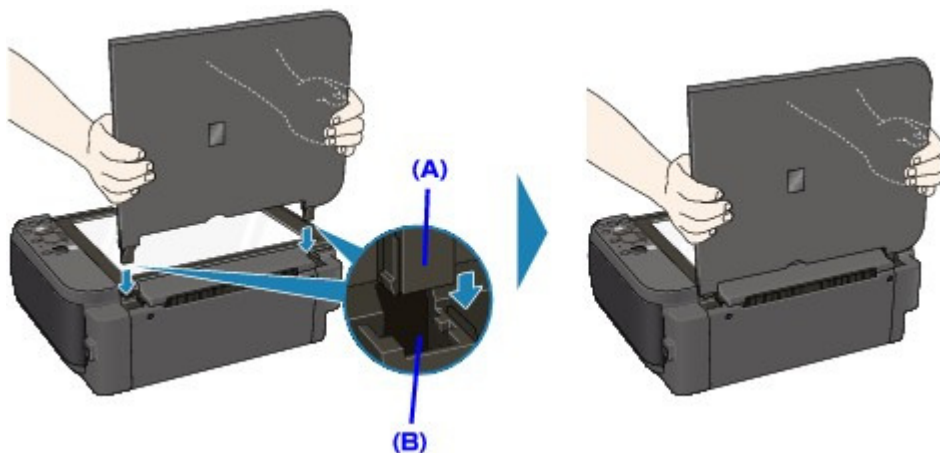
- **Dokumendikaane äravõtmine**

Hoidke dokumendikaant vertikaalselt.



- **Dokumendikaane kinnitamine**

Nagu alloleval illustratsioonil näidatud, sisestage dokumendikaane kinnitamiseks mõlemad dokumendikaane hinged (A) vertikaalselt hoidikusse (B) kuni nende peatumiseni.



[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History

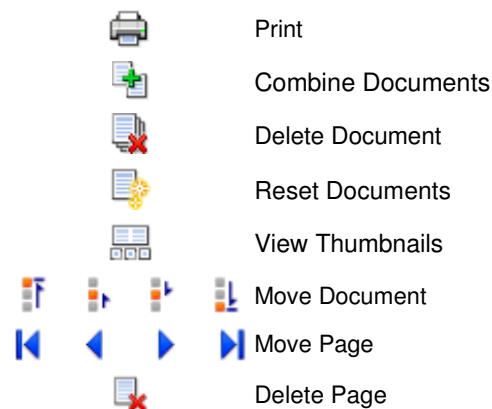
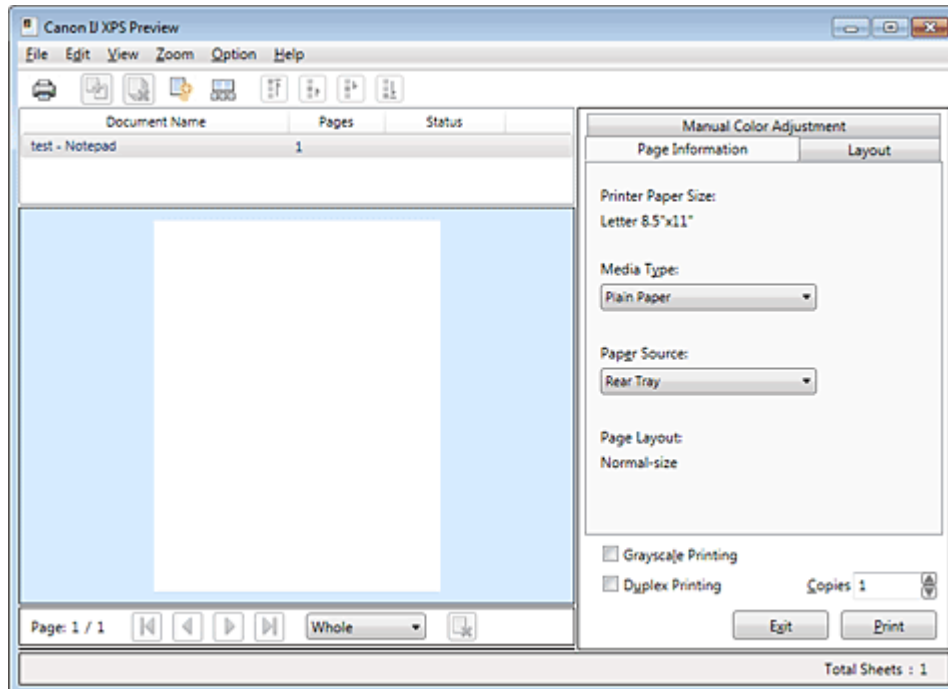
P048

Editing the Print Document or Reprinting from the Print History

This function is unavailable when the standard IJ printer driver is used.

In the Canon IJ XPS preview window, you can edit the print document or retrieve the document print history to print the document.

The procedure for using the Canon IJ XPS Preview is as follows:



Note

- Click  View Thumbnails to view all print pages of the print document selected from the Document Name list.
To hide the print pages, click  View Thumbnails again.

Editing and Printing a Print Job

When printing multiple documents or pages, you can combine documents, change the print sequence of the documents or pages, or delete documents or pages.

1. Open the printer driver setup window**2. Set the preview**

Check the Preview before printing check box on the Quick Setup tab or the Main tab.

3. Complete the setup

Click OK.

The Canon IJ XPS Preview will start and the print result will be displayed before printing.

4. Editing print documents and print pages

- **Combining print documents**

You can combine multiple print documents to form a single document.

To select multiple print documents, hold down the Ctrl key and click the documents to be merged, or hold down the Shift key and press the upper arrow or lower arrow key.

By combining print documents, you can prevent blank pages from being inserted when you execute duplex printing or page layout printing.

From the Document Name list, select the documents to be combined. On the Edit menu, select Combine Documents from Documents to combine the documents in the listed sequence. When you combine documents, the documents selected before the combining are deleted from the list and the combined document is added to the list.

- **Changing the sequence of print documents or print pages**

- To change the sequence of the print documents, go to the Document Name list, and select the print document to be moved. Next, on the Edit menu, select Move Document from Documents, and select the appropriate item.
- To change the sequence of the print pages, click View Thumbnails from the Option menu, and select the print page to be moved. Next, on the Edit menu, select Move Page from Pages, and select the appropriate item.

- **Deleting print documents and print pages**

- To delete a print document, select the target document from the Document Name list, and on the Edit menu, choose Document and then Delete Document.
- To delete a print page, click View Thumbnails from the Option menu, and select the print page to be deleted. Next, on the Edit menu, select Delete Page from Pages.

After editing the print documents or print pages, you can change the print settings on the Page Information, Layout and Manual Color Adjustment tabs as necessary.

 Important

- To display the multiple documents in the list, open the preview and execute print again.
- To return the print documents to their original condition before they were edited in the preview, on the Edit menu, select Reset Documents from Documents.
- If the documents to be combined have different print settings, a message may be displayed. Check the contents of the displayed message before combining the documents.
- If the documents to be combined have different output paper sizes and duplex printing or page layout printing is to be performed, the printer may not produce the expected print results for certain print pages. Check the preview before printing.
- Depending on the print settings of the print document, some functions may not be available in the Canon IJ XPS preview.

 Note

- You can rename Document Name to any name.

5. Executing print

Click Print.

When you execute print, the printer uses the specified settings to print the data.

Reprinting from the Print History

When you click Save Print History on the File menu to enable the setting, the document printed from the preview is saved, and you can reprint the document with the same settings.

1. Displaying the print history

Select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> View Print History XPS.
The saved print document is displayed in the preview.



Important

- To limit the number of print history registrations, click History Entry Limit on the File menu.
- If the limit on the number of registration is exceeded, the print history registrations are deleted starting from the oldest one.

2. Selecting a print document

From the Document Name list, select the document to be printed.

3. Executing print

Click Print.

Related Topic

➡ [Displaying the Print Results before Printing](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > Deleting the Undesired Print Job

P037

Deleting the Undesired Print Job

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

If the printer does not start printing, cancelled or failed print job data may be remaining. Delete the undesired print job by using the Canon IJ Status Monitor.

1. Display the Canon IJ Status Monitor

Click the button of the status monitor displayed on the task bar.
The Canon IJ Status Monitor appears.

2. Display the print jobs

Click Display Print Queue....
The print queue window opens.

3. Delete the print jobs

Select Cancel All Documents from the Printer menu.
When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
The deletion of the print job is complete.

Important

- Users who have not been granted access permission for printer management cannot delete the print job of another user.

Note

- When you perform this operation, all print jobs are deleted. If the print queue list contained a necessary print job, start the printing process over from the beginning.

[Page top](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > [Lisa](#) > MP Driversi uuendamine

MP Driversi uuendamine

- ➡ Uusimate MP Driversite hankimine
- ➡ Mittevajaliku MP Driversi kustutamine
- ➡ Enne MP Driversite installimist
- ➡ MP Driversite installimine

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the MP Drivers](#) > [Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers](#)

P038

Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers

The MP Drivers include a printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear).

By updating the MP Drivers to the latest version of the MP Drivers, unresolved problems may be solved.

Access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version.
For information on how to delete the MP Drivers, see "[Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#)."

Related Topics

- ➡ [Before Installing the MP Drivers](#)
- ➡ [Installing the MP Drivers](#)

[Page top](#) 

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the MP Drivers](#) > Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers

P039

Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers

The MP Drivers which you no longer use can be deleted.
When deleting the MP Drivers, first exit all programs that are running.

The procedure to delete the unnecessary MP Drivers is as follows:

When There is an Uninstaller

1. Start the uninstaller

- If you are using Windows 7, Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.
- If you are using Windows XP, select the start menu -> All Programs -> "Your model name" -> MP Drivers Uninstaller.

The MP Drivers Uninstaller dialog box is displayed.

Important

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Yes (or Continue, Allow) to continue.
Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

2. Execute the uninstaller

Click Execute. When the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
When all the files have been deleted, click Complete.

The deletion of the MP Drivers is complete.

Important

- Printer driver and scanner driver (ScanGear) will be deleted when you uninstall the MP Drivers.

When There is No Uninstaller

When there is no uninstaller in the Start menu of Windows 7 or Windows Vista, follow these steps:

1. Select the printer to be deleted

- If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers.
Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Remove device.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
Click the model to delete, then press the Alt key on your keyboard. On the File menu, click Delete.

2. Delete the printer

- If you are using Windows 7, when the confirmation message appears, click Yes. Then when the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Yes.
The icon is deleted.

- If you are using Windows Vista, when the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue. Then when the confirmation message appears, click Yes.
The icon is deleted.

3. Select the printer driver to be deleted

- If you are using Windows 7, click any icon in Printers and Faxes.
On the commandbar, click Print server properties, and then click the Drivers tab. If the Change Driver Settings button is displayed, click that button.
When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Yes.
In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.
- If you are using Windows Vista, press the Alt key. On the File menu, select Run as administrator, and then click Server Properties....
When the User Account Control dialog box appears, click Continue.
Click the Drivers tab. In the Installed printer drivers list, click the printer to delete.

4. Delete the printer driver

When you click Remove..., Remove Driver And Package dialog box is displayed.

Select Remove driver and driver package., and then click OK.

In the confirmation dialog box, click Yes.

When data collection is completed in the Remove Driver Package dialog box, click Delete.

5. Click OK

The deletion of the printer driver is complete.

Important

- You may not be able to delete the printer driver properly from the Installed printer drivers list.
If this happens, restart your computer, and then try again.

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the MP Drivers](#) > Before Installing the MP Drivers

P040

Before Installing the MP Drivers

This section describes the items that you should check before installing the MP Drivers. You should also refer to this section if the MP Drivers cannot be installed.

Checking the Machine Status

- Properly connect the personal computer and the machine. For details on connection instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.
- Turn off the machine.

Checking the Personal Computer Settings

- Terminate all running applications.
- In Windows 7, Windows Vista, log on as a user who has the administrator account.
In Windows XP, log on as the computer administrator.

Important

- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version. For instructions on deleting the MP Drivers, see "[Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#)."

Related Topics

- ➡ [Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers](#)
- ➡ [Installing the MP Drivers](#)

[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

[Advanced Guide](#) > [Appendix](#) > [Updating the MP Drivers](#) > [Installing the MP Drivers](#)

P041

Installing the MP Drivers

You can access our web site through the Internet and download the latest MP Drivers for your model.

The procedure for installing the downloaded MP Drivers is as follows:

1. Turn off the machine

2. Start the installer

Double-click the icon of the downloaded file.
The installation program starts.



Important

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Yes (or Continue, Allow) to continue. Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

3. Install the MP Drivers

At the Welcome window, click Next.

When the License Agreement window is displayed, check the contents, and click Yes. If you do not agree to the terms of the Software License Agreement, you cannot install this software.
Installation of the MP Drivers begins.

After the Installation Complete window is displayed, check that the machine and the computer are connected through a cable.

To select the connection port for your machine manually, check the Select printer port check box, and click Manual Selection. At the Select Port window, select the connection destination, and then click OK.

4. Complete the installation

Click Complete.

Turn on the machine, and wait awhile until the connection is recognized.

The procedure for installing the MP Drivers is complete.

Depending on the environment you are using, a message prompting you to restart the computer may be displayed. To complete the installation properly, restart the computer.



Important

- You can download the MP Drivers for free, but any Internet access charges incurred are your responsibility.
- Before installing the latest MP Drivers, delete the previously installed version. For instructions on deleting the MP Drivers, see "[Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#)."

Related Topics

- ➡ [Obtaining the Latest MP Drivers](#)
- ➡ [Deleting the Unnecessary MP Drivers](#)
- ➡ [Before Installing the MP Drivers](#)

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > [Lisa](#) > On-Screen Manuali desinstallimine

U509

On-Screen Manuali desinstallimine

Kõigi elektrooniliste juhendite desinstallimiseks toimige järgmiselt.

Enne elektrooniliste juhendite desinstallimist väljuge kõigist avatud elektroonilistest juhenditest.

1. Klõpsake Start > Kõik programmid (All Programs) > Canon XXX Manual (kus „XXX“ on teie seadme nimi) > Desinstalli (Uninstall).
2. Klõpsake kinnitusteate ilmudes valikut OK.



Märkus

- Kui kuvatakse teade arvuti taaskäivitamiseks, klõpsake nuppu OK arvuti taaskäivitamiseks.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Seadme transportimine

U510

Seadme transportimine

Seadme teisaldamisel pakkige seade originaalpakendisse.

Originaalpakendi puudumisel pakkige seade ettevaatlikult vastupidavasse kasti ja kaitske pakkematerjaliga.

Tähtis!

- Ärge transportige ega hoidke seadet kald-, vertikaal- või ümberpööratud asendis, kuna tint võib lekkida ja seadet kahjustada.

1. Lülitage seade välja.
2. Kontrollige, kas **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli on kustunud ja eemaldage seade vooluvõrgust.

Tähtis!

- Ärge tõmmake seadme juhett seinast ajal, mil **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli põleb või vilgub roheliselt, sest see võib põhjustada printeri tõrkeid või kahjustamist ning seade ei suuda siis printida.

3. Lükake paberitugi ja väljastusaluse pikendus sisse, seejärel sulgege paberi väljastusalus.
4. Eraldage printerikaabel arvutist ja seadmest ja seejärel eraldage toitejuhe seadme küljest.
5. Kinnitage kleeplindiga seadme kõik kaaned, et need transportimisel ei avaneks. Seejärel pakkige seade kilekotti.
6. Kasti pakkimisel kaitske seade kaitsematerjaliga.

Tähtis!

- Pakkimisel jätke FINE-tindikassetid seadmesse.

Märkus

- Kui lasete ekspedeerijal seadet transportida, sildistage kast silmatorkavate siltidega „KERGESTI PURUNEV“ või „MITTE LOOPIDA“.

[Lehekülje algusesse](#) ↑

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine

U511

Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine

Printeridraiveri seadistusakent saab kuvada kasutatava tarkvaraprogrammi või Windowsi menüü Start kaudu.

Avage printeridraiverite seadistusaken läbi rakendustarkvara

Järgige printimise ajal prindimäärangute tegemisel allolevaid toiminguid.

1. Valige kasutatavas tarkvaraprogrammis printimisel kasutatav määrang.

Üldjuhul valige Print menüüst File, et avada dialoogiaken Print.

2. Valige oma mudeli nimi ja klõpsake Eelistused (Preferences) (või Atribuudid (Properties)).

Printeridraiveri seadistusaken avaneb.



Märkus

- Sõltuvalt kasutatavast tarkvaraprogrammist võivad menüüde või käskluste nimed erineda või toimingute arv võib olla suurem. Täpsema teabe saamiseks vaadake oma tarkvaraprogrammi kasutusjuhendit.

Avage printeridraiverite seadistusaken läbi start-menüü

Järgige hooldustoimingute teostamiseks, näiteks prindipeade puhastamiseks või kõigile tarkvaraprogrammidele iseloomulike prindimäärangute seadistamiseks allolevaid toiminguid.

1. Valige elemendid menüüst Start järgneval viisil.

- Windows 7-s valige menüü Start valik Seadmed ja printerid (Devices and Printers).
- Windows Vistas valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Riistvara ja heli (Hardware and Sound) > Printerid (Printers).
- Windows XP-s valige menüü Start > Juhtpaneel (Control Panel) > Printerid ja muu riistvara (Printers and Other Hardware) > Printerid ja faksid (Printers and Faxes).

2. Tehke paremklops oma mudeli nime ikoonil ja valige seejärel kuvatud menüüst Printimise eelistused (Printing Preferences).

Printeridraiveri seadistusaken avaneb.



Tähtis!

- Printeridraiveri seadistusakna avamine valikus Printeri atribuudid (Printer properties) (Windows 7) või Atribuudid (Properties) (Windows Vista või Windows XP) kaudu kuvab selliseid Windowsi funktsioonidele vastavaid vahekaarte nagu Pordid (Ports) (või vahekaart Täiendav (Advanced)). Need vahekaardid ei ilmu, kui neid avatakse Printimise eelistuste (Printing Preferences) või rakendustarkvara kaudu. Lisateavet Windowsi funktsiooniga seonduvate vahelehtede kohta leiate Windowsi kasutusjuhendist.

Põhjalik juhend

Põhjalik juhend > Lisa > Märkus toitejuhtme lahtiühendamise kohta

U516

Märkus toitejuhtme lahtiühendamise kohta

Toitejuhtme lahtiühendamiseks järgige alltoodud protseduuri.

▶ Tähtis!

- Kui eemaldate toitejuhtme, vajutage nuppu **Sisse (ON)**, siis veenduge, et **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli ei põle. Seesoleva masina toitejuhtme eemaldamine võib põhjustada prindipea kuivamist või ummistumist ja printimiskvaliteet võib kannatada.

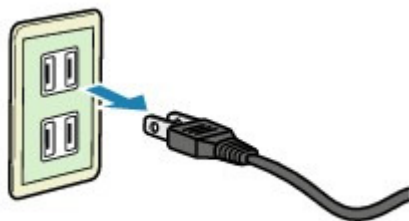
1. Vajutage masina väljalülitamiseks nuppu **SEES (ON)**.



2. Veenduge, et **Toite (POWER)** märgutuli ei põleks.



3. Ühendage toitejuhe lahti.



Toitejuhtme eripära sõltub riigist või regioonist, kus seadet kasutatakse.

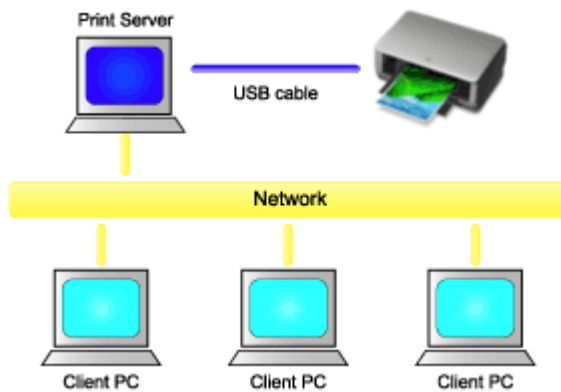
Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Sharing the Printer on a Network

P042

Sharing the Printer on a Network

When multiple computers are being used in the network environment, you can share the printer connected to one computer with the other computers. The Windows versions of the computers connected to the network do not necessarily have to be the same.



- **Settings on Print Server**

The procedure for setting up a computer directly connected to a printer with a USB cable is as follows:

- **Settings on Client PC**

The procedure for setting up those computers that will use this printer through the network is as follows:

When you execute print, the data is sent to the printer through the print server system.

Important

- In case an error occurred when a document is printed by the client system to a shared printer, the error message of Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed both on the client system and the print server system. For regular printing, Canon IJ Status Monitor will be displayed only on the client system.

Note

- Install the printer driver from the Setup CD-ROM that accompanies the machine on the print server system and each of the client systems according to the OS of each system.

Related Topic

➡ [Restrictions on Printer Sharing](#)



[Page top](#) ↑

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Sharing the Printer on a Network > Settings on Print Server

P043

Settings on Print Server

When you use the printer on a network, set up the printer driver for sharing on the server system.

The procedure for setting up the print server systems is as follows:

1. Install the printer driver on the print server system

For details on installation instructions, refer to the "Install the Software" in the manual: Getting Started.

2. Select items from the Start menu as shown below:

- If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Control Panel -> Hardware and Sound -> Printers.
- If you are using Windows XP, select the start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes.

The Devices and Printers window (Windows 7) or Printers window (Windows Vista) or Printers and Faxes window (Windows XP) is displayed.

3. Click the icon for the model name of printer to be shared

- If you are using Windows 7, press the Alt key on your keyboard and then select Printer properties -> Sharing tab from the displayed File menu.
- If you are using Windows Vista, press the Alt key on your keyboard and then select Run as administrator -> Sharing... from the displayed File menu.
- If you are using Windows XP, select Sharing... from the File menu.

Important

- In Windows 7 or Windows Vista, a confirmation/warning dialog box may appear when starting, installing or uninstalling software.
This dialog box appears when administrative rights are required to perform a task.
When you are logged on to an administrator account, click Yes (or Continue, Allow) to continue.
Some applications require an administrator account to continue. When you are logged on to a standard account, switch to an administrator account, and restart the operation from the beginning.

Note

- Windows XP may display a message recommending the user to use the Network Setup Wizard to set up sharing.
When this message appears, choose not to use the wizard and then set up sharing.

4. Set sharing

Select Share this printer on the Sharing tab to set a shared name if necessary, and click OK.

The setup on the print server system is complete. Next, set up the client systems.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Sharing the Printer on a Network > Settings on Client PC

P044

Settings on Client PC

After setting up the print server system, set up the client system.

The procedure for setting up the client systems is as follows:

If you are using Windows 7 or Windows Vista

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

For installation instructions, see " [Installing the MP Drivers](#)."



Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

- If you are using Windows 7, select the Start menu -> Devices and Printers -> Add a printer.
- If you are using Windows Vista, select the Start menu -> Network -> Add Printer.

The Add Printer window appears.

3. Add a printer

Select Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer, and click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.



Note

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.
- It may take some time for the icon for the printer to appear.

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.

- If you are using Windows 7, the icon for the shared printer will be created in the Devices and Printers window.
- If you are using Windows Vista, the icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers window.

The setup on the client systems is complete. You can now share the printer in the network.

If you are using Windows XP

1. Install the printer driver on the client systems

For installation instructions, see " [Installing the MP Drivers](#)."



Note

- During the installation, a screen prompting you to turn the printer on appears. Click Manual Selection and then select an appropriate port to complete your installation.

2. Start the wizard

Select the start menu -> Control Panel -> Printers and Other Hardware -> Printers and Faxes -> Add a printer.

When Welcome to the Add Printer Wizard screen appears, click Next.

3. Add a printer

Select A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer, then click Next.

On the Specify a Printer window, click Next and then search for the print server system.

Click the icon for the printer that you have configured on the print server system to be shared, and then click Next.



Note

- If the icon for the printer is not displayed, check that the printer is actually connected to the print server.
-

4. Complete the setup

Take the appropriate action as described on the screen and then click Finish.

The icon for the shared printer will be created in the Printers and Faxes window.

The setup on the client systems is complete. You can now share the printer in the network.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Appendix > Sharing the Printer on a Network > Restrictions on Printer Sharing

P415

Restrictions on Printer Sharing

If you are using the XPS printer driver, replace "Canon IJ Status Monitor" with "Canon IJ XPS Status Monitor" when reading this information.

These are restrictions that apply when you are using a printer in a network environment. Check the restrictions for the environment you are using.

When You Are Sharing a Printer in a Network

- A print completion message may be displayed. To disable the message to display, follow the procedure below.
 - **If you are using Windows 7:**

In the Devices and Printers window of the client, select the printer from Printers and Faxes, and open the displayed Print server properties.

Uncheck Show information notifications for network printers on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
 - **If you are using Windows Vista:**

Press the Alt key from the Printers window on the client system. Open Run as administrator -> Server Properties... from the displayed File menu.

Uncheck Show informational notifications for network printers on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
 - **If you are using Windows XP:**

Open Server Properties from the File menu of the Printer and Faxes window on the print server system.

Uncheck Notify when remote documents are printed on the Advanced tab, and then restart the computer.
- The bi-directional communication function is disabled and the correct printer status may not be recognized.

If a client user opens the printer driver properties (to display the properties when using Windows 7, press the Alt key, and select Printer properties from the displayed File menu) and then clicks OK with the Enable bidirectional support check box cleared on the Ports tab, the bidirectional communication function of the printer server may also be disabled.

In this case, check Enable bidirectional support check box on both the print server system and the client system.
- When you print from a client system, you cannot use Canon IJ Preview.
- When the functions on the Maintenance tab cannot be set properly from a client system, they may be grayed out. In this case, change the settings from the print server.

When you change the settings of the print server, you should delete the icon of the shared printer from the client system, and then specify the shared settings again in the client system.

When the Same Printer Driver is Installed in the Print Server System and the Client System as the Local Printer

- The net crawl function may automatically create a network printer icon on the client system.



Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

A001

Easy-PhotoPrint EX

Using Easy-PhotoPrint EX

--- Transforming Your Photos into Creative Works of Art ---

Easy-PhotoPrint EX allows you to create albums, calendars and stickers easily using photos taken with digital cameras.

You can also print borderless photos easily.

Start Easy-PhotoPrint EX



Click Here: [Easy-PhotoPrint EX](#)



Note

- See the section below for details on how to use Easy-PhotoPrint EX.
 ➔ [Printing with the Bundled Application Software](#)

Create a Personalized Photo Album

Creating a personalized photo album is an easy task if you use Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

All you need to do is select which photos to use, select a layout, then load paper into your printer and print. After you bind the printed sheets, you'll have the one and only album of your memories!



You can change the layout and background, and attach comments to photos.



You can also select the size and orientation.



You can arrange a photo across the left and right pages.

CHECK!

Select a theme (background design) to create a single-themed album.

Decorate Items with Text and Frames

You can add text and frames to photos. Attach a description of the photo in an album, and add a frame to enhance the photo's atmosphere.



CHECK!

Select Album to add text and frames. You cannot decorate photos with Photo Print.

Create a Calendar Using Your Favorite Photos

Create calendars easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX. Create your own calendar using your favorite photos! It'll be exciting to turn the calendar pages.



You can use all kinds of photos.

You can also create 2-month, 6-month and 12-month calendars.

Create Stickers

Create stickers easily with Easy-PhotoPrint EX!

Create stickers of your favorite photos and share them with your friends!



CHECK!

You can add text to photos.

Advanced Guide

Advanced Guide > Using MP Navigator EX

S001

MP Navigator EX

Using MP Navigator EX

MP Navigator EX is an application that enables you to easily scan photos and documents. It is suitable even for beginners.

Start MP Navigator EX



Click Here: [MP Navigator EX](#)



Note

- See "Let's Try Scanning" for details on how to scan images using MP Navigator EX.

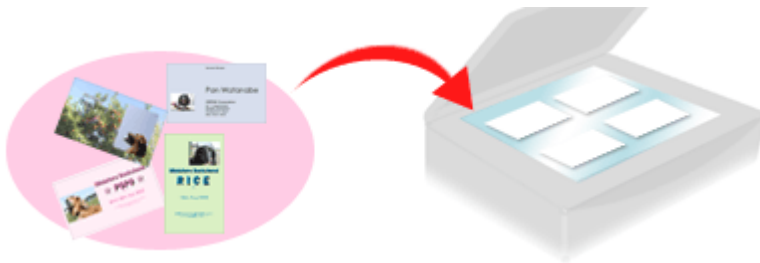
Scan Photos and Documents

You can scan easily by navigating through MP Navigator EX screens. You can also save/print scanned images using MP Navigator EX.



Scan Small Documents at One Time

You can scan multiple small documents (photos, cards, etc.) at one time. It is useful as you do not need to scan multiple times.



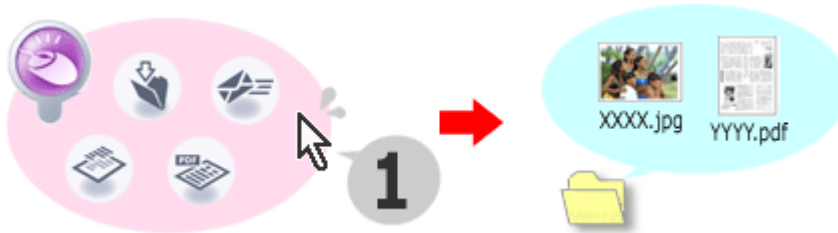
Scan Large Documents

You can easily scan documents that are larger than the Platen using MP Navigator EX. It allows you to scan the left and right halves of a document separately and combine them back into one image.



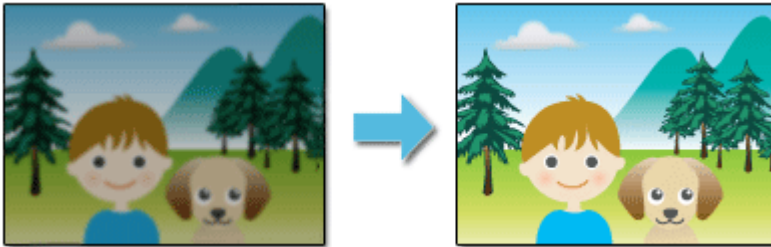
Scan with One-click

In One-click Mode, MP Navigator EX completes from scanning to saving, with a click of an icon. One-click Mode also allows you to scan and save images as PDF files or attach them to e-mail automatically.



Scan and Correct/Enhance Photos

You can easily correct/enhance scanned photos using MP Navigator EX. You do not need to use other applications.



For details on how to use MP Navigator EX, refer to " [Scanning with the Bundled Application Software](#) ."